Springer Texts in Business and Economics

Hartmut Stadtler
Christoph Kilger
Herbert Meyr *Editors*

Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning

Concepts, Models, Software, and Case Studies

Fifth Edition

Springer

Springer Texts in Business and Economics

For further volumes:
http://www.springer.com/series/10099

Hartmut Stadtler • Christoph Kilger •
Herbert Meyr
Editors

Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning

Concepts, Models, Software, and Case Studies

5th Edition

Springer

Editors
Hartmut Stadtler
Institute for Logistics and Transport
University of Hamburg
Hamburg
Germany

Christoph Kilger
Ernst & Young GmbH
Saarbrücken
Germany

Herbert Meyr
Department of Supply Chain Management
University of Hohenheim
Stuttgart
Germany

ISSN 2192-4333 ISSN 2192-4341 (electronic)
ISBN 978-3-642-55308-0 ISBN 978-3-642-55309-7 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7
Springer Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014955737

© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2015
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed. Exempted from this legal reservation are brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis or material supplied specifically for the purpose of being entered and executed on a computer system, for exclusive use by the purchaser of the work. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the Copyright Law of the Publisher's location, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Permissions for use may be obtained through RightsLink at the Copyright Clearance Center. Violations are liable to prosecution under the respective Copyright Law.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
While the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication, neither the authors nor the editors nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

Preface

Preface to the Fifth Edition

More than 15 years have passed since we started working on the first edition of this book. A lot has happened in the meantime. A dot-com bubble has grown and burst. Another wave of lean management has rolled over the planning landscape. Some people still seem to think that Advanced Planning and Lean Management are exclusive philosophies although the automotive industry—as the prime father to Lean—is the best example that both can and should complement each other in a fruitful co-existence and synergy. New buzz words like profit velocity, demand sensing and service oriented architecture have come and gone. Often they disappeared even faster than they have risen.

During the 7 years since publishing our fourth edition consolidation on the Advanced Planning Systems' (APS) software market continued at an unabated pace. Thus, we decided to do some historical research and inserted a sort of genealogical tree of APS in Chap. 16—in addition to our traditionally updated and extended overview of selected software systems in Chap. 18. The term "Sales & Operations Planning" is actually known for more than 25 years in the scientific literature. Nevertheless, during recent years it came up as a renewed concept on the software and consulting market. We will discuss how this old idea is interpreted in a modern software world within several chapters.

Chapters 6 on Strategic Network Design, 8 on Master Planning and 12 on Transport Planning partly show new authors. This gave reason to restructure and revise their contents substantially. With a new case study of the specialty chemicals industry (Chap. 26), we do not only welcome another new author, but also will have a closer look at a "new" software suite and software vendor (at least as this book is concerned). Of course a lot of further updates have been made—by far too many to be mentioned in this preface. Finally, a new editor has been affiliated. He not only was an author since the first edition, but also acted as an editor of the German translation of "our" book in 2011. Thus, do not be surprised to find a third signature below this preface.

We are grateful to Christian Seipl, who spent hours over hours of his spare time in typesetting and debugging this fifth edition. Also, we are indebted to the authors of this book, who contributed their written knowledge and also to all unnamed advisers, who contributed their unwritten knowledge. Last but not least, we would like to thank the readers—the familiar ones, who are faithful since the first edition, but also all new ones, who are warmly welcomed to dive into the world of Advanced Planning.

Hamburg, Germany Hartmut Stadtler
Saarbrücken, Germany Christoph Kilger
Hohenheim, Germany Herbert Meyr
February 2014

Preface to the Fourth Edition

The hype is over—and this is fine!

Advanced Planning Systems (APS) have become a mature technology in the past years. Investments in APS have to undergo the same standard software evaluation and financial appraisal process as any other investment. It no longer suffices to argue that "we have to be at the front edge of technology".

And still there is a large number of rewarding applications for APS. Three of these have become new case studies in this fourth edition. Unfortunately, a fourth case study has been withdrawn in the last minute because the client company regards its APS solution a key element of becoming the leader in its sector—expertise which they do not want to share with their competitors.

A second development to mention is the tendency to avoid the term "System" in AP"S". Instead some prefer the term Advanced Planning Modules which better reflects the capability to combine some of its modules with other software components (e.g. for Supply Chain Event Management) to form an individual Supply Chain (SC) solution. However, the information flows among modules described in this book now even become more important for the quality of the SC solution generated. Hence, there is no reason for us to refrain from the term APS or to change the concept of our book.

Readers familiar with the third edition will realize that not only chapters have been reorganized and updated to the state of the art but also that there has been much fine-tuning of technical issues like for the index and the references. This is due to Christian Seipl who took over the "burden" of administering the chapters. Many thanks to him! We are also indebted to a number of consultants and practitioners for providing advice and proofreading parts of the book, especially with respect to the description of selected APS.

Now it is up to you, dear reader, to make the best use of this fourth edition!

Hamburg, Germany Hartmut Stadtler
Mannheim, Germany Christoph Kilger
June 2007

Preface to the Third Edition

Four years have passed since the first edition of our book—and still its readership is growing rapidly: You may even be able to buy a Chinese translation soon!

The field of Supply Chain Management (SCM) and Advanced Planning has evolved tremendously since the first edition was published in 2000. SCM concepts have conquered industry—most industry firms appointed supply chain managers and are "managing their supply chain". Impressive improvements have resulted from the application of SCM concepts and the implementation of Advanced Planning Systems (APS). However, in the last years many SCM projects and APS implementations failed or at least did not fully meet expectations. Many firms are just "floating with the current" and are applying SCM concepts without considering all aspects and fully understanding the preconditions and consequences. This book provides comprehensive insights into the fundamentals of SCM and APS and practical guidance for their application.

What makes this book different from others in the field? First, the material presented is based on our experiences gained by actually using and implementing APS. Furthermore, we have tried to extract the essence from three leading APS and to generalize the results—instead of merely reporting what is possible in a single APS. Second, this book is not just a collection of papers from researchers who have come together at a single conference and published the resultant conference proceedings. Instead we have structured the area of SCM and Advanced Planning into those topics relevant for turning APS successfully into practice. Then we have asked prominent researchers, experienced consultants and practitioners from large industry firms involved in SCM to join our group of authors. As a result, this edition (product) should be the most valuable source of knowledge for our readers (customers).

You may have observed that creating our team of authors has much in common with forming a supply chain in industrial practice. This story can be expanded even further: Several authors are also partners (contributors) in other supply chains (author groups). It is the task of the steering committee (editors) to make our supply chain work and make it profitable for every partner. This model not only worked for the lifetime of a product's life cycle but also twice for its relaunch. We hope that our supply chain will stick together for some time in the future for the best of our customers—YOU!

What is new in this third edition, apart from the usual update of chapters?

- A section on strategic issues in SCM has been added as a subsection of Chap. 1.
- The contents of Chaps. 2 and 3 are restructured with a greater emphasis on Supply Chain Analysis.
- Latest issues and recommendations in Strategic Network Planning now have been prepared by two authors (Chap. 6).
- A new chapter has been added showing how to generate production and purchasing orders for uncritical items by utilizing the well-known MRP logic (Chap. 11).

- The chapters on the Definition of a Supply Chain Project (Chap. 15) and the Selection Process of an APS (Chap. 16) have been rewritten in light of new experiences and research results.
- Demand Fulfilment and ATP (Chap. 9) now is based on several APS and thus presents our findings in a more generalized form.
- There are two new case studies, one from the pharmaceutical industry (Chap. 25) and one from the chemical industry (Chap. 20). Also, all case studies now follow a common structure.

This edition would not have been possible without the advice from industry partners and software vendors. Many thanks to all of them for their most valuable help. This is also the last edition, where Jens Rohde has administered all the papers and prepared the files to be sent to the publisher. Thank you very much, Jens, for this great and perfect service and all the best for the future!

Darmstadt, Germany Hartmut Stadtler
Mannheim, Germany Christoph Kilger
April 2004

Preface to the Second Edition

Success Stimulates!

This also holds true when the first edition of a book is sold out quickly. So, we have created this second edition of our book with great enthusiasm.

Attentive readers of the first edition will have realized an obvious gap between the scope of Supply Chain Management (SCM), namely integrating legally separated companies along the supply chain and the focus of Advanced Planning Systems (APS) which, due to the principles of hierarchical planning, are best suited for coordinating intra-organizational flows. Now, collaborative planning is a new feature of APS which aims at bridging this gap. Consequently, this new topic is the most apparent addition to the second edition (Chap. 14).

But there are also many other additions which are the result of greater experience of the authors—both in industrial practice and research—as well as latest APS software developments. Examples of new materials included are:

- The different types of inventories and its analysis are presented in Chap. 2.
- The description of the SCOR-model and the supply chain typology have been enlarged and now form a separate chapter (Chap. 3).
- There is now a comparison of planning tasks and planning concepts for the consumer goods and computer assembly industry (Chap. 4).
- New developments in distribution and transport planning have been added (Chap. 12).
- Enterprise Application Integration is explained in Chap. 13.
- Chapter 17 now presents implementation issues of APS in greater detail.
- Some case studies have been updated and extended (Part IV).

- Rules of thumb have been introduced to allow users and consultants to better estimate and control computational times for solving their decision models (Part VI).

Like in the first edition we have concentrated on the three most popular APS because we have realized that keeping up-to-date with its latest developments is a very time-consuming and challenging task.

SCM continues to be a top management theme, thus we expect our readers to profit from this update and wish them great success when implementing their SCM solution.

Many thanks to all who contributed to the first and second edition!

Darmstadt, Germany
Mannheim, Germany
January 2002

Hartmut Stadtler
Christoph Kilger

Preface to the First Edition

During the late 1980s and throughout the 1990s information technology changed modern manufacturing organizations dramatically. Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems became the major backbone technology for nearly every type of transaction. Customer orders, purchase orders, receipts, invoices etc. are maintained and processed by ERP systems provided by software vendors—like Baan, J. D. Edwards, Oracle, SAP AG and many more. ERP systems integrate many processes, even those that span multiple functional areas in an organization, and provide a consistent database for corporate wide data. By that ERP systems help to integrate internal processes in an organization.

Mid of the 1990s it became apparent that focussing on the integration of internal processes alone does not lead to a drastic improvement of business performance. While ERP systems are supporting the *standard* business workflows, the biggest impact on business performance is created by *exceptions* and *variability*, e.g. customers order more than expected, suppliers deliver later than promised, production capacity is reduced by an unforeseen breakdown of equipment, etc. The correct reaction to exceptions like these can save a lot of money and increase the service level and will help to improve sales and profits. Furthermore, state-of-the-art *planning procedures*—for planning sales, internal operations and supply from the vendors well in advance—reduce the amount of exceptional situations, helping to keep business in a standard mode of operation and turning out to be more profitable than constantly dealing with exceptional situations.

This functionality—powerful planning procedures and methodologies as well as quick reactions to exceptions and variability—is provided by *Advanced Planning Systems*. An Advanced Planning System (APS) exploits the consistent database and integrated standard workflows provided by ERP systems to leverage high velocity in industry. Due to these recent developments, software vendors of APS boost a major breakthrough in enterprise wide planning and even collaborative planning between the partners along a supply chain.

Do APS hold the promises? What are the concepts underlying these new planning systems? How do APS and ERP systems interact, and how do APS supplement ERP systems? What are the current limits of APS and what is required to introduce an APS in a manufacturing organization successfully?

These were the questions we asked ourselves when we started our project on "Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning" in summer 1998. Since we realized that there were many more interested in this new challenging field, the idea of publishing this book was born.

This book is the result of collaborative work done by members of four consultancy companies—aconis, j & m Management Consulting, KPMG and PRTM—and three universities—University of Augsburg, Darmstadt University of Technology and Georgia Institute of Technology. Our experiences stem from insights gained by utilizing, testing and implementing several modules of APS from i2 Technologies, J. D. Edwards and SAP AG. Tests and evaluations of modules have been conducted within several projects including students conducting their final thesis.

On the other hand, some members of the working group have been (and still are) involved in actual APS implementation projects in several European enterprises. The real-world experience gained from these projects has been merged with the results from the internal evaluation projects and provided valuable insights into the current performance of APS as well as guidelines how to set up and conduct an APS implementation project.

Since summer 1998 our group has spent much time gaining insights into this new fascinating field, working closely together with colleagues from academic research, vendors of APS and customers of APS vendors. However, we are aware of the fact that APS vendors are constantly improving their systems, that new areas come into focus—like supplier collaboration, Internet fulfilment, customer relationship management—and that, because of the speed of developments, a *final* documentation will not be possible. Hence, we decided to publish this book as a report on the current state of APS, based on our current knowledge and findings, covering the major principles and concepts underlying state-of-the-art APS.

This book will be a valuable source for managers and consultants alike, initiating and conducting projects aiming at introducing an APS in industry. Furthermore, it will help actual users of an APS to understand and broaden their view of how an APS really works. Also, students attending postgraduate courses in Supply Chain Management and related fields will profit from the material provided.

Many people have contributed to this book. In fact, it is a "Joint Venture" of the academic world and consultancy firms, both being at the forefront of APS technology. Hans Kühn gave valuable input to Chap. 2, especially to the section on the SCOR-model. Daniel Fischer was involved in the writing of Chap. 9 on Demand Fulfilment and ATP. The ideas of the KPI profile and the Enabler-KPI-Value Network, described in Chap. 15, were strongly influenced by many discussions with Dr. Rupert Deger. Dr. Hans-Christian Humprecht and Christian Manß were so kind as to review our view of software modules of APS (Chap. 18). Dr. Uli Kalex was the main contributor to the design of the project solutions, on which the computer assembly case study (Chap. 23) and the semiconductor case study are based. Marja Blomqvist, Dr. Susanne Gröner, Bindu Kochugovindan, Helle Skott and Heinz Korbelius read parts of the book and helped to improve the style and contents. Furthermore, we profited a lot from several unnamed students who prepared their master thesis in the area of APS—most of them now being employed by companies implementing APS. Last but not least, we would like to mention Ulrich Höfling as well as the authors Jens Rohde and Christopher Sürie who took care of assembling the 24 chapters and preparing the index in a tireless effort throughout this project.

Many thanks to all!

We wish our readers a profitable reading and all the best for applying Advanced Planning Systems in practice successfully.

Darmstadt, Germany Hartmut Stadtler
Mannheim, Germany Christoph Kilger
June 2000

Contents

Part I Basics of Supply Chain Management

Part II Concepts of Advanced Planning Systems

Part III Implementing Advanced Planning Systems

Part IV Actual APS and Case Studies

Part V Conclusions and Outlook

Part VI Supplement

Introduction and Overview of Chapters

Since its creation in 1982 the term *Supply Chain Management* (SCM) has become an indispensable element of today's management practices. Often, a supply chain consists of a number of (production) sites spread over several continents. Coordinating material flows among these sites is a very complex task and generally exceeds the "manual" capacity of an individual (manager). Here, a suitable software support is required, which is provided by so called *Advanced Planning Systems* (APS). As an appetizer, here are two results observed after implementing APS in industry:

- A large German computer manufacturer implemented APS modules for demand planning, matching supply and demand, master planning and order promising to improve its computer assembly operations. Special attention had to be paid to both fixed and open configurations of computers and the availability of the required components obtained from various suppliers. As a result of the project, on time delivery increased from well below 80 to about 90 %. Furthermore, end-to-end order lead time nearly halved from 10–22 days to 6–12 days.
- An Austrian oil company concentrates its business on refining crude oil and marketing resulting products in eleven countries in Middle and Eastern Europe. To find out which crude oil to buy in order to best match demand while considering existing bottlenecks at the various refineries is a very difficult task. The project team implemented modules taken from two different APS software vendors and created a coherent planning suite. One great challenge was to model production specifics, i.e. processing crude oil sorts with their different yields and possible production procedures (distillation, conversion, treatment). The benefits of the APS implementation project accounted for a two-digit million EURO amount in net present value in total. In essence, the APS implementation led to a considerable competitive advantage for the company.

These impressive gains show the potential of coordinating material and information flows along a supply chain by means of an APS. Most managers would be proud to present such substantial improvements of competitiveness! More details and further case studies are presented in Part IV of this book.

While coordinating information, material and financial flows is already a formidable task in a single company's supply chain, further issues arise if flows have to be aligned in a supply chain consisting of several legally separated companies. These *interorganizational* supply chains resulted from companies concentrating their business on those activities which they know best—their core competencies.

This implies to outsource all other activities to suppliers, if possible. Consequently, the quality and other characteristics of a product or service sold to a customer now largely depend on several firms involved in its creation. This has posed new challenges for the integration of legally separated firms and the coordination of material, information and financial flows not experienced in this magnitude before.

Since there are several facets to look at, SCM is difficult to grasp as a whole. While being aware of the broad area covered by SCM, this book will concentrate on recent developments in coordinating materials and information flows by means of APS. During the past 25 years progress in information technology (like powerful database management systems or cloud computing), communication means (like electronic data interchange (EDI) via the Internet), and methods to solve large quantitative models opened up new perspectives for planning and controlling flows along a supply chain. A customer's order, demand forecasts or market trends may be exploded into required activities and sent to all parties in the supply chain immediately. Accurate schedules are generated, which secure order fulfillment in time. Roughly speaking this is the task of APS. Unlike traditional *Enterprise Resource Planning* (ERP) these systems try to find feasible, (near) optimal plans across the supply chain as a whole, while potential bottlenecks are considered explicitly.

It is our intention to provide insights into the principles and concepts underlying APS. In order to better understand and remember the structure of our book a mind-map has been created (Fig. 1). Part I of the book introduces the basics of SCM starting with a definition of SCM and its building blocks. The origins of SCM can be traced back into the 1950s, when Forrester (1958) studied the dynamics of industrial production-distribution systems (Chap. 1).

As a first step of introducing APS in industry it seems wise to document and analyze the current state of the supply chain and its elements (Chap. 2). A suitable tool for analyzing a supply chain are (key) performance indicators. They can provide valuable insights and guidance for setting targets for an SCM project. A well-known tool for analyzing a supply chain—the SCOR-model—provides a very valuable graphical representation with different levels of aggregation supplemented by performance indicators. Often, inventories at different locations in the supply chain are in the center of interest of management. Hence, we discuss potential reasons for the existence of inventories.

Although APS are designed to be applicable for a number of industries, decision problems may vary widely. A typology of supply chains (Chap. 3) will help the reader to identify which characteristics of a specific APS match the requirements of the supply chain at hand, and which do not, thereby guiding the selection process of an APS. Examples from industry illustrate different types of supply chains. Chapter 4 introduces the basics of advanced planning by applying the principles of hierarchical planning and explains the planning tasks along the supply chain by means of the supply chain planning (SCP) matrix.

Part II describes the general structure of APS (Chap. 5) and its modules in greater detail following the SCP matrix. Part II, however, will not only concentrate on functions and modeling features currently available in APS, but it will also describe

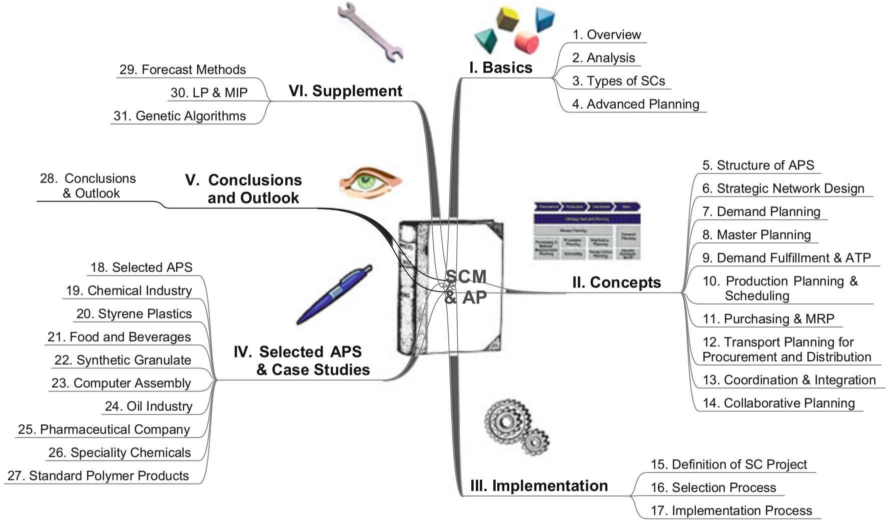


Fig. 1 Structure of this book

ideas we regard to be good Advanced Planning and thus should be included in future releases of an APS. The presentation of concepts underlying these modules starts with strategic network design (Chap. 6) followed by operational planning tasks for procurement, production and distribution. The quality of decision support provided by an APS largely depends on an adequate model of the elements of a supply chain, the algorithms used for its solution and the coordination of modules involved. Chapters 7–12 describe the many modeling features and mention solution procedures available to tackle different planning tasks without explicitly referring to specific APS. Although several modules have been identified, software vendors claim to offer a coherent, integrated software suite with close links to ERP systems. These linkages are the topic of Chap. 13.

In case a supply chain consists of several legally separated organizations, planning functions (usually) will not be controlled by a single, centralized APS. Instead, each partner will perform its own decentralized planning functions supported by an individual APS. Here, collaborative planning comes into play (Chap. 14) where supply chain partners agree on the exchange of data and the coordination of planning processes. The overall objective is that the supply chain works in the most effective manner, i.e. ideally without interrupting the flow of information, materials and financial funds.

Part III is devoted to the implementation of an APS within a firm or supply chain. Obviously, this requires a lot more than modeling. Often a consultancy company is hired to provide the expertise and manpower needed to introduce new, more efficient processes, to customize the APS and to train personnel. Hence, we describe the tasks necessary for introducing an SCM project (Chap. 15), the selection process of an APS (Chap. 16) and its implementation in industry (Chap. 17).

Recalling the general structure of APS (Chap. 5), Part IV considers specific APS offered by Aspen Technology, JDA, OM Partners, Oracle and SAP. We start by pointing out differences in architecture (Chap. 18), followed by nine case studies. These case studies will demonstrate how concepts and ideas outlined in the preceding chapters have been applied to industrial practice with the help of an APS. Some characteristics, like type of industry, planning tasks tackled, and software modules used are depicted in Table 1. It turns out that the chemical industry is a major application area for APS. One reason is the limited planning functionality of ERP systems. Especially material requirements planning (MRP) is of little use if there are tightly coupled production stages, long production runs together with high utilization rates of resources. Table 1 also shows that an APS project may range from implementing just a single APS module to a complete software suite, and may even be extended by modules of a further APS.

The first four case studies describe the implementation of just a single module of an APS. These case studies range from (re-) designing the distribution network of a large chemical company (Chap. 19), via demand planning of styrene plastics (Chap. 20), master planning of food and beverages (Chap. 21) to detailed scheduling for the production of synthetic granulates (Chap. 22). The next four case studies (starting with Chap. 23) address several levels of a planning hierarchy and how these can be supported by corresponding modules of an APS. Although extremely

Table 1 APS case studies

No. chap.	Industry	Planning tasks	Software vendor	Software modules implemented
19	Chemical	Strategic Network Design	PROLOGOS, Germany	PRODISI (no APS)
20	Chemical	Demand Planning	SAP, Germany	SAP APO: DP
21	Consumer goods	Master Planning (focus), Scheduling, Demand Planning	ORACLE, USA; Manugistics, USA[a]	ORACLE: SNO (focus), Production Scheduling Process; JDA/Manugistics: Demand
22	Chemical	Production Planning and Scheduling	SAP, Germany	SAP APO: PP/DS
23	Electronic	Demand Planning, Master Planning, Demand Fulfillment & ATP, Production Planning	i2, USA[b]	i2: Demand Planner, Factory Planner, Supply Chain Planner, Demand Fulfillment, Rhythmlink
24	Oil	Demand Planning, Master Planning, Scheduling, Demand Fulfillment	AspenTech, USA; SAP, Germany	Aspen: XPIMS, PPIMS, PIMS-SX; SAP APO: DP; gATP
25	Pharma-ceutical	Master Planning, Production Planning Detailed Scheduling	SAP, Germany	SAP APO: SNP, PP/DS
26	Speciality chemicals	All medium to short-term planning tasks of the SC Planning Matrix; focus on Demand Fulfillment	OM Partners, Belgium; SAP, Germany	OMP Plus suite; SAP ATP
27	Chemical	Demand Planning, Master Planning, Production Planning and Scheduling, Available to Promise	SAP, Germany; IBM, USA	SAP APO: SNP, PP/DS, gATP; external MIP solver (CPLEX)

[a] Manugistics is now owned by JDA, USA
[b] i2 is now owned by JDA, USA

powerful, the functionality of an APS may not always suffice to adequately model all the features required to solve a customer's decision problem. Here, a combination of both a standard APS and further individual software may be a means to an end, which is the topic of the last case study (Chap. 27).

Part V sums up our experiences and gives an outlook of potential future developments.

Finally, a supplement (Part VI) provides a brief introduction to major algorithms used to solve the models mentioned in Parts II and IV and should enable the reader to better understand how APS work and where their limits are: Forecast methods relate to Demand Planning (Chap. 29). Linear and mixed integer programming models are the solution methods needed if optimal master plans or distribution plans are looked for (Chap. 30). Last but not least, genetic algorithms are available as a solution engine within the scheduling module for generating “near optimal” sequences of jobs (orders) on multiple resources (Chap. 31).

Hamburg, Germany Hartmut Stadtler

Reference

Forrester, J. (1958). Industrial dynamics: A major breakthrough for decision makers. *Harvard Business Review, 36*, 37–66.

Part I

Basics of Supply Chain Management

1 Supply Chain Management: An Overview

Hartmut Stadtler

What is the essence of *Supply Chain Management* (SCM)? How does it relate to Advanced Planning? In which sense are the underlying planning concepts "advanced"? What are the origins of SCM? These as well as related questions will be answered in this chapter.

1.1 Definitions

During the 1990s several authors tried to put the essence of SCM into a single definition. Its constituents are

- The object of the management philosophy
- The target group
- The objective(s)
- The broad means for achieving these objectives.

The object of SCM obviously is the *supply chain* which represents a "… network of organizations that are involved, through upstream and downstream linkages, in the different processes and activities that produce value in the form of products and services in the hands of the ultimate consumer" (Christopher 2005, p. 17). In a broad sense a supply chain consists of two or more legally separated organizations, being linked by material, information and financial flows. These organizations may be firms producing parts, components and end products, logistic service providers and even the ultimate consumer (synonym: customer) himself. So, the above definition of a supply chain also incorporates the target group—the ultimate customer.

As Fig. 1.1 shows, a network usually will not only focus on flows within a (single) chain, but will have to deal with divergent and convergent flows within a complex

---

H. Stadtler (✉)
Institute for Logistics and Transport, University of Hamburg, Von-Melle-Park 5, 20146 Hamburg, Germany
e-mail: hartmut.stadtler@uni-hamburg.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_1,

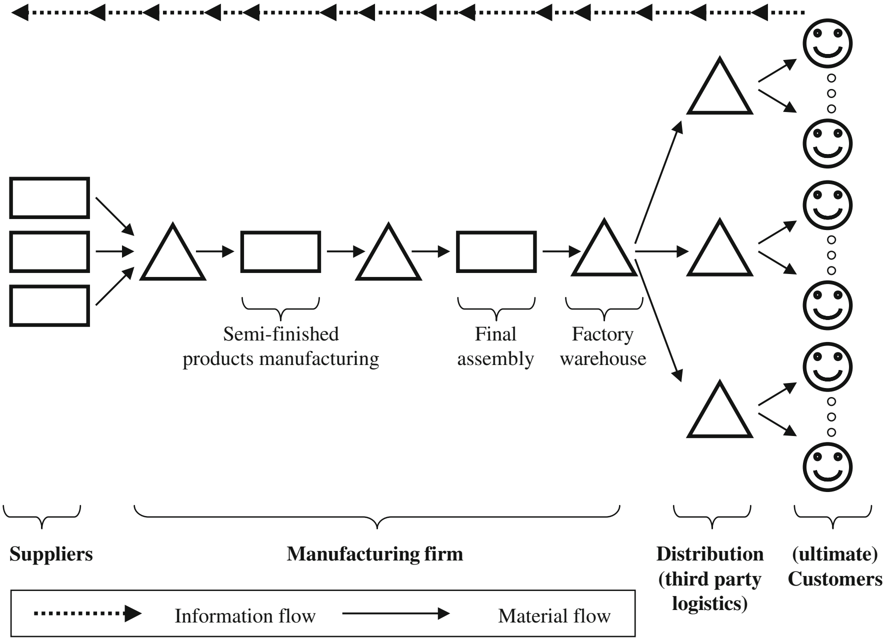


Fig. 1.1 Supply chain (example)

network resulting from many different customer orders to be handled in parallel. In order to ease complexity, a given organization may concentrate only on a portion of the overall supply chain. As an example, looking in the downstream direction the view of an organization may be limited by the customers of its customers while it ends with the suppliers of its suppliers in the upstream direction.

In a narrow sense the term supply chain is also applied to a large company with several sites often located in different countries. Coordinating material, information and financial flows for such a multinational company in an efficient manner is still a formidable task. Decision-making, however, should be easier, since these sites are part of one large organization with a single top management level. A supply chain in the broad sense is also called an *inter-organizational* supply chain, while the term *intra-organizational* relates to a supply chain in the narrow sense. Irrespective of this distinction, a close cooperation between the different functional units like marketing, production, procurement, logistics and finance is mandatory—a prerequisite being no matter of course in today's firms.

The objective governing all endeavors within a supply chain is seen as increasing competitiveness. This is because no single organizational unit now is solely responsible for the competitiveness of its products and services in the eyes of the ultimate customer, but the supply chain as a whole. Hence, competition has shifted from single companies to supply chains. Obviously, to convince an individual company to become a part of a supply chain requires a *win-win situation* for each participant in the long run, while this may not be the case for all entities in the short run. One generally accepted impediment for improving competitiveness is to provide superior customer service which will be discussed in greater detail below (Sect. 1.2.1). Alternatively, a firm may increase its competitiveness by fulfilling a prespecified, generally accepted customer service level at minimum costs.

There are two broad means for improving the competitiveness of a supply chain. One is a closer *integration* (or cooperation) of the organizations involved and the other is a better *coordination* of material, information and financial flows (Lee and Ng 1998, p. 1). Overcoming organizational barriers, aligning strategies and speeding up flows along the supply chain are common subjects in this respect.

We are now able to define the term *Supply Chain Management* as the task of integrating organizational units along a supply chain and coordinating material, information and financial flows in order to fulfill (ultimate) customer demands with the aim of improving the competitiveness of a supply chain as a whole.[1],[2]

1.2 Building Blocks

The *House of SCM* (see Fig. 1.2) illustrates the many facets of SCM. The roof stands for the ultimate goal of SCM—competitiveness—customer service indicates the means. Competitiveness can be improved in many ways, e.g. by reducing costs, increasing flexibility with respect to changes in customer demands or by providing a superior quality of products and services.

The roof rests on two pillars representing the two main components of SCM, namely the integration of a network of organizations and the coordination of information, material and financial flows. The figure also shows that there are many disciplines that formed the foundations of SCM.

The two main components which incur some degree of novelty, will now be broken down into their building blocks. Firstly, forming a supply chain requires the *choice of suitable partners* for a mid-term partnership. Secondly, becoming an effective and successful *network organization*, consisting of legally separated organizations calls for actually practicing *inter-organizational collaboration*. Thirdly,

---

[1] Our definition largely corresponds with that of the Council of Supply Chain Management Professionals (CSMP) stating that "Supply Chain Management is an integrating function with primary responsibility for linking major business functions and business processes within and across companies into a cohesive and high-performing business model" (The Council of Supply Chain Management Professionals 2013, p. 187).

[2] A definition of Supply Chain Management which is very close to the mission of logistics is proposed by Simchi-Levi et al.: "Supply Chain Management is a set of approaches utilized to efficiently integrate suppliers, manufacturers, warehouses, and stores, so that merchandise is produced and distributed at the right quantities, to the right locations, and at the right time, in order to minimize systemwide costs while satisfying service level requirements" (Simchi-Levi et al. 2008, p. 1).

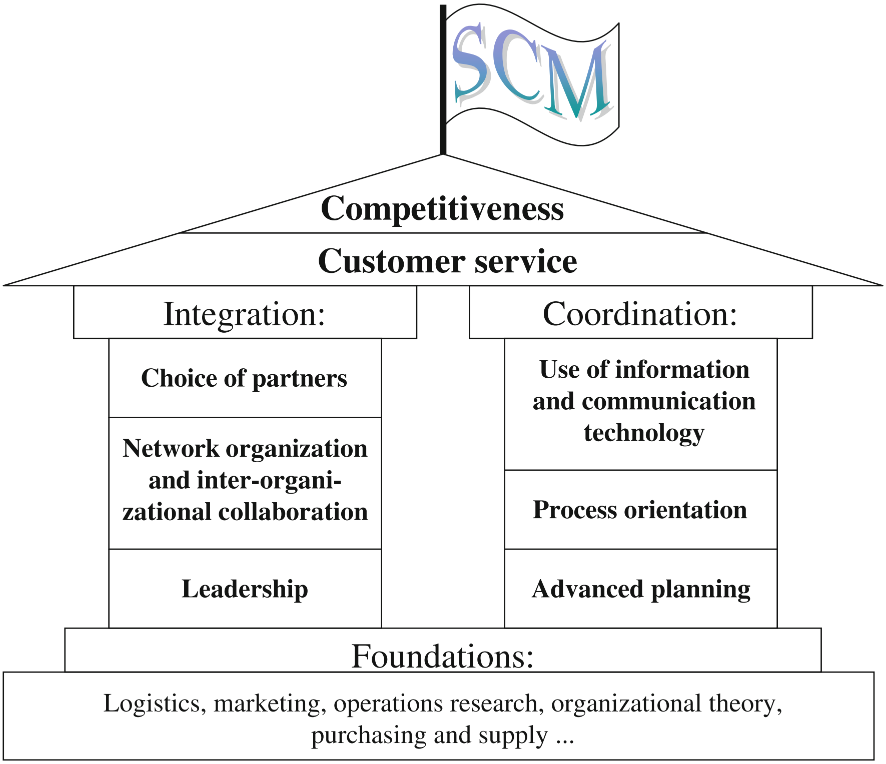


Fig. 1.2 House of SCM

for an inter-organizational supply chain, new concepts of *leadership* aligning strategies of the partners involved are important.

The coordination of flows along the supply chain can be executed efficiently by utilizing the latest developments in *information and communication technology*. These allow processes formerly executed manually to be automated. Above all, activities at the interface of two entities can be scrutinized, while duplicate activities (like keying in the data of a consignment) can be reduced to a single activity. *Process orientation* thus often incorporates a redesign followed by a standardization of the new process.

For executing customer orders, the availability of materials, personnel, machinery and tools has to be planned. Although production and distribution planning as well as purchasing have been in use for several decades, these mostly have been isolated and limited in scope. Coordinating plans over several sites and several legally separated organizations represents a new challenge that is taken up by *Advanced Planning* (Systems).

Subsequently, we will describe the house of SCM in greater detail, starting with the roof, followed by its two pillars and ending with some references to its foundations.

1.2.1 Customer Service

Customer service is a multi-dimensional notion. According to a survey conducted by LaLonde and Zinszer (cited in Christopher 2005, p. 48) there are three elements of customer service:

- Pre-transaction
- Transaction
- Post-transaction elements.

Some of these elements will be illustrated in the following text.

Pre-transactional elements relate to a company's activities preceding a contract. They concern customer access to information regarding the products and services a firm offers and the existence of an adequate link between organizations involved. Obviously, for standard products ordered routinely (like screws), an impersonal purchase via the Internet may be sufficient. Large projects, however, like a construction of a business building will require several, intense personal links between the organizations involved at different levels of the hierarchy. Finally, flexibility to meet individual customer requirements may be an important element for qualifying for and winning an order.

Transactional elements are all those which contribute to order fulfillment in the eyes of a customer. The availability of products (from stock) may be one option. If a product or service has to be made on demand, order cycle times play an important role. During delivery times a customer may be provided with information on the current status and location of an order. The delivery of goods can include several additional services, like an introduction into the use of a product, its maintenance, etc.

Post-transactional elements mostly concern the service provided once the order is fulfilled. This includes elements like repairing or exchanging defective parts and maintenance, the way customer complaints are dealt with and product warranties (Christopher 2005, p. 50).

For measuring customer service and for setting targets, key performance indicators are used in practice, such as the maximum order lead time, the portion of orders delivered within x days, the portion of orders without rejects or the fill rate (for details see Sect. 2.3 and Silver et al. 1998, p. 243).

If a certain level or standard of customer service has been agreed upon, it must be broken down so that each entity of the supply chain knows how to contribute to its achievement. Consider order lead times offered to customers as an example (Fig. 1.3).

Assume a delivery time of 9 days has to be offered to customers. Now, following each activity upstream in the supply chain with its expected lead times for information and material flows, it becomes clear, where the *decoupling point*

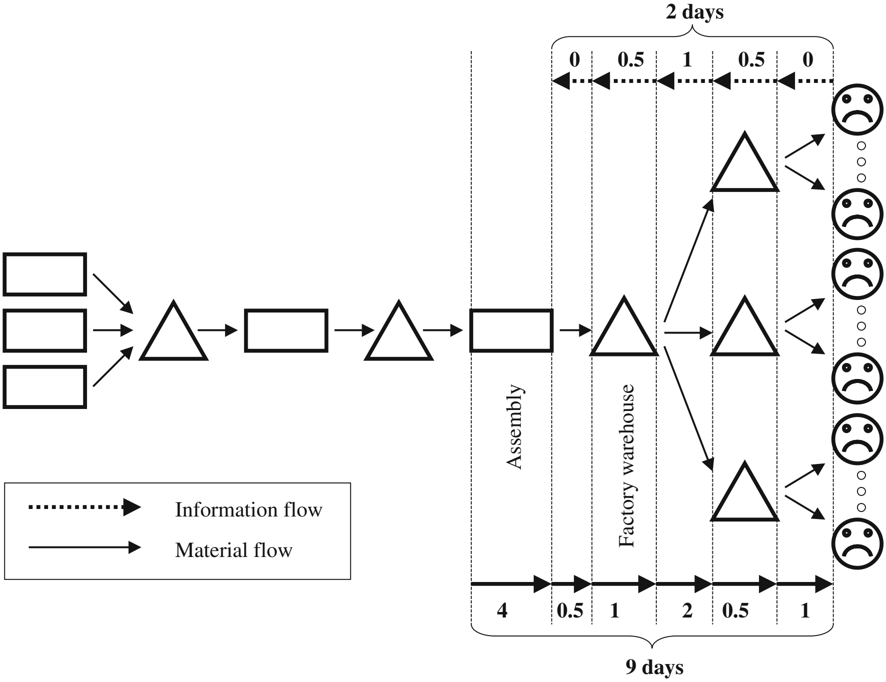


Fig. 1.3 Order lead time and decoupling point

between the two options production-to-stock and production-to-order currently can be located. Since the actual lead times for assembly totals 11 days, this would require to assemble-to-stock.

Stocks held at the decoupling point incur costs and increase overall throughput times. A decoupling point requires that no customized items or components have to be produced upstream. Ideally, items produced on stock have a large commonality so that they can be used within several products. This will reduce the risk of holding the "wrong" stocks, if there is an unexpected shift in products' demand.

If accumulated lead times of customer specific parts exceed expected delivery times, the supply chain as a whole—perhaps including key customers—has to look for either reducing lead times for material or for information flows (e.g. transferring orders by electronic means may save 1 day while an additional day may be saved by advanced scheduling techniques at the assembly plant, thereby allowing to *assemble-to-order* while suppliers *manufacture-to-stock*).

1.2.2 Integration

As has been stated above, a supply chain in the broad sense consists of several legally separated firms collaborating in the generation of a product or service with the aim of improving the competitiveness of a supply chain as a whole. Integration refers to the special building blocks that cause these firms to collaborate in the long term, namely

- Choice of partners
- Network organization and inter-organizational collaboration
- Leadership.

The *choice of partners* starts with analyzing the activities associated with generating a product or service for a certain market segment (see also Chap. 2). Firstly, activities will be assigned to existing members of a supply chain, if these relate to their core competencies. Secondly, activities relating to standard products and services widely available on the market and with no potential of differentiation in the eyes of the ultimate customers, will be bought from outside the supply chain. Thirdly, for all remaining activities, a partner to join the supply chain has to be looked for in the course of a make-or-buy decision procedure (Schneider et al. 1994).

Selection criteria should not be based solely on costs, but on the future potential of a partner to support the competitiveness of the supply chain. A suitable organizational culture and a commitment to contribute to the aims of the supply chain will be of great importance. A possible partner may bring in specialized know-how regarding a production process or know-how of products and their development. In case of a global supply chain, additional criteria have to be considered (like taxes, exchange rates, etc., see Chap. 6).

The assignment of activities to those members within the supply chain who can perform them best as well as the ability to adapt the structure of a supply chain quickly according to market needs are seen as a major advantage compared with traditional hierarchies.

From the perspective of organizational theory, supply chains are a special form of a *network organization*. They consist of loosely coupled, independent actors with equal rights. Their organizational structure is adapted dynamically according to the tasks to be performed and the aims of the network organization as a whole (Sydow 2005; Hilse et al. 1999, p. 30). A supply chain may be regarded as a single (virtual) entity by its customers. The term virtual firm, however, is used for a network of firms collaborating only in the short term, sometimes only for fulfilling a single customer order.

Inter-organizational collaboration is a necessity for an effective supply chain. A supply chain is regarded as a cross between a pure market interaction and a hierarchy. It tries to combine the best features of the two. Ideally, each entity within a supply chain will concentrate on its core competencies and will be relieved from stringent decision procedures and administrative routines attributed to a large hierarchy. Information and know-how is shared openly among members. Competition among members along the supply chain is substituted by the commitment to improve competitiveness of the supply chain as a whole. A risk still remains, however, that collaboration is canceled at some time. These features are assumed to enhance innovativeness and flexibility with respect to taking up new market trends (Burns and Stalker 1961, p. 121).

Although legally independent, entities within a supply chain are economically dependent on each other. Obviously, the structure of a supply chain will remain stable, only if there is a win-win situation for each member—at least in the long run. If this is not achieved in the short term by usual price mechanisms, compensation schemes must be looked for. To enforce the coherence of supply chain members several types of bonds may be used. These are

- "Technical bonds which are related to the technologies employed by the firms
- Knowledge bonds related to the parties' knowledge about their business
- Social bonds in the form of personal confidence
- Administrative bonds related to the administrative routines and procedures of the firms
- Legal bonds in the form of contracts between the firms" (Håkansson and Johanson 1997, p. 462).

An additional bond may be introduced by exchanging contributions to capital. Bonds must be practiced continuously to build up a certain degree of trust—the basis of a long-term partnership. In the case of a global supply chain special attention has to be paid to inter-cultural business communications (Ulijn and Strother 1995).

Leadership, being the third building block of integration, is a delicate theme in light of the ideal of self-organizing, poly-centric actors forming a supply chain. At least some decisions should be made for the supply chain as a whole, like the cancellation of a partnership or the integration of a new partner. Similarly, aligning strategies among partners may require some form of leadership (as an example see Rockhold et al. 1998).

In practice, leadership may be executed either by a focal company or a steering committee. A *focal company* is usually a member having the largest (financial) power, the best know-how of products and processes or has the greatest share of values created during order fulfillment. In some cases, the focal company may also be the founder of a supply chain. For these reasons, decisions made by the focal company will be accepted by all members. On the other hand, a *steering committee* may be introduced, consisting of representatives of all members of a supply chain. The rules of decision-making—like the number of votes per member—are subject to negotiations.

Despite the advantages attributed to a supply chain, one should bear in mind that its structure is vulnerable—the exit of one partner may jeopardize the survival of the supply chain as a whole. Also, a member may run the risk of becoming unattractive and of being substituted by a competitor once his know-how has been dispensed within the supply chain.

Last but not least, the coordination of activities across organizations must not exceed comparable efforts within a hierarchy. In light of the latest developments in information and communication technology as well as software for planning material flows, this requirement has now been fulfilled to a large extent.

1.2.3 Coordination

The coordination of information, material and financial flows—the second main component of SCM—comprises three building blocks:

- Utilization of information and communication technology
- Process orientation
- Advanced planning.

Advances in *information technology* (IT) made it possible to process information at different locations in the supply chain and thus enable the application of advanced planning. Cheap and large storage devices allow for the storage and retrieval of historical mass data, such as past sales. These Data Warehouses may now be used for a better analysis of customer habits as well as for more precise demand forecasts. Graphical user interfaces allow users to access and manipulate data more easily.

Communication via electronic data interchange (EDI) can be established via private and public nets, the most popular being the Internet. Members within a supply chain can thus be informed instantaneously and cheaply. As an example, a sudden breakdown of a production-line can be distributed to all members of a supply chain concerned as a so-called alert.

Rigid standards formerly introduced for communication in special lines of businesses (like ODETTE in the automotive industry) are now being substituted by more flexible meta-languages (like the extensible markup language (XML)).

Communication links can be differentiated according to the parties involved (Corsten and Gössinger 2008): business (B), consumer (C) or administration (A). Two communication links will be discussed here:

Business-to-Business (B2B) communications allow companies to redesign processes, like that of purchasing. Manual tasks, e.g. placing an order for a standard item, can now be taken over by computer. It then controls the entire process, from transmitting the order, order acceptance by the supplier and order execution, until the consignment is received and checked. Finally, the amount payable is transferred to the supplier's account automatically. Automated purchasing allowed the Ford Motor Company to reduce its staff in the purchasing function drastically (Hammer and Champy 2003, p. 57). Other advantages stem from increased speed and reduced errors.

Furthermore, firms can make use of Internet based marketplaces, also called e-hubs (Kaplan and Sawhney 2000). These marketplaces can be distinguished by four characteristics:

- The specificity of goods (either being manufacturing or operating inputs)
- The duration of the relationship (discriminated by systematic or spot sourcing)
- The pricing mechanism (with either fixed prices, e.g. an electronic catalog, or price negotiations in the form of an auction)
- The bias of an e-hub, which may favor either the seller, the buyer or take a neutral position.

Due to the global access to the Internet, not only strong competition and reduced purchasing prices may result, but also new sales opportunities. Note that market places play a role especially at the interface between two or more supply chains while the coordination of flows among different companies within a supply chain is supported by collaborative planning (see Chap. 14).

Business-to-Consumer (B2C) communications aim at approaching the individual end user via the Internet. Several challenges have to be addressed here, like a user-friendly access to information regarding products and services, securing safety of payments and finally the transport of goods or services to the customer. B2C opens up a further marketing channel to end users and offers a means for incorporating end users within a supply chain.

The second building block, *process orientation*, aims at coordinating all the activities involved in customer order fulfillment in the most efficient way. It starts with an analysis of the existing supply chain, the current allocation of activities to its members. Key performance indicators can reveal weaknesses, bottlenecks and waste within a supply chain, especially at the interface between its members. A comparison with best practices may support this effort (for more details see Chap. 2). As a result, some activities will be subject to improvement efforts, while some others may be reallocated. The building block "process orientation" has much in common with business process reengineering (Hammer and Champy 1993); however, it will not necessarily result in a radical redesign. As Hammer (2001, p. 84) puts it, "streamlining cross-company processes is the next great frontier for reducing costs, enhancing quality, and speeding operations."

Advanced planning—the third building block—incorporates long-term, mid-term and short-term planning levels. Software products—called *Advanced Planning Systems*—are now available to support these planning tasks. Although an Advanced Planning System (APS) is separated into several modules, effective information flows between these modules should make it a coherent software suite. Customizing these modules according to the specific needs of a supply chain requires specific skills, e.g. in systems and data modeling, data processing and solution methods.

APS do not substitute, but supplement existing *Enterprise Resource Planning* (ERP) systems. APS now take over the planning tasks, while an ERP system is still required as a transaction and execution system (for orders). The advantages of the new architecture have to be viewed in light of well-known deficiencies of traditional ERP systems with regard to planning (Drexl et al. 1994). In essence, an ERP system models the different planning tasks inadequately. Furthermore, these planning tasks are executed sequentially, without allowing for revisions to upper-level decisions. Some tasks, like bill of materials processing (BOMP), do not consider capacities at all. Furthermore, lead times are used as a fixed input for the BOMP, even though it is common knowledge that lead times are the result of planning. It is not surprising that users of ERP systems complain about long lead times and many orders exceeding dead lines. Also, production planning and distribution planning are more or less separated systems. Last but not least, the focus of ERP systems has been a single firm, while APS have been designed also for inter-organizational supply chains.

Although separated in several modules, APS are intended to remedy the defects of ERP systems through a closer integration of modules, adequate modeling of bottleneck capacities, a hierarchical planning concept and the use of the latest algorithmic developments. Since planning is now executed in a computer's core storage, plans may be updated easily and continuously (e.g. in the case of a breakdown of a production line).

Planning now results in the capability to realize bottlenecks in advance and to make the best use of them. Alternative modes of operations may be evaluated, thus reducing costs and improving profits. Different scenarios of future developments can be planned for in order to identify a robust next step for the upcoming planning interval. Furthermore, it is no longer necessary to provide lead time estimates as an input for planning. This should enable companies using APS to reduce planned lead times drastically compared with those resulting from an ERP system.

A most favourable feature of APS is seen in its ability to check whether a (new) customer order with a given due date can be accepted (ATP, see Chap. 9). In case there are insufficient stocks at hand, it is even possible to generate a tentative schedule, inserting the new customer order into a current machine schedule where it fits best. Obviously, these new features allow a supply chain to comply better with accepted due dates, to become more flexible and to operate more economically.

We would like to add that proposals for a better integration of organizational units cannot be separated from the notion of the coordination of flows and vice versa. The choice of partners in a supply chain or the effectiveness of a postponement strategy can best be evaluated by advanced planning. On the other hand, the structure of a network organization sets up the frame for optimizing flows within a supply chain.

1.2.4 Relating SCM to Strategy

According to Porter (2008, p. 53) a "strategy is the creation of a unique and valuable position, involving a different set of activities." A company can obtain a unique and valuable position by either performing different activities than its rivals or by performing similar activities in different ways.

This can best be demonstrated by means of an example. The IKEA company has focused on the home furnishing needs of a specific customer group. The target group is price-sensitive and prepared to do its own pickup and delivery as well as the final assembly. IKEA's activities have been created according to these customer needs, which also have influenced the products' design and the structure of the SC. For instance, IKEA's showroom and warehouse are under one roof. A more precise description of the activities relating to IKEA's strategic position is given by the following activity-system map (see Fig. 1.4).

Here, activities, like "self assembly by customers", are exhibited as well as the major links between dependent activities. For instance, "inhouse product design focused on cost of manufacturing" together with "100 % sourcing from long term suppliers" directly contribute to "low manufacturing cost". Shaded activities represent high-order strategic themes. IKEA's activity-system map also demonstrates that there are usually many interacting activities contributing to an overall strategy.

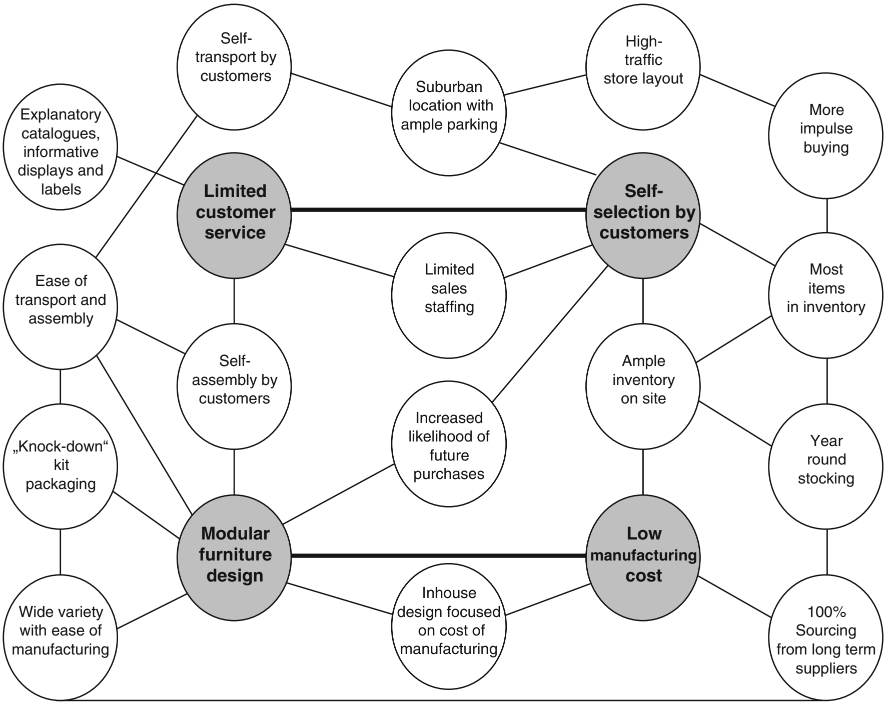


Fig. 1.4 Activity-systems map describing IKEA's strategic position (Porter 2008, p. 48)

Another important part of strategy is the creation of fit among a SC's activities. "The success of a strategy depends on doing many things well—not just a few—and integrating among them" (Porter 2008, p. 62). A given strategy will be successful only if all these activities will be aligned, or even better, if they reinforce each other.

The highest level of fit between all these activities—called optimization of effort (Porter 2008, p. 60)—is reached when there is coordination and information exchange across activities to eliminate redundancy and minimize wasted effort.

Now recall that SCM has been defined as integrating organizational units along a SC and coordinating activities related to information, material and financial flows. Hence, SCM is *not* a strategy on its own. Instead, SCM can and should be an integral part of a SC's strategy as well as the individual partners' business strategies. For example,

- SCM is an approach for generating competitive advantage by integrating organizational units and coordinating flows.
- SCM comprises specific activities, especially those concerning the order fulfillment process, which may be part of a SC's strategy.
- SCM utilizes specific tools best suited to reach the aspired level of fit among all strategic activities of a given SC.

There are a number of excellent textbooks (e.g. Aaker 2001) on generating a strategy for an intra-organizational SC (company), which we will not review in detail here. In summary two main lines of thought prevail:

- The resource-based view
- The market-based view.

A resource can be "…all assets, capabilities, organizational processes, firm attributes, information, knowledge, etc. , controlled by a firm that enable the firm to conceive of and implement strategies that improve its efficiency and effectiveness" (Barney 1991, p. 101). The focus here is on developing the resources' potentials.

Considering the market-based view (Porter 2008, p. 2) an industry—usually consisting of several markets—is looked for, where the company can best exist against *competitive forces* given by

- Industry competitors
- Potential entrants
- Power of buyers and suppliers or
- New product or service substitutes.

As one might expect the two views are not antagonistic but rather complement each other. For a deeper understanding the reader is referred to two case studies describing the generation of SC strategies in the apparel (Berry et al. 1999) and the lighting industry (Childerhouse et al. 2002).

Note, that creating and implementing a strategy within a single corporation may already be a difficult task, but it will be even more challenging in an inter-organizational SC. Namely, strategies of individual partners have to be aligned with the SC's overall strategy. In an inter-organizational SC further issues have to be addressed. Some of these, like the fit of companies, have already been discussed as part of the pillar "integration" of the House of SCM (see Sect. 1.2.2). Now, when formulating a SC-wide strategy, aspiration levels for the different issues of integration have to be added as well as (rough) paths for their achievement.

Even if contracts are binding SC partners, a SC is vulnerable and only created for a limited period of time. Hence, it seems wise to take into account and prepare "emergency plans" in case of separation. These may require

- Good relations to alternative suppliers and customers currently not part of the SC, enabling a company (or SC) to become part of another SC
- The installation of flexible (production) capacities that may also be used in another SC
- Engaging in several SCs to balance risks.

We would like to add that the discussion of strategies in the literature is dominated by the premise of pure competition. In the area of SCM, strategies for *collaboration* come into play. One of the difficulties is in finding a fair compromise of the sometimes diverging interests among SC partners. As an example consider the setting of fair *transfer prices* for products and services among SC partners. Given a fixed sales price the ultimate consumer is willing to pay for the end-product an increase of the transfer price granted to one SC member will incur a "loss" for

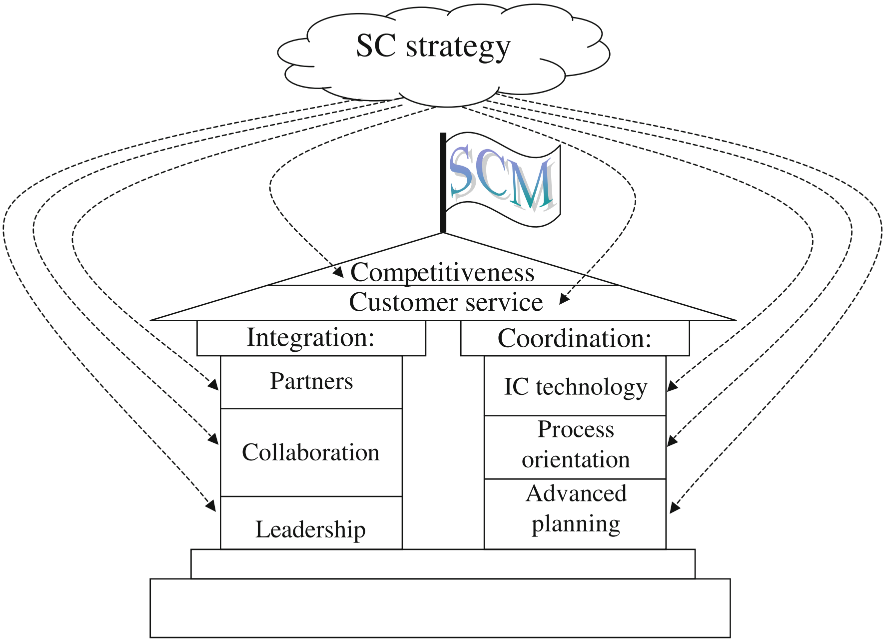


Fig. 1.5 The impact of a SC's strategy on the building blocks of SCM

the others. Furthermore, SC partners must be concerned that decentral investment decisions are made for the benefit of the SC as a whole, which may require specific subsidies, incentives or guarantees by the other SC partners.

Since generally applicable rules for calculating fair transfer prices or compensations are still missing (proposals for special situations can be found in Cachon and Lariviere 2005; Dudek 2009; Pfeiffer 1999), negotiations come into play in practice. These become even more delicate if SC partners are reluctant to reveal their (true) cost structure and if the power of SC partners governs the outcome of negotiations.

Collaboration may also exist among competing SCs, e.g. in product distribution to consolidate consignments for the same destination (as in the food industry Fleischmann 1999) or in combining demands for standard parts to increase the purchasing power (as in the automobile industry).

By now it should be clear that a favorable SC strategy always has to be specific in considering a SC's potentials. Copying recipes drawn from *benchmarking studies* or an analysis of *success factors* (see e.g. Fröhlich and Westbrook 2001; Jayaram et al. 2004; Fettke 2007) may be a good starting point but will not result in a unique and valuable position. In any case, a SC's strategy will guide the specific design of building blocks best serving a SC's needs (see Fig. 1.5).

For those interested in learning more about the first ideas and publications having influenced our current view of SCM, a section about its origins follows.

1.2.5 Foundations

For operating a supply chain successfully, many more ingredients are needed than those that have been reported in the literature in recent years in subjects like

- Logistics and transportation
- Marketing
- Operations research
- Organizational behavior, industrial organization and transaction cost economics
- Purchasing and supply
- . . .

to name only a few (for a complete list see Croom et al. 2000, p. 70).

Certainly there are strong links between SCM and logistics, as can be observed when looking at the five principles of logistics thinking (Pfohl 2010, p. 20):

- Thinking in values and benefits
- Systems thinking
- Total cost thinking
- Service orientation
- Striving for efficiency.

Thinking in terms of values and benefits implies that it is the (ultimate) customer who assigns a value to a product. The value and benefit of a product can be improved with its availability when and where it is actually needed. Systems thinking requires examination of all entities involved in the process of generating a product or service simultaneously. Optimal solutions are aimed at the process as a whole, while being aware that optimal solutions for individual entities may turn out to be suboptimal. All activities are oriented towards a given service level. Service orientation is not limited to the ultimate customer, but also applies to each entity receiving a product or service from a supplier. Efficiency comprises several dimensions. The technological dimension requires the choice of processes, which results in a given output without wasting inputs. Furthermore, decision-making will be guided by economical goals, relating to current profits and future potentials. These two dimensions will be supplemented by a social and ecological dimension.

Another subject, operations research, has contributed to the model building and model solving required for coordinating flows along the supply chain. The basics of model building have already been developed in the 1960s and 1970s. However, only with the rise of powerful computers, large in-core storage devices and the availability of adequate solution methods, like Mathematical Programming and powerful meta-heuristics (e.g. genetic algorithms and tabu search), are these models now solvable with reasonable computational efforts (see Part VI).

Note that the vast body of literature on SCM has concentrated so far on the *integration* of inter-organizational supply chains. However, with regard to the *coordination* of flows, efforts still concentrate on intra-organizational supply chains. While it will not be too difficult to apply APS to an inter-organizational supply chain with a central planning unit, new challenges arise in decentralized planning (like the availability of data required for planning, coordinating plans, compensation schemes, etc.). Recalling that ERP systems only incorporate unconnected, insufficient analytical models (like for single level, uncapacitated lot-sizing), APS—even for intra-organizational supply chains—represent great progress. So, the term *advanced* in APS has to be evaluated in view of the insufficient decision support offered by ERP systems until now.

For those interested in learning more about the first ideas and publications that have influenced our current view of SCM, a section about its origins will follow.

1.3 Origins

The term SCM has been created by two consultants, Oliver and Webber, as early as 1982. The supply chain in their view lifts the mission of logistics to become a top management concern, since "…only top management can assure that conflicting functional objectives along the supply chain are reconciled and balanced …and finally, that an integrated systems strategy that reduces the level of vulnerability is developed and implemented" (Oliver and Webber 1992, p. 66). In their view, coordinating material, information and financial flows within a large multi-national firm is a challenging and rewarding task. Obviously, forming a supply chain out of a group of individual companies so that it acts like a single entity is even harder.

Research into the integration and coordination of different functional units started much earlier than the creation of the term SCM in 1982. These efforts can be traced back in such diverse fields as logistics, marketing, organizational theory, operations management and operations research. Selected focal contributions are briefly reviewed below without claiming completeness (for further information see Ganeshan et al. 1998). These contributions are

- Channel research (Alderson 1957)
- Collaboration and cooperation (Bowersox 1969)
- Location and control of inventories in production-distribution networks (Hanssmann 1959)
- Bullwhip effect in production-distribution systems (Forrester 1958)
- Hierarchical production planning (Hax and Meal 1975).

1.3.1 Channel Research

Alderson (1957) put forward *channel research* as a special field of marketing research. He had already argued that the principles of *postponement* require that "…changes in form and identity occur at the latest possible point in the marketing flow; and changes in inventory location occur at the latest possible point in time" (Alderson 1957, p. 424). Postponement serves to reduce market risk, because the product will stay in an undifferentiated state as long as possible allowing to better cope with unexpected market shifts. Also postponement can reduce transportation costs, since products will be held back in the supply chain as far as possible (e.g. at the factory warehouse) until they are actually needed downstream (e.g. at a distribution center) thereby reducing the need for the transport of goods between distribution centers in the case of a shortage of goods or an imbalance in the distribution of stocks. Thirdly, when examining the postponability of a (production) step, it might be discovered that it can be eliminated entirely, i.e. "…if a step is not performed prematurely, it may never have to be performed" (Alderson 1957, p. 426). As an example, Alderson reported on the elimination of bagging wheat in sacks. Instead, a truck with an open box body had been chosen.

The three principles of postponement are still applied today. With regard to elimination, we can see that customers pick their goods directly from pallets thus eliminating the need for the retailer to put the goods on shelves. Another example are the customers of IKEA, who perform the assembly of furniture by themselves.

However, one should bear in mind that postponement in product differentiation requires that a product has already been designed for it, i.e. modifying a product to become customer specific should both be possible technically and economically later on. The capability of assessing the effects of postponement in a supply chain wide context is the achievement of advanced planning today. Thus, the different alternatives of postponement had been analyzed and simulated before Hewlett Packard introduced postponement successfully for its deskjet printer lines (Lee and Billington 1995).

1.3.2 Collaboration and Coordination

Bowersox (1969) described the state of knowledge in marketing, physical distribution and systems thinking. There had already been an awareness that the individual objectives of the different functional units within a firm may counteract overall efficiency. For example (Bowersox 1969, p. 64):

- Manufacturing traditionally desires long production runs and the lowest procurement costs.
- Marketing traditionally prefers finished goods inventory staging and broad assortments in forward markets.
- Finance traditionally favors low inventories.
- Physical distribution advocates total cost considerations relating to a firm's physical distribution mission.

Long production runs reduce the setup costs per product unit while resulting in higher inventory holding costs. Similarly, end product inventories allow short delivery times, but increase inventory holding costs. On the other hand, raw materials and parts used up in the production of end products may no longer be used within other end products, thus limiting the flexibility to cope with shifts in end product demands (see postponement).

Furthermore, Bowersox criticized the fact that physical distribution systems mainly have been studied from the vantage point of vertically integrated organizations. "A more useful viewpoint is that physical distribution activities and related activities seldom terminate when product ownership transfer occurs" (Bowersox 1969, p. 65). If the interface between two or more physical distribution systems is not properly defined and synchronized, this "…may well lead to excessive cost generation and customer service impairment" (Bowersox 1969, p. 67).

Although arguing from the viewpoint of physical distribution, Bowersox had already advocated a need for intra-organizational as well as inter-organizational *cooperation and coordination*.

1.3.3 Location and Control of Inventories in Production-Distribution Networks

Hanssmann (1959) was the first to publish an analytical model of interacting inventories in a supply chain with three serial inventory locations. At each location a periodic review, order-up-to-level inventory system is used. There are positive lead times, which are integer multiples of the review period. Customer demands are assumed to be normally distributed. Decision support is provided for two cases: the location of inventory, if only one single inventory location is allowed in the supply chain and the control of inventories if all three inventory locations may be used. Shortage costs and inventory holding costs are considered as well as revenues from sales which are assumed to be a function of delivery time. As a solution method, dynamic programming is proposed.

The location and allocation of inventories in serial, convergent and divergent supply chains is still an important topic of research today.

1.3.4 Bullwhip Effect in Production-Distribution Systems

The *bullwhip effect* describes the increasing amplification of orders and inventory occurring within a supply chain the more one moves upstream. Surprisingly, this phenomenon also occurs even if end item demand is fairly stable. This phenomenon will be explained more deeply, since it is regarded as a classic of SCM.

Already in 1952 Simon (1952) discovered the bullwhip effect. A few years later, Forrester (1958) analyzed the dynamic behavior of production control in industrial production-distribution systems intensively. The simplest system studied is a supply chain made of a retailer, a distribution center, a factory warehouse and a production site (Fig. 1.6). Each entity can only make use of locally available information when making its ordering decisions for coping with demands. Another important feature are time delays between decision-making (e.g. ordering) and its realization (e.g. receipt of the corresponding shipment). These delays are indicated in Fig. 1.6 as numbers on top of respective arcs (measured in weeks). The assumption is that a customer order comes in. Then the retailer requires 1 week to deliver it from stock. The lead time between an incoming customer order and the decision to replenish inventory is 3 weeks (including processing the order), while order transmission to the distribution center takes another half week. The distribution center requires 1 week to process the order, while shipping the order to the retailer takes another week. Thus, five and a half weeks pass from an incoming customer order until the

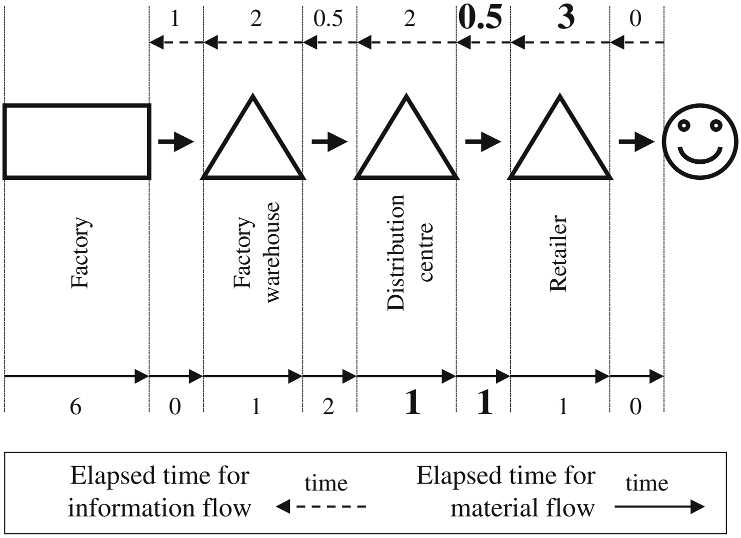


Fig. 1.6 Supply chain modeled by Forrester (1961, p. 22)

replenishment of the retailer's inventory (see Fig. 1.6: sum of bold numbers). Further lead times for upstream entities can be derived in the same way from Fig. 1.6.

Forrester has shown the effects of a single, sudden 10 % increase in retail sales on orders placed and inventory levels of each entity in the supply chain (see Fig. 1.7). He concludes (Forrester 1961, p. 25) that "…orders at factory warehouse reach, at the 14th week, a peak of 34 % above the previous December" and "…the factory output, delayed by a factory lead time of 6 weeks, reaches a peak in the 21st week, an amount 45 % above the previous December." Obviously, these amplified fluctuations in ordering and inventory levels result in avoidable inventory and shortage costs and an unstable system behavior. Although the time unit of 1 week seems outdated nowadays, replacing it by a day may reflect current practices better and will not disturb the structure of the model. These so-called information-feedback systems have been studied extensively with the help of a simulation package (DYNAMO).

In order to show the relevance of the work of Forrester on today's topics in SCM, we will add some newer findings here.

The introduction of the so-called *beer distribution game*, by Sterman (1989), has drawn great attention from researchers and practitioners alike to study the bullwhip effect again. Looking at an industrial production-distribution system from the perspective of bounded human rationality, Sterman studied the ordering behavior of individuals possessing only isolated, local information.

In such an environment, where an individual's knowledge is limited to its current inventory status, the actual amount ordered by its direct successors in the supply chain and knowledge about its past performance, a human being tends to overreact by an amplification of orders placed. Even worse, amplification and phase lags of

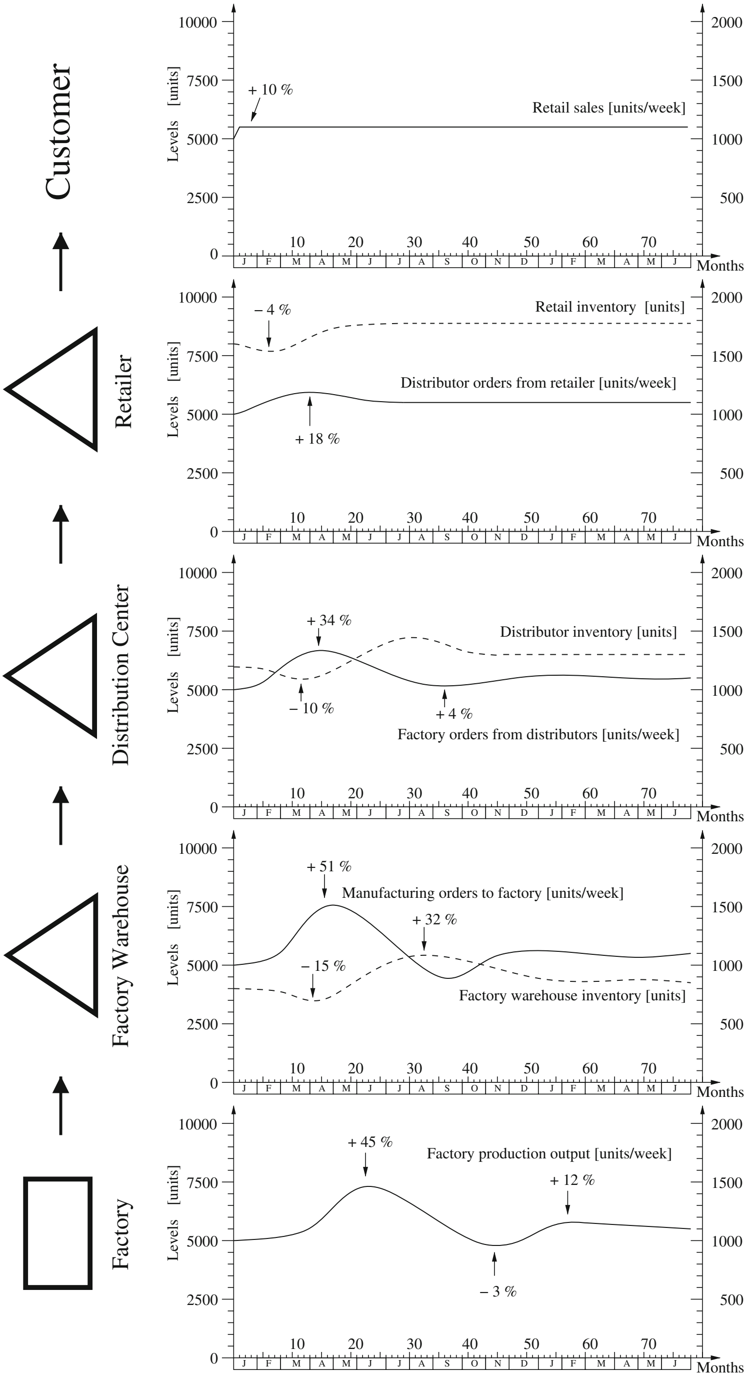


Fig. 1.7 The bullwhip effect (along the lines of Forrester 1961, p. 24)

ordering increase steadily the more one moves upstream the supply chain. This has to be interpreted in light of a given, nearly stable end item demand with just one (large) increase in demand levels at an early period of the game.

This behavior which is far from optimal for the total supply chain, has been observed in many independent repetitions of the beer distribution game as well as in industrial practice. Actually, the term bullwhip effect has been coined by managers at Procter & Gamble when examining the demand for Pampers disposable diapers (according to Lee et al. 1997).

Obviously, real world production-distribution systems are a lot more complex than those described above. However, examining behavioral patterns and policies often adopted by local managers, may amplify fluctuations even further. Studying the causes of the bullwhip effect and its cures have become a very rich area of research in SCM. Recently, Lee et al. (1997) divided recommendations to counteract the bullwhip effect into four categories:

- Avoid multiple demand forecast updates
- Break order batches
- Stabilize prices
- Eliminate gaming in shortage situations.

Avoiding *multiple demand forecasts* means that ordering decisions should always be based on ultimate customer demand and not on the ordering behavior of an immediate downstream partner, since the ordering behavior of an immediate downstream partner usually will show amplifications due to order batching and possible overreactions. With the advent of EDI and the capability to input sales made with the ultimate customer (point-of-sale (POS) data), accurate and timely data can be made available to each entity in the supply chain, thus also reducing the time-lag in the feedback system drastically. If ultimate customer demands are not available, even simple forecasting techniques (see Chap. 7) will prevent human overreactions and smooth demand forecasts.

In a more radical approach, one could change from decentralized decision-making to generating procurement plans centrally. Even the ultimate customer may be included in these procurement plans, as is the case in *vendor managed inventory* (VMI). Here the supply chain, however, has to bear the responsibility that the ultimate customer will not run out of stock. Finally, the downstream entity(s) could even be bypassed by executing sales directly with the ultimate customer (a well-known example are direct sales of Dell Computers).

Order batching is a common decision for cutting fixed costs incurred in placing an order. Ordering costs can be cut down drastically by using EDI for order transmission as well as a standardization of the (redesigned) ordering procedure. Transportation costs can be reduced if full truck loads are used. This should not, however, be achieved by increasing batch sizes, but rather by asking distributors to order assortments of different products simultaneously. Likewise, the use of third-party logistics companies helps making small batch replenishments economical by consolidating loads from multiple suppliers that are located near each other and thereby achieving economies of scale resulting from full truck loads. Similarly, a third-party logistics company may use assortments to full truckloads when delivering goods. This may give rise to cutting replenishment intervals drastically, resulting in less safety stocks needed without sacrificing service levels or increasing transportation costs.

Since marketing initiatives, which try to influence demands by wholesale price discounting, also contribute to the bullwhip effect, they should be abandoned. This understanding has moved companies to *stabilize prices* by guaranteeing their customers an every day low price.

The fourth category for counteracting the bullwhip effect intends to *eliminate gaming* in shortage situations. Here, gaming means that customers order additional, non-required amounts, since they expect to receive only a portion of outstanding orders due to a shortage situation. This behavior can be influenced by introducing more stringent cancellation policies, accepting only orders in proportion to past sales records and sharing capacity and inventory information.

Many of the recommendations given above for counteracting the bullwhip effect profit from recent advances in communication technology and large database management systems containing accurate and timely information about the current and past states of each entity in the supply chain. Many time delays existing in production-distribution systems either are reduced drastically or even no longer exist, thus reducing problems encountered in feedback systems. Furthermore, to overcome cognitive limitations, a mathematical model of the supply chain may be generated and used to support the decision-making of individuals (Haehling von Lanzenauer and Pilz-Glombik 2000). This research also indicates that an APS, with its modeling features and state-of-the-art solution procedures, can be a means to counteract the bullwhip effect.

1.3.5 Hierarchical Production Planning

Although detailed mathematical models have been proposed for production planning much earlier, Hax and Meal (1975) have shown how to build hierarchically coordinated, solvable models that provide effective decision support for the different decision-making levels within a hierarchical organization. Although first presented as a decision support system for a real world tire manufacturing firm, the versatility of the approach soon became clear. In brief, *hierarchical (production) planning* is based on the following five elements:

- Decomposition and hierarchical structure
- Aggregation
- Hierarchical coordination
- Model building
- Model solving.

The overall decision problem is decomposed into two or more decision levels. Decisions to be made are assigned to each level so that the top level includes the most important, long-term decisions—i.e. those with the greatest impact on profitability and competitiveness. A separation into distinct decision levels is called *hierarchical* if for each level a single upper level can be identified which is allowed

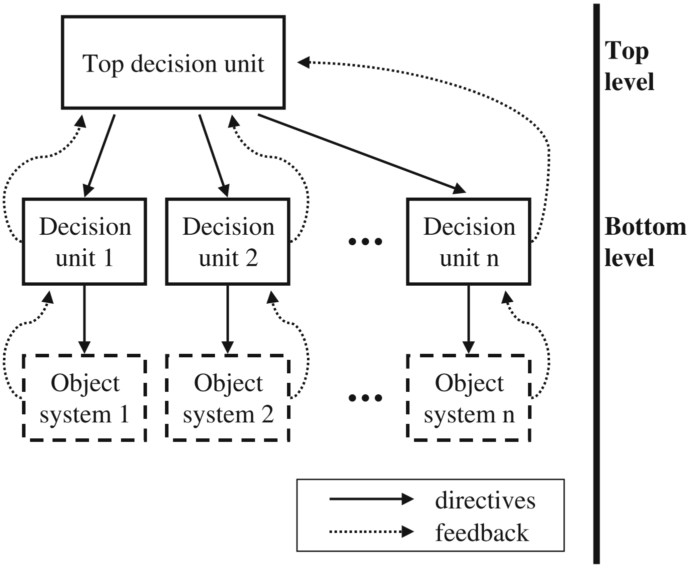


Fig. 1.8 Basic structure of a hierarchical planning system

to set the frame within which decisions of the subordinated level have to take place (with the exception of the top level of the hierarchy). Note, there may be several separate decision units (e.g. production sites) within a given decision level coordinated by a single upper level.

Like decomposition, *aggregation* serves to reduce problem complexity. It also can diminish uncertainty (e.g. of demand forecasts). Aggregation is possible in three areas: time, products and resources. As an example, consider an upper level where time may be aggregated into time buckets of 1 week and only main end products are taken into account—irrespective of their variants, while available capacities at a production site are viewed as a rough maximum (weekly) output rate.

Hierarchical coordination is achieved by directives and feedback. The most obvious directive is target setting by the upper level (e.g. setting a target inventory level for an end product at the planning horizon of the lower level). Another way is to provide prices for utilizing resources (e.g. a price for using additional personnel). A decision unit, on the other hand, may return a feedback to its upper level regarding the fulfillment of targets. These now allow the upper level to revise plans, to better coordinate lower-level decisions and to enable feasible plans at the lower level. These explanations are illustrated in Fig. 1.8. Here, the object system can be interpreted as the production process to be controlled.

For each decision unit a *model* is generated that adequately represents the decision situation and anticipates lower level reactions on possible directives. It also links targets set by the upper level to detailed decisions to be made at the decision unit considered. Thereby the upper level plan will be disaggregated. If a mathematical model is chosen, solvability has to be taken into account, too.

Finally, a suitable *solution procedure* has to be chosen for each model. Here, not only optimum seeking algorithms may be employed, but also manual procedures or group decision-making may be possible.

Hierarchical planning has attracted both researchers and practitioners alike. Thus, a large amount of knowledge has been accumulated so far (for more details see Schneeweiss 2003). Since hierarchical planning represents an appealing approach in conquering complex decision problems, while incorporating the experience of human decision-makers at different levels of an organization, it is not surprising that today's APS are constructed along the principles of hierarchical planning (see Chap. 4 for more details).

References

Aaker, D. (2001). *Developing business strategies* (6th ed.). New York: Wiley.

Alderson, W. (1957). *Marketing behavior and executive action*. Homewood: R. D. Irwin.

Barney, J. (1991). Firm resources and sustained competitive advantage. *Journal of Management Studies, 17*, 99–120.

Berry, W., Hill, T., & Klompmaker, J. (1999). Aligning marketing and manufacturing strategies with the market. *International Journal of Production Research, 37*, 3599–3618.

Bowersox, D. (1969). Physical distribution development, current status, and potential. *Journal of Marketing, 33*, 63–70.

Burns, T., & Stalker, G. (1961). *The management of innovation*. Oxford: Tavistock Publications.

Cachon, G., & Lariviere, M. (2005). Supply chain coordination with revenue-sharing contracts: Strengths and limitations. *Management Science, 51*(1), 30–44.

Childerhouse, P., Aitken, J., & Towill, D. (2002). Analysis and design of focused demand chains. *Journal of Operations Management, 20*, 675–689.

Christopher, M. (2005). *Logistics and supply chain management, creating value-adding networks* (3rd ed.). Harlow: Financial Times Prentice Hall.

Corsten, H., & Gössinger, R. (2008). *Einführung in das Supply Chain Management* (2nd ed.). München: Oldenbourg.

Croom, S., Romano, P., & Giannakis, M. (2000). Supply chain management: An analytical framework for critical literature review. *European Journal of Purchasing & Supply Management, 6*, 67–83.

Drexl, A., Fleischmann, B., Günther, H.-O., Stadtler, H., & Tempelmeier, H. (1994). Konzeptionelle Grundlagen kapazitätsorientierter PPS-Systeme. *Zeitschrift für betriebswirtschaftliche Forschung, 46*, 1022–1045.

Dudek, G. (2009). *Collaborative planning in supply chains: A negotiation-based approach. Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 533, 2nd ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Fettke, P. (2007). Supply Chain Management: Stand der empirischen Forschung. *Zeitschrift für Betriebswirtschaft, 77*(4), 417–462.

Fleischmann, B. (1999). Kooperation von Herstellern in der Konsumgüterdistribution. In E. Engelhard & E. Sinz (Eds.), *Kooperation im Wettbewerb: Neue Formen und Gestaltungskonzepte im Zeichen der Gobalisierung und Informationstechnologie* (pp. 68–196). Wiesbaden: Gabler.

Forrester, J. (1958). Industrial dynamics: A major breakthrough for decision makers. *Harvard Business Review, 36*, 37–66.

Forrester, J. (1961). *Industrial dynamics*. New York/London: MIT Press.

Fröhlich, M. T., & Westbrook, R. (2001). Arcs of integration: An international study of supply chain strategies. *Journal of Operations Management, 19*, 185–200.

Ganeshan, R., Jack, E., Magazine, M., & Stephens, P. (1998). A taxonomic review of supply chain management research. In S. Tayur, R. Ganeshan, & M. Magazine (Eds.), *Quantitative models for supply chain management* (pp. 839–879). Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic.

Haehling von Lanzenauer, C., & Pilz-Glombik, K. (2000). A supply chain optimization model for MIT's beerdistribution game. *Zeitschrift für Betriebswirtschaft, 70*(1), 101–116.

Håkansson, H., & Johanson, J. (1997). Formal and informal cooperation strategies in international networks. In D. Ford (Ed.), *Understanding business markets* (2nd ed., pp. 100–111). London: Academic.

Hammer, M., & Champy, J. (1993). *Reengineering the corporation*. New York: HarperBusiness.

Hammer, M. (2001). The superefficient company, *Harvard Business Review, 79*(9), 82–91.

Hammer, M., & Champy, J. (2003). *Reengineering the corporation: A manifesto for business revolution* (2nd revised and updated ed.). New York: Harper Collins.

Hanssmann, F. (1959). Optimal inventory location and control in production and distribution networks. *Operations Research, 7*(4): 483–498.

Hax, A. C., & Meal, H. C. (1975). *Hierarchical integration of production planning and scheduling. North-Holland/TIMS Studies in the Management Sciences*. Amsterdam: North-Holland.

Hilse, H., Götz, K., & Zapf, D. (1999). Netzwerk contra Hierarchie: Die Abbildung organisationsstruktureller Widersprüche in einem neuartigen Potential für Rollenstress. In K. Götz (Ed.), *Führungskultur: Die organisationale Perspektive* (pp. 29–44). München: Hampp.

Jayaram, J., Kannan, V., & Tan, K. (2004). Influence of initiators on supply chain value creation. *International Journal of Production Research, 42*, 4377–4399.

Kaplan, S. N., & Sawhney, M. (2000). E-hubs: The new b2b marketplaces. *Harvard Business Review, 78*, 97–103.

Lee, H., & Billington, C. (1995). The evolution of supply-chain-integration models in practice at Hewlett-Packard. *Interfaces, 25*(5), 42–63.

Lee, H., & Ng, S. (1998). Preface to global supply chain and technology management. In H. Lee & S. Ng (Eds.), *Global supply chain and technology management. POMS Series in Technology and Operations Management* (Vol. 1, pp. 1–3). Miami: Production and Operations Management Society.

Lee, H., Padmanabhan, V., & Whang, S. (1997). The bullwhip effect in supply chains. *Sloan Management Review, 38*, 93–102.

Oliver, R., & Webber, M. D. (1992). Supply-chain management: Logistics catches up with strategy. In M. Christopher (Ed.), *Logistics: The strategic issues* (pp. 63–75). London: Chapman and Hall (Reprint from Outlook (1982)).

Pfeiffer, T. (1999). Transfer pricing and decentralized dynamic lot-sizing in multistage, multiproduct prodcution processes. *European Journal of Operational Research, 116*, 319–330.

Pfohl, H.-C. (2010). *Logistiksysteme: Betriebswirtschaftliche Grundlagen* (8th ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Porter, M. E. (2008). *On competition* (2nd updated and expanded ed.). Boston: Harvard Businesss School Publishing.

Rockhold, S., Lee, H., & Hall, R. (1998). Strategic alignment of a global supply chain for business success. In H. Lee & S. Ng (Eds.), *Global supply chain and technology management. POMS Series in Technology and Operations Management* (Vol. 1, pp. 16–29). Miami: Production and Operations Management Society.

Schneeweiss, C. (2003). *Distributed decision making* (2nd ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Schneider, D., Bauer, C., & Hopfmann, L. (1994). *Re-Design der Wertkette durch make or buy*. Wiesbaden: Gabler.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Simchi-Levi, D., Kaminski, P., & Simchi-Levi, E. (2008). *Designing and managing the supply chain: Concepts, strategies and case studies* (3rd ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill.

Simon, H. A. (1952). On the application of servomechanism theory in the study of production control. *Econometrica, 20*(2), 247–268.

Sterman, J. (1989). Modeling managerial behavior: Misperceptions of feedback in a dynamic decision making experiment. *Management Science, 35*(3), 321–339.

Sydow, J. (2005). *Strategische Netzwerke: Evolution und Organisation* (1st ed., 6th reprint ed.). Wiesbaden: Gabler.

The Council of Supply Chain Management Professionals. (2013). Supply chain and logistics terms and glossary. http://cscmp.org/sites/default/files/user_uploads/resources/downloads/glossary-2013.pdf. Visited on Feb 28, 2014.

Ulijn, J., & Strother, J. (1995). *Communicating in business and technology: From psycholinguistic theory to international practice*. Frankfurt am Main: Peter Lang.

Supply Chain Analysis

2

Christopher Sürie and Boris Reuter

When starting an improvement process one has to have a clear picture of the structure of the existing supply chain and the way it works. Consequently a detailed *analysis* of operations and processes constituting the supply chain is necessary. Tools are needed that support an adequate description, modeling and evaluation of supply chains. In Sect. 2.1 some general topics relating to the motivation and objective of a supply chain analysis are discussed. Then, Sect. 2.2 presents modeling concepts and tools with a focus on those designed to analyze (supply chain) processes. The well known SCOR-model is introduced in this section. Building on these concepts (key) performance measures are presented in order to assess supply chain excellence (Sect. 2.3). Inventories are often built up at the interface between partners. As a seamless integration of partners is crucial to overall supply chain performance, a thorough analysis of these interfaces (i.e. inventories) is very important. Consequently, Sect. 2.4 gives an overview on inventories and introduces a standardized analysis methodology.

2.1 Motivation and Goals

An accurate analysis of the supply chain serves several purposes and is more a continuous task than a one time effort. In today's fast changing business environment, although a supply chain partnership is intended for a longer duration, supply chains keep evolving and changing to accommodate best to the customers' needs.

C. Sürie (✉)
SAP Deutschland AG & Co. KG, Hasso-Plattner-Ring 7, 69190 Walldorf, Germany
e-mail: c.suerie@sap.com

B. Reuter
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Willy-Brandt-Platz 5, 68161 Mannheim, Germany
e-mail: boris.reuter@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__2,

In the beginning or when a specific supply chain is analyzed for the first time in its entirety the result can be used as a starting point for improvement processes as well as a benchmark for further analyses. While the initial analysis itself often helps to identify potentials and opportunities it may well be used for target-setting, e.g. for APS implementation projects (see Chap. 15) to measure the benefit a successful implementation has provided. On the other hand, the supply chain analysis should evolve in parallel to the changes in the real world. In this way the associated performance measures keep track of the current state of the supply chain and may be used for supply chain controlling.

Many authors, researchers as wells as practitioners, thought about concepts and frameworks as well as detailed metrics to assess supply chain performance (see e.g. Dreyer 2000; Lambert and Pohlen 2001; Bullinger et al. 2002). In most concepts two fundamental interwoven tasks play an important role: *process modeling* and *performance measurement*. These two topics will be reviewed in detail in the following two sections, but beforehand some more general remarks will be made.

Supply chains differ in many attributes from each other (see also Chap. 3 for a detailed supply chain typology). A distinctive attribute often stressed in literature is the division into innovative product supply chains and functional product supply chains (see e.g. Fisher 1997; Ramdas and Spekman 2000). Innovative product supply chains are characterized by short product life cycles, unstable demands, but relatively high profit margins. This leads to a strong market orientation to match supply and demand as well as flexible supply chains to adapt quickly to market swings. On the contrary, functional product supply chains face a rather stable demand with long product life cycles, but rather low profit margins. These supply chains tend to focus on cost reductions of physical material flows and on value creating processes. Naturally, performance measures for both types of supply chains differ. Where time-to-market may be an important metric for innovative product supply chains, this metric does only have a minor impact when assessing performance of a functional product supply chain. Consequently, a supply chain analysis does not only have to capture the correct type of the supply chain, but should also reflect this in the performance measures to be evaluated. Supply chain's visions or strategic goals should also mirror these fundamental concepts.

Furthermore, a meaningful connection between the process model and the underlying real world as well as between the process model and the performance measures is of utmost importance. Although participating companies are often still organized according to functions, the analysis of supply chains has to be process oriented. Therefore, it is essential to identify those units that contribute to the joint output. These units are then linked to the supply chain processes as well as to the cost accounting systems of the individual companies. Therefore, they can provide the link between the financial performance of the supply chain partners and the non-financial performance metrics which may be used for the whole supply chain.

Finally, a holistic view on the supply chain needs to be kept. This is especially true here, because overall supply chain costs are not necessarily minimized, if each partner operates at his optimum given the constraints imposed by supply chain partners. This is not apparent and will therefore be illustrated by means of an example. Consider a supplier-customer relationship which is enhanced by a vendor managed inventory (VMI) implementation. At the customer's side the VMI implementation reduces costs yielding to a price reduction in the consumer market which is followed by a gain in market share for the product. Despite this success in the marketplace the supplier on the other hand may not be able to totally recover the costs he has taken off the shoulders of his customer. Although some cost components decreased (e.g. order processing costs and costs of forecasts), these did not offset his increased inventory carrying costs. Summing up, although the supply chain as a whole profited from the VMI implementation, one of the partners was worse off. Therefore, when analyzing supply chains one needs to maintain such a holistic view, but simultaneously mechanisms need to be found to compensate those partners that do not profit directly from supply chain successes.

2.2 Process Modeling

2.2.1 Concepts and Tools

Supply chain management's process orientation has been stressed before and since Porter's introduction of the *value chain* a paradigm has been developed in economics that process oriented management leads to superior results compared to the traditional focus on functions. When analyzing supply chains, the modeling of processes is an important first cornerstone. In this context several questions arise. First, which processes are important for the supply chain and second, how can these processes be modeled.

To answer the first question, the Global Supply Chain Forum identifies eight core supply chain processes (Croxton et al. 2001):

- Customer relationship management
- Customer service management
- Demand management
- Order fulfillment
- Manufacturing flow management
- Supplier relationship management (procurement)
- Product development and commercialization
- Returns management (returns).

Although the importance of each of these processes as well as the activities/operations performed within these processes may vary between different supply chains, these eight processes make up an integral part of the business to be analyzed. Both, a strategic view, especially during implementation, and an operational view have to be taken on each of these processes. Figure 2.1 gives an example for the order fulfillment process and shows the sub-processes for either view as well as potential interferences with the other seven core processes.

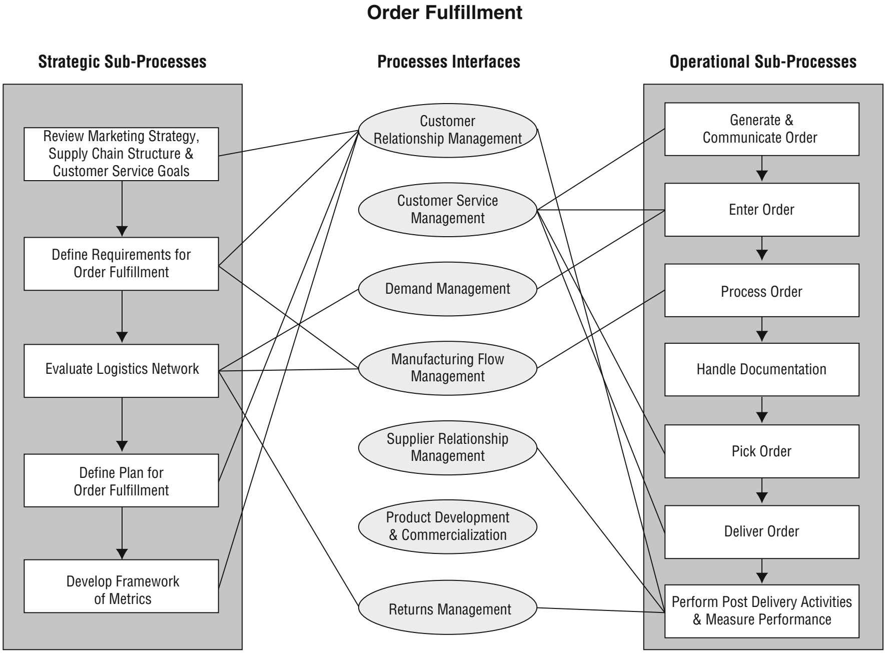


Fig. 2.1 Order fulfillment process (Croxton et al. 2001, p. 21)

Going into more detail, processes can be traced best by the flow of materials and information flows. For example, a flow of goods (material flow) is most often initiated by a purchase order (information flow) and followed by an invoice and payment (information and financial flow) to name only a few process steps. Even though several functions are involved: purchasing as initiator, manufacturing as consumer, logistics as internal service provider and finance as debtor. Furthermore, these functions interact with corresponding functions of the supplier. When analyzing supply chains the material flow (and related information flows) need to be mapped from the point of origin to the final customer and probably all the way back, if returns threaten to have a significant impact. Special care needs to be taken at the link between functions, especially when these links bridge two companies, i.e. supply chain members. Nonetheless, a functional view can be helpful when structuring processes.

Furthermore, the process models can serve a second purpose. They may be used to simulate different scenarios by assigning each process chain element certain attributes (e.g. capacities, process times, availability) and then checking for bottlenecks (Arns et al. 2002). At this point simulation can help to validate newly designed processes and provide the opportunity to make process changes well in time.

The by far most widespread process model especially designed for modeling of supply chains is the SCOR-model which will therefore be presented in more detail.

2.2.2 The SCOR-Model

The *Supply Chain Operations Reference* (SCOR-)model (current version is 11.0) is a tool for representing, analyzing and configuring supply chains. The SCOR-model has been developed by the *Supply-Chain Council* (SCC) founded in 1996 as a non-profit organization by *AMR Research*, the consulting firm *Pittiglio Rabin Todd & McGrath* (PRTM) and 69 companies. In 2012 SCC had close to 1,000 corporate members (Supply Chain Council 2014).

The SCOR-model is a reference model. It does not provide any optimization methods, but aims at providing a standardized terminology for the description of supply chains. This standardization allows benchmarking of processes and the extraction of best practices for certain processes. The relevance of the SCOR model for current supply chain performance measurement has also been confirmed in a literature review by Akyuz and Erkan (2010, p. 5152).

Standardized Terminology

Often in different companies different meanings are associated with certain terms. The less one is aware upon the different usage of a term, the more likely misconceptions occur. The use of a standardized terminology that defines and unifies the used terms improves the communication between entities of a supply chain. Thereby, misconceptions are avoided or at least reduced. SCC has established a standard terminology within its SCOR-model.

Levels of the SCOR-Model

The SCOR-model consists of a system of process definitions that are used to standardize processes relevant for SCM. SCC recommends to model a supply chain from the suppliers' suppliers to the customers' customers. Processes such as customer interactions (order entry through paid invoice), physical material transactions (e.g. equipment, supplies, products, software), market interactions (e.g. demand fulfillment), returns management and (since release 11.0) enable processes are supported. Sales and marketing as well as product development and research are not addressed within the SCOR-model (Supply Chain Council 2012, p. i.2).

The standard processes are divided into four hierarchical levels: *process types*, *process categories*, *process elements* and *implementation*. The SCOR-model only covers the upper three levels, which will be described in the following paragraphs (following Supply Chain Council 2012, pp. 2.0.1–2.6.84), while the lowest (implementation) level is out of the scope of the model, because it is too specific for each company.

Level 1: Process Types

Level 1 consists of the six elementary process types: *plan*, *source*, *make*, *deliver*, *return* and *enable*. These process types comprise operational as well as strategic activities (see Chap. 4). The description of the process types follows Supply Chain Council (2012).

Plan. Plan covers processes to balance resource capacities with demand requirements and the communication of plans across the supply chain. Also in its scope are measurement of the supply chain performance and management of inventories, assets and transportation among others.

Source. Source covers the identification and selection of suppliers, measurement of supplier performance as well as scheduling of their deliveries, receiving of products and processes to authorize payments. It also includes the management of the supplier network and contracts as well as inventories of delivered products.

Make. In the scope of make are processes that transform material, intermediates and products into their next state, meeting planned and current demand. Make covers processes to schedule production activities, produce and test, packaging as well as release of products for delivery. Furthermore, make covers the management of in-process products (WIP), equipment and facilities.

Deliver. Deliver covers processes like order reception, reservation of inventories, generating quotations, consolidation of orders, load building and generation of shipping documents and invoicing. Deliver includes all steps necessary for order management, warehouse management and reception of products at a customer's location together with installation. It manages finished product inventories, service levels and import/export requirements.

Return. In the scope of return are processes for returning defective or excess supply chain products as well as MRO products. The return process extends the scope of the SCOR-model into the area of post-delivery customer service. It covers the authorization of returns, scheduling of returns, receiving and disposition of returned products as well as replacements or credits for returned products. In addition return manages return inventories as well as the compliance to return policies.

Enable. The enable processes support the planning and execution of the above supply chain processes. Enable processes are related to maintaining and monitoring of information, resources, compliance and contracts that govern the operation of the supply chain. Therefore enable processes interact with other domains, ranging from HR processes to financial processes and sales and support processes.

Level 2: Process Categories

The six process types of level 1 are decomposed into 30 *process categories*, including nine enable process categories (see Table 2.1). The second level deals with the configuration of the supply chain. At this level typical redundancies of established businesses, such as overlapping planning processes and duplicated purchasing, can be identified. Delayed customer orders indicate a need for integration of suppliers and customers.

Level 3: Process Elements

At this level, the supply chain is tuned. The process categories are further decomposed into *process elements*. Detailed metrics and best practices for these elements are part of the SCOR-model at this level. Furthermore, most process elements can

Table 2.1 Process categories

Process types	Plan	Source	Make	Deliver
Process categories	sP1: Plan supply chain	sS1: Source stocked product	sM1: Make-to-stock	sD1: Deliver stocked product
	sP2: Plan source	sS2: Source make-to-order product	sM2: Make-to-order	sD2: Deliver make-to-order product
	sP3: Plan make	sS3: Source engineer-to-order product	sM3: Engineer-to-order	sD3: Deliver engineer-to-order product
	sP4: Plan deliver			sD4: Deliver retail product
	sP5: Plan return			

Process types	Return	Enable
Process categories	sSR1: Source return defective product	sE1: Manage business rules
	sDR1: Deliver return defective product	sE2: Manage performance
	sSR2: Source return MRO product	sE3: Manage data and information
	sDR2: Deliver return MRO product	sE4: Manage human resources
	sSR3: Source return excess product	sE5: Manage assets
	sDR3: Deliver return excess product	sE6: Manage contracts
		sE7: Manage networks
		sE8: Manage regulatory compliance
		sE9: Manage risk

be linked and possess an *input* stream (information and material) and/or an *output* stream (also information and material). Figure 2.2 shows an example for the third level of the “sP1: Plan supply chain” process category. Supply Chain Council (2012, pp. 2.1.2–2.1.11) gives the following definitions for this process category and its process elements:

“**sP1.** The development and establishment of courses of action over specified time periods that represent a projected appropriation of supply chain resources to meet supply chain requirements for the longest time fence constraints of supply resources.

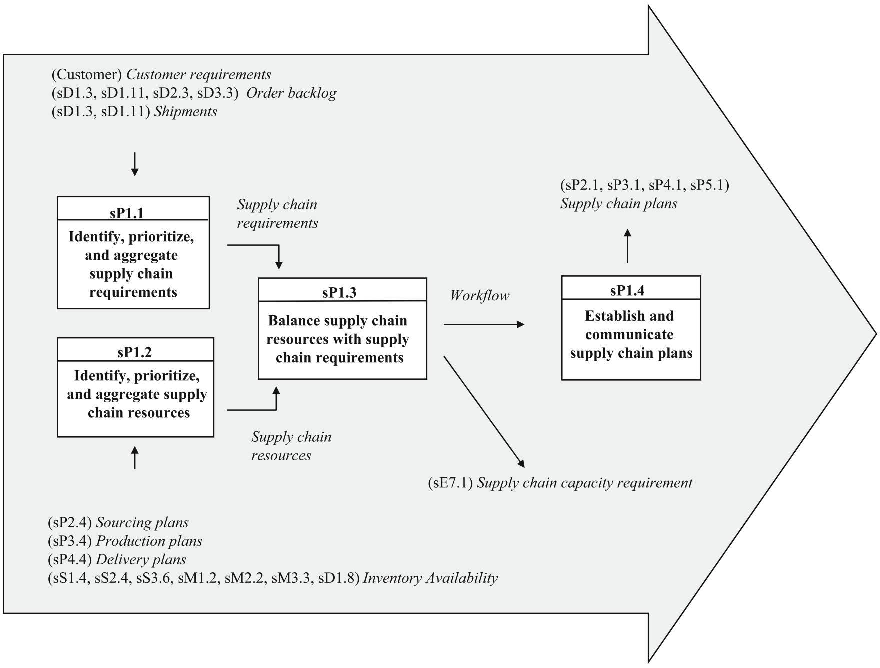


Fig. 2.2 Example of SCOR-model's level 3 (based on Supply Chain Council 2012)

sP1.1. The process of identifying, aggregating and prioritizing, all sources of demand for the integrated supply chain of a product or service at the appropriate level, horizon and interval.

sP1.2. The process of identifying, prioritizing, and aggregating, as a whole with constituent parts, all sources of the supply chain that are required and add value in the supply chain of a product or service at the appropriate level, horizon and interval.

sP1.3. The process of identifying and measuring the gaps and imbalances between demand and resources in order to determine how to best resolve the variances through marketing, pricing, packaging, warehousing, outsource plans or some other actions that will optimize service, flexibility, costs, assets, (or other supply chain inconsistencies) in an iterative and collaborative environment.

sP1.4. The establishment and communication of courses of action over the appropriate time-defined (long-term, annual, monthly, weekly) planning horizon and interval, representing a projected appropriation of supply-chain resources to meet supply chain requirements."

The input and output streams of a process element are not necessarily linked to input and output streams of other process elements. However, the indication in brackets depicts the corresponding supply chain partner, process type, process category or process element from where information or material comes. Thus, the process elements are references, not examples of possible sequences.

Table 2.2 SCOR's level 1 metrics (Supply Chain Council 2012, p. 1.0.2)

External, customer facing			Internal facing	
Reliability	Responsiveness	Agility	Cost	Asset management efficiency
Perfect order fulfillment	Order fulfillment cycle time	Upside flexibility	Total cost to serve	Cash-to-cash cycle time
		Upside adaptability		Return on fixed assets
		Downside adaptability		Return on working capital
		Overall value-at-risk		

Table 2.3 SCOR's level 3 metrics—example "sS1.1: Schedule product deliveries" (Supply Chain Council 2012, p. 2.2.5)

Metric	Definition
% schedules changed within supplier's lead time (RL.3.27)	The number of schedules that are changed within the suppliers lead-time divided by the total number of schedules generated within the measurement period
Average days per engineering change(RS.3.9)	# of days each engineering change impacts the delivery date divided by the total # of changes
Average days per schedule change(RS.3.10)	# of days each schedule change impacts the delivery date divided by the total number of changes
Average release cycle of changes(RS.3.11)	Cycle time for implementing change notices divided by total # of changes
Schedule product deliveries cycle time(RS.3.122)	The average time associated with scheduling the shipment of the return of MRO product

The process elements are decomposed on the fourth level. Companies implement their specific management practices at this level. Not being part of the SCOR-model, this step will not be subject of this book.

Metrics and Best Practices

The SCOR-model supports performance measurement on each level. Level 1 metrics provide an overview of the supply chain for the evaluation by management (see Table 2.2). Levels 2 and 3 include more specific and detailed metrics corresponding to process categories and elements. Table 2.3 gives an example of level 3 metrics that are corresponding to the "sS1.1: Schedule product deliveries" process element.

The metrics are systematically divided into the five categories *reliability*, *responsiveness*, *agility*, *cost* and *asset management efficiency*. Reliability as well as agility and responsiveness are external (customer driven), whereas cost and asset management efficiency are metrics from an internal point of view.

In 1991 PRTM initiated the *Supply Chain Performance Benchmarking Study* (now: Supply-Chain Management Benchmarking Series) for SCC members (Stewart 1995). Within the scope of this study all level 1 metrics and selected metrics of levels 2 and 3 are gathered. This information is evaluated with respect to different lines of business. Companies joining the Supply Chain Performance Benchmarking Study are able to compare their metrics with the evaluated ones. Furthermore, associated best practices are identified. Selected best practices, corresponding to process categories and process elements, are depicted in the following paragraph.

An example of an identified best practice for the “sP1: Plan supply chain” process category is high integration of the supply/demand process from gathering customer data and order receipt, through production to supplier request. SCC recommends performing this integrated process by using an APS with interfaces to all supply/demand resources. Moreover, the utilization of tools that support balanced decision-making (e.g. trade-off between service level and inventory investment) is identified as best practice. To perform process element “sP1.3: Balance supply chain resources with supply chain requirements” (see Fig. 2.2) effectively, balancing of supply and demand to derive an optimal combination of customer service and resource investment by using an APS is recognized as best practice (e.g. BP.086—Supply Network Planning, Supply Chain Council 2012, p. 3.2.70).

A Procedure for Application of the SCOR-Model

Having described the elements of the SCOR-model, a procedure for its application will be outlined that shows how the SCOR-model can be configured for a distinct supply chain (adapted from Supply Chain Council 2007, pp. 19–21). This configuration procedure consists of seven steps:

1. Define the business unit to be configured.
2. Geographically place entities that are involved in source, make, deliver and return process types. Not only locations of a single business, but also locations of suppliers (and suppliers’ suppliers) and customers (and customers’ customers) should be denoted.
3. Enter the major flows of materials as directed arcs between locations of entities.
4. Assign and link the most important source, make, deliver and return processes categories to each location (see Fig. 2.3).
5. Define partial process chains of the (modeled) supply chain (e.g. for distinct product families). A partial process chain is a sequence of processes that are planned for by a single “sP1” planning process category.
6. Enter planning process categories (“sP2”–“sP5”) using dashed lines to illustrate the assignment of execution to planning process categories (see Fig. 2.3).
7. Define a top-level “sP1” planning process if possible, i.e. a planning process category that coordinates two or more partial process chains.

The result of step 4 is a map that shows the material flows in a geographical context, indicating complexity or redundancy of any nodes. The result of step 7 is a thread diagram that focuses on the level 2 (process categories) to describe high-level process complexity or redundancy. After configuring the supply chain, performance levels, practices and systems are aligned. Critical process categories of level 2 can be detailed in level 3. At this level the most differentiated metrics and best practices are available. Thus, detailed analysis and improvements of process elements are supported.

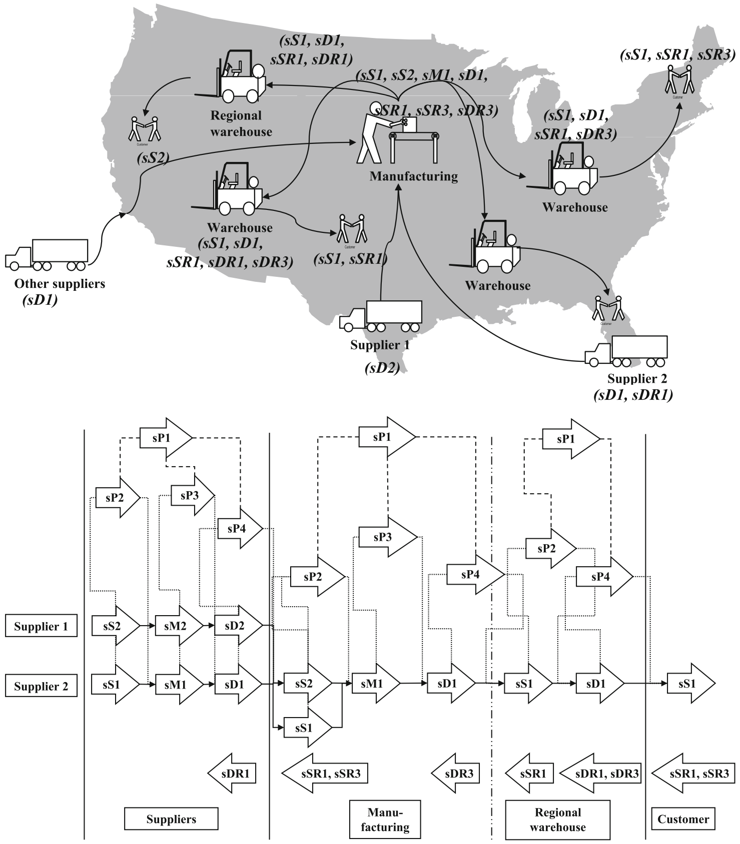


Fig. 2.3 Example results of steps 4 and 6 (adapted from Supply Chain Council 2007, pp. 19–21)

The *implementation of supply chain processes and systems* is, as already mentioned, not part of the SCOR-model. However, it is recommended to continue to use the metrics of the SCOR-model. They provide data for internal and external benchmarking studies to measure and document consequences of change processes within a supply chain.

2.3 Performance Measurement

Having mapped the supply chain processes it is important to assign measures to these processes to evaluate changes and to assess the performance of the complete supply chain as well as of the individual processes. Thereby it is crucial not to measure “something”, but to find the most relevant metrics. These not only need to be aligned with the supply chain strategy (see Sect. 1.2.4), but also need to reflect important goals in the scope and within the influence of the part of the organization responsible for the individual process under consideration. Furthermore the identification of changes in the structure or the type of the supply chain (see Chap. 3) has to be supported. In the next two subsections, first some general topics related to performance measurement within a supply chain setting will be discussed, and afterwards key performance indicators for supply chains will be introduced.

2.3.1 General Remarks

Indicators are defined as numbers that inform about relevant criteria in a clearly defined way (see e.g. Horváth 2011 for a comprehensive introduction to indicators and systems of indicators). Performance indicators (measures, metrics) are utilized in a wide range of operations. Their primary application is in *operational controlling*. Hardly a controlling system is imaginable that does not make use of performance measures regularly. In fact, the utilization of a wide variety of measures (as necessary) to model all business processes of a company enables the company to run its business according to management-by-exception.

Three functions can be attributed to indicators:

Informing. Their main purpose is to inform management. In this function, indicators are applied to support decision-making and to identify problem areas. Indicators can therefore be compared with standard or target values.

Steering. Indicators are the basis for target setting. These targets guide those responsible for the process considered to accomplish the desired outcome.

Controlling. Indicators are also well suited for the supervision of operations and processes.

The main disadvantage inherent to indicators is that they are only suited to describe *quantitative facts*. "Soft" facts are difficult to measure and likely to be neglected when indicators are introduced (e.g. motivation of personnel). Still, non-quantitative targets which are not included in the set of indicators should be kept in mind.

When using indicators, one key concern is their *correct interpretation*. It is essential to keep in mind that variations observed by indicators have to be linked to a *causal model* of the underlying process or operation. A short example will illustrate this. To measure the productivity of an operation the ratio of revenue divided by labor is assumed here as an appropriate indicator:

$$\text{productivity} = \frac{\text{revenue}[\$]}{\text{labor}[\text{h}]} \tag{2.1}$$

Revenue is measured in currency units ($), whereas labor is measured in hours worked (per plant, machine or personnel), where the relevance of the different measures for labor depends on the specific product(s) considered. Supposed productivity is 500$/h in one period and 600$/h in the next period, there is definitely a huge difference. In fact, when calculating productivity a *causal link* between revenue and labor is assumed implicitly. On the other hand, there are many more rationales that could have caused this increase in productivity. These have to be examined too before a final conclusion can be derived. In this example price hikes, changes in product mix, higher utilization of resources or decreased inventories can account for substantial portions of the observed increase in productivity. Therefore, it is essential to find appropriate measures with clear links connecting the indicator and the causal model of the underlying process (root causes).

Furthermore, indicators have to be evaluated how they translate to the strategic goals of the supply chain. If indicators and strategy are not aligned, it may well happen that one supply chain entity pursues a conflicting goal. For example, one partner increases its inventory turn rate by reducing safety stock, which negatively affects the downstream delivery performance of its partners.

When choosing supply chain performance metrics it is essential to keep in mind the cross-functional process-oriented nature of the supply chain. Functional measures may be to narrow-minded and should be substituted by cross-functional measures, therefore helping that not individual entities optimize only their functional goals (e.g. maximizing capacity utilization), but shared goals (e.g. a superior order fill rate compared to a rival supply chain).

Historically, indicators and systems of indicators have been based on *financial data*, as financial data have been widely available for long. Improvements in terms of superior financial performance that are caused by the successful application of SCM can be measured by these indicators. Nevertheless some additional, more appropriate measures of supply chain performance should be derived, since the focal points of SCM are customer orientation, the integration of organizational units and their coordination.

The transition to incorporate non-financial measures in the evaluation of business performance is widely accepted, though. Kaplan and Norton (1992) introduced the concept of a balanced scorecard (BSC) that received broad attention not only in scientific literature but also in practical applications. In addition to financial measures, the BSC comprises a customer perspective, an innovation and learning perspective as well as an internal business perspective. These perspectives integrate a set of measures into one management report that provides a deeper insight into a company's performance. The measures chosen depend on the individual situation faced by the company. Figure 2.4 gives an example of a BSC used by a global engineering and construction company.

An increasing number of contributions in the literature is dealing with the adaptation of BSCs to fit the needs of SCM (see e.g. Brewer and Speh 2000; Bullinger et al. 2002; Richert 2006). Adaptations are proposed within the original framework consisting of the four perspectives introduced above, but also structural changes are proposed. For example, Weber et al. (2002) propose a BSC for supply chains consisting of a financial perspective, a process perspective and two new perspectives relating to cooperation quality and cooperation intensity. In addition to the supply chain BSC they propose individual company BSCs on a second hierarchical level. In contrast to the supply chain BSC these still might comprise

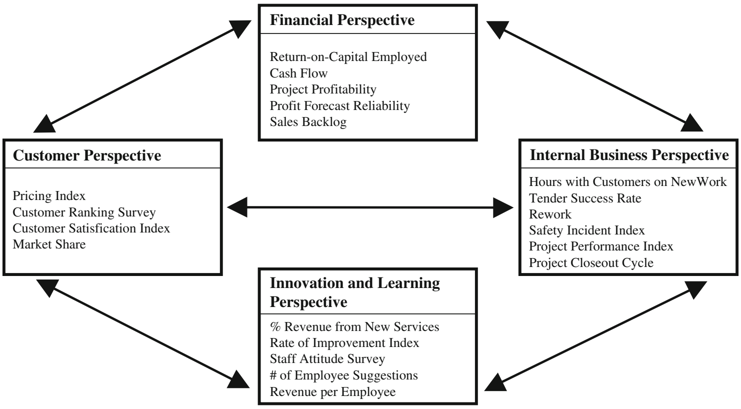


Fig. 2.4 Example of indicators used by a balanced scorecard (Kaplan and Norton 1993, p. 136)

of a customer perspective (for the most downstream supply chain partner) and a learning perspective.

Non-financial measures have the advantage that they are often easier to quantify as there is no allocation of costs necessary for their calculation. Moreover, they turn attention to physical processes more directly. An instrument providing connections of root causes and financial performance measures via non-financial/logistical key performance indicators are the Enabler-KPI-Value networks presented in Chap. 15.

Specifically when assessing supply chain performance it is important to bear in mind the following:

Definition of Indicators. As supply chains usually span over several companies or at least several entities within one company a *common definition* of all indicators is obligatory. Otherwise the comparison of indicators and their uniform application can be counterproductive.

Perspective on Indicators. The view on indicators might be different considering the roles of the two supply chain partners, the supplier and the customer. A supplier might want to calculate the order fill rate based on the order receipt date and the order ship date, as these are the dates he is able to control. From the customer's point of view the basis would be the request date and the receipt date at customer's warehouse. If supplier's and customer's dates do not match, this will lead to different results with respect to an agreed order fill rate. This is why both have to agree on *one perspective*.

Capturing of Data. Data needed to calculate the indicators should be captured in a consistent way throughout the supply chain. *Consistency* with respect to units of measurement and the availability of *current* data for the supply chain partners are essential. Furthermore, *completeness* of the used data is obligatory, i.e. all necessary data should be available in adequate systems and accessible by supply chain partners.

Relevance of Indicators. Due to the enormous number of indicators available the identification of a most selective subset is important to control the specific object or situation at best without wasting a lot of effort in analyzing useless data.

Big Data. “Big data refers to datasets whose size is beyond the ability of typical database software tools to capture, store, manage, and analyze” (Manyika et al. 2011, p. 1). The amount of data is exponentially increasing and changing over time thus analyzing e.g. forecast accuracy comparing several years of granular sales data compared to monthly released rolling sales forecasts leads to billions of data records. Combining the structured data from data bases with unstructured data like comments explaining a specific situation becomes a challenge.

Confidentiality. Confidentiality is another major issue if more than one company form the supply chain. As all partners are separate legal entities, they might not want to give complete information about their internal processes to their partners. Furthermore, there might be some targets which are not shared among partners.

Nevertheless, it is widely accepted that supply chain integration benefits from the utilization of key performance indicators. They support communication between supply chain partners and are a valuable tool for the coordination of their individual, but shared plans. Additional findings related to the problems with today’s performance management systems, requirements for performance measurement metrics, the importance of the balanced scorecard approach and the SCOR model and the importance of the “concept of fit” in supply chain performance measurement can be found in the literature review by Akyuz and Erkan (2010).

2.3.2 Key Performance Indicators for Supply Chains

A vast amount of literature has been published suggesting performance indicators for supply chains (e.g. Lapide 2000; Gunasekaran et al. 2001; Bullinger et al. 2002; Hausman 2003). A supply chain benchmarking study undertaken with 148 supply chain managers in Germany, Switzerland and Austria from different industries analyzed the importance of SCOR’s performance attributes and several KPIs used to measure supply chains’ performance. The sorting of attributes shows that a majority of the participants put reliability on the first position, followed by agility/flexibility, responsiveness and costs (see Fig. 2.5). Assets are considered to be less important. Apart from the “typical” metrics supporting SCOR’s performance attributes the study also analyzed the importance of metrics related with supply chain risks (e.g. security of supply, bad debt, cancellations) and sustainability (e.g. carbon footprint, renewable energies). Disasters like Fukushima in 2011 might have an impact on a changed perception but the ranking of the metrics shows that both categories are of minor relevance (Reuter 2013, p. 50).

Although each supply chain is unique and might need special treatment, there are some performance measures that are applicable in most settings. In the following paragraphs these will be presented as key performance indicators. As they tackle different aspects of the supply chain they are grouped into four categories

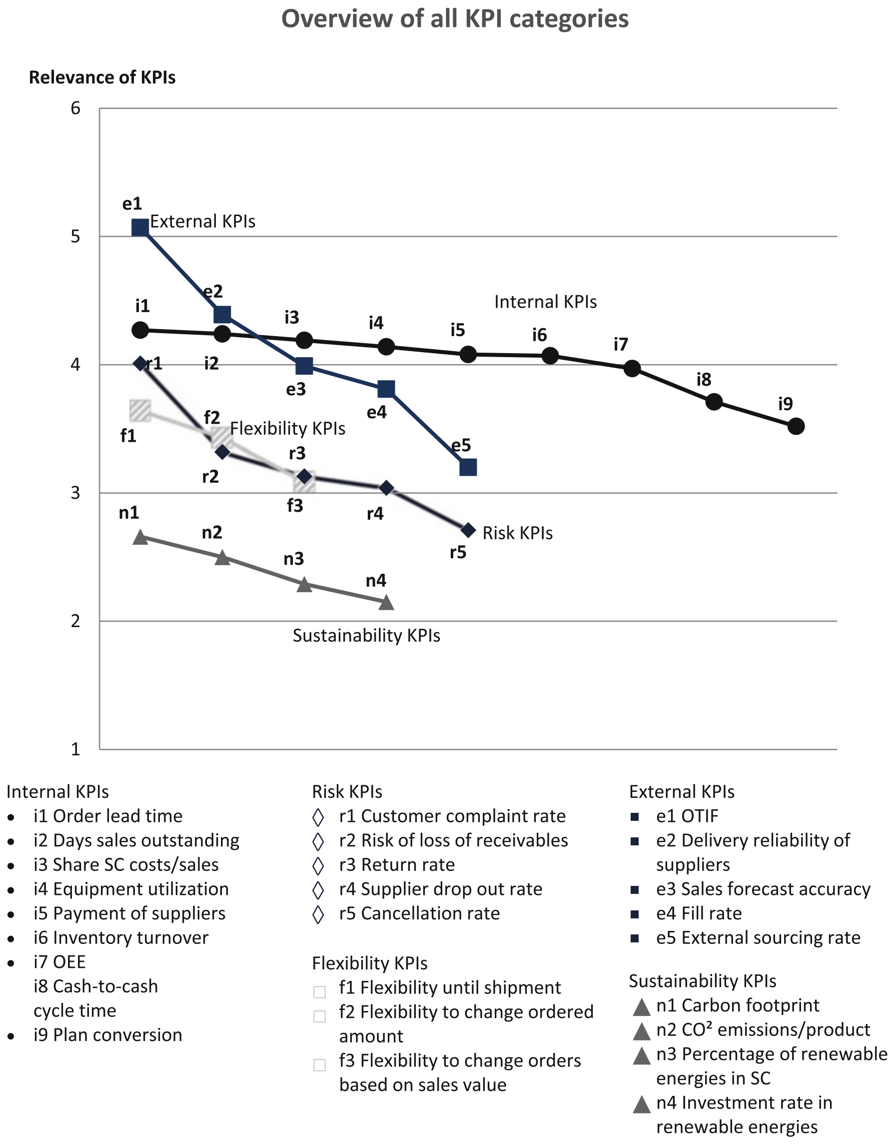


Fig. 2.5 KPIs and categories—comparison based on Reuter (2013, p. 50)

corresponding to the following attributes: delivery performance, supply chain responsiveness, assets and inventories, and costs.

Delivery Performance

As customer orientation is a key component of SCM, delivery performance is an essential measure for total supply chain performance. As promised delivery dates may be too late in the eye of the customer, his expectation or even request determines the target. Therefore delivery performance has to be measured in terms of the actual delivery date compared to the delivery date mutually agreed upon. Only perfect order fulfillment which is reached by delivering the right product to the right place at the right time ensures customer satisfaction. An on time shipment containing only 95 % of items requested will often not ensure 95 % satisfaction with the customer. Increasing delivery performance may improve the competitive position of the supply chain and generate additional sales. Regarding different aspects of delivery performance, various indicators called *service levels* are distinguished in inventory management literature (see e.g. Tempelmeier 2005, pp. 27–29 or Silver et al. 1998, p. 245). The first one, called α-service level (P_1, cycle service level), is an event-oriented measure. It is defined as the probability that an incoming order can be fulfilled completely from stock. Usually, it is determined with respect to a predefined period length (e.g. day, week or order cycle). Another performance indicator is the quantity-oriented β-service level (P_2), which is defined as the proportion of incoming order quantities that can be fulfilled from inventory on-hand. In contrast to the α-service level, the β-service level takes into account the extent to which orders cannot be fulfilled. The γ-service level is a time- and quantity-oriented measure. It comprises two aspects: the quantity that cannot be met from stock and the time it takes to meet the demand. Therefore it contains the time information not considered by the β-service level. An exact definition is:

$$\gamma\text{-service level} = 1 - \frac{\text{mean backlog at end of period}}{\text{mean demand per period}} \tag{2.2}$$

Furthermore, *on time delivery* is an important indicator. It is defined as the proportion of orders delivered on or before the date requested by the customer. A low percentage of on time deliveries indicates that the order promising process is not synchronized with the execution process. This might be due to order promising based on an infeasible (production) plan or because of production or transportation operations not executed as planned.

Measuring *forecast accuracy* is also worthwhile. Forecast accuracy relates forecasted sales quantities to actual quantities and measures the ability to forecast future demands. Better forecasts of customer behavior usually lead to smaller changes in already established production and distribution plans. An overview of methods to measure forecast accuracy is given in Chap. 7.

Another important indicator in the context of delivery performance is the *order lead-time*. Order lead-times measure, from the customer's point of view, the average time interval from the date the order is placed to the date the customer receives the shipment. As customers are increasingly demanding, short order lead-times become important in competitive situations. Nevertheless, not only short lead-times but also reliable lead-times will satisfy customers and lead to a strong customer relationship, even though the two types of lead-times (shortest vs. reliable) have different cost aspects.

Supply Chain Responsiveness

Responsiveness describes the ability of the complete supply chain to react according to changes in the marketplace. Supply chains have to react to significant changes within an appropriate time frame to ensure their competitiveness. To quantify responsiveness separate flexibility measures have to be introduced to capture the ability, extent and speed of adaptations. These indicators shall measure the ability to change plans (flexibility within the system) and even the entire supply chain structure (flexibility of the system). An example in this field is the upside production flexibility determined by the number of days needed to adapt to an unexpected 20 % growth in the demand level.

A different indicator in this area is the *planning cycle time* which is simply defined as the time between the beginning of two subsequent planning cycles. Long planning cycle times prevent the plan from taking into account the short-term changes in the real world. Especially planned actions at the end of a planning cycle may no longer fit to the actual situation, since they are based on old data available at the beginning of the planning cycle. The appropriate planning cycle time has to be determined with respect to the aggregation level of the planning process, the planning horizon and the planning effort.

Assets and Inventories

Measures regarding the assets of a supply chain should not be neglected. One common indicator in this area is called *asset turns*, which is defined by the division of revenue by total assets. Therefore, asset turns measure the efficiency of a company in operating its assets by specifying sales per asset. This indicator should be watched with caution as it varies sharply among different industries.

Another indicator worthy of observation is *inventory turns*, defined as the ratio of total material consumption per time period over the average inventory level of the same time period. A common approach to increase inventory turns is to reduce inventories. Still, inventory turns is a good example to illustrate that optimizing the proposed measures may not be pursued as isolated goals. Consider a supply chain consisting of several tiers each holding the same quantity of goods in inventory. As the value of goods increases as they move downstream the supply chain, an increase in inventory turns is more valuable if achieved at a more downstream entity. Furthermore, decreasing downstream inventories reduces the risk of repositioning of inventories due to bad distribution. However, reduced inventory holding costs may be offset by increases in other cost components (e.g. production setup costs) or unsatisfied customers (due to poor delivery performance). Therefore, when using this measure it needs to be done with caution, keeping a holistic view on the supply chain in mind.

Lastly, the *inventory age* is defined by the average time goods are residing in stock. Inventory age is a reliable indicator for high inventory levels, but has to be used with respect to the items considered. Replacement parts for phased out products will usually have a much higher age than stocks of the newest released products. Nevertheless, the distribution of inventory ages over products is suited perfectly for identifying unnecessary "pockets" of inventory and for helping to increase inventory turns.

Determining the right inventory level is not an easy task, as it is product- and process-dependent. Furthermore, inventories not only cause costs, but there are also benefits to holding inventory. Therefore, in addition to the aggregated indicators defined above, a proper analysis not only regarding the importance of items (e.g. an ABC-analysis), but also a detailed investigation of inventory components (as proposed in Sect. 2.4) might be appropriate.

Costs

Last but not least some financial measures should be mentioned since the ultimate goal will generally be profit. Here, the focus is on cost based measures. Costs of goods sold should always be monitored with emphasis on substantial processes of the supply chain. Hence, an integrated information system operating on a joint database and a mutual cost accounting system may prove to be a vital part of the supply chain.

Further, productivity measures usually aim at the detection of cost drivers in the production process. In this context *value-added employee productivity* is an indicator which is calculated by dividing the difference between revenue and material cost by total employment (measured in (full time) equivalents of employees). Therefore, it analyses the value each employee adds to all products sold.

Finally, *warranty costs* should be observed, being an indicator for product quality. Although warranty costs depend highly on how warranty processing is carried out, it may help to identify problem areas. This is particularly important because superior product quality is not a typical supply chain feature, but a driving business principle in general.

2.4 Inventory Analysis

Often claimed citations like "inventories hide faults" suggest to avoid any inventory in a supply chain. This way of thinking is attributed to the Just-In-Time-philosophy, which aligns the processes in the supply chain such that almost no inventories are necessary. This is only possible in some specific industries or certain sections of a supply chain and for selected items.

In all other cases inventories are necessary and therefore need to be managed in an efficient way. Inventories in supply chains are always the result of inflow and outflow processes (transport, production etc.). This means that the isolated minimization of inventories is not a reasonable objective of SCM, instead they have to be managed together with the corresponding supply chain processes.

Inventories cause costs (holding costs), but also provide *benefits*, in particular reduction of costs of the inflow and/or outflow processes. Thus, the problem is to find the right trade-off between the costs for holding inventories and the benefits.

Table 2.4 Stock components, determinants, and benefits

Stock component	Determinants	Benefits
Production lot-sizing stock	Setup frequency	Reduced setup time and costs
Transportation lot-sizing stock	Shipment quantity	Reduced transportation costs
Inventory in transit	Transportation time	Reduced transportation costs
Seasonal stock	Demand peaks, tight capacity	Reduced costs for overtime and for investments
Work-in-process	Lead time, production planning and control	Increased utilization, reduced investments in additional capacity
Safety stock	Demand and lead time uncertainty, process uncertainties	Increased service level, reduced costs for emergency shipments and lost sales

Inventory decomposes into different *components* according to the *motives* for holding inventory. The most important components are shown in Table 2.4 and will be described in detail in the following paragraphs.

The distinction of stock components is necessary for

- The identification of benefits
- The identification of determinants of the inventory level
- Setting target inventory levels (e.g. in APS).

The *inventory analysis* enables us to decompose the *average* inventory level in a supply chain. It shows the different causes for inventories held in the past and indicates the relative importance of specific components. The *current* inventory of certain stock keeping units (SKUs) on the other hand might be higher or lower depending on the point in time chosen. Thus, the current inventory is not suitable for a proper inventory analysis.

In an ex-post analysis it is possible to observe whether the trade-off between the benefits and the stock costs has been managed efficiently for each component and SKU (*inventory management*). In the following paragraphs we will show the motives, the benefits, and determinants of some important components (see also Chopra and Meindl 2007, p. 50).

2.4.1 Production Lot-Sizing or Cycle Stock

The cycle stock (we use ‘production lot-sizing stock’, ‘lot-sizing stock’ and ‘cycle stock’ synonymously) is used to cover the demand between two consecutive production runs of the same product. For example, consider a color manufacturing plant, which produces blue and yellow colors, alternating between each bi-weekly. Then, the production lot has to cover the demand in the current and the following week. Thus, the production quantity (lot) equals the 2-week demand and the coverage is 2 weeks. The role of cycle stock is to reduce the costs for setting up

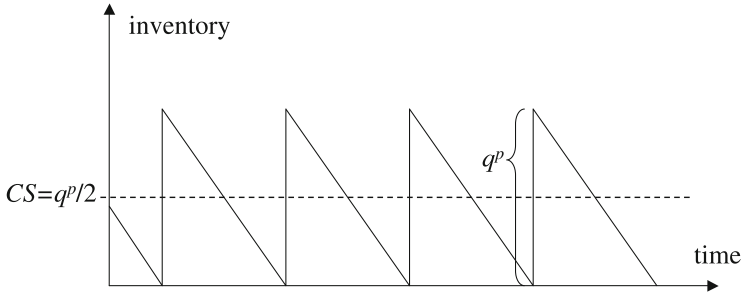


Fig. 2.6 Inventory pattern for cycle stock calculation

and cleaning the production facility (setup or changeover costs). Finding the right trade-off between fixed setup costs and inventory costs is usually a critical task, as this decision may also depend on the lot-size of other products. An overview on the problems arising here is given in Chap. 10.

For the inventory analysis of final items in a make-to-stock environment it is mostly sufficient to consider a cyclic production pattern with average lot-sizes q^p over a time interval that covers several production cycles. Then, the inventory level follows the so-called "saw-tooth"-pattern, which is shown in Fig. 2.6. The average cycle stock CS is half the average lot-size: $CS = q^p/2$. The average lot-size can be calculated from the total number of production setups su and the total demand d^p during the analysis interval: $q^p = d^p/su$. Thus, all you need to analyze cycle stock is the number of production setups and the total demand.

2.4.2 Transportation Lot-Sizing Stock

The same principle of reducing the amount of fixed costs per lot applies to transportation links. Each truck causes some amount of fixed costs which arise for a transport from warehouse A to warehouse B. If this truck is only loaded partially, then the cost per unit shipped is higher than for a full truckload. Therefore, it is economical to batch transportation quantities up to a full load and to ship them together. Then, one shipment has to cover the demand until the next shipment arrives at the destination. The decision on the right transportation lot-size usually has to take into account the dependencies with other products' shipments on the same link and the capacity of the transport unit (e.g. truck, ship etc.) used (see Chap. 12).

For the inventory analysis we can calculate the average transportation quantity q^t from the number of shipments s during the analysis interval and the total demand d^t for the product at the destination warehouse by $q^t = d^t/s$. In contrast to the production lot-sizing stock, the average transportation lot-sizing stock equals not half, but the whole transportation quantity q^t, if we consider both the "source warehouse", where the inventory has to be built up until the next shipment starts and the "destination warehouse" where the inventory is depleted until the next shipment arrives. Therefore, the average stock level at each warehouse is one half of the transportation lot-size and, the transportation lot-sizing stock sums up to $TLS = q^t$.

This calculation builds on the assumption of a continuous inflow of goods to the source warehouse, which is valid if the warehouse is supplied by continuous production or by production lots which are not coordinated with the shipments. This is the case for most production-distribution chains.

2.4.3 Inventory in Transit

While the transportation lot-sizing stock is held at the start and end stock points of a transportation link, there exists also inventory that is currently transported in-between. This stock component only depends on the transportation time and the demand because on average the inventory "held on the truck" equals the demand which occurs during the transportation time. The inventory in transit is independent of the transportation frequency and therefore also independent of the transportation lot-size. The inventory in transit can be reduced at the expense of increasing transportation costs, if the transportation time is reduced by a faster transportation mode (e.g. plane instead of truck transport).

The average inventory in transit TI is calculated by multiplying the average transportation time by the average demand. For instance, if the transportation time is 2 days and the average amount to be transported is 50 pieces per day, then $TI = 100$ pieces.

2.4.4 Seasonal Stock or Pre-built Stock

In seasonal industries (e.g. consumer packaged goods) inventories are held to buffer future demand peaks which exceed the production capacities. In this sense, there is a trade-off between the level of regular capacity, additional overtime capacity and seasonal stock. The seasonal stock can help to reduce lost sales, costs for working overtime or opportunity costs for unused machines and technical equipment. In contrast to the previous stock components which are defined by SKU, the seasonal stock is common for a group of items sharing the same tight capacity. Figure 2.7 shows how the total amount of seasonal inventory can be calculated from the capacity profile of a complete seasonal cycle. In this case, the seasonal stock is built up in periods 3 and 4 and used for demand fulfillment in periods 6 and 7. The total seasonal stock shown in the figure is calculated using the assumption that all products are pre-produced in the same quantity as they are demanded in the bottleneck periods. In practice one would preferably pre-build those products, which create only small holding costs and which can be forecasted with high certainty. In Chap. 8 we will introduce planning models, which help to decide on the right amount of seasonal stock.

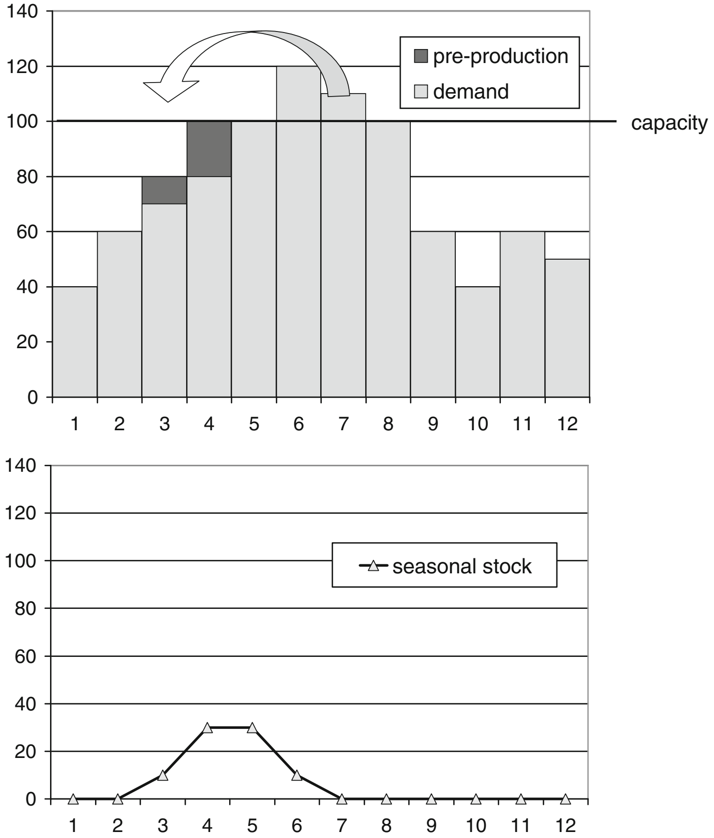


Fig. 2.7 Example for the determination of seasonal stock

2.4.5 Work-in-Process Inventory (WIP)

The WIP inventory can be found in every supply chain, because the production process takes some time during which the raw materials and components are transformed to finished products. In a multi-stage production process the production lead time consists of the actual processing times on the machines and additional waiting times of the products between the operations, e.g. because required resources are occupied. The *benefits* of the WIP are that it prevents bottleneck machines from starving for material and maintains a high utilization of resources. Thus, WIP may avoid investments in additional capacities. The waiting time part of production lead time is also influenced by the production planning and control system (see also Chap. 10), which should schedule the orders so as to ensure short lead times. Therefore, it is possible to reduce the WIP by making effective use of an APS. In this sense, the opinion "inventories hide faults" indeed applies to the WIP in the modified form: Too high WIP hides faults of production planning and control.

According to Little's law (see e.g. Silver et al. 1998, p. 697) the average production lead time LT is proportional to the WIP level. If d^w is the average demand per unit of time, then $WIP = LT \cdot d^w$.

2.4.6 Safety Stock

Safety stock has to protect against uncertainty which may arise from internal processes like production lead time, from unknown customer demand and from uncertain supplier lead times. This implies that the main drivers for the safety stock level are production and transport disruptions, forecasting errors, and lead time variations. The benefit of safety stock is that it allows quick customer service and avoids lost sales, emergency shipments, and the loss of goodwill. Furthermore, safety stock for raw materials enables smoother flow of goods in the production process and avoids disruptions due to stock-outs at the raw material level. Besides the uncertainty mentioned above the main driver for safety stock is the length of the lead time (production or procurement), which is necessary to replenish the stock.

In the inventory analysis, the *observed* safety stock is the residual level, which is left after subtracting all of the components introduced above from the average observed inventory level. This observed safety stock can then be compared with the level of safety stock that is necessary from an economical standpoint. A short introduction on how *necessary* safety stocks can be calculated is given in Chap. 7.

A further component which may occur in a distribution center is the order picking inventory. It comprises the partly filled pallets from which the small quantities per customer order are picked.

The main steps of the inventory analysis are summarized in the following:

1. Calculate the average inventory level (AVI) from past observations over a sufficiently long period (e.g. half a year) of observations (e.g. inventory levels measured daily or weekly).
2. Identify possible stock components (e.g. cycle stock, safety stock) and their corresponding drivers (e.g. lot-size, lead time).
3. Decompose the AVI into the components including the *observed* safety stock.
4. Calculate the *necessary* safety stock and compare it to the *observed* safety stock.
5. The remaining difference (+/−) shows avoidable buffer stock (+) or products which didn't have enough stock (−).
6. For the most important components of the observed inventory calculate the optimal target level w. r. t. inventory costs and benefits.

For the optimization of inventory, the main principle of inventory management has to be considered: The objective is to balance the costs arising from holding inventories and the benefits of it. Furthermore, this trade-off has to be handled for each separate component. In Part II we will show how APS can support this critical task of inventory management.

References

Akyuz, G. A., & Erkan, T. E. (2010). Supply chain performance measurement: A literature review. *International Journal of Production Research, 48*(17), 5137–5155.

Arns, M., Fischer, M., Kemper, P., & Tepper, C. (2002). Supply chain modelling and its analytical evaluation. *Journal of the Operational Research Society, 53*, 885–894.

Brewer, P., & Speh, T. (2000). Adapting the balanced scorecard to supply chain management. *Supply Chain Management Review, 5*(2), 48–56.

Bullinger, H.-J., Kühner, M., & van Hoof, A. (2002). Analysing supply chain performance using a balanced measurement method. *International Journal of Production Research, 40*(15), 3533–3543.

Chopra, S., & Meindl, P. (2007). *Supply chain management* (3rd ed.). Upper Saddle River: Prentice Hall.

Croxton, K., Garcia-Dastugue, S., Lambert, D., & Rogers, D. (2001). The supply chain management processes. *The International Journal of Logistics Management, 12*(2), 13–36.

Dreyer, D. (2000). Performance measurement: A practitioner's perspective. *Supply Chain Management Review, 5*(5), 62–68.

Fisher, M. (1997). What is the right supply chain for your product? *Harvard Business Review, 75*(2), 105–116.

Gunasekaran, A., Patel, C., & Tirtiroglu, E. (2001). Performance measures and metrics in a supply chain environment. *International Journal of Operations & Production Management, 21*(1/2), 71–87.

Hausman, W. (2003). Supply chain performance metrics. In T. P. Harrison, H. Lee, & J. Neale (Eds.), *The practice of supply chain management: Where theory and application converge* (pp. 61–76). Boston: Kluwer Academic.

Horváth, P. (2011). *Controlling* (12th ed.). München: Vahlen.

Kaplan, R. S., & Norton, D. P. (1992). The balanced scorecard: Measures that drive performance. *Harvard Business Review, 70*(1), 71–79.

Kaplan, R. S., & Norton, D. P. (1993). Putting the balanced scorecard to work. *Harvard Business Review, 71*(5), 134–142.

Lambert, D., & Pohlen, T. (2001). Supply chain metrics. *The International Journal of Logistics Management, 12*(1), 1–19.

Lapide, L. (2000). What about measuring supply chain performance. http://mthink.com/article/what-about-measuring-supply-chain-performance/. Visited on Feb 28, 2014.

Manyika, J., Chui, M., Brown, B., Bughin, J., Dobbs, R., Roxburgh, C., et al. (2011). Big data: The next frontier for innovation, competition, and productivity. Technical report, McKinsey Global Institute.

Ramdas, K., & Spekman, R. (2000). Chain or shackles: Understanding what drives supply-chain performance. *Interfaces, 30*(4), 3–21.

Reuter, B. (2013). Gut gemessen ist halb geliefert. *Logistik heute, 35*, 50–51.

Richert, J. (2006). *Performance Measurement in Supply Chains: Balanced Scorecard in Wertschöpfungsnetzwerken* (1st ed.). Wiesbaden: Gabler.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Stewart, G. (1995). Supply chain performance benchmarking study reveals keys to supply chain excellence. *Logistics Information Management, 8*(2), 38–44.

Supply Chain Council. (2007). *Supply-chain operations reference-model (SCOR). Overview: version 8.0*. Pittsburgh, https://archive.supply-chain.org/galleries/public-gallery/SCOR%2080%20Overview%20Booklet2.pdf. Visited on Feb 28, 2014.

Supply Chain Council. (2012). *SCOR: The supply chain reference: Supply chain operations reference model, version 11.0*. Pittsburgh. ISBN:0-615-20259-4.

Supply Chain Council. (2014). http://www.supply-chain.org. Visited on Feb 28, 2014.

Tempelmeier, H. (2005). *Bestandsmanagement in Supply Chains* (1st ed.). Norderstedt: Books on Demand.

Weber, J., Bacher, A., & Groll, M. (2002). Konzeption einer Balanced Scorecard für das Controlling von unternehmensübergreifenden Supply Chains. *Kostenrechnungspraxis, 46*(3), 133–141.

Types of Supply Chains

3

Herbert Meyr and Hartmut Stadtler

The SCOR-model presented in Sect. 2.2.2 is an excellent tool to analyze, visualize, and discuss the structure of the supply chain, and to reveal redundancies and weaknesses. It enables the formulation of structural changes and strategies to improve the performance of the supply chain as a whole.

However, when it comes to planning, the SCOR-model needs to be supplemented. To be able to identify the type of decision problems facing the supply chain and guide the selection of standard or specialized modules, models and algorithms for decision making, this chapter defines a "supply chain typology", supporting the SCOR-model at level 2. Two examples illustrate the use of the typology and will be resumed in Chap. 4 in order to design planning concepts fitting the particular requirements of these two types of supply chains.

3.1 Motivation and Basics

In the early days of production planning and control a single concept and software system was applied in industry — material requirements planning (MRP) — irrespective of the many different requirements existing in diverse areas such as the production of foods or automobiles. On the other hand, if a production manager was asked whether the production system he manages is unique and requires special purpose decision-making tools, most probably the answer would be "yes".

H. Meyr (✉)
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

H. Stadtler
Institute for Logistics and Transport, University of Hamburg, Von-Melle-Park 5, 20146 Hamburg, Germany
e-mail: hartmut.stadtler@uni-hamburg.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_3,

As regards the type of decisions to be made, the truth lies somewhere in the middle of these two extremes. Abstracting from minor specialties usually reveals that there are common features in today's production and distribution systems which require similar decision support and thus can be supported by the same software modules.

APS are much more versatile than MRP and ERP systems due to their modeling capabilities and different solution procedures (even for one module). Modules offered by a software vendor may still better fit one type of supply chain than another. So, it is our aim to outline a *supply chain typology* which allows to describe a given supply chain by a set of attributes which we feel might be important for decision-making and the selection of an APS. Attributes may have nominal properties (e.g. a product is storable or not), ordinal properties (e.g. an entity's power or impact on decision-making is regarded higher or lower than average) or cardinal properties (i.e. the attribute can be counted, like the number of legally separated entities within a supply chain).

Attributes with a similar focus will be grouped into a peculiar category to better reveal the structure of our typology (see Tables 3.1 and 3.2). We will discriminate "functional" attributes to be applied to each organization, entity, member, or location of a supply chain as well as "structural" attributes describing the relations among its entities.

Note that further typologies with different attributes are necessary if other objectives are pursued when characterizing and categorizing supply chains. A summary of such typologies (e.g., the ones of Lejeune and Yakova 2005 and Vonderembse et al. 2006) is given by Knackstedt (2009).

3.2 Functional Attributes

Functional attributes (see Table 3.1) of an entity are grouped into the four categories

- Procurement type
- Production type
- Distribution type
- Sales type.

The **procurement type** relates to the *number* (few … many) and *type of products* to be procured, the latter one ranging from standard products to highly specific products requiring special product know-how or production process know-how (or equipment). The following attribute depicts the *sourcing type*, better known by its properties: single sourcing, double sourcing and multiple sourcing. Single sourcing exists if there is a unique supplier for a certain product to be procured. In double sourcing there are two suppliers, each fulfilling a portion of demand for the product to be procured (e.g. 60 % of the demand is fulfilled by the main supplier, 40 % by the second supplier). Sourcing contracts with suppliers are usually valid in the medium-term (e.g. a product's life cycle). Otherwise, products can be sourced from multiple suppliers. Next, the *flexibility of suppliers* with respect to the amounts to be supplied may be important. Amounts may either be fixed, have a lower or upper

Table 3.1 Functional attributes of a supply chain typology

Functional attributes	
Categories	Attributes
Procurement type	Number and type of products procured Sourcing type Flexibility of suppliers Supplier lead time and reliability Materials' life cycle
Production type	Organization of the production process Repetition of operations Changeover characteristics Bottlenecks in production Working time flexibility etc.
Distribution type	Distribution structure Pattern of delivery Deployment of transportation means Loading restrictions
Sales type	Relation to customers Availability of future demands Demand curve Products' life cycle Number of product types Degree of customization Bill of materials (BOM) Portion of service operations

bound due to given contracts with suppliers or may be freely available. *Lead time* and *reliability of suppliers* are closely related. The lead time of a supplier defines the average time interval between ordering a specific material and its arrival. Usually, the shorter lead times are, the more reliable the promised arrival dates are. The *life cycles of* components or *materials* have direct impact on the risk of obsolescence of inventories. The shorter the life cycles are, the more often one has to care about substituting old materials with newer ones.

The **production type** is formed by many attributes. The two most prominent attributes are the *organization of the production process* and *the repetition of operations*. Process organization and flow lines represent well-known properties of the production process. Process organization requires that all resources capable of performing a special task (like drilling) are located in the same area (a shop). Usually a product has to pass through several shops until it is finished. A flow shop exists if all products pass the shops in the same order, otherwise it is a job shop. A flow line exists in case resources are arranged next to each other corresponding to the sequence of operations required by the products to be manufactured on it. Usually capacities within a flow line are synchronized and intermediate inventories are not possible. Hence, for planning purposes a flow line can be regarded as a single entity.

The attribute *repetition of operations* has three broad properties, mass production, batch production and making one-of-a-kind products. In mass production the same product is generated constantly over a long period of time. In batch production several units of a given operation are grouped together to form a batch (or lot) and are executed one after the other. Several batches are loaded on a resource sequentially. At the start of a batch a setup is required, incurring some setup costs or setup time. When making one-of-a-kind products which are specific to a (customer) order, special care is needed to schedule the many operations usually belonging to a (customer) order.

The influence of setup costs and setup times may be higher or lower. Therefore, their degree can further be specified by an optional attribute *changeover characteristics*. If setup costs (or times) even vary with respect to the sequence of the batches or lots, "sequence dependent" changeover costs are given. If production capacity is a serious problem, the attribute *bottlenecks in production* tries to characterize why. In a multi-stage production system, the bottleneck machines may be stationary and known, or shifting (frequently) depending on the mix of demand. One way to increase capacity is to provide more working time (e.g. by means of overtime or additional shifts). The capability and lead times to adapt working time to changing demand pattern are described by the attribute *working time flexibility*. For further specifications of the production type see Schneeweiss (2002, p. 10) and Silver et al. (1998, p. 36).

The **distribution type** consists of the distribution structure, the pattern of delivery, the deployment of transportation means, and possible loading restrictions. The *distribution structure* describes the network of links between the factory (warehouse) and the customer(s). A one-stage distribution structure exists if there are only direct links between a factory (warehouse) and its customers. In case the distribution network has one intermediate layer (e.g. either central warehouses (CW) or regional warehouses (RW)) a two stage distribution structure is given. A three stage distribution structure incorporates an additional layer (e.g. CW *and* RW).

The *pattern of delivery* is either cyclic or dynamic. In a cyclic pattern, goods are transported at fixed intervals of time (e.g. round-the-world ship departures). A dynamic pattern is given if delivery is made depending on demand (for transportation). As regards the *deployment of transportation means* one can distinguish the deployment of vehicles on routes (either standard routes or variable routes depending on demand) and simply a given transportation capacity on individual links in the distribution network. It may even be possible to assume unlimited transportation capacities and to consider only a given cost function (e.g. based on a contract with a large third-party service provider). *Loading restrictions* (like the requirement of a full truck load) may form a further requirement.

The **sales type** of an entity in the supply chain largely depends on the *relation to its customers*. One extreme may be a downstream entity in the supply chain (with some kind of "agreement" regarding expected demands and an open information flow) while the other extreme may be a pure market relation with many competitors (e.g. auctions via Internet conducted by the purchasing departments of a large company). This attribute is closely related to the *availability of future demands*.

These may be known (by contract) or have to be forecast. The existence of (reliable) demand forecasts is best described by the length of the forecast horizon. Besides the general availability of demand information, the shape of the *demand curve* is of interest. Demand for a specific product may, for example, be quite static, sporadic, or seasonal.

The typical length and the current stage of a *product's life cycle* significantly influence appropriate marketing, production planning and financial strategies. As regards the products to be sold one should discriminate the *number of product types* offered and the *degree of customization*. The latter one may range from standard products to highly specific products (in accordance to the products procured). In the light of mass customization some way in the middle becomes more and more important: constituting customer-specific products from a variety of product options and alternatives being offered. The attribute *bill of materials (BOM)* shows the way that raw materials and components are composed or decomposed in order to generate the final products. If raw materials are just changed in their sizes and shapes, a serial structure is given. In a convergent structure, several input products are assembled (or mixed) to form a single output product. Whereas in a divergent structure, a single input product is disassembled (or split) and several output products are the result. Of course, a structure of a mixture type—combining both convergent and divergent properties—is also possible.

Apart from selling tangible goods the *portion of service operations* is constantly growing (e.g. the training of a customer's personnel).

3.3 Structural Attributes

Structural attributes (see Table 3.2) of a supply chain are grouped into the two categories

- Topography of a supply chain
- Integration and coordination.

As regards the **topography of a supply chain** the attribute *network structure* describes the material flows from upstream to downstream entities which are either serial, convergent, divergent, or a mixture of the three. Note that the network structure often coincides with the BOM. The *degree of globalization* ranges from supply chains operating in a single country to those with entities in several continents. Global supply chains not only have to take into account tariffs and impediments to trade as well as exchange rates varying over time, but also can profit from them. Also the *location of the decoupling point(s)* within the supply chain has to be mentioned. It is the first stage (or location) in the flow of materials where a further processing step or a change in the location of a product will only be executed with respect to a customer order (see also Sect. 1.2). Note, the decoupling point may differ between product groups. Starting with the most upstream location of a decoupling point we have engineer-to-order (with no make-to-stock at all), followed by manufacture-to-order of parts, then assemble-to-order and deliver-to-order. In a vendor managed inventory system a supplier even has to deliver-to-stock since there

Table 3.2 Structural attributes of a supply chain typology

Structural attributes	
Categories	Attributes
Topography of a supply chain	Network structure
	Degree of globalization
	Location of decoupling point(s)
	Major constraints
Integration and coordination	Legal position
	Balance of power
	Direction of coordination
	Type of information exchanged

are no orders from the buyer to replenish inventories. The attribute *major constraints* gives an impression what the main bottlenecks of the supply chain (as a whole) are. These may, for example, be limited production capabilities of some member(s) or the limited availability of some critical materials.

Integration and coordination concerns the attributes legal position, balance of power, direction of coordination and type of information exchanged. The *legal position* of entities has already been mentioned. In case entities are legally separated, an inter-organizational supply chain exists, otherwise it is called intra-organizational. For intra-organizational supply chains it will be much easier to coordinate flows centrally than for inter-organizational supply chains. Also the *balance of power* within an inter-organizational supply chain plays a vital role for decision-making. A dominant member in the supply chain can act as a focal firm. On the other hand, we have a supply chain of equals, named a polycentric supply chain.

As regards information flows, several attributes may be considered. As an example consider the *direction of coordination*. It may be purely vertical or purely horizontal or a mixture of both. Vertical information flows comply with hierarchical planning. On the other hand, horizontal flows may exist between two adjacent entities within the supply chain which can easily and quickly make use of local information (e.g. to overcome the effects of a breakdown of a machine). Also the *type of information exchanged* between members influences planning (e.g. some entities may hesitate to reveal their manufacturing costs but are willing to provide information about available capacities).

While attributes describing a production type are generally accepted and validated for a long time, typologies of the service sector are relatively new and of growing interest (for an early survey see Cook et al. 1999). Also, the aforementioned attributes only provide a basis for a rough grouping of decision problems which may be refined further according to the needs of a given SCM project. For this, special purpose typologies can be of help (e.g. for production processes concerning cutting and packing see Dyckhoff and Finke 1992). In some cases, this will also indicate that special purpose solution procedures may be needed, currently not provided by APS.

In order to reduce the burden associated with an (extensive) typology, one should bear in mind its aim. Since decision-making and decision support is of interest here, one might concentrate on activities to be performed on those products and services regarded most important (e.g. "A" products in an ABC-classification based on the annual turnover, see Silver et al. 1998, p. 32). Furthermore, attention can be focused on those activities which either have to be performed on potential bottlenecks along the supply chain or which affect critical performance criteria considerably (e.g. order lead-time).

Once a list of functional attributes has been established for each entity of a supply chain, it will show the degree of diversity existing in the supply chain. For partners having similar properties the choice of an appropriate decision-making tool (or module of an APS) can be made jointly, saving costs and time. In order to demonstrate the applicability of the above typology, it will be used in the following two sections for the different supply chain types *consumer goods industries* and *computer assembly*. We will come back to these two examples in Sect. 4.3 and in our case studies (Part IV).

3.4 Example for the Consumer Goods Industry

First, the typology will be applied for supply chains where consumer goods are produced and sold. Functional attributes are presented for the consumer goods manufacturing entity only. Structural attributes consider the supply chain as a whole comprising both manufacturers and retailers. Some attributes of our typology are not used within the example because they play only a minor role in supply chains of the consumer goods type. This kind of supply chain is considered again in Sect. 4.3.1 and in Chap. 21. Therefore, our description is rather detailed and affects additional proprietary attributes not mentioned explicitly in the above (universal) typology.

Table 3.3 summarizes the characteristics of the consumer goods supply chain. Since the products to be sold are the determining factor of our example, we start illustrating the *sales type* category.

Sales Type. In the remainder we concentrate on the subset of consumer goods that comprises standard products with a low volume, weight and value per item (e.g. food, beverages, office supplies, or low tech electronics). Since quite often these standard products are just packaged in different sizes or under several brand names, some sort of "divergent" BOM is given. Thus, a typical consumer goods manufacturer offers several hundreds of final items that are technologically related.

The final customer expects to find his preferred brand in the shelf of a grocery or electronics store. If the desired product is not available, he probably changes his mind and buys a comparable product of another manufacturer. This behavior is due to the low degree of product differentiation predominant in the consumer goods industry. Therefore, consumer goods manufacturers are forced to produce to stock by means of demand estimates.

Table 3.3 Supply chain typology for the consumer goods industry

Functional attributes	
Attributes (see Table 3.1)	Contents
Number and type of products procured	Few, standard (raw materials)
Sourcing type	Multiple
Supplier lead time and reliability	Short, reliable
Materials' life cycle	Long
Organization of the production process	Flow line
Repetition of operations	Batch production
Changeover characteristics	High, sequ. dep. setup times and costs
Bottlenecks in production	Known, stationary
Working time flexibility	Low
Distribution structure	Three stages
Pattern of delivery	Dynamic
Deployment of transportation means	Unlimited, routes (3rd stage)
Availability of future demands	Forecast
Demand curve	Seasonal
Products' life cycle	Several years
Number of product types	Hundreds
Degree of customization	Standard products
Bill of materials (BOM)	Divergent
Portion of service operations	Tangible goods
Structural attributes	
Attributes (see Table 3.2)	Contents
Network structure	Mixture
Degree of globalization	Several countries
Location of decoupling point(s)	Deliver-to-order
Major constraints	Capacity of flow lines
Legal position	Intra-organizational
Balance of power	Customers
Direction of coordination	Mixture
Type of information exchanged	Nearly unlimited

Since the product life cycle of standard products typically extends over several years, a solid data basis for forecasting is available. However, demand for some products may be subject to seasonal influences (e.g. for ice cream or light bulbs) or price promotions.

If consumer goods are standardized, the emphasis of marketing has to be set on service level and price. Altogether, a strictly competitive market is given.

Distribution Type. Consumer goods are distributed via wholesalers and/or retailers to the final customers. The distribution network of a consumer goods manufacturer quite often comprises three distribution stages (see Fleischmann 1998 and Fig. 3.1).

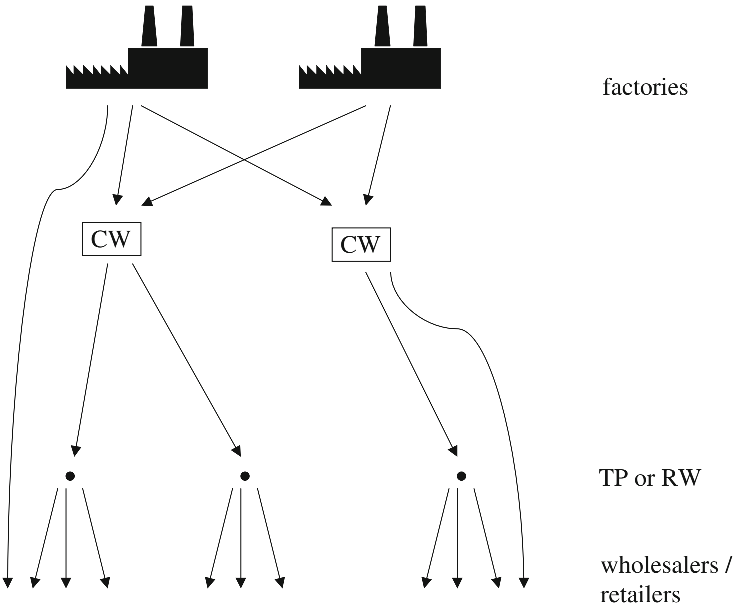


Fig. 3.1 Three-stage distribution system

The product program of the manufacturer is supplied by one or a few factories. Thereby, some product types may be produced in more than one site. The finished goods can temporarily be stored in a few CWs, each of them offering the whole range of products. Large orders of the manufacturer's customers (i.e. wholesalers, retailers or department stores) can be delivered directly from the factory or CW to the respective unloading point.

Since most orders are of rather small size and have to be transported over long distances, a further distribution stage consisting of RWs or stock-less transshipment points (TP) is often used. The customers in the vicinity (at most 100 km radius) of such a RW/TP are supplied in 1-day tours starting from this RW/TP. Over the (typically) long distance between the CW and the RW/TP all orders of the respective region are bundled (usually by third-party service providers) so that a high transport utilization is achieved.

As opposite to RWs, no stock is held in TPs, thus causing lower inventory holding, but higher transportation costs due to the higher delivery frequency. A similar distribution structure may be used by major sales chains which replenish their (large number of) department stores from their own retail CWs.

Production Type. Production of consumer goods often comprises only one or two production stages, e.g. manufacturing and packaging. On each production stage one or a few parallel (continuous) production lines (flow lines) are organized in a flow shop. A line executes various operations. But since these operations are strictly coordinated, each line may be planned as a single unit. The lines show a high degree of automation and are very capital intensive. Because of this automation, however, short and reliable throughput times can be achieved.

The capacity of the production lines is limited and they are usually highly utilized. Therefore, they represent potential bottlenecks. For the handling of the lines, few but well-trained operators are necessary. A short-term expansion of working time is normally not possible. The working time of the whole team supervising a line has to be determined on a mid-term time range. However, in many companies the lines are already operating seven days a week, 24 h a day.

As mentioned above, there are a lot of final items. But these are often technologically related and can be assigned to a few *setup families*. Changeovers between items of the same family are negligible. But changeovers between items of different families cause high setup costs and setup times. Therefore, batch production is inevitable. The degree of these costs and times may vary notably with respect to the family produced last on the same line (sequence dependent setup times and costs).

Procurement Type. Consumer goods frequently have a rather simple BOM. In these cases only few suppliers have to be coordinated. As long as not sophisticated components, but mainly standard products (e.g. raw materials) are needed, procurement is not really a problem. The lead time of raw materials is short and reliable. The life cycles of these materials are rather long. Therefore, mid- and long-term contracts and cooperations ensure the desired flow of raw materials from the suppliers to the manufacturer. Nevertheless, if there should be any unexpected problems in sourcing material, because of the high degree of standardization it is quite easy to fall back on alternative suppliers on the short-term (multiple sourcing).

Topography of the Supply Chain. The production network (maybe several sites producing the same product), the distribution network of the manufacturer and possibly the distribution network of large wholesalers/retailers contain both divergent and convergent elements thus forming a network structure of the mixture type. Production and distribution networks usually extend over several countries, sometimes even over multiple continents. Since products are made to stock, the decoupling point of the manufacturer is settled in CWs or RWs, from which goods are delivered to order. While procurement is quite unproblematic, the limited capacity of the flow lines is the major constraint of the whole supply chain.

Integration and Coordination. Because of the low differentiation the balance of power is shifted towards the customers, i.e. the retailers. As regards the consumer goods manufacturing entity, there is a strong need for intra-organizational coordination. Several organizational units of the same company (e.g. order management, sales, manufacturing, procurement) have to exchange information horizontally. Furthermore, the central planning unit has to coordinate the bulk of decentral units by sending directives and gathering feedback, thus inducing heavy vertical information traffic. Since all of these units belong to the same company, information should be freely available.

In addition, new logistical concepts of SCM result in special emphasis on inter-organizational relations within the supply chain, particularly on the interface between consumer goods manufacturers and large retailers. In particular, a number of companies have made positive experience with:

- The flow of information between the manufacturers and retailers is improved by EDI or WWW connections.
- Short delivery cycles (with rather small quantities) are established in order to closely connect the material flow with the demand of final customers (*Continuous Replenishment/Efficient Consumer Response (ECR)*).
- Traditional responsibilities are changed. Large retailers abstain more and more from sending orders to their suppliers, i.e. the consumer goods manufacturers. Instead they install consignation stores whose contents are owned by their suppliers until the goods are withdrawn by the retailer. A supplier is responsible for filling up his inventory to an extent which is convenient for both the supplier and the retailer. As already mentioned, such an agreement is called *vendor managed inventory* (VMI).

3.5 Example for Computer Assembly

Now a second application of the above general typology will be presented. In order to offer a quite contrary example, a *computer assembly* supply chain has been chosen. A particular instance of this type of supply chain will be described in the case study in Chap. 23. Table 3.4 summarizes the properties of that type so that a direct comparison with the consumer goods type (Table 3.3) is possible. Again, functional attributes are only shown for the computer manufacturing entity, whereas structural attributes characterize the interrelations between different entities of the supply chain.

Sales Type. Computers have a strictly convergent BOM. The system unit is assembled from several components like the housing, the system board, the Central Processing Unit (CPU), hard disk(s), a sound card etc. The degree of customization varies between the two extremes

- *Standard products* with *fixed configurations*, i.e. only some predefined types are offered. Customers merely can choose between these types, but no changes or extensions (at least at the system unit) are possible.
- *Customized products* which are completely *configurable*. In this case the customer specifies which components he wants to get from what supplier or at least the options of the components he wants to get (like a “slow” CPU, but a “high-end” graphics card). The manufacturer tests whether the requested configuration is technically feasible and calculates the price. Because of the ability to combine many different components—again obtainable from several alternative suppliers—an incredibly large number of possible final items is given.

Of course, the usual practice is somewhere in between. For example, some standard computers are defined with a few options like additional RAM or a Blu-Ray drive

Table 3.4 Supply chain typology for computer assembly

Functional Attributes	
Attributes (see Table 3.1)	Contents (fixed/configurable)
Number and type of products procured	Many, standard and specific
Sourcing type	Multiple
Supplier lead time and reliability	Short and long, unreliable
Materials' life cycle	Short
Organization of the production process	Flow shop and cellular
Repetition of operations	Larger/smaller batches
Changeover characteristics	Irrelevant
Bottlenecks in production	Low importance
Working time flexibility	High
Distribution structure	Two stages
Pattern of delivery	Dynamic
Deployment of transportation means	Individual links
Availability of future demands	Forecasts and orders
Demand curve	Weakly seasonal
Products' life cycle	Few months
Number of product types	Few/many
Degree of customization	Standard/customized
Bill of materials (BOM)	Convergent
Portion of service operations	Tangible goods
Structural Attributes	
Attributes (see Table 3.2)	Contents
Network structure	Mixture
Degree of globalization	Several countries
Location of decoupling point(s)	Assemble-/configure-to-order
Major constraints	Material
Legal position	Inter- and intra-organizational
Balance of power	Suppliers and customers
Direction of coordination	Mixture
Type of information exchanged	Forecasts and orders

instead of an ordinary DVD. Or only a limited number of hard disks, CPUs, housings etc. is offered and the customer can only choose between these alternatives. The corresponding final items then have already been tested for technical feasibility and prices have been assigned. In the following, just the two extreme cases are considered.

The computer itself consists of the system unit and some accessories like cables, software, a manual, or a keyboard. A typical order of a customer comprises several order lines for different product families (e.g. desktop computers, servers, notebooks) and external units (peripherals) like speakers, monitors, printers and so on. If customers call for delivery of "complete orders", all order lines of an order have to be delivered simultaneously to the customer (e.g. because printers without computers are useless for the customer). Thus, the BOM comprises several stages like the order itself (consisting of several order lines for computers of different product families and peripherals), computers (system unit and accessories) and system units (housing, main board, etc.). Some computer manufacturers are also responsible for the assembly of the system board from several components like the Printed Circuit Board, chips, etc.

There is a low product differentiation. Price, speed and reliability of the promised due dates are the key performance indicators. The planned order lead times vary — dependent on the product family — between a few days and a few weeks. Because of technological improvements a fast changing environment has to be mastered. Due to the short product life cycles of only a few months, there is a high risk of obsolescence. Total customer demand is known for the next few days only. For the further future, the probability of having fully specified customer orders on hand decreases drastically. Then, (not yet known) customer orders have to be anticipated by forecasts. Demand is weakly influenced by seasonal effects like the Christmas business or year's end business of authorities.

Distribution Type. Typical customers are system integrators offering overall solutions for big corporate customers, medium and small business customers, and consumer market stores which sell standard computers ("consumer PCs") to private customers. In this case, often a two-stage distribution system is used where computers and peripherals are merged by logistics service providers in distribution centers to constitute a complete order. Sometimes manufacturers sell directly to private customers via the Internet. Then, a parcel service is responsible for the delivery to the final customer. It is interesting to note that in the "complete order" case the last stage of the BOM is settled in a distribution center.

Production Type. The main production processes are the "assembly of the system board", the "assembly of the system unit", the "loading of the software", a final "testing" and the "packing" (assembly of the computer). The "assembly of the system board" may be done in-house or in an additional upstream factory, also owned by the computer manufacturing company. But system boards may also be bought from external suppliers. Anyway, system boards are assembled on highly automated flow lines with very short throughput times.

The key process "assembly of the system unit" is also done in flow line organization, but manually. Sometimes a cellular organization is given. Despite of the manual work and the possibly high degree of customization, processing times are stable. Only low skilled personnel is necessary. Therefore, additional staff can be hired on the short term and working time flexibility is high. Fixed configurations can be assembled in large batches. Open configurations, however, have to be produced in small batches because of the individuality of customer demand. Nevertheless, due to the nature of the setup processes (e.g. providing components of the next batch in parallel to the assembly of the current batch), there are no significant setup costs or times. Altogether, serious bottlenecks in production are missing and production capacity does not play a critical role.

Procurement Type. Because of the rather simple production processes, the key competencies of a computer manufacturer actually are the synchronization of suppliers and sales and order management, respectively. Thousands of components, accessories and external units have to be purchased and must be right in place before the assembly or delivery. The products procured are very inhomogeneous. Standard components as well as highly specific components have to be ordered. Supplier lead times range from a few days to several months and are most of the time very unreliable.

Just as it is the case for computers, life cycles of components are often very short due to technological progress. So there is also a high risk of obsolescence at the supply side. Because of mid- to long-term contracts with critical suppliers, there may exist both upper and lower bounds on supply quantities. Such contracts are particularly important when supply shortages can occur and multiple sourcing is not possible, i.e. when the balance of power is shifted towards the supplier.

For some components like hard disks multiple sourcing is common practice. These components are bought from several suppliers. Thus, at least for standard products the computer manufacturer is free to substitute components and to increase orders for alternative suppliers if the one originally planned runs into trouble. Also "downgrading" of components is a practicable (but expensive) way to deal with shortage situations: in this case, a lower value component—being requested but out of stock—is replaced by an alternative component with higher value. For example, a 1,000 GB hard disk is assembled instead of a 750 GB hard disk because the requested lower value component is not in stock any more. Since the price has been fixed earlier and cannot be re-adjusted, the customer does not need to be informed.

Topography of the Supply Chain. The network structure is of a mixture type: lots of suppliers (of components, accessories and peripherals) are linked with a few assembly sites (for system boards and several product families), a few distribution centers, and with a large number of customers (of different types as described above). The whole network may extend over several countries.

Nowadays, most computer manufacturers have successfully shifted their deliver-to-order decoupling point upstream in order to reduce the risky and expensive finished product inventory. In case of fixed configurations, an assemble-to-order decoupling point is now common practice, i.e. computers are only assembled if a respective customer order for a standard configuration has arrived. For open configurations an engineer-to-order decoupling point is given, i.e. an incoming customer request has also to be checked for technological feasibility and an individual price has to be set. Shifting the decoupling point upstream reduces finished product inventory and hedges against demand uncertainty, but also increases order lead times (as long as throughput times are not simultaneously decreased). The performance of the supply chain is primarily limited by constraints on material supply and not by scarce assembly capacity.

Integration and Coordination. Both inter- and intra-organizational members participate at computer assembly supply chains. So there is a need for collaboration between legally independent companies (e.g. by exchanging demand information like forecasts and orders horizontally) as well as a need for vertical coordination of different organizational units of the computer manufacturing company itself. Thus, the direction of coordination is of a mixture type.

Both suppliers and customers may have a high power within such supply chains. The power is extremely high for suppliers that reside in some sort of monopoly or oligopoly like vendors of operating systems or CPUs. As shown above, long-term contracts may ensure the desired flow of critical components from these suppliers.

We will next time come back to the *consumer goods manufacturing* and *computer assembly* types of supply chains in Sect. 4.3. There, the particular planning requirements of these two supply chain types and planning concepts fitting them are derived from the attributes shown above.

References

Cook, D., Goh, C.-H., & Chung, C. (1999). Service typologies: A state of the art survey. *Production and Operations Management, 8*(3), 318–338.

Dyckhoff, H., & Finke, U. (1992). *Cutting and packing in production and distribution: A typology and bibliography*. Heidelberg: Physica.

Fleischmann, B. (1998). Design of freight traffic networks. In B. Fleischmann, J. V. Nunen, M. Speranza, & P. Stähly (Eds.), *Advances in distribution logistics. Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 460, pp. 55–81). Berlin: Springer.

Knackstedt, R. (2009). Supply Chain Typologien. http://www.enzyklopaedie-der-wirtschaftsinformatik.de/wi-enzyklopaedie/lexikon/informationssysteme/crm-scm-und-electronic-business/Supply-Chain-Management/Supply-Chain-Typologien/index.html/?searchterm=supplychaintypologie. Visited on Feb 28, 2014.

Lejeune, M. A., & Yakova, N. (2005). On characterizing the 4 C's in supply chain management. *Journal of Operations Management, 23*(1), 81–100.

Schneeweiss, C. (2002). *Einführung in die Produktionswirtschaft* (8th ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3th ed.). New York: Wiley.

Vonderembse, M. A., Uppal, M., Huang, S. H., & Dismukes, J. P. (2006). Designing supply chains: Towards theory development. *International Journal of Production Economics, 100*(2), 223–238.

Advanced Planning

4

Bernhard Fleischmann, Herbert Meyr, and Michael Wagner

4.1 What is Planning?

Why planning? Along a supply chain hundreds and thousands of individual decisions have to be made and coordinated every minute. These decisions are of different importance. They comprise the rather simple question *“Which job has to be scheduled next on a respective machine?”* as well as the very serious task whether to open or close a factory. The more important a decision is, the better it has to be prepared.

This preparation is the job of *planning*. Planning supports decision-making by identifying alternatives of future activities and selecting some good ones or even the best one. Planning can be subdivided into the phases (see Domschke and Scholl 2008, p. 26)

- *Recognition* and *analysis* of a decision problem
- Definition of *objectives*
- *Forecasting* of future developments
- *Identification* and *evaluation* of feasible activities (*solutions*), and finally
- *Selection* of good solutions.

B. Fleischmann
Chair for Production and Supply Chain Management, University of Augsburg,
Universitätsstraße 16, 86135 Augsburg, Germany
e-mail: bernhard.fleischmann@wiwi.uni-augsburg.de

H. Meyr (✉)
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

M. Wagner
Process Excellence Management, Information Technology, Paul Hartmann AG,
Paul-Hartmann-Str. 12, 89522 Heidenheim, Germany
e-mail: michael.wagner@hartmann.info

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_4,

Supply chains are very complex. Not every detail that has to be dealt with in reality can and should be respected in a plan and during the planning process. Therefore, it is always necessary to abstract from reality and to use a simplified copy of reality, a so-called *model*, as a basis for establishing a plan. The "art of model building" is to represent reality as simple as possible but as detailed as necessary, i.e. without ignoring any serious real world constraints.

Forecasting and *simulation models* try to predict future developments and to explain relationships between input and output of complex systems. However, they do not support the selection of one or a few solutions that are good in terms of predefined criteria from a large set of feasible activities. This is the purpose of *optimization models* which differ from the former ones by an additional *objective function* that is to be minimized or maximized.

Plans are not made for eternity. The validity of a plan is restricted to a predefined *planning horizon*. When reaching the planning horizon, at the latest, a new plan has to be made that reflects the current status of the supply chain. According to the length of the planning horizon and the importance of the decisions to be made, planning tasks are usually classified into three different planning levels (see Anthony 1965):

Long-term planning: Decisions of this level are called *strategic decisions* and should create the prerequisites for the development of an enterprise/supply chain in the future. They typically concern the design and structure of a supply chain and have long-term effects, noticeable over several years.

Mid-term planning: Within the scope of the strategic decisions, mid-term planning determines an outline of the regular operations, in particular rough quantities and times for the flows and resources in the given supply chain. The planning horizon ranges from 6 to 24 months, enabling the consideration of seasonal developments, e.g. of demand.

Short-term planning: The lowest planning level has to specify all activities as detailed instructions for immediate execution and control. Therefore, short-term planning models require the highest degree of detail and accuracy. The planning horizon is between a few days and 3 months. Short-term planning is restricted by the decisions on structure and quantitative scope from the upper levels. Nevertheless, it is an important factor for the actual performance of the supply chain, e.g. concerning lead-times, delays, customer service and other strategic issues.

The last two planning levels are called *operational*. Some authors call the second level *tactical* (e.g. Silver et al. 1998, Chap. 13.2), but as this notion has several contradictory meanings in the literature, it is not used in this book.

A naive way of planning is to look at the alternatives, to compare them with respect to the given criteria, and to select the best one. Unfortunately, this simple procedure encounters, in most cases, three major difficulties:

First, there are often several criteria which imply conflicting objectives and ambiguous preferences between alternatives. For example, customer service ought to be as high as possible while—at the same time—inventories are to be minimized.

In this case no "optimal" solution (accomplishing both objectives to the highest possible degree) exists. A common way to deal with this *multi-objective decision problem* is to set a minimum or maximum satisfaction level for each objective except for one that will be optimized. In the above example one may try to minimize inventories while guaranteeing a minimum customer service level. Another useful way to handle multiple objectives consists in pricing all objectives monetarily by revenues or costs and maximizing the resulting *marginal profit*. However, not every objective can be expressed in monetary values, e.g. the customer service. A more general way is to define scale values or scores for every objective and to aggregate them into a weighted sum. A danger of this procedure is that it yields pretended "optimal" solutions which strongly depend on the arbitrary weights. An APS supports each of these procedures in principle. The case studies in Part IV give examples of some relevant modeling features of such systems.

The second difficulty is caused by the huge number of alternatives that are predominant in supply chain planning. In case of continuous decision variables, e.g. order sizes or starting times of a job, the set of alternatives is actually infinite. But also for discrete decisions, e.g. the sequence of several jobs on a machine, the number of alternatives may be combinatorially large (see Chap. 10). In these cases it is impossible to find an optimal solution by enumeration of all alternatives, and even a feasible solution may be difficult to find. In this situation, mathematical methods of *operations research (OR)* should support the planning process. Some methods are able to determine an exact optimal solution, e.g. Linear Programming (LP) or network flow algorithms, but for most combinatorial problems only near-optimal solutions can be computed by *heuristics*, e.g. local search. The success of these methods also depends on the way a problem is modeled. As examples, for some important types of optimization models the capabilities of OR methods are shown in the Supplement (Part VI).

The third and probably hardest difficulty is dealing with uncertainty. Planning anticipates future activities and is based on data about future developments. The data may be estimated by forecast models, but there will be a more or less important forecast error. This error reduces the availability of products and therefore reduces the customer service a company offers. For improvement of the service safety stocks can be utilized which buffer against demands exceeding the forecast. However, that is not the only way to tackle uncertainty.

Nearly always, reality will deviate from the plan. The deviation has to be controlled and the plan has to be revised if the discrepancy is too large. Planning on a *rolling horizon basis* is an implementation of this plan-control-revision interaction. The planning horizon (e.g. 1 year) is divided into periods (e.g. months). At the beginning of January a plan is made that covers January to December. But only the first period, the so-called *frozen period*, is actually put into practice. At the beginning of the second period (February) a new plan is made considering the actual developments during the first period and updated forecasts for the future periods. The new planning horizon overlaps with the previous one, but reaches one period further (until the end of January of the next year; see Fig. 4.1) and so on.

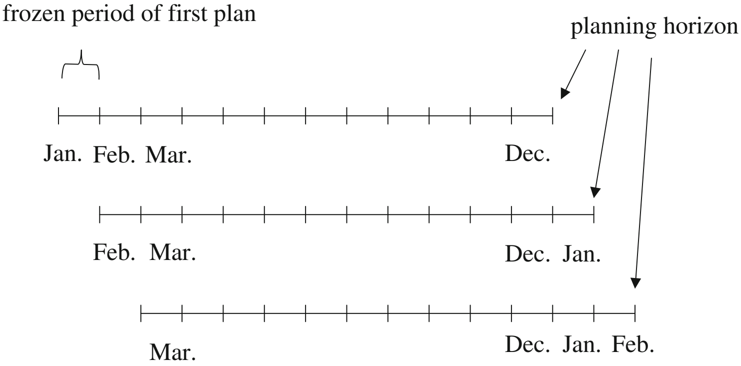


Fig. 4.1 Planning on a rolling horizon basis

This procedure is a common way of coping with uncertainty in operational planning both in classical planning systems and in APS. A more efficient way of updating the plans is *event-driven planning*: A new plan is not drawn up in regular intervals but in case of an important event, e.g. unexpected sales, major changes in customer orders, breakdown of a machine etc. This procedure requires that all data which are necessary for planning, e.g. stocks, progress of work etc., are updated continuously so that they are available at any arbitrary event time. This is the case for an APS which is based on data from an Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) system.

There are three main characteristics of APS:

- *Integral planning* of the entire supply chain, at least from the suppliers up to the customers of a single enterprise, or even of a more comprehensive network of enterprises
- *True optimization* by properly defining alternatives, objectives, and constraints for the various planning problems and by using optimizing planning methods, either exact ones or heuristics (see Fleischmann and Meyr 2003, Chap. 9.4)
- *A hierarchical planning system* (see Schneeweiss 2003 and Chap. 1).

A hierarchical planning system is the only framework permitting the combination of the two preceding properties: Optimal planning of an entire supply chain is neither possible in form of a monolithic system that performs all planning tasks *simultaneously*—this would be completely impracticable—nor by performing the various planning tasks successively—this would miss optimality. Hierarchical planning is a compromise between practicability and the consideration of the interdependencies between the planning tasks.

Note that the traditional material requirements planning (MRP) concept (see Orlicky 1975) which is implemented in nearly all ERP systems does not have any of the above properties: It is restricted to the production and procurement area, does not optimize and in most cases even not consider an objective function, and it is a successive planning system.

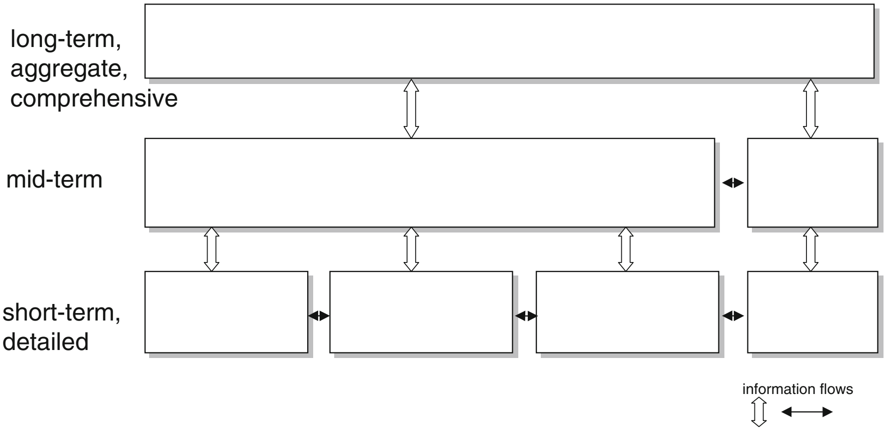


Fig. 4.2 Hierarchy of planning tasks

The main idea of hierarchical planning is to decompose the total planning task into *planning modules*, i.e. partial plans, assigned to different levels where every level covers the complete supply chain but the tasks differ from level to level (see e.g. Miller 2001): On the upmost level, there is only one module, the development of an enterprise-wide, long-term but very rough plan. The lower the levels are, the more restricted are the supply chain sections covered by one plan, the shorter is the horizon and the more detailed is the plan. Plans for different supply chain sections on one level are coordinated by a more comprehensive plan on the next upper level in a hierarchical structure (see Fig. 4.2).

The increasing (resp. decreasing) degree of detail is achieved by disaggregating (resp. aggregating) data and results when going down (resp. up) in the hierarchy. *Aggregation* concerns

- Products, aggregated into groups
- Resources, aggregated into capacity groups
- Time: periods, aggregated into longer ones.

The modules are linked by vertical and horizontal information flows. In particular, the result of a higher planning module sets restrictions for the subordinate plans, and the results of the latter yield feedback information on performance (e.g. costs, lead-times, utilization) to the higher level. The design of a *hierarchical planning system* (HPS) requires a careful definition of the modular structure, the assignment of planning tasks to the modules, and the specification of the information flows between them. Usually, an HPS works with a rolling horizon, where sophisticated coordination of the planning intervals and horizons on the different levels has been suggested in literature (e.g. Hax and Meal 1975; Stadtler 1986).

Planning takes into account future developments, identifies alternatives for future activities and provides directives for their implementation. However, the decisions themselves usually are put into practice outside of the planning system. Because of this separation and because of the above mentioned planning intervals, a time gap between planning and the final implementation has to be bridged which leaves room for unforeseen events. For this reason and in order to keep planning systems manageable, usually not all decisions are prepared in the planning system itself, but there is still some degree of freedom left open (to more precisely specify or revise a plan) until the final *execution* takes place. For the remainder of the book "execution" is defined as the starting and subsequent controlling of activities that have to be carried out immediately. Thus, in contrast to instructions prepared by a planning system, decisions for execution cannot be revised.

An *"execution system"* receives the decisions of a higher–ranked planning system, checks whether the assumptions underlying the plan are still valid, puts in further details when necessary (like assigning transport activities to production orders) and—in case no unexpected events have occurred—brings the overall decisions to final execution. However, if unforeseen events like machine breakdowns etc. have happened, it is up to the execution system to recognize this status and to react immediately. Minor problems may be solved by the execution system directly. If serious problems occur, an "alert" has to be sent back to the planning system, thus initiating an extraordinary re-planning. This event-driven planning simplifies the use of an HPS and makes it more flexible. A prerequisite is a communication system that guides alerts (see Chap. 13) on "events" to the relevant planning levels and tasks. Moreover, the result of one planning task can also generate alerts for other plans.

APS try to "computerize" planning. This might incur some problems for many human planners because they are afraid of being substituted by machines. This fear is based upon three major advantages of APS: they visualize information, reduce planning time, and allow an easy application of optimization methods. However, modeling is always a relaxation of reality. Therefore, human knowledge, experience, and skill is yet required to bridge the gap between model and reality. Planning systems, no matter how *advanced* they might be, remain decision support systems, i.e. they support human decision-makers. Also, in event-driven planning it is usually the human planner (at the interface between the execution and planning system) who decides whether a plan is to be revised. Finally, each planning module requires a human "owner" who is responsible for its function, data, and results.

4.2 Planning Tasks Along the Supply Chain

The whole Supply Chain Network can be split into internal supply chains for every partner in the network, each consisting of four main supply chain processes with substantially different planning tasks. *Procurement* includes all subprocesses which provide resources (e.g. materials, personnel etc.) necessary for production. The limited capacity of resources is the input to the *production* process which may consist of various subprocesses. The *distribution* bridges the distance between the production site and the customers, either retailers or other enterprises processing the products further. All of the above logistical processes are driven by demand forecasts and/or order figures determined by the *sales* process.

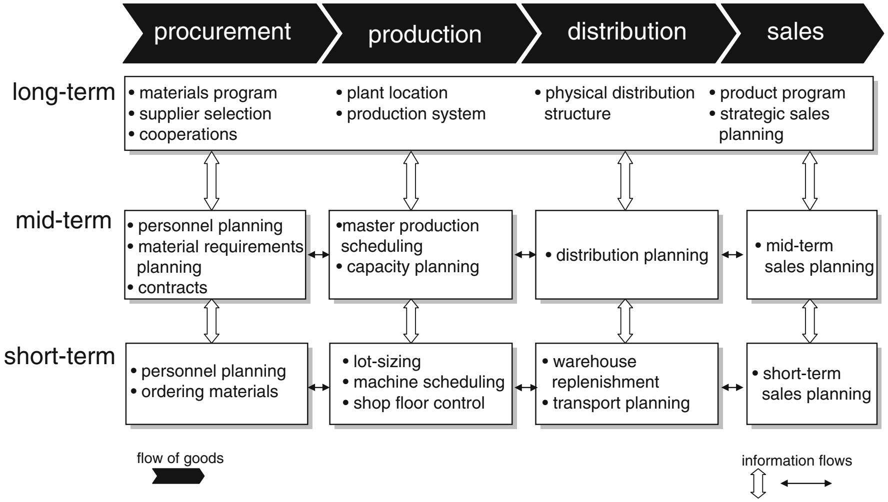


Fig. 4.3 The Supply Chain Planning Matrix

4.2.1 Supply Chain Planning Matrix

The *Supply Chain Planning Matrix* (SCP-Matrix, see Rohde et al. 2000) classifies the planning tasks in the two dimensions “planning horizon” and “supply chain process”. Figure 4.3 shows typical tasks which occur in most supply chain types, but with various contents in the particular businesses. In Fig. 4.3 the long-term tasks are shown in a single box to illustrate the comprehensive character of strategic planning. The other boxes represent the matrix entries, but do not correspond exactly to the planning modules of an HPS. The latter may contain only parts of a box—e.g. on the short-term level the planning tasks can be decomposed according to further dimensions like factory sites or product groups—or combine tasks of several boxes. This is a question of the design of the HPS as mentioned in Sect. 4.1. The SCP-Matrix can also be used to position the *software modules* of most APS vendors (see Chap. 5). The construction of an HPS from the software modules of an APS is discussed in Part IV.

4.2.2 Long-Term Planning Tasks

Product Program and Strategic Sales Planning. The decision about the product program a firm wants to offer should be based on a long-range forecast which shows the possible sales of the whole product range. Such a forecast includes dependencies between existing product lines and future product developments and also the potential of new sales regions. It is often necessary to create different scenarios depending on the product program decision. Long-range forecasts consider information on product-life-cycles and economical, political, and competitive factors. As it is not possible to estimate long-range sales figures for each item, the products need to be aggregated into groups of items sharing common sales and production characteristics. Marginal profits of potential sales and fixed costs for assets have to be considered in the objective function of the product program optimization problem.

When a manufacturing member of a supply chain thinks about introducing a new product (group), it has to determine the location of the decoupling points with respect to the specific customers or markets considered. The location of the decoupling point is predefined by the (strategic) decision on the order lead-times (time between order entry and planned delivery) that probably will be accepted by the customers and therefore should be assigned to a respective product/market combination (see Hoekstra and Romme 1992, Chap. 1.5). The shorter the order lead-time is, the better customers will be satisfied, but—on the other hand—the more downstream the decoupling point has to be settled. As we have seen in the previous chapter (p. 68), this entails some increased demand uncertainty for higher-value products.

Physical Distribution Structure. As more and more companies concentrate their production capacities because of high investments in machining, the distance between the production facility and customers and the respective distribution costs increase. Such trends and a changing environment require a reorganization of the distribution system. The physical structure comprises the number and sizes of warehouses and cross docking points including the necessary transportation links.

Typical inputs for the decision are the product program and the sales forecast, the planned production capacity in each plant, and the underlying cost structure. The objective is to minimize the long-term costs for transportation, inventory, handling, and investments in assets (e.g. warehouses, handling facilities etc.). The question, whether the transports are performed by one's own fleet of vehicles or a third-party carrier, is very closely related to the decision on the physical distribution system. For this reason, the two decision types should be integrated into one model.

Plant Location and Production System. Long-term changes in product programs or sales figures require to review the existing production capacities and locations. Furthermore, the continuous improvement of production technologies leads to new prerequisites. Therefore, the production and decision systems need to be verified. Usually, decisions on plant locations and the distribution structure are made together. They are based on long-term forecasts and production capacities available (without consideration of single machines). Planning the production system means organizing a single production plant, i.e. designing the layout of the plant and the resulting material flows between the machines.

Materials Program and Supplier Selection. The materials program is often directly connected to the product program because the final products consist of some predefined components and raw materials. Sometimes different materials could be used alternatively for the same purpose. In order to select one of them for the materials program, one should consider price (including possible quantity discounts), quality, and availability.

As A-class materials (see e.g. Silver et al. 1998 for an introduction to the ABC-analysis) cause the biggest part of procurement costs, it is reasonable to source those parts through special supply channels. Therefore, the suppliers should be rated according to quality, service, and procurement costs.

Cooperations. Further reduction of procurement costs is often achieved by strategic cooperations with suppliers of A-class items. Planning and evaluation of collaboration concepts gain importance because no longer companies but whole supply chains compete against each other. These concepts include simultaneous reduction of inventories and backorders using ideas like *VMI (vendor managed inventory)*, *EDLP (every-day-low-price strategies)*, and *JIT (just-in-time)* supply. While the above cooperation concepts concern day-to-day operations, *simultaneous engineering* and *consolidation centers* set strategic frames for the daily procurement processes.

4.2.3 Mid-Term Planning Tasks

Mid-Term Sales Planning. The main task in mid-term sales planning is forecasting the potential sales for product groups in specific regions. As the forecasts are input to master production scheduling, the products are grouped according to their production characteristics (e.g. preferred resources, changeover times etc.). The forecast is usually calculated on a weekly or monthly basis for 1 year or less. It includes the effects of mid-term marketing events and promotions on sales. For example, if a temporary price discount is offered, demand will usually peak during the discount period, but reach a low immediately afterward. The necessary safety stocks for finished products are mainly determined by the quality of the forecast. Therefore, it is reasonable to set them on the basis of the forecast error which has to be calculated in the forecasting procedure.

Distribution Planning. Mid-term distribution planning comprises the planning of transports between the warehouses and determination of the necessary stock levels. A feasible plan fulfills the estimated demand (forecasts) and considers the available transportation and storage capacities while minimizing the relevant costs. Inventory holding and transportation costs are elements of the objective function. The planning horizon consists of weekly or monthly buckets. Therefore, the underlying model only considers aggregated capacities (e.g. available truck capacity and not single trucks). The distribution plan could also state the usage of the own fleet and the necessary capacity which must be bought from a third-party carrier.

Master Production Scheduling and Capacity Planning. The result of this planning task shows how to use the available production capacity of one or more facilities in a cost efficient manner. Master production scheduling (MPS) has to deal with seasonal fluctuations of demand and to calculate a frame for necessary amounts of overtime. As the plan is based on families of products and weekly or monthly time buckets, it does not consider single production processes. The objective is to balance the cost of capacity against the cost of (seasonal) inventories. If more than one production facility is considered, the transportation costs between the locations have to be included in the objective function.

Personnel Planning. Capacity planning provides a rough cut overview of the necessary working time for finished products. Personnel planning has to calculate the personnel capacity for components and other production stages which have to be passed before the final assembly of the products. This planning step considers the specific know how of personnel groups and their availability according to labor contracts. If not enough employees are available to fulfill the work load, personnel planning shows the necessary amount of additional part time employees.

Material Requirements Planning. As MPS plans only finished products and critical materials (concentration on bottlenecks), material requirements planning (MRP) has to calculate the production and order quantities for all remaining items. This could be done by the traditional MRP-concept (see Orlicky 1975) which is available in most ERP-systems or by stochastic inventory control systems. Whereas the MRP-concept is suitable for rather important (but non-bottleneck) materials and A-class components, stochastic inventory systems are adequate for C-class items. The calculation of material requirements should support lot-sizing decisions for every item in the bill of materials (BOM) and consider the dependencies between the lots on different levels of the BOM. Mid-term planning sets frames for weekly or monthly order quantities and safety stock levels which ensure the desired service level for production.

Contracts. On basis of the weekly or monthly requirements obtained from MRP, basic agreements with A-class suppliers can be made. Such contracts set the price, the total amount, and other conditions for the materials to be delivered during the next planning horizon.

4.2.4 Short-Term Planning Tasks

Short-Term Sales Planning. In make-to-stock environments the short-term sales planning comprises the fulfillment of customer orders from stocks. Therefore, the stock on hand can be partitioned in committed stocks and the *available-to-promise* (ATP) quantity. If a customer requests a product, the sales person checks on-line whether the quantity could be fulfilled from ATP and turns the requested amount in committed stock. For customer inquiries on the availability of products in future periods the ATP quantity is calculated by adding stock on hand and planned production quantities. The *capable-to-promise* (CTP) functionality is an extension of the traditional ATP task which has the additional option of creating new production orders.

Warehouse Replenishment, Transport Planning. While the mid-term distribution planning suggests weekly or monthly transportation quantities for product families, the short-term warehouse replenishment particularizes this plan in daily quantities for single products. This time-phased deployment schedule considers detailed transportation capacities (e.g. available trucks) and actual customer orders or short-term forecasts. Planned or actual production quantities set the frame for the transportation plan and also restrict the possible degree of customer service. Every day the planned truck loads have to be deployed to customer locations according to a cost-minimizing routing.

Transports occur not only in the distribution process, but also as part of the procurement and may be controlled by either the supplier or the receiver. In the latter case, transport planning is necessary on the procurement side as well, and the transport processes have to be considered also in the mid-term and long-term levels of procurement planning.

Lot-Sizing and Machine Scheduling, Shop Floor Control. Short-term production planning comprises the determination of lot-sizes and the sequences of the lots on the machines. Lot-sizing has to balance the costs of changeovers and stock holding with respect to dependencies between different products. These lots are scheduled according to their due dates and the available capacity with minutely accuracy. Both tasks can independently be executed if the changeovers are not dependent on the sequence of the products. As interruptions or delays are common in complex production environments, the shop floor has to be controlled actively and orders have to be rescheduled appropriately.

Short-Term Personnel Planning, Ordering Materials. The short-term production schedule determines the appropriate personnel of the shop floor with respect to the knowledge and capability. Short-term personnel planning determines the detailed schedule of the staff with consideration of employment agreements and labor costs. As some amount of material might already have been committed by mid-term contracting, the short-term task of filling the commitments in a cost efficient manner still remains.

4.2.5 Coordination and Integration

As already mentioned the planning modules in an HPS need to be connected by information flows. Typical contents of these flows are discussed in the following.

Horizontal Information Flows. The main horizontal flows go upstream, consisting of customer orders, sales forecasts, internal orders for warehouse replenishment and for production in the various departments, as well as of purchasing orders to the suppliers. This way, the whole supply chain is driven by the customers. However, the exchange of additional information in both directions and not only between neighbored modules, can improve the supply chain performance significantly (see bullwhip effect, Chap. 1). This concerns in particular actual stocks, available capacity lead-times, and point-of-sales data.

Basically since Ling and Goddard (1988), the term *Sales & Operations Planning* (S&OP) stands for a quite intensive, mainly horizontal, possibly bi-directional information exchange between sales-oriented (like marketing, promotions' planning, pricing, forecasting) and operations-oriented (like procurement, production, distribution) functional departments of a company on a mid-term, aggregate level, which is, e.g., executed at predefined dates in monthly planning rounds.

A good example for its usefulness are promotional activities in form of temporary price discounts: "Sales" determines a potential price discount and estimates its dynamic effects on demand. Sales price and its corresponding forecasts of demand are given to "Operations" which simulates their effects on the goods flow in the supply chain and on financial KPIs like the profit. Because of the supply chain's complexity (multiple stages, limited capacities etc.) this may be a very challenging task. If the results are not satisfying, sales will rethink the discount and the whole process might be repeated, for example, with a lower discount in mind. Since different organizational units—even though belonging to the same company, often following individual, misaligned incentives—are involved, a consensus may be hard to find. Thus, a planning round usually ends in a joint meeting where the different parties negotiate a final plan they can agree with. The above example shows that S&OP is generally also concerned with financial planning and might be linked to or constrained by business planning and budgeting. As Miller (2001, Chap. 6.5) points out, S&OP is very much in line with hierarchical planning. For instance, the above mentioned capacity check requires sufficient interaction with the short-term, detailed production planning and scheduling departments at the various production sites and thus also necessitates some vertical information flows.

Vertical Information Flows. Downwards flows coordinate subordinate plans by means of the results of a higher level plan. Typical information are aggregate quantities, allocated to production sites, departments, or processes. The timing of quantities is better expressed in form of projected final stocks at the end of the lower level planning horizon because this includes the information about the longer planning horizon on the upper level and provides more flexibility on the lower level. Coordination is also achieved by allocation of capacities and by setting due dates.

Upwards flows provide the upper level with more detailed data on the performance of the supply chain, e.g. actual costs, production rates, utilization of the equipment, lead-times etc. This information can be used in the upper level planning for anticipating the consequences for the more detailed processes on the lower level.

Table 4.1 Specific planning tasks of the SC-type "consumer goods industry"

Attributes and Contents	Impact on Planning
Multiple sourcing of material	Short- and mid-term supplier allocation
Flow line organization	Simultaneous . . .
Batch production	. . . lot-sizing and . . .
Sequence dependent changeovers	. . . scheduling necessary
Known, stationary bottlenecks	Focus on bottlenecks possible
Low working time flexibility	Mid-term planning of working time
Three-stage distribution system	Choice of distribution channels, allocation of safety stocks
Seasonal demand	Building up seasonal stock
Long life cycle	Forecasts based on historical data
Hundreds of product types	Aggregation . . .
Standard products	. . . of final items . . .
Divergent BOM	. . . necessary and possible
Alternative sites	Integrated mid-term production and distribution planning
Deliver-to-order	Forecasts and safety stocks of final items, deployment, shortage planning
Capacity constrained	High utilization aspired, master planning w. r. t. capacity
Intra-organizational	Central coordination by means . . .
Coordination of mixture type	. . . of mid-term "master . . .
Unlimited information	. . . planning" possible
Customer oriented	High service levels aspired

4.3 Examples of Type-Specific Planning Tasks and Planning Concepts

Up to now quite general planning tasks—to some extent appearing for every member of a supply chain—have been described. For example, Hübner et al. (2013) have shown that the SCP-Matrix of Fig. 4.3 is not only appropriate for the manufacturing stage of an SC, but can also be adapted for (grocery) retailers. However, the importance of a specific planning task may vary with respect to the type of supply chain considered. While some tasks, e.g. *lot-sizing* or *ordering materials*, may be extremely difficult (and thus relevant) in one type of SC, they may be quite simple (and therefore negligible in terms of planning) in another type of SC. In order to illustrate this, the two exemplary "SC-types" of the last chapter, *consumer goods manufacturing* and *computer assembly*, will be picked up, again.

Their most important planning tasks are derived from the characteristics of the respective SC-type. To admit a better differentiation, type-specific names will be introduced for some particularly characteristic tasks. Tables 4.1 (p. 83) and 4.2 (p. 84) try to emphasize the causal linkage between the typology of Chap. 3

Table 4.2 Specific planning tasks of the SC-type "computer assembly"

Attributes and Contents	Impact on Planning
Large number of products procured	Mid-term master plan coordinates …
Long supplier lead-times	… purchasing and order promising
Unreliable supplier lead-times	Safety stocks of components
Short materials' life cycle	High risk of obsolescence, mark down, phase-in, phase-out
No bottlenecks in production	Only rough capacity planning necessary
Two-stage distribution system	Merge-on-the-fly
Forecasts and orders available	Forecast netting
Short life cycles	No sales history available
Customized BOM	Configuration check
Convergent BOM	Demand-supply matching, component substitution
Assemble-to-order	Forecasts and safety stocks of components, order promising, allocation planning
Material-constrained	Master planning synchronizes materials
Supplier oriented	Long- and mid-term contracts
Customer oriented	Short delivery times, high delivery reliability aspired

(Tables 3.3 and 3.4) and the impact on planning that the respective attributes of an SC-type have. Additionally, hierarchical planning concepts—especially designed to link these respective tasks—will be shown as an example. For sake of briefness, we concentrate on mid- and short-term operational planning tasks, only.

4.3.1 Consumer Goods Industry

Master Production Scheduling, Capacity Planning and Mid-Term Distribution Planning. As consumer goods manufacturers often face seasonal or strongly fluctuating demand and because the supply chain is capacity-constrained, it is necessary to smooth those effects by pre-production in periods with less customer demand. Here, master production scheduling has to trade off the costs for seasonal stocks due to pre-production and the costs for capacity, especially the additional expenditure for working overtime in periods with peak demand. Up to now, most consumer goods manufacturers had a quite low working time flexibility and therefore changes in the working time pattern already had to be announced on the mid-term. Because of this and because of the scarce capacity, mid-term planning of working time is a crucial task in consumer goods industry. But in the meantime, more and more labor agreements are going to provide flexible working times. Thus, further sophisticated planning methods could lead to lower costs by effectively taking advantage of the additional freedom.

Furthermore, quite a lot of consumer goods companies use more than one site for producing the same product. Thus, the above planning task is getting more complex as capacity problems could be balanced by shifting production quantities from one site to another. Therefore, the costs for transports to the demand point are relevant and have to be considered, too, during the decision process. This extension of master production scheduling leads to a planning model (in general: *capacity-constrained master planning*) which includes both the tasks of mid-term production planning and mid-term distribution planning. If alternative sites producing the same products are sourcing their material from multiple suppliers with substantially different purchasing prices, the master planning model has to integrate the procurement side, too.

Usually, the main result of master planning in the consumer goods area is *not* the production quantity because the demand or forecast might change in the short run. Therefore, short-term scheduling needs to plan with updated demand data. So, the necessary capacity (especially working time, shift pattern, and overtime), the quantity which has to be pre-built (seasonal stock), and the transport capacity on each link are the decisions aided by master planning.

Mid-Term and Short-Term Sales Planning. Since a deliver-to-order decoupling point is given, all production and most of the planning processes are driven by forecasts, more precisely, by forecasts for final items. Forecasting is often the crucial point in consumer goods industries because inventory of finished products is quite expensive and lost sales or backlogs reduce the customer's trust in the company. These effects are sometimes amplified by depreciations which arise because of the low shelf-lives of the products. Therefore, it is necessary to include the seasonal influences and the additional demand which is caused by promotions and marketing activities.

The high number of product types forbids the forecasting of individual final items for a mid-term planning horizon. However, since standard products are considered and since a divergent BOM is given, aggregation of final items to product groups quite often is straightforward. Thus, in mid-term forecasting usually aggregated product groups are considered and the time buckets comprise 1 week or more. As a general rule, the total planning horizon should at least include a complete seasonal cycle. Usually, the planning task consists of two steps. The first involves statistical forecasting under consideration of trends and seasonal effects. For that purpose, the time series of past demand are analyzed and extrapolated into the future. This can easily be done because the long life cycles of products give access to a long history of sales data. In a second step, the additional demand which is caused by planned marketing activities is added to the base forecast.

The short-term forecasting procedure then considers all products and a more detailed time grid (usually daily buckets). As the sales personnel has exact information on promotions for each time bucket (day), the short-term forecast figures should be composed from the statistical base forecast, supplementary demand resulting from promotions, and the change in demand caused by seasonal fluctuations. The information on seasonal effects (calculated in mid-term sales planning) has to be considered as add-on to the base forecast because the short horizon comprises not a complete cycle which is necessary for a seasonal planning model.

Lot-Sizing and Machine Scheduling. Production planning in consumer goods industries seems simple as the production process only consists of one or two stages. But in practice one of the hardest planning problems occurs because of high sequence dependent setup costs and times. This dependence enforces the simultaneous determination of lot-sizes and sequences: changes in the sequence of lots cause alterations in setup costs and setup times (i.e. in the net capacity actually remaining for production) which influence the lot-sizing decision. But the sequencing decision in turn is based on known lot-sizes. This problem is the more crucial, the tighter capacities are. However, since often bottlenecks are stationary and known, it is possible to concentrate on a single bottleneck stage comprising several parallel flow lines.

Transport Planning, Warehouse Replenishment. A further crucial task in consumer goods industries is to balance the inventories in the multi-stage distribution network. Two major types of stocks are affected on the short-term, namely the lot-size and the safety stock.

In a deliver-to-order (= make-to-stock) environment final items have to be produced on forecast, i.e. without knowing customer orders. These production quantities, the so-called *lot-size stock*, have to be distributed among the various stocking points of the 3-stage distribution system at which customer orders arrive. The task of *deployment* is to plan the short-term transportation activities such that customer orders can best possibly be fulfilled.

The deliver-to-order decoupling point also enforces *safety stocks* of final items to be placed at the most downstream stage (i.e. before customer delivery) in order to avoid stock-outs. In a 3-stage distribution system it seems—for risk pooling purposes—often reasonable to hold a part of the safety stocks at upstream warehouses (e.g. central warehouses etc.). Thus, not only the determination of the total amount of safety stock, but also the allocation of safety stocks within the distribution system are important planning tasks, seriously influencing customer service.

Because of the intense competition in consumer goods supply chains and because of the high power of customers (wholesalers, retailers) very high service levels are aspired. However, usually not all incoming customer orders can immediately be served from stock. The crucial task of selecting the minor important orders that can best be postponed (but nevertheless may get lost because customers become annoyed) is called "*shortage planning*".

Coordination and Integration. Since an intra-organizational supply chain is given, information could centrally be made available and central coordination should basically be possible. This coordination task should be settled on the mid-term master planning level because—as we have seen above—here an integration of procurement, production, and distribution is necessary, anyway.

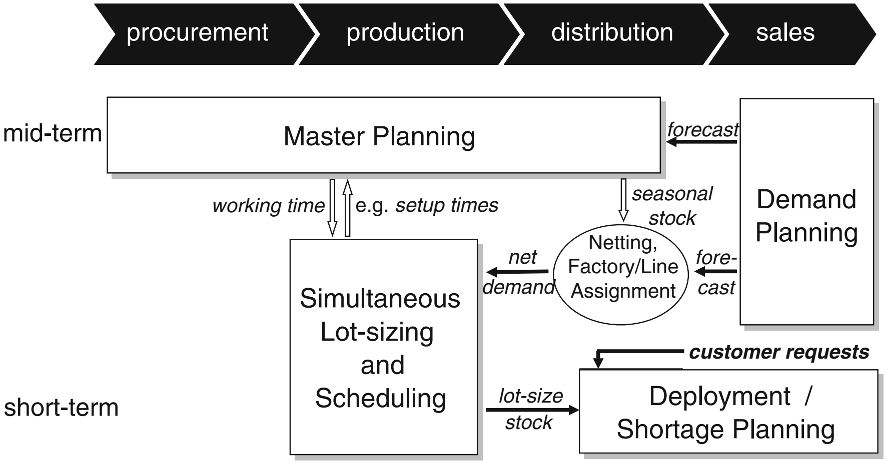


Fig. 4.4 Exemplary operational planning concept for the consumer goods manufacturing SC-type

After deriving these specific planning tasks of the consumer goods SC-type the question is how to link them together to get an integrated planning concept covering the whole (intra-company) supply chain best possibly. As we have seen in Sect. 4.1, *hierarchical planning* is a proper way to allow such a coordination. Of course, only a rough and very general draft of such a planning concept can be shown here. Details concerning aggregation of products or resources, time buckets of planning modules, and planning frequencies have to be skipped over. Thus, Fig. 4.4 only presents a "skeleton" of planning modules and the basic information flows between them. A planning concept for a real world supply chain has to be adjusted appropriately. A more complex consumer goods supply chain may comprise further planning tasks and require additional modules with the respective information flows in between. However, we hope to give some idea how the specific planning requirements of a consumer goods SC-type have to be reflected in a "fitting" planning concept.

Because of the higher degree of uncertainty only such decisions that cannot be postponed to later, shorter-term planning should be predetermined at the (capacity-constrained) *Master Planning* level. Just this information should be passed on the short-term level by means of instructions. As we have already seen, in consumer goods supply chains such decisions usually comprise the determination of working time like shift patterns (because of its low flexibility) and the build up of seasonal stock (because of the long planning horizon being necessary). In order to take sound decisions, all influencing factors should be considered. For mid-term master planning in consumer goods supply chains this means that constraints like

- Dynamic forecasts of customer demand (in order to reflect seasonality)
- Limited capacity of resources and capabilities of extension
- Minimum stocking levels (safety stock and anticipated lot-size stock).

and further decisions like

- Transport flows from factories to central warehouses (CWs) and customers (because stocks can be balanced between CWs)
- Production quantities of factories (in order to evaluate the amount of overtime being necessary).

altogether have to be integrated in a single, holistic view of the supply chain.

This can (for reasons of complexity) and should (because of uncertainty) only be done in an aggregate manner, e.g. by means of product types, aggregate resources and monthly time buckets. Demand information has to be available at the same aggregation level. Such mid-term forecasts often are made in a further *Demand Planning* task by a central Sales department by consolidating the (more accurate) decentral forecasts of their regional dependencies and upgrading this aggregate forecast with additional, centrally available information like planned TV advertisements etc.

Because of seasonality the planning horizon usually should include at least one seasonal cycle—quite often a year. To make mid-term planning more realistic, decisions of the short-term level, to be taken at later moments, have to be anticipated. In consumer goods supply chains average setup times (also reducing mid-term capacity, but not being considered in detail in mid-term planning) or the average level of lot-size stock are of relevance. These essentially are a result of the shorter-term lot-sizing and scheduling module.

Short-term planning has to respect the instructions of the mid-term planning level. However, short-term planning has a more detailed view of the supply chain. For example, since *Simultaneous Lot-sizing and Scheduling* (SLS) has to decide about changeovers, now "setup families" have to be considered which have the property that setup costs and setup times only occur for changeovers between items of different families (see Sect. 3.4, p. 64). Usually, a product type consists of several setup families. Thus, there is a higher level of detail than it was at mid-term master planning.

Also a shorter planning horizon suffices (e.g. 2 months) and capacities of production lines instead of aggregate resources are the limiting factor. Consequently, the aggregate instructions of the mid-term planning level have to be disaggregated into more detailed instructions for the short-term level. That means that working time commitments have to be refined at the decentral factories (maybe within an additional master production scheduling task) and that seasonal stocks of product types have to be assigned to setup families.

On the short-term, usually more accurate forecasts of customer demand are available. These short-term forecasts, the disaggregated seasonal stock, and the planned safety stocks are balanced with the initial stocks that are currently available at the central warehouses to compute the net demand that has to be satisfied by SLS. This net demand furthermore has to be *assigned* to (the production lines of) the factories. Note, if initial inventories have fallen below the safety stock levels, a part of the net demand is used to "refill" safety stocks. Also note that this *Netting* procedure has the character of a disaggregation step and that due to the better demand information the mid-term (virtual) transportation flows between factories, central warehouses, and customers normally have to be revised on the short-term.

At each factory, the decentral SLS is responsible for production line planning, i.e. determining the sizes and sequences of production lots of setup families. The lot-size stock of final items, resulting from a further disaggregation of setup families into final items (within SLS), has to be *deployed* to the CWs at which customer requests arrive. As the deliver-to-order decoupling point indicates, the final *Shortage Planning* at the CWs matches the incoming customer orders against the forecast-based stocks and determines whether and when a certain order will be delivered.

Finally note that—for sake of clarity—only two dimensions are printed in Fig. 4.4, but actually three dimensions would be necessary. This is due to the fact that there may be several factories and CWs where planning tasks like SLS or demand planning have to be tackled decentrally. Furthermore, additional planning levels and modules may be required, e.g. in order to plan the movement of machines or tools between factories (see e.g. Sect. 21.1.2). This has to be done if total customer demand is stable but regional customer behavior changes over time. Then, it may be advantageous to serve customer demand always from the nearest factory in order to save transportation costs of finished products, but this also depends on the costs for the movement of machines. Such a planning task would have a lower planning frequency than the ordinary master planning described above.

This example already shows that our typology is by far not (and cannot be) comprehensive. Even a small change in the assumptions being made may have significant impact on planning tasks and planning concepts. As a second example, in our consumer goods supply chain we (implicitly) restricted ourselves to products with a rather long shelf life. If this is not the case (e.g. for fresh food), holding stocks is only possible for a very short time. Then excess capacity instead of inventory has to balance seasonal demand and the lot-size stock has to be restricted, too. So the planning concept of Fig. 4.4 is not appropriate any more and has to be adjusted accordingly. However, we think that quite a lot of supply chains fit the consumer goods SC-type introduced above. Nevertheless, the fresh food example shows that it is very important to document *how* a planning concept has been derived from the specific characteristics of an SC-type. Because only then it is possible to check whether the own supply chain fits the type and where adjustments in the planning concept have to be made.

As a second and quite contrary example of type-specific planning tasks and corresponding planning concepts we now come back to the computer assembly type introduced in Sect. 3.5.

4.3.2 Computer Assembly

As pointed out below and summarized in Table 4.2, the specific characteristics of the computer assembly SC-type necessitate special emphasis on quite different planning tasks.

Master Production Scheduling, Capacity Planning and Mid-Term Distribution Planning. As opposite to the consumer goods type, less a capacity-constrained, but rather a material-constrained supply chain can be found. Because of the high working time flexibility, capacity of production is only a minor focus of mid-term planning. The limited availability of some important components, however, is a serious problem. If critical suppliers have a high power within the supply chain, mid- to long-term contracts (comprising both maximum supply and minimal purchasing quantities) ought to ensure the desired flow of components. These commitments limit the material supply (upper and lower bounds) that can be utilized. Due to their long lead-times quite a lot of components have to be ordered in good time on basis of demand forecasts.

Both material constraints and long lead-times enforce a mid-term balancing of demand against possible component supply. In so doing backlogs may arise. As will be shown below, *order promising* needs to know component availability in order to set reliable delivery dates as soon as customer requests arrive. The information about availability (the so-called ATP quantities) is a result of this *material-constrained master planning*. Thus master planning has to synchronize the purchasing of a vast number of different components (planned component inflow) and to provide this information about planned component availability for *order promising* in form of ATP.

Mid-term distribution planning is only a relevant topic if an order can be satisfied from alternative sources such that one needs to choose between different distribution channels. Only in this (rather seldom) case, the distribution system has to be incorporated in master planning.

Mid-Term Sales Planning. In configure-to-order and assemble-to-order environments all assembly processes are kicked off by a specific customer order. Processes upstream from the decoupling point—and especially the *purchasing*—have to be based on forecasts, either directly on forecasts for components or indirectly on forecasts for final items.

In the first case, component demand could be estimated *directly* on basis of the sales histories and the assembly histories, respectively. In case of short life cycles, there is only a very poor history available. Sometimes, knowledge about life cycles of related components with similar functionality (e.g. of the discontinued predecessor) can be utilized as a surrogate. However, such a direct approach is mostly useful for C-components and -materials with minor value and rather long life cycles.

For high tech A-components with rather short life cycles the risk of obsolescence is very high and not only understocking, but also overstocking should be avoided. Then, one may try to *indirectly* derive a (hopefully) more accurate component demand from the production program. Thus final item demand has to be estimated on basis of aggregate product types. Component demand (= planned component inflow) has to be derived from the planned production quantities in a sort of BOM explosion (as integral part of the master planning process). This task can quite easily be implemented in assemble-to-order environments where standard variants are predominant. In case of a configure-to-order decoupling point, however, also the structure of the BOM, i.e. the share of components within product types (e.g. the share of 1 TB and 500 GB hard disks within consumer PCs) has to be estimated which is an extremely difficult problem. Note that the component demand considered here corresponds to the planned component inflow stated above as a result of master planning. But the master planning process has to simultaneously respect supplier lead-times and material constraints. Thus master planning is more than a simple forecasting procedure.

Short-Term Sales Planning. On the short-term more accurate demand information is available, i.e. the already known customer orders' share of actual demand is higher. So one has to wonder how to integrate this information into the forecasting process and how to match "old" forecasts with incoming customer orders ("forecast netting"). The latter problem actually comprises the tasks of controlling forecast accuracy and reacting to forecast errors. Since forecast errors should be hedged against by safety stocks, here refilling of safety stocks (in case of too pessimistic forecasts) or reduction of the currently available stock (in case of too optimistic forecasts) are addressed. In consumer goods supply chains this netting procedure is still a relatively simple task because just stocks of final items have to be considered. In computer assembly supply chains, however, stocks of components have to be netted. This implies that forecast accuracy can also be measured on the component level.

Besides the danger of understocking, there is a high risk of overstocking of components because of their short life cycles. Thus, at the end of the life cycle one possibly has to take care about promotions or discounts in order to get rid of obsolete component stocks. In any case, older components have frequently to be replaced with their more modern successors (phase-in, phase-out). Thus, quite often forecasts for both predecessor and successor have to be aligned (see Chap. 7).

An upstream decoupling point entails rather long order lead-times. Thus—as compared to consumer goods manufacturing—there is a noticeable time span between a customer request and the delivery of the complete order to the customer in computer assembly supply chains. If a customer has to wait anyway, he at least wants to get a reliable promise at which point in time his order will be delivered (a so-called "due date" or "promised date"). So the *order promising* and all subsequent further *demand fulfillment* processes are very important tasks within such a type of supply chain. Whereas short delivery times and early due dates are aspired by order promising, the compliance with that due date has highest priority throughout the demand fulfillment afterward.

Quite often *order promising* is an on-line task. A customer wants his due date to be assigned very soon after his request (e.g. within a few minutes). Then order promising has to be executed on a first-come-first-served basis. Thus, there is a high chance that a less lucrative order books components that later on could be assigned to a more lucrative order. In order to realize higher profits, it may be useful to allocate quota of components to specific customer classes (as it is well known from yield management and flight ticketing). Such a "refinement" of ATP is sometimes called *allocation planning*. Note that allocation planning is only required in shortage situations.

Lot-Sizing and Machine Scheduling. As we have seen, in computer assembly supply chains setup costs and times are negligible. There are no serious bottlenecks in production and working time is quite flexible, even on the short-term. Thus lot-sizing is irrelevant and scheduling the *released* customer orders ("*production orders*", "*jobs*") with the objective of meeting the promised due dates also is not a very critical task.

However, in order to select the orders to be released next, the currently available, anonymously purchased stocks of components ("supply") have to be assigned to the already promised customer orders ("demand"). This *demand-supply matching* is only important in shortage situations. If supply of components is not sufficient to satisfy all customer orders in time, i.e. with respect to the promised due dates, one has to decide which demand should be backlogged and which supply should be accelerated. In the first case, the Order Management department has to contact some carefully selected customers and to inform them about delaying their orders. Of course, simultaneously new second or even third promised dates have to be set ("*re-promising*"). In the second case, the Procurement department has to negotiate with some critical suppliers in order to (hopefully) speed up the delivery of their components. Since hundreds of components and thousands of customer orders might be concerned and thus should be considered, this obviously is a very difficult task. Note that there can be further degrees of freedom, e.g. due to component substitution, because customers might be satisfied by similar components of alternative suppliers not originally agreed on.

Transport Planning, Warehouse Replenishment. Like it was the case for mid-term distribution planning, shorter-term transport planning is not a critical task. Sometimes, there may be a choice between alternative transportation modes, e.g. between "normal" delivery by a carrier and "express" delivery by a parcel service.

It is interesting to note that—because of the convergent BOM—an assignment of currently available stock to customer orders, similarly to the demand-supply matching, may be required at several stages downstream from the decoupling point. The latest possible stage in a 2-stage distribution system are the distribution centers where different order lines (e.g. monitors and computers) have to be "matched" to a complete order. Such matching tasks are necessary whenever a customer order initiates the release of material (or the execution of some processes), but the material released (or the output of the process) will not durably remain assigned to this specific order. For example, customer order 1 may initiate the assembly of a system unit, but order 2, having a higher priority, will finally catch this unit. Such a procedure increases flexibility, yet also decreases the stability of a system. The earliest possible "marriage" between an order and its components—as the other extremal—would be the *durable* assignment of ATP on hand at the order promising stage. Then, very reliable due dates can be promised (because the necessary components are already on stock and cannot be caught by other orders) and a complete tracking and tracing of this order is possible. Obviously, such a procedure necessitates a high stock level due to high WIP.

However, the major focus of short-term planning is on the supply side. As introduced above, safety stocks have to be held on component level. This is the more important, the longer and the less reliable supplier lead-times are. As compared to the consumer goods supply chain, determination of correct safety stock levels is more complicated since service levels are usually defined and measured for finished products, whereas safety stocks have to be set for components. Because of the short material life cycles, there is a high risk of obsolescence, too. So at the end of the life cycles, short-term safety stock planning has the character of a newsboy problem (see Nahmias 2005, Chap. 5).

Coordination and Integration. Due to the high power of some suppliers and customers, intensive collaboration should be established, e.g. in order to exchange capacity (material availability) or demand information. For the intra-company part of planning, also central coordination by means of a (material-constrained) master plan is useful which synchronizes the activities of the Sales, Production, Procurement, and Order Management departments. The outcome of master planning should be the planned inflow of components. As can be seen in Fig. 4.5, this information is used to synchronize the purchasing (by means of the aggregate inflow) and order promising (by means of ATP). The input of master planning may be mid-term forecasts for final item demand (aggregated to product types) and attach rates, i.e. forecasts for the share of components within these product types. Both are results of a *Demand Planning* task which usually is in the responsibility of the Sales department. As for consumer goods supply chains, also decentral forecasts of several sales regions have to be consolidated and upgraded to an aggregate forecast for the company.

Thus, the task of *Master Planning* is to link the planned component inflow with final item demand. This task would be straightforward if there weren't any constraints. While production capacity is a rather loose limitation, the problem is to respect upper and lower bounds for the procurement of some critical components and to respect the varying, partly long lead-times. The objective should be to balance inventory holding costs for components against profit that might be obtained by different product types in several regional markets. Note, however, that purchasing and order promising not necessarily have to be synchronized by taking monetary objectives into account because just a *unique* master plan—no matter whether cheap or expensive—is required.

Purchasing needs to know about the aggregate component inflow master planning calculates with, e.g. about the weekly or monthly inflow of hard disks of a specific size or class of sizes. Concrete purchasing orders to each supplier (which entail a higher level of detail) have to meet this aggregate component inflow best possibly. Thereby, multiple sourcing, supplier contracts, economic lot-sizes, and safety stock targets (including forecast netting) have to be taken into consideration. The master plan can only take care of the most critical A-components. Thus, the

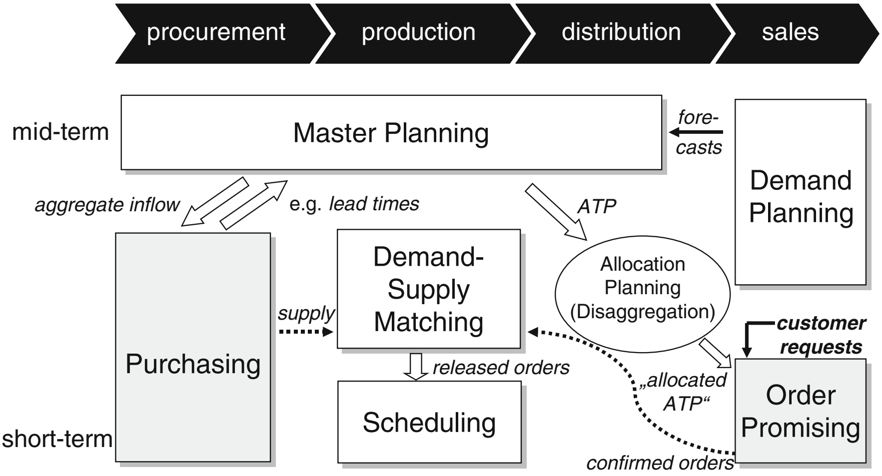


Fig. 4.5 Exemplary operational planning concept for the computer assembly SC-type

remaining B- and C-components have to be forecasted and ordered, directly. The result of purchasing is the component inflow (component supply) that arrives at the inbound warehouses and becomes available for assembly. In order to feed master planning with up-to-date data, purchasing has to provide realistic information about lead-times and minimum or maximum purchasing quantities of critical components.

On the other hand, order promising requires information about ATP quantities, i.e. the part of the component stock on hand and the expected component inflow (already in transit or planned by master planning) that has not yet been allocated to specific orders and thus can be promised to customers in the future.

Since final item demand has driven the master plan, there already has been some rough assignment of component stock—and thus ATP—to different markets. However, if detailed quotas for smaller sales regions are required to permit an on-line order promising, the output of the master plan has to be refined into "allocated ATP" in a further *Allocation Planning* step. Similar to the netting procedure in consumer goods supply chains, this task primarily is a disaggregation step because the major (material-constrained) decisions about assignment of component stock to markets have to be taken on the master planning level. *Order Promising* then suggests a due date for an incoming customer order by searching within allocated ATP for all requested components of the order. In case of customer compliance with the date, the confirmed order finally books the corresponding components within allocated ATP (but usually not within physical stock) so that they cannot be promised a second time.

The coupling to short-term production planning is rather loose. *Demand-Supply Matching* has to balance the available stock of components—which is the actual supply resulting from short-term purchasing activities—with the confirmed orders. Note that actual and planned supply may deviate considerably because of unreliable lead-times. But this discrepancy should be buffered by safety stock (within master planning and purchasing as well). Besides supply acceleration activities and re-promising of orders, the confirmed orders, to be released to the shop floor next, are the results of Demand-Supply Matching. These assembly jobs afterward have to be *scheduled* on the shop floor. As mentioned above, if there is only a temporary assignment of components to customer orders, planning tasks similar to this demand-supply matching may also occur at further downstream stages, the last of them being settled at a distribution center.

Of course, there may exist other useful ways to hierarchically link the planning tasks and planning modules of a computer assembly supply chain. However, a planning concept for computer assembly has to take into account the specific requirements of such a type of supply chain.

References

Anthony, R. (1965). *Planning and control systems: A framework for analysis*. Boston: Harvard University.

Domschke, W., & Scholl, A. (2008). *Grundlagen der Betriebswirtschaftslehre* (4th ed.). Berlin: Springer

Fleischmann, B., & Meyr, H. (2003). Planning hierarchy, modeling and advanced planning systems. In A. de Kok & S. Graves (Eds.), *Supply chain management: Design, coordination, operation. Handbooks in Operations Research and Management Science* (Vol. 11, pp. 457–523). Amsterdam: North-Holland.

Hax, A. C., & Meal, H. C. (1975). *Hierarchical integration of production planning and scheduling. North-Holland/TIMS Studies in the Management Sciences*. Amsterdam: North-Holland.

Hoekstra, S., & Romme, J. (1992). *Integral logistic structures: Developing customer-oriented goods flow*. New York: Industrial Press.

Hübner, A., Kuhn, H., & Sternbeck, M. (2013). Demand and supply chain planning in grocery retail: An operations planning framework. *International Journal of Retail & Distribution Management*, *41*(7), 512–530.

Ling, R., & Goddard, W. (1988). *Orchestrating success—Improve control of the business with sales & operations planning*. New York: Wiley

Miller, T. (2001). *Hierarchical operations and supply chain planning*. Berlin: Springer.

Nahmias, S. (2005). *Production and operations analysis* (5th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill.

Orlicky, J. (1975). *Material requirements planning*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Rohde, J., Meyr, H., & Wagner, M. (2000). Die supply Chain Planning Matrix. *PPS Management*, *5*(1), 10–15.

Schneeweiss, C. (2003). *Distributed decision making* (2nd ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Stadtler, H. (1986). Hierarchical production planning: tuning aggregate planning with sequencing and scheduling. In S. Axsäter, C. Schneeweiss, & E. Silver (Eds.), *Multistage production planning and inventory control. Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 266, pp. 197–226). Berlin: Springer.

Part II

Concepts of Advanced Planning Systems

Structure of Advanced Planning Systems

5

Herbert Meyr, Michael Wagner, and Jens Rohde

APS have been launched independently by different software companies at different points in time. Nevertheless, a common structure underlying most of the APS can be identified. APS typically consist of several *software modules* (eventually again comprising several software components), each of them covering a certain range of planning tasks (see Rohde et al. 2000).

In Sect. 4.2.1 the most important tasks of supply chain planning have been introduced and classified in the two dimensions *planning horizon* and *supply chain process* by use of the SCP-Matrix (Fig. 4.3). As Fig. 5.1 shows, certain planning sections of the SCP-Matrix, e.g. mid-term procurement, production and distribution, are typically covered by a respective software module. The names of the modules vary from APS provider to APS provider, but the planning tasks that are supported are basically the same. In Fig. 5.1 supplier-independent names have been chosen that try to characterize the underlying planning tasks of the respective software modules.

APS typically do not support all of the planning tasks that have been identified in Sect. 4.2.1. In the remainder of the book it will be shown which tasks are actually considered (Part II), how to select and implement APS (Part III), how to build models using software modules (Part IV) and which solution methods are commonly

---

H. Meyr (✉)
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

M. Wagner
Paul Hartmann AG, Process Excellence Management, Information Technology, Paul-Hartmann-Str. 12, 89522 Heidenheim, Germany
e-mail: michael.wagner@hartmann.info

J. Rohde
SAP AG, Dietmar-Hopp-Allee 16, 69190 Walldorf, Germany
e-mail: jens.rohde@sap.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_5,

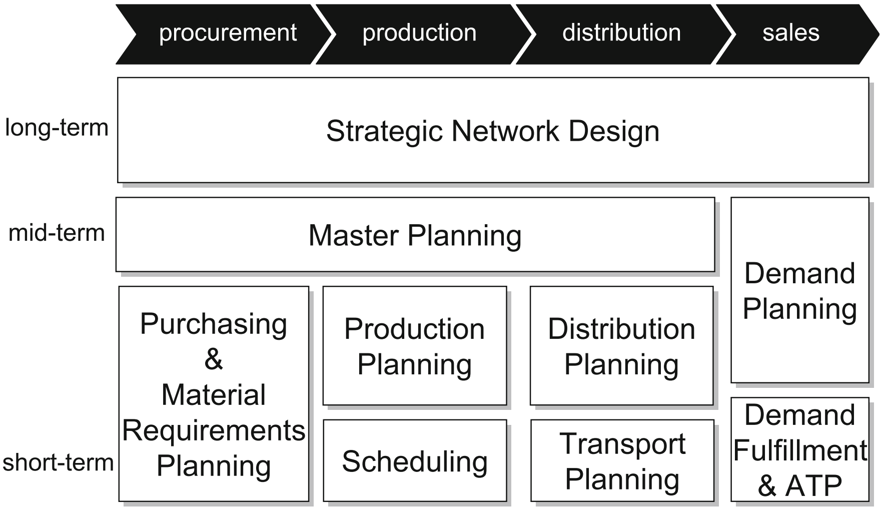


Fig. 5.1 Software modules covering the SCP-Matrix

used (Part VI). In the meantime, the following provides an overview of the structure of the software modules and the planning tasks concerned:

Strategic Network Design covers all four long-term planning sections, especially the tasks *plant location* and the design of the *physical distribution structure*. Some questions that arise in *strategic sales planning* (e.g. which products to place in certain markets) can be considered, too. Basically, the design of the supply chain and the elementary material flows between suppliers and customers are determined.

Demand Planning. Further tasks of *strategic sales planning* (e.g. long-term demand estimates) and the *mid-term sales planning* are usually supported by a module for Demand Planning.

Demand Fulfillment & ATP. Most APS providers offer Demand Fulfillment & ATP components that comprise the *short-term sales planning*.

Master Planning coordinates procurement, production, and distribution on the mid-term planning level. The tasks *distribution, capacity* and *mid-term personnel planning* are often considered simultaneously. Furthermore, *master production scheduling* is supported.

Production Planning and Scheduling. If there are two separate software modules for Production Planning and Scheduling, the first one is responsible for *lot-sizing* whereas the second one is used for *machine scheduling* and *shop floor control*. Quite often, however, a single software module ought to support all three tasks.

Planning on such a detailed, short-term planning level is particularly dependent on the organization of the production system. Therefore, all bottlenecks have to be considered explicitly. If multi-stage production processes and product structures exist, they have to be coordinated in an integrative manner. In order to meet the specific requirements of particular industries, some software vendors offer alternative Production Planning and Scheduling modules.

Transport Planning and Distribution Planning. The short-term *transport planning* is covered by a corresponding software module. Sometimes an additional Distribution Planning module deals with material flows in a more detailed manner than can usually be done by Master Planning.

Purchasing & Material Requirements Planning. The planning tasks *BOM explosion* and *ordering of materials* are often left to the ERP system(s), which traditionally intend to supply these functionalities and are needed as transaction systems, anyway. As far as non-bottleneck materials are concerned, the BOM explosion indeed can be executed within an ERP system. However, an "advanced" purchasing planning for materials and components, with respect to alternative suppliers, quantity discounts, and lower (mid-term supply contracts) or upper (material constraints) bounds on supply quantities, is not supported by ERP systems. Not all APS providers launch a special software module Purchasing & Material Requirements Planning that supports (mid- to) short-term procurement decisions directly. Sometimes, at least a further Collaboration module helps to speed up the traditional interactive (collaborative) procurement processes between a manufacturer and its suppliers.

The software modules of APS are dedicated to deterministic planning. However, there are uncertainties on both the inbound (unreliable suppliers, machine breakdowns) and the outbound (unknown customer demand) side. In order to hedge against uncertainty, buffers have to be installed—either in the form of safety stocks or safety times. Buffering against uncertainty is a task that covers all supply chain processes and actually cannot be assigned to a single software module because it depends on the particular industry and the locations of the decoupling points (see Tempelmeier 2001). However, in accordance with some software providers, we describe the safety stock planning functionality of APS in Chap. 7, when discussing the details of the Demand Planning module.

The planning tasks may vary substantially dependent on the particular industries and supply chains, respectively. This is especially true for the short-term planning tasks (see e.g. Drexl et al. 1994). APS providers are increasingly becoming aware of this situation. Therefore, they offer several software components and/or software modules covering the same planning tasks, yet respect the peculiarities of the particular type of supply chain considered. So actually, a third dimension *supply chain type* should be added to Fig. 5.1. For the sake of clarity, however, the need for industry-specific solutions is visualized in a separate figure (Fig. 5.2).

Software modules can be seen as some sort of "planning kit". The users buy, install and integrate only those modules that are essential for their business. In most cases, not all modules of an APS provider are installed. Sometimes, but not often, components of different APS providers are combined.

The reverse is also possible. Some APS providers do not offer software modules for all planning tasks. However, APS suppliers seem to be highly interested in

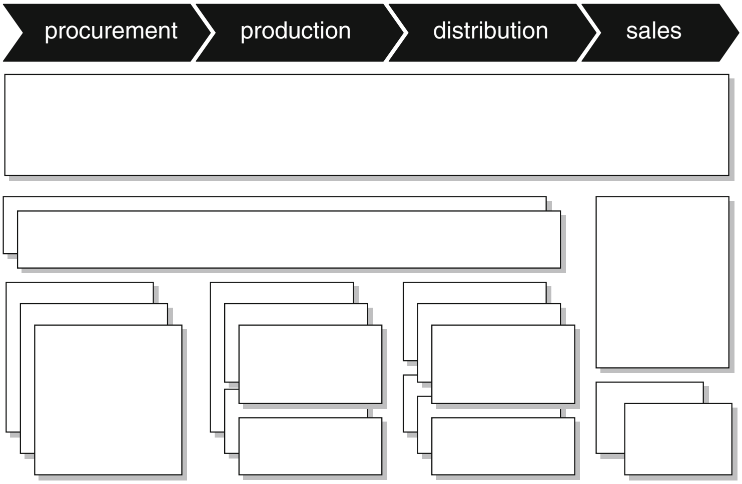


Fig. 5.2 Modules of APS for particular industries

providing complete solutions. As a result, further modules for supplier and customer collaboration and supply chain execution (as we will see later on) have been launched. Quite often, APS vendors bundle APS modules together with modules for ERP and CRM in order to provide a comprehensive supply chain suite. Thus, sometimes it may be hard to identify the *planning* modules of the suite (especially their functionality) and to verify the APS-structure described above when visiting the web pages of the respective software companies.

Software modules are not always implemented for the planning tasks they originally had been designed for. For example, a Master Planning module can be used for Distribution Planning. This happens if modeling features of the modules are quite similar and the same solution method can be applied to different types of problems.

Besides the already proposed software modules, additional software components are frequently supplied, which support the coordination of different software modules as well as the integration with other software systems, e.g. ERP systems or Data Warehouses (see Chap. 13).

However, preparing the technological capability to establish information links between different software modules is only the first step. The crucial question is what information should flow at which point in time. So the problem is to design and implement planning concepts that coordinate these software modules with respect to the objectives of the enterprise and supply chain as a whole, respectively, in the most effective manner. In Chap. 4 such planning concepts have been presented and it has been shown that they have to fit the particular planning requirements of different types of supply chains. Quite often, APS vendors provide solutions for particular industries, i.e. they arrange a set of software modules that are intended to serve a certain industry well. So far, however, “workflows” for particular industries

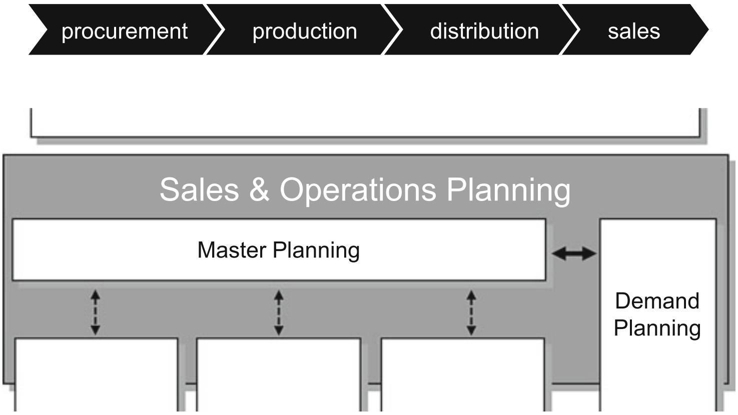


Fig. 5.3 Modules for Sales & Operations Planning

are only seldom provided. Such workflows give some advice on how to establish the information flows between these modules so that they are well-integrated with respect to the peculiarities of the respective industry. This is achieved by rather general templates.

The *Sales & Operations Planning software modules* that software vendors increasingly launch and promote in recent times seem to be a welcome step into this direction. These modules support the S&OP planning task which has been described in Sect. 4.2.5 (p. 82). As Fig. 5.3 illustrates, their main purpose is to enable a smooth exchange of information between the Demand Planning and Master Planning modules, which represent a company's sales and operations responsibilities on the mid-term, aggregate level. Traditionally, the corresponding organizational departments do—because of misaligned incentives—rather work against each other than with each other. Their information exchange often is cautious and tardy. Sales & Operations Planning modules help to standardize and accelerate this process, to increase transparency, thus to generate trust between the different organizational units, and to better integrate the respective planning tasks. Since they can make use of the other mid-term software modules, they do not necessarily need to offer planning functionality by themselves.

Also frequently offered are the tools for the integration (mostly using Internet technology) of different supply chain partners operating in different locations. These software components provide the necessary data for a supply chain-wide, long- and mid-term planning, and communicate the outcome of a central planning process to the respective de-central units. In most cases, an alert system supports the interaction between central and de-central planning (see Sect. 4.1). Since Internet technology can be applied for various purposes, APS suppliers also offer additional e-business tools, e.g. for the opening of virtual markets in order to purchase raw materials.

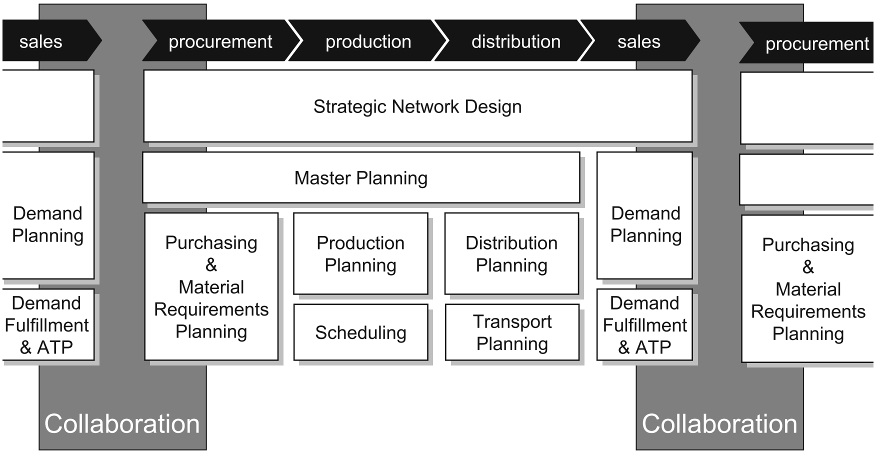


Fig. 5.4 Collaboration between APS

This book, however, concentrates on collaboration, not on market-based coordination. Market-based processes focus on pricing mechanisms to achieve coordination between two or more parties. Thus, they are of competitive nature. Collaboration or *Collaborative Planning*, however, places the emphasis on processes of cooperative nature as pursued in SCM.

Figure 5.4 shows the collaboration interfaces of an APS. Collaboration appears in two directions: collaboration with customers and collaboration with suppliers. From the view of a single member of the supply chain, collaboration is important on both ends of its SCP-matrix, the sales and the procurement side. The difference between the two types of collaboration is the divergent structure in the case of customer collaboration and the convergent structure in the case of supplier collaboration.

- One of the main applications of *Sales Collaboration* is the mid-term collaborative demand planning. In an iterative manner, forecasts are jointly generated. During this task, forecasts have to be coordinated and adjusted, e.g. by means of judgmental forecasting processes, as opposed to only aggregated. In shortage situations in particular, short-term collaboration may support ordinary ATP processes by providing additional information on alternative product configurations, delivery dates and prices.
- The task of mid-term *Procurement Collaboration* is to come to an agreement on procurement plans derived from master plans. Aggregated product quantities have to be disaggregated and allocated to possible suppliers with respect to their capabilities. These capabilities can be evaluated and utilized efficiently in an iterative collaboration process. Thus, it is possible to generate procurement plans and delivery schedules that avoid material shortages.

As already shown in Sect. 4.1, Supply Chain Execution Systems (SCES) bridge the gap between preparing decisions in an APS and the final implementation of

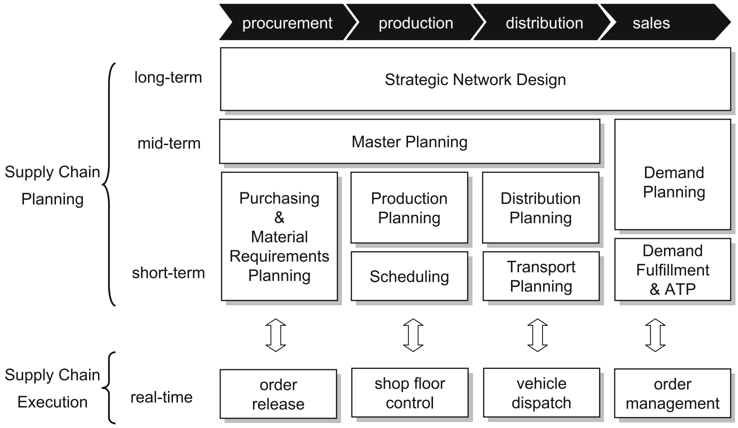


Fig. 5.5 Relation between APS and Supply Chain Execution Systems

these decisions in practice ("execution"). Figure 5.5 (see e.g. Kahl 1999) shows that software modules for supply chain execution also cover the supply chain processes "procurement", "production", "distribution" and "sales." However, the planning tasks tackled there concern the execution, and thus comprise an even shorter-term planning horizon. For example, SCES deal with material handling, order transmission to suppliers, shop floor control, transportation execution (including tracking and tracing) and on-line response to customer requests. If necessary, they enrich the planning instructions of APS with further details (e.g. by human support), but mainly they monitor and control the execution of the decisions prepared by the APS. An *on-line* monitoring of the execution processes allows *real-time* reaction to unforeseen events.

SCES are closely coupled to APS by means of alert management systems, so-called Supply Chain Event Management (SCEM) systems. Thus, they are able to overcome the static planning intervals of traditional rolling horizon planning and allow for a reactive, event-driven planning. The borders between APS' and SCES' functionality cannot be clearly defined. For example, the order promising function may be part of both APS and SCES. Usually ATP quantities are allocated to customer groups within an APS (see Chap. 9), whereas the on-line search for free ATP and real-time responses to customers are executed by an SCES. The search rules for ATP consumption may be defined in the APS (and sent to the SCES as directives) or may be customized directly within the SCES.

References

Drexl, A., Fleischmann, B., Günther, H.-O., Stadtler, H., & Tempelmeier, H. (1994). Konzeptionelle Grundlagen kapazitätsorientierter PPS-Systeme. *Zeitschrift für betriebswirtschaftliche Forschung*, *46*, 1022–1045.

Kahl, S. (1999). What's the "value" of supply chain software? *Supply Chain Management Review*, *3*, 59–67.

Rohde, J., Meyr, H., & Wagner, M. (2000). Die Supply Chain Planning Matrix. *PPS Management*, *5*(1), 10–15.

Tempelmeier, H. (2001). Supply chain planning with advanced planning systems. In *Proceedings of the 3rd Aegean International Conference on Design and Analysis of Manufacturing Systems*, Tinos Island, Greece.

Strategic Network Design

6

Bernhard Fleischmann and Achim Koberstein

This chapter deals with the long-term strategic planning and design of the supply chain. Section 6.1 explains the planning situation and the problem setting. Section 6.2 outlines the formulation of the problem as an optimization model and Sect. 6.3 the use of such models within the strategic planning process. Section 6.4 reviews case reports in the literature and Sect. 6.5 the software modules available in APS.

6.1 The Planning Situation

The design of the supply chain is an essential part of the long-term strategic planning of every manufacturing company. It is based on the decisions about the product program:

- Which products should be offered in which markets and countries in the next years?
- Which products and components should be manufactured at the own production sites?

These decisions are mostly considered superordinated to the design of the supply chain, which then consists in the following decisions:

- Location of the production sites: Are new plants to be installed or existing plants to be shut-down?

B. Fleischmann (✉)
Chair for Production and Supply Chain Management, University of Augsburg,
Universitätsstraße 16, 86135 Augsburg, Germany
e-mail: bernhard.fleischmann@wiwi.uni-augsburg.de

A. Koberstein
Chair in Business Administration, in particular Business Informatics, European University
Viadrina Frankfurt (Oder), Große Scharrnstraße 59, 15239 Frankfurt (Oder), Germany
e-mail: koberstein@europa-uni.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__6,

- Allocation of the products and components: Which items should be produced where?
- Facilities within each production site: Is the existing equipment adequate, should it be expanded or shut-down? Should new equipment, for instance a new production line, be installed, for which products or components, with which capacity and technology?

These decisions on the production network imply high investments and have a significant and long-term impact on the company's competitiveness. In the automotive industry, for instance, new products require dedicated body-assembly lines, where the investment and the location are binding for the time to market and the life-cycle of the product, which is about 10 years altogether. Changing the decisions later on is only possible at very high costs. While due to these reasons the design of the production network is of primary importance, the other parts of the whole supply chain must be taken into account as well, i.e. the suppliers and the sales markets, which form the sources and the sinks of the flow through the supply chain. This concerns the selection of materials and suppliers as well as the distribution system between the production sites and the sales markets. However, it is not necessary to consider details of the distribution systems within the various countries or continents, such as the location of warehouses and transshipment points. Instead, a rough estimate of the distribution costs and times between the production sites and the sales markets is sufficient for the supply chain design. The design of production-distribution networks is a subordinate task with a shorter-term impact, as warehouse locations can be changed more easily and are often operated by logistics service providers.

Supply chain design is often considered as the extension of a locational decision problem. However, the locational decisions within the supply chain design are mostly straightforward. There may be a few potential new plant locations, if at all, which could be analyzed one by one and compared. The complexity of the supply chain design consists in the allocation of a large range of products to the production sites and in the decisions on capacities and technology at each site. This includes the critical choice of the appropriate production strategy, between "local for local" and a single world factory, maybe with different results for the different product groups and production phases. Moreover, choices have to be made between highly efficient dedicated production equipment and more flexible multi-purpose equipment as well as decisions on the degree of automation. By contrast, in the design of a distribution network, locational decisions play a major role indeed: There, a variable number of warehouses have to be selected from may be a huge pool of potential locations.

The planning horizon of the supply chain design typically encompasses several years, up to 12 in the automotive industry. It is subdivided into yearly periods so that the decisions on changes in the supply chain structure are assigned to a certain year. Thus, the strategic design starts from the existing supply chain and considers its evolution year by year up to the planning horizon. In contrast, some authors suggest a "green-field" planning over a single period, independent of the existing supply chain, in order to find the ideal configuration for the business in question. However, the transition there can be expensive and last many years, and if it is reached at all, it is unlikely to still be the ideal. However, the green-field approach may be adequate for the design of a distribution network.

In order to evaluate the structural decisions on the supply chain, it is necessary to consider the impact on the flows of goods, i.e. procurement, production, distribution and sales, which are the drivers of costs and revenue. As there is usually wide scope to determine these flows, operational decisions have to be taken together with the structural decisions. The operational planning level within the strategic supply chain design is similar to the Master Planning (see Chap. 8), but highly aggregated and with yearly periods instead of months or weeks, so that no seasonal fluctuations of activities and stocks within a year are considered.

Which objectives are pursued in the strategic supply chain design? These are primarily financial objectives which are influenced by structural and operational decisions: The structural decisions imply investments for installing new equipment and fixed costs for maintaining it. The operational decisions affect the revenue and the variable costs for all operations along the supply chain. The adequate objective in this context is to maximize the net present value (NPV) of the yearly cash flow which is composed of revenues, investment expenditures, fixed and variable costs. However, a great part of the long-term data required for the supply chain design is highly uncertain. This is true in particular for the demand of future products in various markets, the volume of investments, labor cost, and exchange rates. Therefore, additional objectives play a role, such as to improve the flexibility and the robustness of the supply chain and to reduce risks. These objectives are usually in conflict with the financial objectives.

Two trends in the development of the manufacturing industry have increased both the importance and the complexity of the strategic supply chain design in the last decade, the globalization and the increasing variety of products. The globalization of production sites, suppliers and sales markets has opened new dimensions for decisions about the supply chain, but also increased their impact, for instance because of differences in the national labor costs and taxes, duties and long shipments between continents. These aspects of international trade must be taken into account in the design of the supply chain. The variety of products has increased tremendously in many consumer markets. Up to the 1990s, an automotive manufacturer, for instance, used to launch a new car model every 2 or 3 years, but nowadays, this happens three to five times every year. Therefore, supply network design is no longer an infrequent activity, but some companies have established a regular procedure which has to take structural decisions for new products, such as allocation and technology, at well defined points in time before the start-up (see Schmaußer 2011). The complexity, the frequency and the impact of the supply network design overcharge human planners, if they only use conventional tools such as spread-sheets. The strategic design process for the supply chain requires support by software, which is based on optimization models and algorithms.

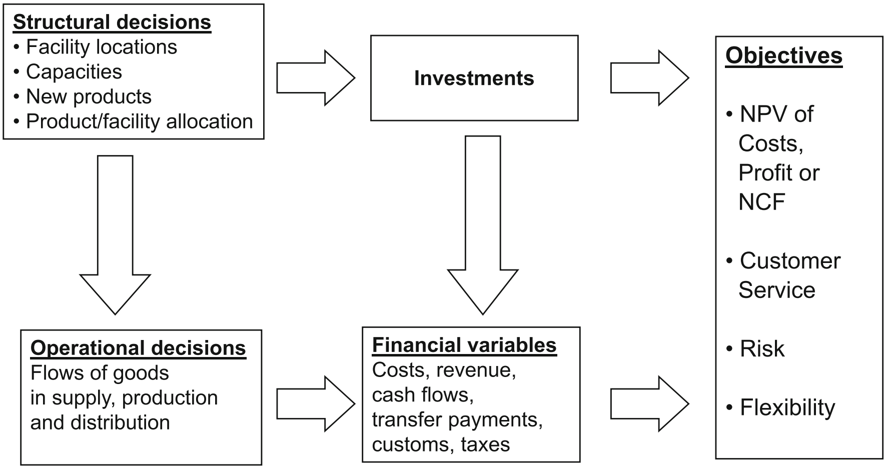


Fig. 6.1 Interdependence between strategic and operational planning levels

6.2 Strategic Network Design Models

6.2.1 Basic Components

As explained in the previous section, network design integrates two planning levels: Strategic structural decisions on the network configuration and mid-term operational decisions on the flows of goods in the network. Figure 6.1 shows the relationships between the planning levels and the objectives.

The financial objectives are affected directly by the strategic decisions on investments as well as by the yearly financial variables resulting from the operations along the supply chain. The latter are also influenced by the investment decisions. For instance, the investment in a new machine can change the variable production cost significantly. Other objectives will be discussed in Sects. 6.2.2 and 6.3.

There is no space here to describe a complete, realistic network design model. In the following, only examples of typical decision variables, constraints and objectives and their relationship will be explained. Note that all names of variables will be written with upper-case initial, data and parameters with lower-case initial. Corresponding to the two planning levels, a network design model contains two major types of decision variables: binary structural variables and continuous flow variables. Both are required to model the main components of a supply chain, i.e. products p, sales markets m, buying markets b, manufacturing and distribution sites s, facilities j, and different countries c. The planning periods $t = 1, \dots, T$ are usually years with a planning horizon T of typically 8–12 years. Structural variables describe either the status of network components or the change of them. Typical status variables are $Location_{s,t}$ indicating whether a site s is "open" in year t or not, and similarly $Machine_{s,j,t}$ indicating, whether a new machine j is available at site s

in year t. $Alloc_{p,s,t}$ may indicate if product p is allocated to a manufacturing site s in year t. The initial status is described by given values of these variables for $t = 0$. Fixed costs may be attached to all status variables. The evolution of the supply chain is driven by change variables such as $Open_{s,t}$ or $Close_{s,t}$ indicating if site s is opened or closed in year t, and $Invest_{s,j,t}$ indicating if an investment takes place in year t for machine j at site s. The capital investments, which constitute a major component of the cash flow, are attached to these variables.

The consistency between different structural variables is ensured by equations such as

$$Location_{s,t} = Location_{s,t-1} + Open_{s,t} - Close_{s,t} \;\forall\, s,t \tag{6.1}$$

$$Machine_{s,j,t} = Machine_{s,j,t-1} + Invest_{s,j,t} \;\forall\, s,j,t \tag{6.2}$$

which express the impact of the change variables on the status variables, and by logical constraints of the following type: A product can only be allocated to an open site:

$$Alloc_{p,s,t} \le Location_{s,t} \;\forall\, p,s,t \tag{6.3}$$

and, for any product p that requires machine j, this machine must be available:

$$Alloc_{p,s,t} \le Machine_{s,j,t} \;\forall\, s,t \tag{6.4}$$

Often limits are given on the number of products allocated to a site s, say $maxprod_s$:

$$\sum_p Alloc_{p,s,t} \le maxprod_s \;\forall\, s,t \tag{6.5}$$

and on the number of sites, between which a product p may be split, say maxsplitp:

$$\sum_s Alloc_{p,s,t} \le maxsplit_p \;\forall\, p,t \tag{6.6}$$

The flow variables express the quantities per year for the various supply chain processes, e.g. $Production_{p,s,t}$ denotes the quantity of product p manufactured in site s in year t. Further flow variables are shown in Fig. 6.2, which illustrates the flow conservation equations: For every product, site and year the sum of the inflows must equal the sum of the outflows. A particular outflow is the consumption of product p as a material in successor products p', where $bom_{p,p'}$ is the bill-of-material coefficient, i.e. the consumption of p per unit of p'.

The sales quantities in every market are restricted by upper and lower limits

$$minsales_{p,m,t} \le \sum_s Sales_{p,s,m,t} \le maxsales_{p,m,t} \;\forall\, p,m,t \tag{6.7}$$

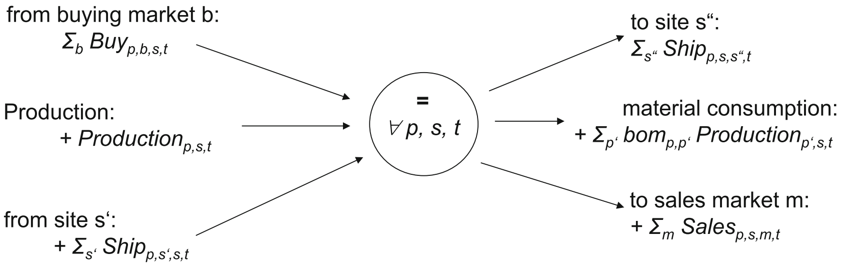


Fig. 6.2 Flow balance equation for product p at site s in year t

or they have to satisfy a given expected demand

$$\sum_s Sales_{p,s,m,t} = demand_{p,m,t}\ \forall\ p,m,t \tag{6.8}$$

Flow variables are further restricted by capacity constraints. The capacities may be affected by status variables. An example of a capacity constraint for a single product p at site s is given next.

$$Production_{p,s,t} \le capacity_s \cdot Alloc_{p,s,t}\ \forall\ p,s,t \tag{6.9}$$

where $capacity_s$ is the total capacity of the site s for the product p, which is only available if p is allocated to s. Another example is a machine j that processes a set of products $p \in P$:

$$\sum_{p\in P} prodcoefficient_p \cdot Production_{p,s,t} \le capacity_{s,j} \cdot Machine_{s,j,t}\ \forall\ s,j,t \tag{6.10}$$

$capacity_{s,j}$ is the total of production hours available on machine j at site s per year, provided that this machine has been installed, $prodcoefficient_p$ is the amount of production hours required per unit of product p.

The adequate financial objective for the strategic network design is to maximize the net present value (NPV) of the net cash flow (NCF). In order to avoid a bias of the planning horizon, the residual value of the investments at the planning horizon has to be added. Further objectives will be considered in Sect. 6.2.2. The NCF before tax in year t, NCF_t, is composed of the revenue minus variable costs, fixed costs and investment expenditures in year t. Table 6.1 explains how to model the objective as a linear function of the variables. In the case where the sales have to satisfy a given demand, there is no impact of the decision variables on the revenue. In this case, the objective is reduced to minimize the NPV of costs and capital expenditures. All financial terms have to be converted into one main currency using given estimated

Table 6.1 The net cash flow and the residual value as a linear function of the decision variables in year *t*

Component	Variables (examples)	Value multiplier
Revenue	Sales	Sales price − Distribution cost per unit
− Variable costs	Flow (Buy, Production, Ship)	Cost per unit
− Fixed costs	Status (Location, Alloc, Machine)	Cost per year
− Capital expenditures	Change (Invest, Open, Close)	Investment expenditure
+ Residual value	Change	Residual value after T-t years

exchange rates. The extension of the model to the NCF after tax will be considered in Sect. 6.2.3.

Thus, the objective is:

$$maximize\ NPVNCF$$

$$= \sum_{t=1}^{T} NCF_t \cdot (1 + cdf)^{-t} + \left(\sum_{t=1}^{T} Residualvalue_t \right)^{-T} \tag{6.11}$$

where $Residualvalue_t$ is the value of all investments realized in year t at the planning horizon T.

6.2.2 Dealing with Uncertainty

One inherent characteristic of strategic network planning is that, at the time of planning, a significant portion of the required data for the deterministic model described above cannot be provided with certainty. Product demands, purchase and sales prices, exchange rates etc. are subject to numerous external factors such as the general economic development, market competition and consumer behavior which cannot be known for several years in advance. One way to deal with this inherent uncertainty is to specify not only one set but several sets of data, called scenarios, which reflect different possible future developments, e.g., a best and a worst case scenario in addition to an average case forecast. For each scenario an instance of the deterministic model can be solved and the influence of deviations from the forecast on the structural decisions and objective function value can be observed. However, this approach lacks a coherent definition of how a solution performs on all of the possible future scenarios. Furthermore, it is intuitively clear, that solutions which somehow perform well on all (or many) of the possible scenarios are likely characterized by actively hedging against future uncertainty, e.g., by opening a production site in a foreign currency region to mitigate currency risk or by deploying more flexible (but also more expensive) or additional machines to mitigate demand risk. As these measures are often associated with additional expenditures and would not provide an advantage if all data were known with certainty, the deterministic model is unlikely or even unable to generate these solutions. In the last years, the development of approaches to account for the inherent uncertainty has been a very active field of research (cf. Klibi et al. 2010, for a recent review). Two main research directions have evolved: the first one seeks to extend the deterministic model in such a way, that its solutions contain certain structures that improve their performance under uncertainty (e.g., a certain way of forming chains of product-plant allocations referred to as the "chaining-concept", see Kauder and Meyr 2009, and Simchi-Levi and Wei 2012). The second research direction, which will be sketched in the remainder of this section, is based on the methodology of Stochastic Programming (SP) (see Birge and Louveaux 2011, for an introduction to the field).

In this approach we assume, that the uncertainty can be represented by a discrete set of scenarios $\omega \in \Omega$, each with a known probability p_ω. If this is not the case initially, a *scenario generation procedure* (see Sect. 6.3) has to be performed prior to or during the solution of the optimization model. One advantage of the SP approach is that it can be seen as an extension of the deterministic model, which it comprises as a special case if Ω contains just one scenario. In addition to the uncertainty of data, the timing of decisions with respect to this uncertainty has to be modeled. In the strategic network design model the structural decisions have to be determined prior to the first planning period and cannot be altered when a specific scenario realizes. The corresponding decision variables are called *first-stage variables* and are not indexed over the set of scenarios. The operational flow decisions, however, can be adapted to specific data realizations as uncertainty unfolds during the course of the planning periods. Therefore, the flow variables are called *second-stage variables* and are marked as scenario-dependent by a subscript ω. The objective function (6.11) can be represented by a second-stage variable $NPVNCF_\omega$ as the revenue and the variable costs depend on the flow variables and all components may depend on uncertain cost and investment data. Assuming a risk-neutral decision maker, we call a solution consisting of all first-stage and second-stage decision variables *optimal*, if it is feasible for every scenario and if it maximizes the expected net present value of net cash flows:

$$maximize\ ENPVNCF = E\left[NPVNCF\right] = \sum_{\omega\in\Omega} p_\omega NPVNCF_\omega \tag{6.12}$$

where $E[\cdot]$ denotes the expected value of a random variable. Each constraint which contains second-stage variables or scenario dependent data is replaced by a set of separate constraints for every scenario. For example, in case of demand uncertainty, constraint sets (6.8) and (6.9) are modified in the SP model as follows:

$$\sum_{s} Sales_{p,s,m,t,\omega} = demand_{p,m,t,\omega} \;\forall\; p,m,t,\omega \tag{6.13}$$

$$Production_{p,s,t,\omega} \leq capacity_s \cdot Alloc_{p,s,t} \;\forall\; p,s,t,\omega \tag{6.14}$$

Note, that in this version of constraint set (6.14), we assume that the capacity of a site s is known with certainty and hence scenario-independent. Constraint sets of the type (6.1)–(6.6) do not have to be modified as they only contain first-stage variables and no uncertain data. The sketched SP model coincides with a large mixed-integer linear programming model and can be solved with standard MIP solvers. However, as the model also features special structure, specialized solution algorithms can significantly reduce solution times in many cases (see Bihlmaier et al. 2009; Wolf and Koberstein 2013).

As in strategic network design structural decisions last over very long periods of time, the decision maker might want to avoid first-stage decisions that lead to very poor outcomes in some of the scenarios. Likewise, in the case of several alternative optimal solutions, he might want to choose the solution that is associated with the least dispersion of the corresponding distribution of scenario outcomes. One way of incorporating risk-aversion into the model described above is to use a mean-risk objective function of the following type instead of Eq. (6.12):

$$\textit{maximize } MEANRISK = ENPVNCF - \lambda \cdot Riskmeasure \tag{6.15}$$

where $\lambda \geq 0$ expresses the decision maker's level of risk-aversion and *Riskmeasure* is a bookkeeping variable representing a suitable risk measure (see Pflug and Römisch 2007 for a discussion of suitable risk measures and Koberstein et al. 2013 for an illustrative application to strategic network design).

6.2.3 Extensions

A few extensions to the basic model of Sect. 6.2.1 are introduced next.

Tax

For the design of a multinational supply chain it is important to consider the NCF after tax, because tax rates and regulations may differ significantly in the concerned countries. The taxable income has to be calculated for every country separately. For this purpose, the transfer payments between the countries and the depreciations resulting from the investments within the country have to be taken into account. The depreciation allowance depends on the tax laws of the country and on the number of years r after the investment has been realized. For example, the depreciation of machine j at site s in year t due to an investment in an earlier year $t - r$ is

$$Depreciation_{s,j,t} = \sum_{r=0}^{t-1} Invest_{s,j,t-r} \cdot allowance_{s,j,r} \tag{6.16}$$

The tax in year t in country c is

$$\begin{aligned} Tax_{c,t} = taxrate_c \cdot (&Revenue_{c,t} - VariableCosts_{c,t} \\ &-FixedCosts_{c,t} - Depreciations_{c,t}\big) \end{aligned} \tag{6.17}$$

where each component of the income is obtained by summing up over all activities within country c in year t, including the transfer payments to and from other countries. The transfer payments can be calculated as the cost of the concerned service plus a fixed margin (see Papageorgiou et al. 2001; Fleischmann et al. 2006). If the transfer prices are considered as decision variables, a difficult nonlinear optimization model is obtained even for the operational level with fixed supply chain configuration (see Vidal and Goetschalckx 2001; Wilhelm et al. 2005).

International Aspects

The flows in a global network are subject to various regulations of international trade, in particular duties and local content restrictions. The latter require that a product must contain a mandatory percentage of value added in the country where it is sold. Duties are charged on flows between countries. In the case where component manufacturing and assembly take place in different countries, rules for duty abatement and refunding may apply. The models of Arntzen et al. (1995) and of Wilhelm et al. (2005) incorporate these aspects in particular detail.

Labor Cost

Labor cost is often included in the variable production cost. However, the required working time and work force do not always increase proportionally with the amount of production, but depend on the shift model in use, for instance 1, 2, or 3 shifts on 5, 6 or 7 days a week. To select the appropriate shift model, binary variables $ShiftModel_{w,s,t}$ are introduced indicating which shift model w from a given list $w = 1, \ldots, W$ should be used at site s in year t (see Bihlmaier et al. 2009; Bundschuh 2008). The selection must be unique:

$$\sum_{w} ShiftModel_{w,s,t} = 1 \;\forall\, s,t \tag{6.18}$$

and compatible with required working time (the left hand side of (6.9)):

$$\sum_{p \in P} prodcoefficient_p \cdot Production_{p,s,t} \le \sum_{w} ShiftModel_{w,s,t} \cdot workingtime_{w,s} \;\forall\, s,t \tag{6.19}$$

where $workingtime_{w,s}$ is the available time under shift model w at site s. Then, the labor cost at site s in year t is

$$LaborCost_{s,t} = \sum_{w} ShiftModel_{w,s,t} \cdot wages_{w,s,t} \tag{6.20}$$

where $wages_{w,s,t}$ is the total of yearly wages at site s in year t under shift model w.

Inventories

The structural decisions may have significant impact on the inventories in the supply network. The way to model this impact depends on the type of inventories:

The *work in process (WIP)* in a production or transportation process is equal to the flow in this process multiplied by the transit or process flow time. Hence, it is a linear function of the flow variable. WIP is considered by Arntzen et al. (1995) and Vidal and Goetschalckx (2001).

Cycle stock is caused by a process running in intermittent batches and is one half of the average batch size both at the entry and at the exit of the process. It is a linear function of the flows only if the number of batches per period is fixed.

Seasonal stock is not contained in a strategic network design model with yearly periods. For smaller periods, it can be registered simply as end of period stock like in a Master Planning model (see Chap. 8).

Safety stock is influenced by the structural decisions via the flow times and the number of stock points in the network. This relationship is nonlinear and depends on many other factors such as the desired service level and the inventory policy. It should rather be considered outside the network design model in a separate evaluation step for any solution under consideration. Martel (2005) explicitly includes safety and cycle stocks in his model.

6.3 Implementation

Network design models as described before yield an optimal solution for the given data and objective. However, in the strategic supply chain planning process, a single solution is of little value and may even give a false sense of efficiency. Defining or determining the "optimal supply chain configuration" is impossible, because a supply chain configuration has to satisfy multiple objectives, and several of those objectives cannot even be quantified.

Besides the well-defined financial objective NPVNCF, other objectives are also important (see Fig. 6.1): Customer service depends on the strategic global location decisions. For instance, the establishment of a new production site or distribution center will tend to improve the customer service in the respective country. But the increase in customer service and its impact are difficult to quantify. The risk of high-impact, low-probability catastrophic events such as natural disasters and the break-down of whole sites or transportation links of the supply network can hardly be represented in the SP approach discussed above. Furthermore, some future scenarios might just be unthinkable or completely unknown to the decision maker such as drastic technological, social or political changes. One way of considering these challenges in the planning process is to deploy qualitative approaches such as the Delphi method, brainstorming and discussion rounds. Another approach is to try to define and measure the supply chain's ability to react and adapt to unforeseen events. In recent years, several measures and concepts have been proposed for this purpose under terms as flexibility, agility, reliability, robustness, responsiveness and resilience (see the review of Klibi et al. 2010). Finally, criteria such as the political stability of a country or the existence of an established and fair legal system are very important, but not quantifiable. In order to consider unquantifiable as well as quantitative objectives and constraints simultaneously, we sketch an iterative strategic planning process in Fig. 6.3 joining ideas of Ratliff and Nulty (1997) and Di Domenica et al. (2007):

Generate scenarios: This step uses a model of uncertainty which expresses the behavior of the uncertain data in the view of the decision maker. It may make use of all kinds of econometric, statistical and stochastic techniques, such as multivariate continuous distribution functions, stochastic processes and time series. Historical data, if available, can be used to estimate and calibrate the parameters of this model. Then, a discrete set of scenarios and a vector of related probabilities can be derived which is manageable in the subsequent steps (i.e., in an SP model) and approximates the model of uncertainty as closely as possible. Several methods have been devised for this purpose (see Di Domenica et al. 2007).

Generate alternatives: Solving the (stochastic) optimization problem defined above for different objectives and using a variety of scenario sets as well as single scenarios provides various alternative supply chain configurations. Objectives that are not used in the current optimization can be considered in form of constraints. Additional alternatives can be generated by intuition and managerial insight.

Evaluate alternatives: For any design alternative, the operations can be optimized using a more detailed operational model under various scenarios. The main objective on this level is cost or profit, since the network configuration is given. A more detailed evaluation can be obtained by simulating the operations. This allows the incorporation of additional operational uncertainties, e.g. the short-term variation of the demand or of the availability of a machine, resulting in the more accurate computation of performance measures such as service levels or flow times.

Benchmarking: The key performance indicators obtained in the evaluation step are compared to the best-practice standards of the respective industry.

Select alternatives: Finally, the performance measures computed in the previous steps and the consideration of additional non-quantifiable objectives can be used to eliminate inefficient and undesirable configurations. This can be done based on internal discussions by the project team and by presentations to the final decision makers, such as the board of directors. During this process, suggestions for the investigation of additional scenarios and objectives or modified alternatives may arise. This whole process may go through several iterations.

Many authors report that large numbers of alternatives have to be investigated in a single network design project. Arntzen et al. (1995) report hundreds of alternatives, and the model of Ulstein et al. (2006) was solved several times even in strategic-management meetings.

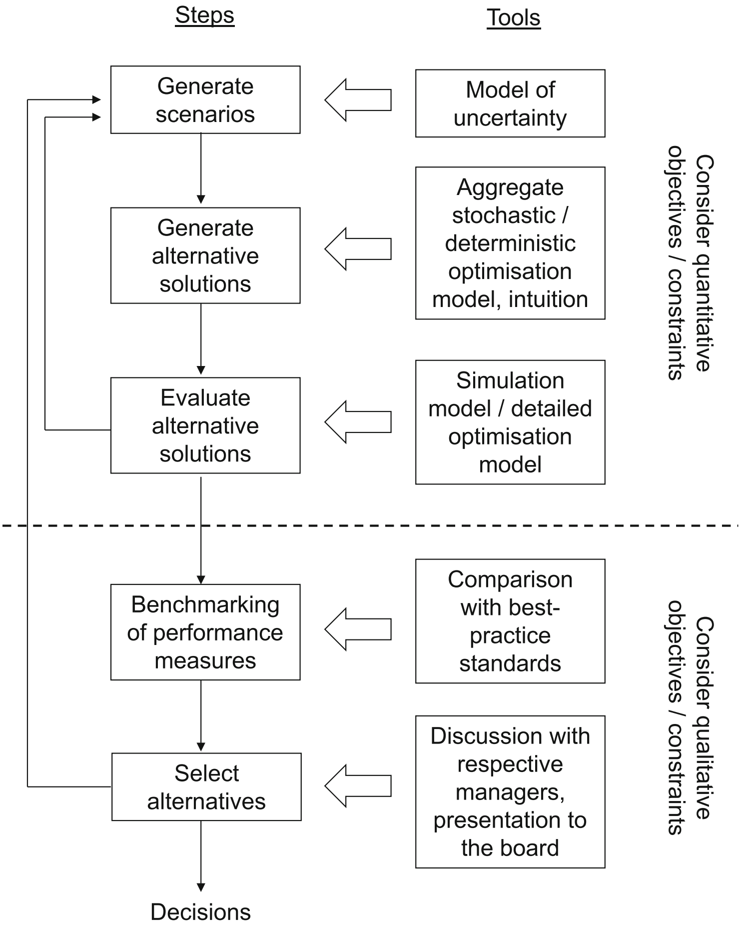


Fig. 6.3 Steps of the strategic network design

6.4 Applications

Strategic network design has been the subject of a rich body of literature in the last decade. Melo et al. (2009) give a comprehensive survey with the focus on locational decisions. It covers both the design of production networks and the more detailed design of production-distribution networks. While the models considered in this review are mainly deterministic (80 %), the review of Klibi et al. (2010) is focused on dealing with various types of uncertainties. In the following, recent applications in industry are reviewed which are reported in literature and show the importance of optimization-based supply chain design in various industrial sectors.

6.4.1 Computer Hardware

One of the first studies on the redesign of a huge global supply chain using an optimization model was presented by Arntzen et al. (1995). Addressing decisions on the closing of factories, allocation of products, technologies and capacities, it had a severe impact on the thinning of DEC's supply chain. Wilhelm et al. (2005) consider an international assembly system in the U.S., Mexico and third countries under NAFTA regulations. Laval et al. (2005) determine the European network of postponement locations for the distribution of HP printers.

6.4.2 Automotive Industry

Fleischmann et al. (2006) present a model for the long-term evolution of BMW's global supply chain, which considers, at every location, the capacities and investments in three departments: body assembly, paint shop and final assembly. Bundschuh (2008) develops a similar model for BMW's engine and chassis factories. It permits the flexible use of several design levels, from the global network of sites for component manufacturing and for final assembly up to the detailed configuration of the production equipment and technology choice. The model of Bihlmaier et al. (2009) which was developed for Daimler's global supply chain considers demand uncertainty using stochastic programming. Schmaußer (2011) and Kuhn and Schmaußer (2012) report on a model which is used regularly at AUDI for the allocation of new products and decisions on product standardization and technology.

6.4.3 Chemical Industry

Ulstein et al. (2006) developed a model for Elkem's Silicon Division which addresses decisions on closing existing plants, acquisition of new plants, product allocation and investments in production equipment. A particular feature, due to the energy-intensive processes, are additional flow variables for buying and selling electricity. The results of the model had an impact on reopening a closed furnace and the conversion of existing equipment into the world's largest silicon furnace.

6.4.4 Pharmaceutical Industry

Papageorgiou et al. (2001) present a model for the global production network for active ingredients, the first stage of pharmaceutical production. In addition to the usual supply chain design decisions, this model addresses the selection of future products from a pool of potential products and the time when they should be launched. Sousa et al. (2011) consider the complete pharmaceutical supply chain with primary and secondary production.

6.4.5 Forest Industry

Martel (2005) presents a more detailed model for designing global production-distribution networks with a 1-year horizon, divided into "seasons". Besides seasonal inventory it also considers cycle and safety stocks as concave functions of the flow through the warehouse. An interesting feature is the choice of marketing strategies which have impact on the demands. It has been used in the paper and forest industry. Vila et al. (2009) extended this type of model to the case of uncertain demands.

6.5 Strategic Network Design Modules in APS Systems

As explained in Sect. 6.1 and in Fig. 6.1, SND contains major elements of the Master Planning level in an aggregated form. Therefore, an SND module in an APS also can be used for Master Planning (see Chap. 7) and is in some APS identical with the Master Planning module. It always provides a modeling feature for a multi-commodity multi-period flow network, as explained in Sect. 6.2. In addition, an SND module permits the modeling of the strategic decisions on locations, capacities and investments by means of binary variables.

SND modules contain an LP solver, which is able to find the optimal flows in a given supply chain for a given objective, even for large networks and a large number of products and materials. However, the strategic decisions require a MIP solver, which is also available in the SND module, but may require an unacceptably long computation time for optimizing these decisions. Therefore, SND modules also provide various heuristics which are usually proprietary and not published.

In contrast to other modules, the SND module is characterized by a relatively low data integration within the APS and with the ERP system. Therefore, it is often used as a stand-alone system. Current data of the stocks and of the availability of the machines are not required for SND. Past demand data from the ERP data warehouse can be useful, but they need to be manipulated for generating demand scenarios for a long-term planning horizon. Technical data of the machines, like processing times and flow times, can be taken from the ERP data as well. But a major part of the data required for SND, such as data on new products, new markets and new machines, is not available in the ERP system. The same is true for data on investments, such as investment expenditures, depreciation and investment limitations.

The modeling tools that are available in the SND module differ in the various APS. Some APS contain a modeling language for general LP and MIP models, which allows the formulation of various types of models as discussed in Sect. 6.2. Other APS provide preformulated components of an SNP model, which describe typical production, warehousing and transportation processes. They allow the rapid assembly of a complex supply chain model, even using click-and-drag to construct a graphical representation on the screen and without LP/MIP knowledge. Of course, this entails a loss of flexibility in the models that can be formulated. But the resulting models are easy to understand and can be explained quickly to the decision makers.

An SND module provides the following main functions within the framework of the strategic planning process explained in Sect. 6.3 and Fig. 6.3:

- Generating scenarios
- Generating alternatives
- Evaluating alternatives
- Administrating alternatives and scenarios
- Reporting, visualizing and comparing results.

The last two functions are particularly important in the iterative strategic planning process which involves large series of design alternatives and scenarios. These functions, the modeling aids and special algorithms for network design make up the essential advantages over a general LP/MIP software system. Section 16.1 gives an overview on the APS that contain an SND module as well as some providers of specific stand-alone tools.

References

Arntzen, B. C., Brown, G. G., Harrison, T. P., & Trafton, L. L. (1995). Global supply chain management at digital equipment corporation. *Interfaces, 25*(1), 69–93.

Bihlmaier, R., Koberstein, A., & Obst, R. (2009). Modeling and optimizing of strategic and tactical manufacturing planning in the german automotive industry under uncertainty. *Operations Research Spectrum, 31*(2), 311–336.

Birge, J. R., & Louveaux, F. V. (2011). *Introduction to stochastic programming*. *Springer Series in Operations Research*. New York: Springer.

Bundschuh, M. (2008). *Modellgestützte strategische Planung von Produktionssystemen in der Automobilindustrie: Ein flexibler Planungsansatz für die Fahrzeughauptmodule Motor, Fahrwerk und Antriebsstrang*. Hamburg: Kovač.

Di Domenica, N., Mitra, G., Valente, P., & Birbilis, G. (2007). Stochastic programming and scenario generation within a simulation framework: An information systems perspective. *Decision Support Systems, 42*(4), 2197–2218.

Fleischmann, B., Ferber, S., & Henrich, P. (2006). Strategic planning of BMW's global production network. *Interfaces, 36*(3), 194–208.

Kauder, S., & Meyr, H. (2009). Strategic network planning for an international automotive manufacturer. *OR Spectrum, 31*(3), 507–532.

Klibi, W., Martel, A., & Guitouni, A. (2010). The design of robust value-creating supply chain networks: A critical review. *European Journal of Operational Research, 203*(2), 283–293.

Koberstein, A., Lukas, E., & Naumann, M. (2013). Integrated strategic planning of global production networks and financial hedging under uncertain demand and exchange rates. *Business Research (BuR), 6*(2), 215–240.

Kuhn, H., & Schmaußer, T. (2012). Production network planning in the automotive industry. In *Proceedings of 2012 International Conference on Advanced Vehicle Technologies and Integration*, VTI-2012, Changchun, China (pp. 689–695). Beijing: China Machine Press.

Laval, C., Feyhl, M., & Kakouros, S. (2005). Hewlett-Packard combined OR and expert knowledge to design its supply chains. *Interfaces, 35*(3), 238–247.

Martel, A. (2005). The design of production-distribution networks: A mathematical programming approach. In *Supply chain optimization* (pp. 265–305). Berlin: Springer.

Melo, M. T., Nickel, S., & Saldanha-Da-Gama, F. (2009). Facility location and supply chain management: A review. *European Journal of Operational Research, 196*(2), 401–412.

Papageorgiou, L. G., Rotstein, G., & Shah, N. (2001). Strategic supply chain optimization for the pharmaceutical industries. *Industrial & Engineering Chemistry Research, 40*(1), 275–286.

Pflug, G. C., & Römisch, W. (2007). *Modeling, measuring and managing risk*. Singapore: World Scientific.

Ratliff, H., & Nulty, W. (1997). Logistics composite modeling. In A. Artiba & S. E. Elmaghraby (Eds.), *The planning and scheduling of production systems* (Chap. 2). London: Chapman & Hall.

Schmaußer, T. (2011). *Gestaltung globaler Produktionsnetzwerke in der Automobilindustrie: Grundlagen, Modelle und Fallstudien*. Göttingen: Cuvillier.

Simchi-Levi, D., & Wei, Y. (2012). Understanding the performance of the long chain and sparse designs in process flexibility. *Operations Research, 60*(5), 1125–1141.

Sousa, R. T., Liu, S., Papageorgiou, L. G., & Shah, N. (2011). Global supply chain planning for pharmaceuticals. *Chemical Engineering Research and Design, 89*(11), 2396–2409.

Ulstein, N. L., Christiansen, M., Grønhaug, R., Magnussen, N., & Solomon, M. M. (2006). Elkem uses optimization in redesigning its supply chain. *Interfaces, 36*(4), 314–325.

Vidal, C., & Goetschalckx, M. (2001). A global supply chain model with transfer pricing and transportation cost allocation. *European Journal of Operational Research, 129*(1), 134–158.

Vila, D., Beauregard, R., & Martel, A. (2009). The strategic design of forest industry supply chains. *INFOR: Information Systems and Operational Research, 47*(3), 185–202.

Wilhelm, W., Liang, D., Rao, B., Warrier, D., Zhu, X., & Bulusu, S. (2005). Design of international assembly systems and their supply chains under NAFTA. *Transportation Research Part E: Logistics and Transportation Review, 41*(6), 467–493.

Wolf, C., & Koberstein, A. (2013). Dynamic sequencing and cut consolidation for the parallel hybrid-cut nested L-shaped method. *European Journal of Operational Research, 230*(1), 143–156.

Demand Planning

7

Christoph Kilger and Michael Wagner

The target of SCM is to fulfill the (ultimate) customer demand (Chap. 1). Customer demand does either explicitly exist as actual customer orders that have to be fulfilled by the supply chain, or it does exist only implicitly as anonymous buying desires (and decisions) of consumers. In the latter case, there is no informational object representing the demand.

Many decisions in a supply chain must be taken prior to the point in time when the customer demand becomes known. For example, replenishment decisions in a retail store are taken before a customer enters the store. Production quantities for make-to-stock products are determined prior to the point in time when the customer places orders. Decisions about procurement of raw materials and components with long lead times have to be taken before customer orders for finished goods using these raw materials or components become known. These examples describe decisions in a supply chain that have to be taken prior to the point in time when actual customer demand becomes known. Therefore, these decisions must be based on *forecasted customer demand*, also called *demand forecast*. The process of forecasting future customer demand is called *demand planning*.

The next section introduces a framework for demand planning processes, that helps to explain the structures and processes of demand planning.

C. Kilger (✉)
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8,
66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: christoph.kilger@de.ey.com

M. Wagner
Paul Hartmann AG, Process Excellence Management, Information Technology,
Paul-Hartmann-Str. 12, 89522 Heidenheim, Germany
e-mail: michael.wagner@hartmann.info

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_7,

7.1 A Demand Planning Framework

Forecasting future customer demand is quite easy, if there is just one product and one customer. However, in reality demand planning comprises often hundreds or even thousands of individual products and individual customers. In some cases, it is even impossible to list all products (e.g. in the case of configurable products) or to know all customers (e.g. in the consumer goods industry). Furthermore, demand planning usually covers many time periods, typically 12–24 months. Thus, an important aspect of demand planning is to define proper planning structures for products, customers and time. These structures are used to represent input to the forecasting process, historic transactional data and computed data like a statistical forecast or a forecast accuracy metric. Furthermore, aggregation and disaggregation of data takes place based on the pre-defined demand planning structures. Section 7.2 discusses demand planning structures.

In Sect. 7.3, we describe the demand planning process, which consists of the following steps:

1. Collection of input data like forecast data from former planning runs, historic customer orders, shipments, etc. and correction of historic data;
2. computation of further data, e.g. statistical forecast;
3. judgmental forecasting by the human planners, which review the planning situation and give their input (this might include planning of promotions);
4. consensus forecasting, consolidating the different views of the planners and dealing with exceptions;
5. planning of dependent demand, i.e. the demand for components of the finished goods (in case of product bundles, configurable products, etc.);
6. release of the forecast to further planning and execution processes, e.g. master planning, purchasing, allocation planning, collaborative planning.

In many situations a good forecast can be computed automatically from historic customer orders. This is called *statistical forecasting* and usually takes place in step 2 of the demand planning process (see above). Statistical forecasting uses sophisticated methods to create forecasts for a lot of items automatically. As there are many statistical forecasting techniques, each having multiple parameters influencing the results, it is hard to find the best statistical forecasting technique and to set the parameters properly. To support the selection of a statistical forecasting method and to estimate the parameters many APS offer so-called *pick-best functions*. Statistical forecasting is described in detail in Sect. 7.4.

As described at the beginning of this chapter, the task of demand planning is to support processes that need information on the customer demand, but have to be executed *prior* to the point in time when the customer demand becomes known. So far, this task seems to be quite easy. But, as Nahmias (2009) argues in his textbook, the main characteristic of forecasts is that they are usually wrong! Therefore, each planning step which is based on forecasted demand contains uncertainty to some extent. It is apparent that the accuracy of the forecast directly influences the quality of the processes using the forecast. In order to achieve a high forecast accuracy

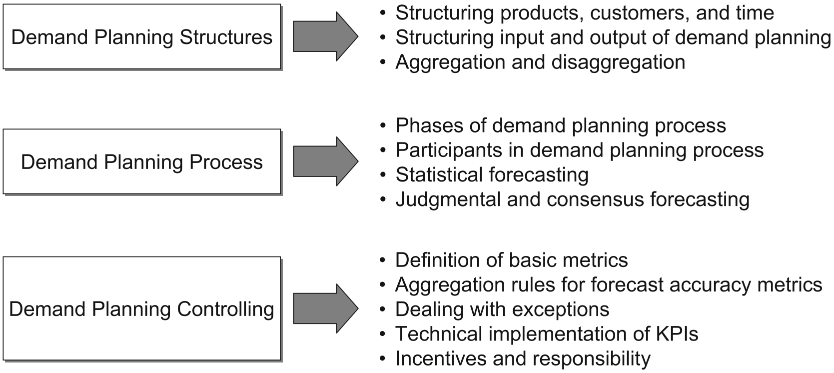


Fig. 7.1 Demand planning framework

it is necessary to implement appropriate controlling mechanisms, for example measuring the forecast accuracy (Eickmann 2004). Section 7.5 describes controlling mechanisms for demand planning. The overall demand planning framework is summarized in Fig. 7.1.

Forecasting, as described above, is not an actual planning or decision process as it "only" aims at predicting the future demand as accurately as possible. However, there are business decisions that influence the future demand, e.g. promotions and new product introductions. The impact on the demand plan might be assessed by the demand planning process as a what-if analysis or simulation run, and a subsequent master planning process is used to determine the corresponding supply plan. This feedback loop between demand planning and master planning is often called sales and operations planning S&OP (see Sect. 8.4). Based on the results of the master planning, adjustments to the business decisions and the demand plan can be decided.

The difference between planned and actual sales influences the service level of the whole supply chain. As this service level usually cannot reach 100 %, safety stocks are an adequate tool for improving customer service. The amount of safety stock required for reaching a desired service level is closely linked to the forecast accuracy. These and further additional features of demand planning (price-based planning, sporadic demand, lost sales vs. backorders, model selection and parameter estimation) are summarized in Sect. 7.6.

7.2 Demand Planning Structures

The task of demand planning is to predict the future customer demand for a set of items. The demand pattern for a particular item can be considered as a time series of separate values (Silver et al. 1998). For each item, there may be multiple time series, representing for example historic data, forecast data or computed data like the forecast accuracy. The selection of the right time series to be used in the demand planning process depends on the answer to the question *What is being forecasted?* For example, a mid-term master planning process might require forecasted customer orders (customer requested date) for every product group, sales region and week. On the other hand, short-term replenishment decisions for finished products may be based on forecasted shipments (shipment date) for every product in daily time buckets, grouped by distribution center. The examples illustrate that it is necessary to clarify the requirements of all processes that will use the forecast before designing the demand planning structures.

In general each forecast consists of three components:

1. The *time period*, in which the forecasted demand is planned to substantiate as customer demand;
2. the *product*, that will be requested by the customer;
3. the *geographical region*, from where the customer demand will originate;

Thus, there are three dimensions along which forecast data can be structured: time, product and geography. In the following we discuss the structuring of forecast data along these dimensions, and conclude with considerations about the consistency of forecast data in complex demand planning structures.

7.2.1 Time Dimension

For demand planning time is structured in discrete *time buckets*, e.g. years, quarters, months, weeks, days. All demand planning data (actuals, forecast and computed measures) are represented as time series. Each time series consists of a sequence of time buckets. The period of time covered by the time buckets is called *demand planning horizon*.

The size of the time bucket depends on the requirements of the particular demand planning scenario considered. For example, a fast food chain that intends to forecast demand patterns within the next weeks will use daily time buckets. In consumer packaged goods industry and many other industries, the forecast is usually structured in months—as monthly buckets are well suited to capture seasonal demand patterns and drive buying, production and replenishment decisions. As the examples show, the selection of the size of the time buckets depends on the maximum resolution of the time dimension required by the processes that will use the forecast: Time buckets should be granular enough to prepare the supply chain for the fulfillment of the forecasted demand. On the other hand if time buckets are too granular one might easily run into performance problems.

In most APS time can be structured hierarchically. For example, forecast data that is entered in months can be aggregated to quarters and years and can be disaggregated to weeks and days. Aggregation and disaggregation rules are described in the next section.

Please note that the conversion of weekly into monthly forecast data and vice versa is not straight forward. Figure 7.2 illustrates the relationship between weeks and months. In order to convert forecast data between weeks and months, most APS disaggregate the forecast to the lowest level (days) and aggregate it from there to

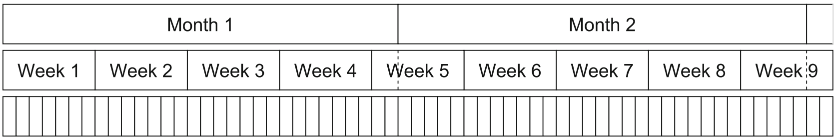


Fig. 7.2 Conversion of weeks and months

any time granularity. Another approach is to define so-called *split weeks* along the boundaries of months. In Fig. 7.2 weeks 5 and 9 would be split into two time buckets at the beginning and the end of month 2.

7.2.2 Product Dimension

Forecasting may take place on the level of SKUs (stock keeping units, e.g. final products) or on the level of product groups. Forecasting on SKU-level creates an individual forecast for each SKU, reflecting its individual demand pattern. Forecasting on product group level results in a more aggregated forecast. In most industries the number of SKUs is very large and prevents forecasting on SKU level. Please note that it is more difficult to create a highly accurate forecast on SKU level than on product group level—thus the forecast accuracy on group level is usually higher than on SKU level.

SKUs can be aggregated to product groups in multiple ways. Let us take the beverage industry as an example. Figure 7.3 shows multiple ways to form product groups from finished products. The left branch groups products by size and packaging. The middle branch shows the grouping by taste (Cola, Ginger Ale, Root Beer, etc.; Soft Drinks, Ice Teas, Juices, etc.). The right branch groups products by their style, i.e. whether they contain sugar (regular) or sweetener (diet). This grouping can be used to anticipate general trends of consumer demand.

The forecast can be entered on any of these aggregation branches and levels. For instance, the forecast planners from the sales organization would enter their forecast on the “subgroup” level, i.e. Cola, Ginger Ale, Root Beer, etc. Planners from the product management department would forecast the distribution of regular vs. diet beverages on the “style” level. On each level there may be one or multiple time series representing the forecast quantities.

Forecasts can easily be *aggregated* to higher levels. For example, the forecast of the sales planners can be aggregated to the product “group” level (Soft Drinks, Ice Teas, Juices, etc.) and to the top level (“Beverages”) by adding up the forecast quantities of the “subgroups” level. Forecast quantities can also be *disaggregated* to lower levels. Disaggregation of a forecast quantity to a lower level has to be defined by *disaggregation rules* (see e.g. Meyr 2012):

- *Even distribution:* The forecast quantity of the higher level is evenly distributed to the items on the lower level.

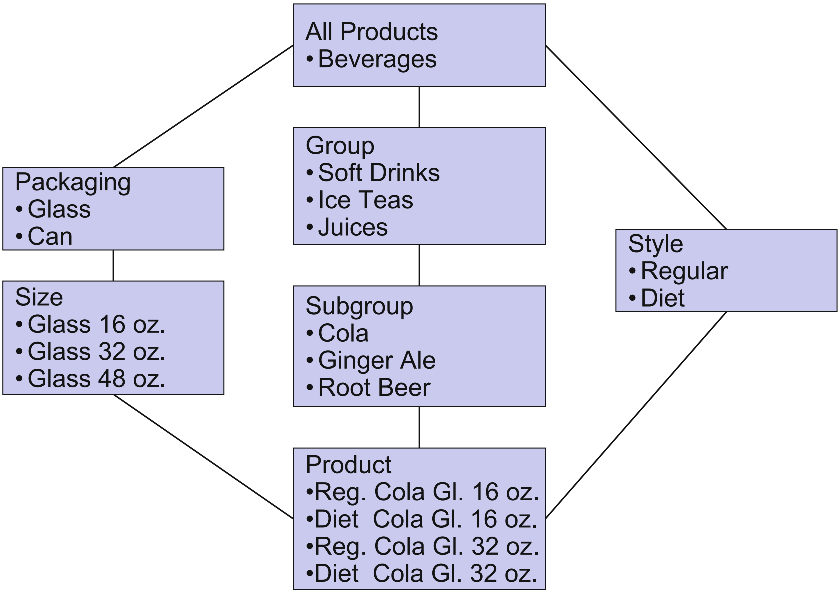


Fig. 7.3 Product dimension (example)

- *Existing quantities on lower level:* If there are already forecast quantities on the lower level, the percentage distribution of the instances is computed and applied to the forecast quantity on the higher level.
- *According to some other time series:* The distribution of values of some other time series is used to disaggregate the quantities from the higher to the lower level. For instance, the forecast on top level ("Beverages") could be disaggregated to the "packaging" level by using the historic distribution of packaging styles from a time series representing historic sales. Figure 7.4 illustrates the disaggregation by some other time series.

In many cases the values used for disaggregation are taken from another time period, e.g. from the year before (as it is the case in the example shown in Fig. 7.4). In other cases data from the same time period is used. For example, the forecast on "subgroup" level could be disaggregated to "product" level using forecasted quantities for the packaging style and sizes and forecasted quantities for the consumer trends towards regular vs. diet beverages for the same time period. However, this will require more complex calculation schemes than the simple disaggregation rules described above. Many APS offer simple macro programming languages for this purpose.

Forecasting on the top product group and disaggregation of the forecast to lower levels is called *top-down forecasting*, forecasting on the lowest product level (SKU-level) and aggregation of the forecast to the higher product groups is called *bottom-up forecasting*. A combined approach, where first a planning level is selected

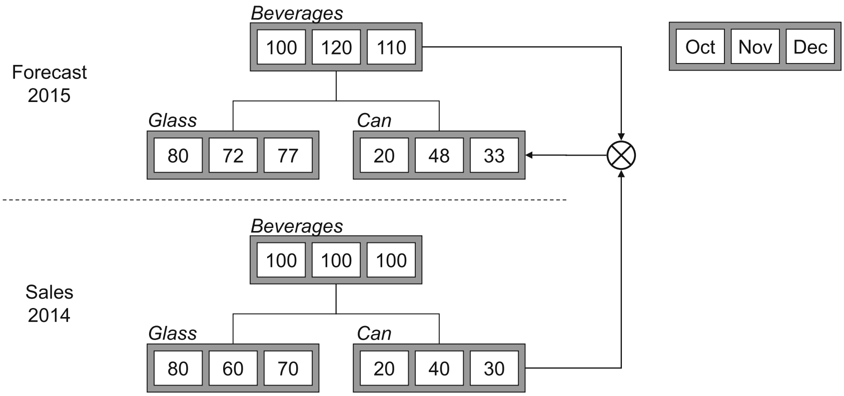


Fig. 7.4 Disaggregation by some other time series (example)

in the product hierarchy, a forecast is created on that level, which is then aggregated to higher product groups and disaggregated to SKU level, is called *middle-out forecasting*. The general term for demand planning on multiple product group levels is *hierarchical forecasting*.

7.2.3 Geography Dimension

The third dimension of forecasting is geography. As all demand originates from customers, customers form the lowest level of the geography dimension. Similar to products, customers may be grouped according to multiple aggregation schemes:

- Grouping by regions and areas supports the planning of regional demand
- Grouping by supply source (distribution centers, manufacturing plants, etc.) may be used to check the feasibility of the forecast against rough-cut capacity constraints
- Grouping by key account supports the consolidation of forecasts for international customer organizations, consisting of multiple national subsidiaries.

Figure 7.5 shows options to structure forecast by geography. Please note that similar aggregation and disaggregation rules can be applied to the geography dimension as described in the previous subsection for products.

In many modern APS there is no distinction between product dimension and geography dimension. Instead, planning structures are built up from *planning attributes* (sometimes also called *characteristics*). Planning attributes represent properties of the products used to structure the forecast and support the forecasting process by aggregation and disaggregation.

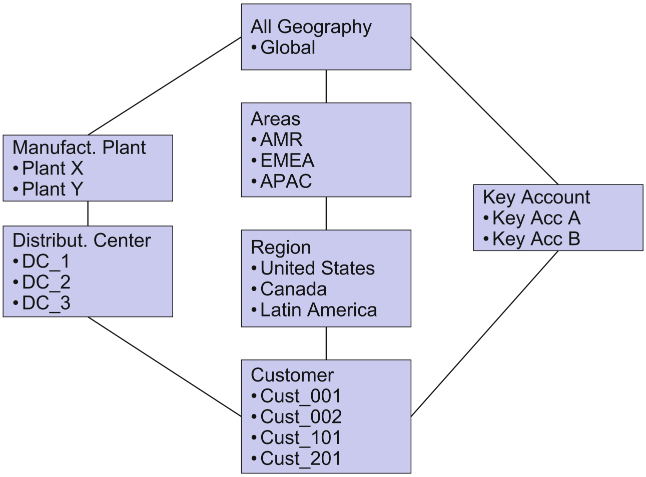


Fig. 7.5 Geography dimension (example)

7.2.4 Consistency of Forecast Data

As described in Sect. 7.3 demand planners usually select the best aggregation level to enter "their" forecast. Thus, forecast data may be entered on any level of the planning structures. As a consequence there may exist inconsistencies in the forecast data. As an example, consider the forecast quantities shown in Fig. 7.6. The forecast on "product" level is consistent with the aggregation on "subgroup" level, but there is an inconsistency between "product" level and the "packaging style and size" level. (The quantities in parentheses show the aggregated quantities from the "product" level.) A situation like this may occur if (1) forecast data is entered on "subgroup" level by some planner, (2) the forecast data is then automatically disaggregated to product level using the sales data from the year before, and (3) after that the forecast is changed on the level "packaging style and size". There are two ways to keep forecast data over all levels of the planning structures consistent:

1. *Immediate propagation of changes:* All changes are aggregated to the higher levels and disaggregated to the lower levels applying pre-defined aggregation and disaggregation rules. Note that immediate propagation of changes might make changes to forecast data very slow as a lot of data has to be updated. Most APS enforce immediate propagation of changes as forecast data is stored only on the lowest level.
2. *Consistency checks:* Changes are entered into the APS without propagation to other levels. Aggregation and disaggregation rules are applied manually. The APS realigns the data on all levels and flags inconsistencies that cannot be resolved due to conflicting rules. These have than to be resolved manually.

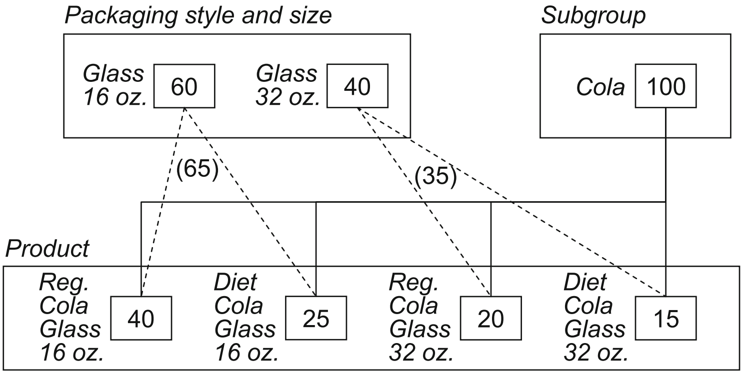


Fig. 7.6 Inconsistency of demand planning data

7.3 Demand Planning Process

The demand planning process consists of multiple phases (see e.g. Meyr 2012). Figure 7.7 shows a typical demand planning process that is used in many industries. The time scale shows the number of days needed to update the forecast in a monthly rolling forecasting process. The process starts in a central planning department with the *preparation phase*. In this phase the demand planning structures are updated by including new products, changing product groups, deactivating products that will no longer be sold (and therefore will not be forecasted anymore). The historic data is prepared and loaded into the demand planning module of the APS—e.g. shipments and customer orders. The accuracy for previous forecasts is computed (see Sect. 7.5 for details on the computation of forecast accuracy). In certain cases it is necessary to correct historic data before they may be used as input to demand planning. For example, shipment data must be corrected if stock-out situations occurred in the past—otherwise, these stock-out situations would potentially influence statistical forecasting methods using this time series as input.

In the second phase the *statistical forecast* is computed based on the updated historic data. Section 7.4 gives an introduction into statistical forecasting methods. When it comes to statistical methods and their application one typical question arises: How is the software able to make better forecasts than a human planner with years of experience in demand planning? The simple answer is that mathematical methods are unbiased. Empirical studies (see e.g. Makridakis et al. 1998) give evidence, that bias is the main reason why myopic statistical methods often produce better results. But that's only half of the truth, because information on specific events or changes (e.g. promotional activities, customer feedback on new products etc.) can lead to significant changes in demand patterns which might not be considered in standard time series analysis models. Therefore, it is necessary to combine the advantages of both worlds in an integrated demand planning process. For example, consider the demand planning process of a company selling beverages. In such

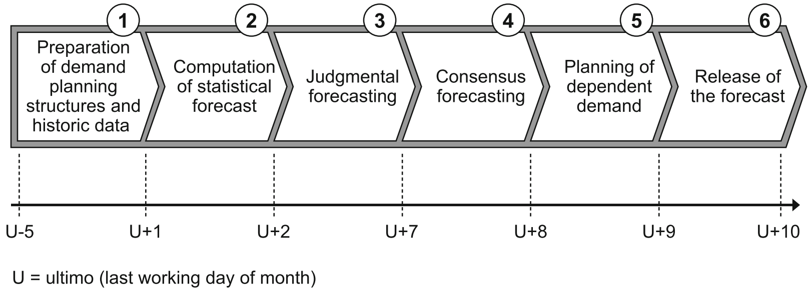


Fig. 7.7 Phases of a demand planning process

an environment the regular demand can be forecasted by a seasonal model quite accurately (refer to Sect. 7.4). But, the demand series are distorted by occasional additional demand due to promotional activities in some retail outlets. This effect can be estimated by the sales force responsible for the promotion, while the base line is forecasted by a seasonal model.

In the third phase of the demand planning process *judgmental forecasts* are created by multiple departments. Typical departments involved in judgmental forecasting are sales, product management, and marketing. Integration of statistical and judgmental forecasting is only reasonable, if information inherent in a statistical forecast is not considered in the judgmental process. In this case the information would be double counted and therefore the demand would be overestimated (or underestimated, if the judgment reduces the statistical forecast). In the following we describe some methods on how to integrate statistical forecasting and *structured* judgment. Non-structured judgment is often applied by demand planners, if they check the figures produced by a decision-support tool and "tune" the values using their sure instinct. But, for integration purposes it is necessary to structure judgment. Detailed process definitions and guidelines create a framework for such a structured judgment. Armstrong and Collopy in Wright and Goodwin (1998) describe the following five procedures for the integration:

- *Revised judgmental forecasts:* The first step in this procedure is made by demand planners, who create judgmental forecasts based on the knowledge of relevant data (e.g. historical data, causal factors etc.). Afterwards they are confronted with forecasts which are calculated using statistical methods. Then, the planners have the possibility to revise their initial estimate incorporating the new information. But, there is no predefined percentage to which extent each of the components has to be considered in the final forecast. This procedure often leads to more accurate forecasts than simple judgment not aided by statistical methods. Furthermore, it has the advantage that it leaves the control over the demand planning process to the human planner.
- *Combined forecasts:* As the above procedure assigns variable weights to the two forecasts, it is evident that these values are often biased or influenced by political means. A more formal procedure is assured by combining the two values

according to a predefined weighing scheme. Even if equal weights are assigned to judgmental forecasts and statistical forecasts, better results are possible.

- *Revised extrapolation forecasts:* Modifying statistical forecasts manually to take specific domain knowledge of the planner into account is common practice in a lot of companies. But, the revision process has to be structured accordingly. This means that the judgmental modification has to be based on predefined triggers (e.g. promotions, weather etc.).
- *Rule-based forecasts:* Rule-based forecasts are also based on statistical forecasts. But, the selection or combination of different forecasting methods is supported by structured judgments of experts. The rules used for the selection are derived from the specific knowledge of the experts or on past research. They are based on characteristics of time series or on causal factors. Rule-based forecasting improves simple extrapolation methods especially, if the series have low variability and low uncertainty.
- *Econometric forecasts:* Regression models are referred to as econometric forecasting methods, if the model selection process and the definition of causal variables is provided by structured judgment. Improvements are reported especially, if this procedure is applied to long-range forecasts. As bias could have much impact on the result of econometric forecasts, it is advisable to give the judgmental process a very rigid structure.

In practice the forecast resulting from the structured judgment processes is often discussed in a *consensus forecast meeting*. The goal is to reach a consensus about open issues like different opinions about the influence of a promotion to the sales quantities in a particular region. The degree to which the judgmental forecasts from the individual departments contribute to the consensus forecast may be derived from the average forecast accuracy the departments achieved in the past. Consensus forecasting and structured judgment needs to be supported by detailed feedback mechanisms which show the planners the quality of their inputs. Therefore, forecast accuracy reports have to differentiate between the quality of (automatic) statistical forecasting and judgmental forecasts.

Based on the consensus forecast *dependent demand* may be planned. The consensus forecast represents the demand for finished products (or product groups representing finished products). In many industries it is necessary to compute demand on component level from the consensus forecast. There are three applications for the computation of dependent demand:

- *Constrained availability of a key component:* If there is a key component that limits the supply of the products, it might be required to check the feasibility of the forecast based on the demand for that component resulting from the forecast (Dickersbach 2009). The pharmaceutical industry is a good example for this, as the supply of active ingredients is typically constrained and fixed for a long period of time.
- *Demand constraints that can be expressed by a key component:* In other industries like the computer industry or the automotive industry, overall market demand is constrained, and every finished product contains a specific key component: In computer industry this component is the processor, in automotive

industry every Diesel car contains a fuel injection pump. The conformance of the forecast with realistic market development can easily be checked using the overall demand for these key components.

- *Product bundling:* Especially in consumer goods industries, products are often bundled as part of a promotion. These bundles have an individual product number and are forecasted in the same way as "normal" products. However, it is important to understand that these products consist of other products and—therefore—influence the demand for the products of which they consist. These so-called cannibalization effects have to be analyzed and the forecast has to be adjusted accordingly (Dickersbach 2009).

Of course the dependent demand of components is also determined during master planning and materials requirements planning. However, it is much faster to compute and check dependent demand as part of the demand planning process and to update the forecast immediately.

The last step of the demand planning process is the formal approval and technical release of the forecast. This step makes the forecast available for other processes.

7.4 Statistical Forecasting Techniques

Forecasting methods were developed since the 1950s for business forecasting and at the same time for econometric purposes (e.g. unemployment rates etc.). The application in software modules makes it possible to create forecasts for a lot of items in a few seconds. Therefore, all leading APS vendors incorporate statistical forecasting procedures in their demand planning solution. These methods incorporate information on the history of a product/item in the forecasting process for future figures. There exist two different basic approaches—time series analysis and causal models. The so-called *time series analysis* assumes that the demand follows a specific pattern. Therefore, the task of a forecasting method is to estimate the pattern from the history of observations. Future forecasts can then be calculated from using this estimated pattern. The advantage of those methods is that they only require past observations of demand. The following demand patterns are most common in time series analysis (see Silver et al. 1998 and also Fig. 7.8):

1. Level model: The demand x_t in a specific period t consists of the level a and random noise u_t which cannot be estimated by a forecasting method.

$$x_t = a + u_t \tag{7.1}$$

2. Trend model: The linear trend b is added to the level model's equation.

$$x_t = a + b \cdot t + u_t \tag{7.2}$$

3. Seasonal model: It is assumed that a fixed pattern repeats every T periods (cycle). Depending on the extent of cyclic oscillations a multiplicative or an additive relationship can be considered.

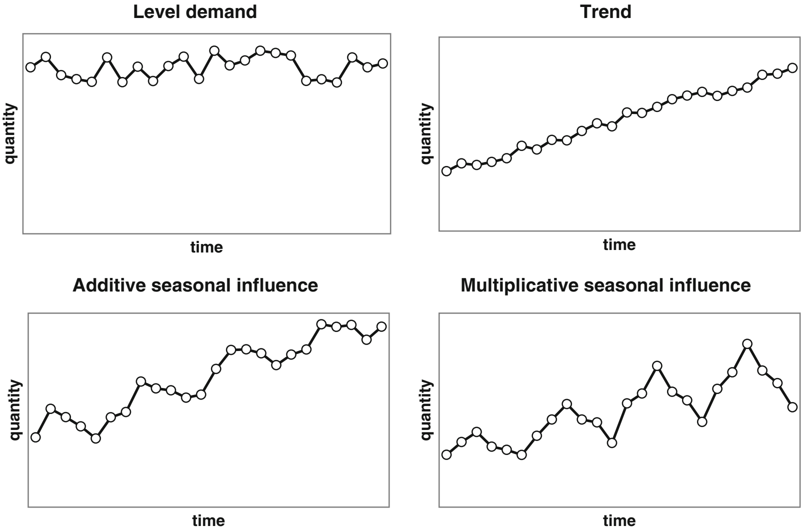


Fig. 7.8 Demand patterns

$$x_t = (a + b \cdot t) + c_t + u_t \qquad \text{additive model,} \tag{7.3a}$$

$$x_t = (a + b \cdot t) \cdot c_t + u_t \qquad \text{multiplicative model} \tag{7.3b}$$

where $c_t = c_{t-T} = c_{t-2T} = \ldots$ are seasonal indices (coefficients).

The second approach to statistical forecasting are *causal models*. They assume that the demand process is determined by some known factors. For example, the sales of ice cream might depend on the weather or temperature on a specific day. Therefore, the temperature is the so-called independent variable for ice cream sales. If enough observations of sales and temperature are available for the item considered, then the underlying model can be estimated. For this example, the model might consist of some amount of independent demand z^0 and the temperature factor $z^1(t)$

$$x_t = z^0 + z^1(t) \cdot w_t + u_t \tag{7.4}$$

where w_t is the temperature on day t.

As for parameter estimation in causal models the demand history and one or more time series with indicators are needed, the data requirements are much higher than for time series analysis. Furthermore, practical experience shows that simple time series models often produce better forecasts than complex causal models (see e.g. Silver et al. 1998, p. 130). These tend to interpret stochastic fluctuations (noise) as "structure" and therefore, introduce a systematic error into the model. In the following two paragraphs the characteristics and the approach of the most frequently used forecasting methods are described.

Table 7.1 Weights of past observations in exponential smoothing for $\alpha = 0.2$

Period	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	...
Weight	0.2	0.16	0.13	0.10	0.08	...

7.4.1 Moving Average and Smoothing Methods

As each demand history is distorted by random noise u_t, the accurate estimation of parameters for the model is a crucial task. Also, the parameters are not fix and might change over time. Therefore, it is necessary to estimate under consideration of actual observations *and* to incorporate enough past values to eliminate random fluctuations (conflicting goals!).

Simple Moving Average. The simple moving average (MA) is used for forecasting items with level demand (7.1). The parameter estimate for the level $\hat{a}$ is calculated by averaging the past n demand observations. This parameter serves as a forecast for all future periods, since the forecast $\hat{x}_{t+1}$ is independent of time. According to simple statistics, the accuracy of the forecast will increase with the length n of the time series considered, because the random deviations get less weight. But this is no more applicable if the level changes with time. Therefore, values between three and ten often lead to reasonable results for practical demand series. But the information provided by all former demands is lost according to this procedure.

Exponential Smoothing. The need to cut the time series is avoided by the exponential smoothing method, because it assigns different weights to all (!) observed demand data and incorporates them into the forecast. The weight for the observations is exponentially decreasing with the latest demand getting the highest weight. Therefore, it is possible to stay abreast of changes in the demand pattern and to keep the information which was provided by older values. For the case of level demand the forecast for period $t + 1$ will be calculated according to the following equation:

$$\hat{x}_{t+1} = \hat{a}_t = \alpha \cdot x_t + \alpha(1-\alpha) \cdot x_{t-1} + \alpha(1-\alpha)^2 \cdot x_{t-2} + \ldots \tag{7.5}$$

The parameter α is the smoothing constant, to which values between 0 and 1 can be assigned. For $\alpha = 0.2$ the weights in Table 7.4.1 are being used, if the forecast has to be made for period 1. Furthermore it is not necessary to store the whole history of an item as (7.5) can be simplified. The only data which needs to be kept in the database are the latest forecast and the latest demand value. Exponential smoothing for level demand patterns is easy to apply and requires little storage capacity. Therefore, it provides good forecasts for this kind of model and it also calculates reasonable forecasts for items which are influenced by high random fluctuations (Silver et al. 1998).

The exponential smoothing procedure for level demand can be extended to trend models and multiplicative seasonal models [see (7.2) and (7.3b)]. The method for the trend model is known as Holt's procedure (see e.g. Nahmias 2009). It smoothes both terms of the model, the level a and the trend component b with different smoothing constants α and β.

Winters introduced the seasonal model with exponential smoothing. A lot of lines of business are facing seasonal patterns, but don't incorporate it in forecasting procedures. For example, consider the manager of a shoe store, who wants to forecast sales for the next 2 weeks in daily buckets. As sales are usually higher on Saturdays than on Mondays, he has to take the weekly "season" into account. Winters' method is an efficient tool to forecast seasonal patterns, because it smoothes the estimates for the three parameters a, b and c. In contrast to the former two models the seasonal method needs far more data to initialize the parameters. For reliable estimates for the seasonal coefficients it is necessary to consider at least two cycles of demand history (e.g. 2 years). For more details on Winters' model see Chap. 29.

7.4.2 Regression Analysis

Where significant influence of some known factors is present, it seems to be straightforward to use causal models in the forecasting process. Regression analysis is the standard method for estimation of parameter values in causal models. Usually linear dependencies between the dependent variable x_t (e.g. the demand) and the leading factors (independent variables; e.g. temperature, expenditures for promotions etc.) are considered. Therefore, a multiple regression model can be formulated as follows (see e.g. Hanke and Wichern 2014):

$$x_t = z_0 + z_1 \cdot w_{1t} + z_2 \cdot w_{2t} + \ldots \tag{7.6}$$

The ice cream model in (7.4) is called the simple regression model, as it only considers one leading indicator. Multiple linear regression uses the method of least squares to estimate model parameters $(z_0, z_1, z_2, \ldots)$. This procedure minimizes the sum of the squared difference between the actual demand and the forecast the model would produce. While exponential smoothing can consider all past observations, the regression method is applied to a predefined set of data. The drawbacks of such a procedure are the same as for the moving average model. Further, the weight of all considered values equals one and therefore the model cannot react flexibly to changes in the demand pattern.

As the data requirements of linear regression models are much higher than for simple time series models, it is obvious that this effort is only paid back, if the models are used for aggregate mid-term or long-term forecasts or for a few important end products.

The following example shows the application of linear regression for the ice cream model: Assuming that the ice cream retailer observed the following demands

Table 7.2 Demand and temperature data for the ice cream example

Period	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Actual demand	43	45	54	52	54	55	43	33	52	51
Temperature (°C)	15	17	19	16	21	22	18	15	19	18

Table 7.3 Example forecasts using the linear regression model

Period	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Model value	42	46	50	44	55	57	48	42	50	48

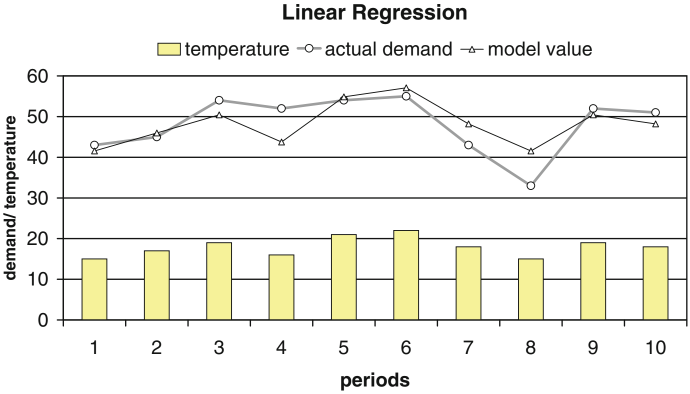


Fig. 7.9 Linear regression: results for the ice cream model

and temperatures (°C) over 10 days (Table 7.2) the linear regression will calculate the equation

$$\text{demand } x_t = 8.24 + 2.22 \cdot w_{1t} \tag{7.7}$$

with w_{1t} being the temperature on day t. Using (7.7) one can determine the forecasts (model value) which the model would have produced (see Table 7.3). But, for this it is necessary to be able to estimate the temperature reliably. Figure 7.9 shows the data and the resulting forecasts for the ice cream model.

7.5 Demand Planning Controlling

Demand planning controlling has the task to control the quality of the forecast and the quality of the demand planning process itself. The processes using the forecast as a foundation for their decisions (pre-production, purchasing, provision of additional capacity, etc.) need a quality measure to understand the accuracy of the forecast and the dimension of possible deviations of the forecast from the actual demand. No Master Planner would accept forecasts without being sure about the quality of the demand plan. Furthermore, the quality of the forecast is used as a feedback mechanism for the contributors to receive information about the quality of their contributions.

7.5.1 Basic Forecast Accuracy Metric

The first step in setting up a demand planning controlling is to define a basic metric for the accuracy of the forecast on some level of the demand planning structures. Based on this basic metric aggregated metrics can be computed. Note that aggregated measures cannot be computed directly on an aggregated level of the demand planning structures, as in this case shortage and excess planning would level out. A basic metric used to measure the forecast accuracy must have the following properties (Eickmann 2004):

- It must be summable. The domain of the metric must be positive. (Otherwise, positive and negative values would compensate when being aggregated.) The metric must be standardized (values between 0 and 100 %).
- All key figures (time series) required for the computation of the basic metric and for its aggregation must be available for all instances of the planning structures (all products, customers, time buckets, etc.). For example, a time series representing historic shipments might be not available for all instances of the planning structures (e.g. new products might not have historic shipments).
- It must be possible to get the buy-in of all involved departments in the organization regarding the definition of the basic metric. For example, if the "delivered quantity ex-works" is used as a reference to measure the forecast accuracy, sales might not commit to this metric—as sales cannot be made responsible for a low delivery service of production.

Furthermore, the level of the demand planning structures must be defined on which the basic forecast accuracy metric will be measured. Note that this level does not necessarily have to be the same as the lowest level of the demand planning structures (which is often only used to easily enter and structure the forecast data). For example assume that the total sales quantity per sales region is important to drive decisions in the supply chain, but the sales planners want to enter the forecast per customer. In this situation the basic forecast accuracy metric would be defined based on the sales quantity per sales region per article. Please note that shortage and excess planning per customer level out on the sales region level. It is important that the logistical conditions are similar for all customers within the same sales region—otherwise the precondition mentioned at the beginning of this example would not hold, which states that supply chain decisions are driven by sales quantity per sales region, not per customer.

All accuracy measures are based on the forecast error $e_{t,r}$. It is defined as the difference between the forecasted quantity $\hat{x}_{t,r}$ and the actual quantity x_t: $e_{t,r} = \hat{x}_{t,r} - x_t$. The actual quantity x_t is the observed value of the time series (that is being forecasted) for time bucket t, e.g. shipments or customer orders based on customer requested date. The forecasted quantity $\hat{x}_{t,r}$ is the forecast for x_t that was created at time bucket r. Note, that in a rolling forecast scenario, there are multiple forecasts for the same actual quantity, each being created at a specific forecast run. The forecast error is influenced by the following parameters:

- *The time delta between forecast and actuals*: Forecasting is aiming at providing information about future shipments, sales etc. Normally, it is easier to tell the nearer future than the future that is far away. Thus, the forecast accuracy strongly depends on the time between the forecast creation and the time period that is being forecasted. For example, consider a forecast for the sales volume in June this year. The sales forecast for the month of June that has been created in March normally has a lower accuracy than the forecast created in May: $e_{\text{June, March}} > e_{\text{June, May}}$.
- *The forecast granularity*: The level of aggregation also has a strong impact on the forecast accuracy. Take sales forecast again as an example: It is easier to forecast the total sales volume for all products, for all geographic areas and for a complete fiscal year, than to forecast on a weekly basis low level product groups for all sales regions individually. Thus, the forecast accuracy normally decreases if the forecast granularity increases.

$e_{t,r}$ does not yet fulfill the rules for a basic forecast accuracy metric described above: it is not positive and not standardized. Thus we have to refine the definition of forecast error. Common refinements are the following:

$$\text{squared error } \mathrm{SE}_{t,r} = e_{t,r}^2 \tag{7.8}$$

$$\text{absolute deviation } \mathrm{AD}_{t,r} = |e_{t,r}| \tag{7.9}$$

$$\text{absolute percentage error } \mathrm{APE}_{t,r} = \frac{|e_{t,r}|}{x_t} \cdot 100\,\% \tag{7.10}$$

Note that $\mathrm{APE}_{t,r}$ cannot be computed if the actual quantity x_t is zero (e.g. a product without any customer demand in time bucket t). In practice a forecast *accuracy* measure—e.g. according to the following equation—is often used rather than a forecast *error* measure:

$$\text{absolute percentage accuracy } \mathrm{APA}_{t,r} = \max\{100\,\% - \mathrm{APE}_{t,r}; 0\,\%\} \tag{7.11}$$

Implementations of this metric in APS may even consider the case that $x_t = 0$; in this case, $\text{APA}_{t,r}$ would be set to 0 %.

The basic forecast accuracy metrics must be aggregated in order to enable the controlling of the demand planning process. We distinguish between aggregation along the time dimension and aggregation along the product or geography dimension.

7.5.2 Aggregation of Forecast Accuracy by Time

There are many methods to aggregate the forecast accuracy or the forecast error by time. Each measure is calculated for a fixed horizon n (in the past) which has to be defined by the planner. If the horizon is short, then the value reacts fast to deviations from the average, but then it also might fluctuate heavily due to random demand variations. The following measures (for the first three measures see e.g. Silver et al. 1998) are common in practice:

$$\text{mean squared error MSE}_r = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{t=1}^{n} e_{t,r}^2 \tag{7.12}$$

$$\text{mean absolute deviation MAD}_r = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{t=1}^{n} |e_{t,r}| \tag{7.13}$$

$$\text{mean abs. perc. error MAPE}_r = \left[\frac{1}{n}\sum_{t=1}^{n} \frac{|e_{t,r}|}{x_t}\right] \cdot 100\,\% \tag{7.14}$$

$$\text{mean abs. perc. accuracy MAPA}_r = \left[\frac{1}{n}\sum_{t=1}^{n} \text{APA}_{t,r}\right] \tag{7.15}$$

The MSE is the variance of the forecast error in the time horizon under consideration. In the Linear Regression forecasting procedure the MSE is used as the objective function which is minimized. As the error is squared in the formula, large deviations are weighted more heavily than small errors. Whereas the MAD uses linear weights for the calculation of the forecast accuracy. Further, the meaning of the MAD is easier to interpret, as it can be compared with the demand quantity observed. The main drawback of the two measures above is the lack of comparability. The values of MSE and MAD are absolute quantities and therefore, cannot be benchmarked against other products with higher or lower average demand. The measures MAPE and MAPA standardize the value based on the observed demand quantities x_t. The result is a percentage-value for the forecast error or accuracy, respectively, which is comparable to other products. The drawback of this calculation is the need for a positive actual. Therefore a rule for this case has to be defined.

The measures described above allow detailed analysis of the past, but they need to be discussed from the beginning each time they are calculated. In demand planning tools for some 100 or 1,000 items one wants an automatic "interpretation" of the forecast error and therefore, might need an alert or triggering system. This system should raise an alert, if the statistical forecasting procedure no more fits to the time series or if the sales office did not provide the information on a sales promotion. Such an alert system can be triggered by thresholds which are based on one of the measures for the forecast accuracy. These thresholds are defined by the demand planner and updated under his responsibility. Besides the threshold technique some other triggering mechanisms have been developed which all are based on the forecast accuracy measured by MSE or MAD.

7.5.3 Aggregation of Forecast Accuracy by Product and Geography

In many industries, the units of measures, the sales quantities, the contribution margin, and the logistical conditions of all products considered in demand planning differ strongly. Thus, appropriate weighting schemes must be applied in order to aggregate the basic metric by product or by geography.

Simply computing the average of the basic forecast accuracy or forecast error for each instance of some aggregation level is not sufficient. For instance consider a product group with two articles A and B. Assume that in June A had sales of 1,000 and a forecast accuracy from May $\text{APA}_{\text{A, June, May}} = 100\,\%$ and B has sales of 10 pieces and a forecast accuracy of $\text{APA}_{\text{B, June, May}} = 0\,\%$. Using the average of both basic metrics results in a forecast accuracy for the product group of 50 %—not reflecting the actual situation of the supply chain.

A common weighting factor for some product p is the sum of the forecasted quantity $\hat{x}_p$ and the actual quantity x_p for that product related to the sum of forecasted quantity and actual quantity for all products[1]:

$$\text{weight}_p = \frac{\hat{x}_p + x_p}{\sum_q (\hat{x}_q + x_q)} \tag{7.16}$$

The forecast accuracy of a product group G can than be defined based on the weight per product as

$$\text{forecast accuracy}_G = \sum_{p \in G} (\text{APA}_p \cdot \text{weight}_p) \tag{7.17}$$

This definition is robust against situations in which either the forecasted quantity or the actual quantity is zero. If for some product, there are no actuals ($x_t = 0$, e.g. consider a product with no customer orders in the respective time horizon), $\text{weight}_p > 0$ if $\hat{x}_t > 0$. The same proposition ($\text{weight}_p > 0$) holds if there is no

---

[1] We omitted the indices t and r from x and $\hat{x}$ in order to improve readability; precisely we should write $\hat{x}_{p,t,r}$ instead of $\hat{x}_p$ and $x_{p,t}$ instead of x_p.

forecast or the forecast is zero ($\hat{x}_t = 0$) and $x_t > 0$. If both—actuals and forecast—are zero, the weight is zero and the product is not considered in the aggregated forecast accuracy.

Note that all aggregation types—by time, by product and by geography—can be combined; the respective formulas can easily be formulated by the reader. In many APS, macro languages are used to "customize" the aggregation schemes for the basic forecast accuracy metrics by all dimensions.

7.5.4 Forecast Value Added

If multiple departments are contributing to the forecast, the *Forecast Value Added* (FVA) can be measured (Gilliand 2002). This shows whether the effort of a specific step in the overall process pays off. Typically the first forecast (in most cases this is the automatic statistical forecast) is compared to a simple naive forecast. The naive forecast is simply created by using the most recent sales figure as forecast. Every successive step needs to improve (add value) to the forecast. As measure for the quality of a forecast one may use any suitable standardized forecast accuracy measure like MAPA. The FVA of the first forecast can then be calculated by subtracting the MAPA of the naive forecast from the MAPA of the first forecast. If this value is positive then one adds value by using the first forecast. This can be continued by measuring the MAPA of the revised forecast from marketing and comparing it to the MAPA of the statistical forecast and so on.

Based on the FVA the management can set targets and incentives for the participants in the forecasting process. This is a clear comprehensible system which contributes to the overall supply chain efficiency.

7.5.5 Biased Forecasts

In practice, sales (and other departments) tend towards overestimating future sales volume due to safety thinking. A larger forecast might lead to higher production and purchasing volume and—thus—to a better supply situation. This behavior results in a bias of the forecast which can be measured systematically, and based on that, controlled (and corrected). The bias can be measured by the mean deviation:

$$\text{mean deviation } \mathrm{MD}_r = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{t=1}^{n} e_{t,r} \tag{7.18}$$

If $\mathrm{MD}_r > 0$ the forecast is overestimated systematically. In this case, the forecast might be reduced by the bias MD_r, in order to "correct" the forecast and make it more realistic.

7.6 Additional Features

In this section additional features of demand planning based on APS are described, that have to be taken into account in order to address the specific demand planning needs of the supply chain.

7.6.1 Life-Cycle-Management and Phase-In/Phase-Out

In quite a lot of innovative businesses, like the computer industry, the life-cycles of certain components or products were reduced to less than a year. For example, high-tech firms offer up to three generations of a hard-disk every year. As common statistical forecasting procedures require significant demand history, it would take the whole life-cycle until useful results are gathered. But, since new products replace old products with almost the same functionality, it is plausible to reuse some information on the demand curve for the next generation.

Two main approaches are known in practice: The first one indexes the complete time series and determines the life-cycle-factor which has to be multiplied with the average demand to get the quantity for a specific period in the life-cycle (*life-cycle-management*). This method is able to stay abreast of arbitrary types of life-cycles. The only information needed for the application for new products is the length of the cycle and the estimated average demand. These two values are adapted continuously when observed demand data gets available during the "life" of the product.

The second approach (*phasing method*) divides the whole life-cycle in three phases. The "phase-in" describes the launch of a new product and is characterized by the increase of the demand according to a certain percentage (linear growth). Afterwards the series follows a constant demand pattern, as considered for the statistical forecasting procedures. During the "phase-out" the demand decreases along a specific percentage until the end of the life-cycle of the product. The only data necessary for the phasing model are the lengths of the phases and the in-/decrease-percentages.

For successful application of the above models it is necessary that the APS provides the functionality to build a "model library". In this database life-cycles or phasing models are stored for each product group under consideration. Mostly only one life-cycle exists for the whole product group and this model is updated every time a life-cycle ends.

7.6.2 Price-Based Planning

In some industries—for example in the mineral oil industry—demand quantities strongly correlate with market prices. The quality of the products (different fuel grades, diesel, etc.) is fully specified and products from different suppliers can easily be interchanged. Second, there are spot market structures that make demand and supply transparent, leading to a “free” formation of prices. Third, products can be stored, such that the demand for supply is—within certain bounds—independent from the consumption of the products.

As a consequence, suppliers may sell nearly *any* quantity of their products—as long as they meet (or undercut) the current market price level. In this environment demand planning must include the planning of price levels, as prices are a major factor influencing demand. To include price planning into a demand planning environment, additional time series are needed:

- *Price levels*: There are multiple price time series that might be of interest for the demand planning process, e.g. market price, sales price, differential price (spread between market and sales price, might be negative!), average price level of competition, contracted prices.
- *Revenues*: The revenue can either be entered manually or computed by the product of price and quantity.
- *Exchange rates*: In international markets multiple currencies are involved (US Dollar, Euro, etc.). Usually, one currency is used as standard and all other currencies are transformed into the standard currency. For this purpose the exchange rates have to be known over time.

Incorporating these time series into a demand planning framework requires some further considerations. Only revenue and quantities can be aggregated—prices cannot be aggregated: What is the price of a product group G consisting of two products A and B, A having a price of 100 and B of 10? Clearly, the average price of the product group can only be computed from the aggregated revenue and the aggregated quantity:

$$\text{Price}_G = \left(\sum_{p \in G} \text{Revenue}_p\right) / \left(\sum_{p \in G} \text{Quantity}_p\right) \tag{7.19}$$

After prices have been aggregated to the higher levels of the demand planning structures, one might want to manually adjust prices on aggregated levels. As described in Sect. 7.2 time series may be disaggregated to lower levels of the demand planning structures using disaggregation rules. In order to bring the demand planning structures into a consistent state after the change of a price information, the following procedure can be applied:

1. Disaggregate the price time series to the lowest level using some disaggregation rule (e.g. based on existing price information on lower levels).
2. Adjust the revenue data on all levels by computing the product of quantity and updated price and store this value in the revenue time series.

Please note that price-based planning includes scenarios where the price may be influenced (e.g. by setting the market price for finished products) and the market demand results from that, scenarios where the price of raw material (e.g. crude oil) is set by suppliers, impacting the own product pricing and—by that—the resulting demand, and combinations of both scenarios.

7.6.3 Sporadic Demand

We call a time series sporadic (intermittent), if no demand is observed in quite a lot of periods. Those demand patterns especially occur for spare parts or if only a small part of the demand quantity is forecasted; for example the demand for jeans in a specific size on 1 day in a specific store might be sporadic. The usage of common statistical forecasting methods would produce large errors for those items. Additional judgmental forecasting would not increase the quality, because the occurrence of periods with no demand is usually pure random and therefore not predictable. Furthermore, sporadic demand often occurs for a large amount of C-class items, for which it would be appreciable to get forecasts with low time effort for human planners.

Efficient procedures for automatic calculation of forecasts for sporadic demand items were developed. These methods try to forecast the two components "occurrence of period with positive demand" and "quantity of demand" separately. For example, Croston's method (see Silver et al. 1998 or Tempelmeier 2012) determines the time between two transactions (demand periods) and the amount of the transaction. The update of the components can then be done by exponential smoothing methods. Significant reduction of the observed error is possible, if the sporadic demand process has no specific influence which causes the intermittent demand pattern. For example, the frequent occurrence of stockouts in a retail outlet could produce a time series that implies sporadic demand.

7.6.4 Lost Sales vs. Backorders

Forecasts are usually based on the demand history of an item. But, while industrial customers (B2B) often accept backorders, if the product is not available, the consumer (B2C) won't. Therefore, the amount of observed sales equals the amount of demand in the backorder case, but in the lost-sales case the sales figures might underestimate the real demand. For forecasting purposes the demand time series is needed and therefore, must be calculated from the observed sales figures. This problem frequently occurs, if forecasts for the point-of-sales (retailers, outlets) should be calculated.

There are two generally different solution approaches for the problem of forecasting in presence of lost sales: The first one tries to calculate a virtual demand history which is based on the sales history and the information on stock-outs. The forecasts can then be computed on the basis of the virtual demand history. This approach delivers good results, if the number of stock-outs is quite low. An alternative solution to the lost-sales problem is the usage of sophisticated statistical methods which consider the observed sales as a censored sample of the demand sample (see e.g. Nahmias 2009). For these methods it is necessary to know the inventory management processes which were/are applied for the products under consideration.

7.6.5 Model Selection and Parameter Estimation

The selection of the forecasting model and the estimation of the necessary parameters should be updated more or less regularly (e.g. every year) but not too often, as this would result in too much nervousness. APS often provide some kind of automatic model selection and parameter estimation. This is called *pick-the-best option*. The user only has to define the time-horizon on which the calculation should be based. The system then searches all available statistical forecasting procedures and parameter combinations and selects the one which produces the best forecast accuracy in the specified time-segment. As a result the user gets a list with the forecasting method and the corresponding parameters for each product/item he should implement. Therefore, the demand planner doesn't have to check if a model fits the time series under consideration (e.g. "Are the sales figures really seasonal or does the system only interpret random fluctuations?") and can use the toolset of statistical methods like a black box.

But, practical experience shows that the long-term performance is better and more robust, if only 1–3 forecasting methods with equal parameter settings for a group of products are applied. This follows from the following drawbacks of the described automatic selection:

- The time-horizon should cover enough periods to get statistically significant results. But often the history of time series is relatively short when demand planning is introduced first.
- The criterion for the evaluation is mostly one of the forecast accuracy measures described above. However, those values don't tell you anything about the robustness of the models' results.
- For the selection procedure three distinct time-segments are necessary: In the first segment the models components are initialized. For example for Winters' seasonal model 2–3 full seasonal cycles (e.g. years) are necessary to calculate initial values for the seasonal coefficients. The second segment of the time series history is used to optimize the parameter values. Therefore, the parameters are changed stepwise in the corresponding range (grid-search) and the forecast accuracy is measured. The optimized parameters are used to get forecasts for the third time-segment which is also evaluated using the forecast accuracy. This accuracy value is then the criterion for the selection of the best forecasting model.

  The setting of the length of each of the time-segments has significant influence on the result of the model selection. Mostly the user has no possibility to change those settings or even can not view the settings in the software.

Therefore, the automatic model selection can guide an experienced demand planner while searching for the appropriate proceeding. But, it is not suggestive to use it as a black box.

7.6.6 Safety Stocks

Most APS-providers complement their demand planning module with the functionality for safety stock calculation. This is intuitive since the forecast error is one of the major factors influencing the amount of stock which is necessary to reach a specific service level. The calculation of safety stocks is quite complex, as there exist many different formulas each for a specific problem setting. The demand planner's task hereby is to check whether the prerequisites are met in his application. While this chapter cannot provide a fully detailed overview on safety stocks and inventory management, we want to focus on the functionality which can be found in most APS. For further information the reader is referred to one of the inventory management books by Silver et al. (1998) or Nahmias (2009).

Most software tools offer safety stock calculations for "single-stage inventory systems". This means that it is assumed that there exists only one single stocking point from which the demand is served. Multi-stage or multi-echelon systems (e.g. distribution chains with DC- and retailer-inventories) on the other hand have the possibility to store safety stocks on more than one stage.

For single-stage systems the amount of necessary safety stock ss is generally determined by the product of the standard deviation of the forecast error during the risk time σ_R and the safety factor k:

$$\text{safety stock } ss = k \cdot \sigma_R \tag{7.20}$$

Assuming that the variance of the forecast error in the future is the same as in the past, σ_R can be calculated by multiplying the standard deviation of the forecast error (calculated from past time series) σ_e with the square root of the risk time $\sqrt{R}$. The length of the risk time depends on the inventory management system. The following two systems have to be distinguished:

- *Periodic review system*: In such an environment the inventory position is reviewed only every t time periods (review interval). Each time the inventory is reviewed, an order is triggered and sent to the supplying entity (e.g. the production department, the supplier). The delivery is assumed to be available after the replenishment lead-time L. Therefore, the risk time equals the sum of the review interval and the replenishment lead-time: $R = L + t$.
- *Continuous review system*: In continuous review systems the point in time at which an order is released is triggered by a predefined reorder point. If the inventory position falls below the reorder point, an order of a specific quantity q is released. The risk time in a continuous review system equals only the replenishment lead-time L: $R = L$.

But that is only half of the safety stock formula. The safety factor k represents all other determinants of the safety stock. In the following the determinants and some of their values are explained:

- *Service level*: For the service level quite a lot of definitions exist. The most common ones are the following:

  - Cycle- or α-service level: α is defined as the fraction of periods in which no stock-out occurs. Therefore, the safety stock has to ensure the probability (which fits the companies business objectives) of no stock-out during the replenishment cycle.
  - Fill rate (β-service level): The fill rate is the order quantity of a product which can be met directly from stock.
  - Order fill rate: While the fill rate considers the smallest unit of measurement of a product, the order fill rate counts *complete* customer orders served from stock.
- *Review interval or order quantity*: In periodic review systems the review interval is fixed and the order quantities depend on the estimated demand in an order cycle. For continuous review systems the opposite applies, as the order quantity is fixed and the length of the order cycle depends on the demand. But, if the demand is approximately level, both parameters can be converted in each other by the simple relation:
  order quantity $q =$ demand $d \cdot$ cycle length t.

  The required parameter can be calculated by minimizing the ordering costs and the holding costs for the lot-sizing stock. This computation can be made by applying the well-known economic order quantity (EOQ)-formula (e.g. Silver et al. 1998).
- *Demand distribution function*: The distribution function of the observed demand is usually approximated by a standard distribution known from statistics. One of the most common distribution functions is the normal distribution. The distribution parameters (mean and variance) can easily be calculated from a sample of demands from the historic time series.

All these parameters have to be combined in a formula which stays abreast the requirements of the business under consideration. Now, it should be clear that an APS-tool can only provide safety stock calculations if specific assumptions are met. But, if all parameters are user-definable the software can cover a wide range of different settings. Therefore, it is necessary to transfer the inventory management rules which are applied in the company to the standard parameters which are needed in the software. And that is the challenge of the demand planner.

This section on safety stock calculation gives only a short impression on the complexity of inventory management. The inspired reader can gather more information in one of the inventory management books listed below.

7.6.7 What-If Analysis and Simulation

In Sect. 7.1 the typical steps of a demand planning process are listed (see also Fig. 7.7 on p. 134): data collection, computation of further data, judgemental forecasting, creating a consensus forecast, planning of dependent demand, and release of the forecast to subsequent planning processes. In this workflow the final forecast is a result of the preceding steps—each step adding more information until the consensus forecast reflecting all information on the anticipated customer demand is reached. In some cases the forecasting process does not only reflect the anticipation of customer demand but captures decisions to shape the demand. Examples of demand shaping decisions are

- Price promotions
- Bundling of products
- Regional promotions
- New product introduction.

In these cases it may be necessary to assess the impact of the demand shaping decision on the supply situation by means of master planning (Chap. 8), e.g. in a sales & operations planning scenario (Sect. 8.4). If, for example, a price promotion is planned for a specific product group, a higher demand on that product group might be forecasted (otherwise, reducing price as a promotional activity would make no sense). The forecast including the increased demand for that product group is passed on to master planning. If, for sake of the example, master planning detects a constraint—insufficient capacity or material availability to fulfill the increased constraint—, the supply plan will reflect a lower volume than the demand plan. In this case it would be reasonable *not to reduce price as a promotion* as there will be no increase of the sales volume due to supply restrictions. Thus, the workflow will go back to demand planning with the information that the increased forecast should be reduced and the price promotion should be canceled. This iteration loop is an example of a what-if analysis that helps to assess the impact of a demand shaping forecast decision.

The other examples in the list above also require what-if analysis and simulation of a shaped forecast by master planning including a feedback to the demand planning process:

- Consider a scenario with two products being bundled as a promotion to generate additional demand. If one of the products is not available in sufficient quantities, the effect on sales will be lower than planned for. The what-if scenario will reveal that additional demand forecasted due to the bundling-promotion should be reduced.
- A similar situation might occur with regional promotions of specific products. For example, in the car tires industry, a company wanted to strengthen sales in Spain by a marketing campaign. The additional demand of summer tires for Spain was planned in the forecasting process. Unfortunately, the campaign took place in September and October, when demand for winter tires in northern and central European countries was at a peak due to start of the winter season. Both product groups—summer tires and winter tires—share the same resources and an overload situation on these resources occurred. As winter tires have a higher margin than summer tires they are prioritized by master planning and all required resources are allocated to winter tires, reducing the supply of summer tires for the Spanish market. This information will be fed back to demand planning in order to adjust the timing or concept of the marketing campaign and the corresponding demand plan.
- The third example concerns a situation where a new product generation is being introduced to the market. This happens regularly in the electronics industry,

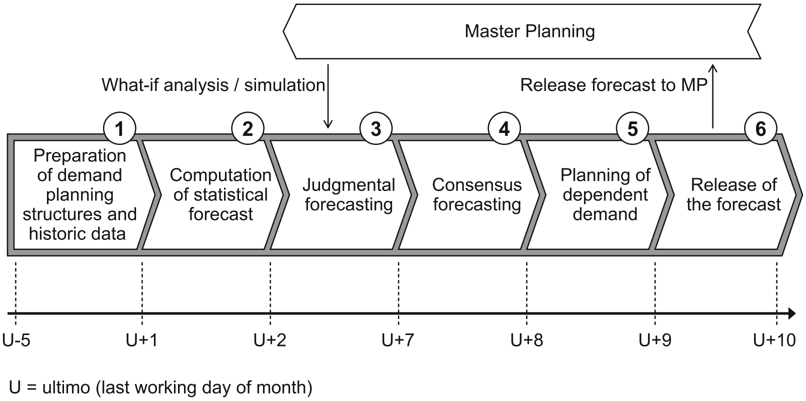


Fig. 7.10 Demand planning process with what-if analysis feedback loop

where products of a new product generation usually are cheaper and have better features than those of the preceding generation. In the demand planning process the demand of the products of the former generation will be reduced according to the phase out plan of those products, and the demand for the new product generation will increase over time. Assume that there is still a large inventory for some products of the old generation. In master planning we will detect the large period of cover for the old products. This might lead to a revised decision regarding the timing of the phase in of the new product generation and the phase out of the old one. This information will then be fed back to demand planning and the forecast will be adjusted according to the new timing of the introduction of the new product generation.

The examples illustrate that the feedback loop in a what-if analysis is required if the demand is actively influenced by business decisions, e.g. promotions and new product introductions. In this case the master planning process simulates the impact of the demand plan on the supply chain, indicating constraints, excess stock situations, lower supply than demand, etc. This information will be fed back to the demand planning process to be judged by the planners. As a result business decisions might be revised. After the step of judgemental forecasting, a new consensus forecast will be created, dependent demand will be planned, and the new forecast will be released to subsequent processes. Figure 7.10 summarizes the demand planning process with a feedback loop due to a what-if analysis.

References

Dickersbach, J. (2009). *Supply chain management with SAP APO* (3rd ed.). Berlin/New York: Springer.

Eickmann, L. (2004). Bewertung und Steuerung von Prozessleistungen des Demand Plannings. *Supply Chain Management, 4*(3), 37–43.

Gilliand, M. (2002). Is forecasting a waste of time? *Supply Chain Management Review, 6*, 16–24.

Hanke, J., & Wichern, D. (2014). *Business forecasting* (9th ed.). Harlow: Pearson Education Limited.

Makridakis, S. G., Wheelwright, S., & Hyndman, R. (1998). *Forecasting: Methods and applications (3rd ed.).* New York: Wiley.

Meyr, H. (2012). Demand planning. In H. Stadtler, B. Fleischmann, M. Grunow, H. Meyr, & C. Sürie (Eds.), *Advanced planning in supply chains — Illustrating the concepts using an SAP APO case study* (Chapter 4, pp. 67–108). New York: Springer.

Nahmias, S. (2009). *Production and operations analysis* (6th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Tempelmeier, H. (2012). *Bestandsmanagement in Supply Chains* (4th ed.). Norderstedt: Books on Demand.

Wright, G., & Goodwin, P. (1998). *Forecasting with judgment* (1st ed.). New York: Wiley.

Master Planning

8

Martin Albrecht, Jens Rohde, and Michael Wagner

The main purpose of *Master Planning* is to synchronize the flow of materials along the entire supply chain. Master Planning supports mid-term decisions on the efficient utilization of production, transport, supply capacities, seasonal stock as well as on the balancing of supply and demand. As a result of this synchronization, production and distribution entities are able to reduce their inventory levels. Without centralized Master Planning, larger buffers are required in order to ensure a continuous flow of material. Coordinated master plans provide the ability to reduce these safety buffers by decreasing the variance of production and distribution quantities.

To synchronize the flow of materials effectively it is important to decide how available capacities of each entity of the supply chain will be used. As Master Planning covers mid-term decisions (see Chap. 4), it is necessary to consider at least one seasonal cycle to be able to balance all demand peaks. The decisions on production, transport (and sometimes, sales) quantities need to be addressed simultaneously while minimizing total costs for inventory, overtime, production and transportation.

The results of Master Planning are targets/instructions for Production Planning and Scheduling, Distribution and Transport Planning as well as Purchasing

---

M. Albrecht (✉)
Paul Hartmann AG, Process Excellence Management, Hartmann Process Consulting,
Paul-Hartmann-Str. 12, 89522 Heidenheim, Germany
e-mail: martin.albrecht@hartmann.info

J. Rohde
SAP AG, Dietmar-Hopp-Allee 16, 69190 Walldorf, Germany
e-mail: jens.rohde@sap.com

M. Wagner
Paul Hartmann AG, Process Excellence Management, Information Technology,
Paul-Hartmann-Str. 12, 89522 Heidenheim, Germany
e-mail: michael.wagner@hartmann.info

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_8,

and Material Requirements Planning. For example, the Production Planning and Scheduling module has to consider the amount of planned stock at the end of each master planning period and the reserved capacity up to the planning horizon. The use of specific transportation lines and capacities are examples of instructions for Distribution and Transport Planning. Section 8.1 will illustrate the Master Planning decisions and results in detail.

However, it is not possible and not recommended to perform optimization on detailed data. Master Planning needs the aggregation of products and materials to product groups and material groups, respectively, and concentration on bottleneck resources. Not only can a reduction in data be achieved, but the uncertainty in mid-term data and the model's complexity can also be reduced. Model building including the aggregation and disaggregation processes is discussed in Sect. 8.2.

A master plan should be generated centrally and updated periodically. These tasks can be divided into several steps as described in Sect. 8.3.

An important extension of Master Planning is Sales and Operations Planning (S&OP). A description from a modeling and process perspective will be given in Sect. 8.4.

8.1 The Decision Situation

Based on demand data from the Demand Planning module, Master Planning has to create an aggregated production and distribution plan for all supply chain entities. It is important to account for the available capacity and dependencies between the different production and distribution stages. Such a capacitated plan for the entire supply chain leads to a synchronized flow of materials without creating large buffers between these entities.

To make use of the Master Planning module it is necessary that production and transport quantities can be split and produced in different periods. Furthermore, intermediates and products should be stockable (at least for several periods) to be able to balance capacities by building up inventories. Because Master Planning is a deterministic planning module, reasonable results can only be expected for production processes having low output variances.

The following options have to be evaluated if bottlenecks on production resources occur:

- Produce in earlier periods while increasing seasonal stock
- Produce at alternative sites with higher production and/or transport costs
- Produce in alternative production modes with higher production costs
- Buy products from a vendor with higher costs than your own manufacturing costs
- Work overtime to fulfill the given demand with increased production costs and possible additional fixed costs.

It is also possible that a bottleneck occurs on transportation lines. In this case the following alternatives have to be taken into consideration:

- Produce and ship in earlier periods while increasing seasonal stock in a distribution center

- Distribute products using alternative transportation modes with different capacities and costs
- Deliver to customers from another distribution center.

In order to solve these problems optimally, one must consider the supply chain as a whole and generate a solution with a centralized view while considering all relevant costs and constraints. Otherwise, decentral approaches lead to bottlenecks at other locations and suboptimal solutions.

Apart from production and transportation, further trade-offs may become relevant for Master Planning. A frequent trade-off is the right choice of the sales quantities. It may be beneficial not to fulfill the complete demand (forecast), e.g., if regular capacities are insufficient and overtime costs would exceed the margins of products sold. In addition, there are some industry sectors with specific requirements. In process industries, the impact of setup activities is often so large that a meaningful master plan has to include lot-sizing decisions. Also "green supply chains" raise a couple of challenges. Examples are restrictions on gas emissions (e.g., Mirzapour Al-e-hashem et al. 2013), which often can be modeled by standard APS techniques via additional capacity constraints, and reverse logistics networks (e.g., Cardoso et al. 2013). Moreover, legal requirements such as duty (e.g., Oh and Karimi 2006) and taxation (e.g., Sousa et al. 2011) are of growing importance.

To generate feasible targets, a concept of anticipation is necessary. This concept should predict the (aggregate) outcomes of lower levels' decision-making procedures that result from given targets as precisely as possible within the context of Master Planning. This prediction should be less complex than performing complete planning runs at the lower planning levels. A simple example for anticipation is to reduce the periods' production capacity by a fixed amount to consider setup times expected from lot wise production. However, in production processes with varying setup times dependent on the product mix, this concept may not be accurate enough; therefore, more appropriate solutions for anticipating setup decisions have to be found (for further information see Schneeweiss 2003; approaches for accurate anticipation of lot-sizing and scheduling decisions are given, for example, in Rohde 2004 and Stadtler 1988).

The following paragraph introduces a small example to depict this decision situation. It will be used to illustrate the decisions of Master Planning and show the effects, results and the data used.

The example supply chain in Fig. 8.1 has two production sites (Plant 1 and Plant 2) as well as two distribution centers (DC 1 and DC 2). Two different products are produced in each plant in a single-stage process. The customers are supplied from their local *distribution center* (DC), which usually receives products from the nearest production site. However, it is possible to receive products from the plant in the other region. Such a delivery will increase transport costs per unit. Inventory for finished products is exclusively located at the DCs. The regular production capacity of each production unit is 80 h per week (two shifts, 5 days). It is possible to extend this capacity by working overtime.

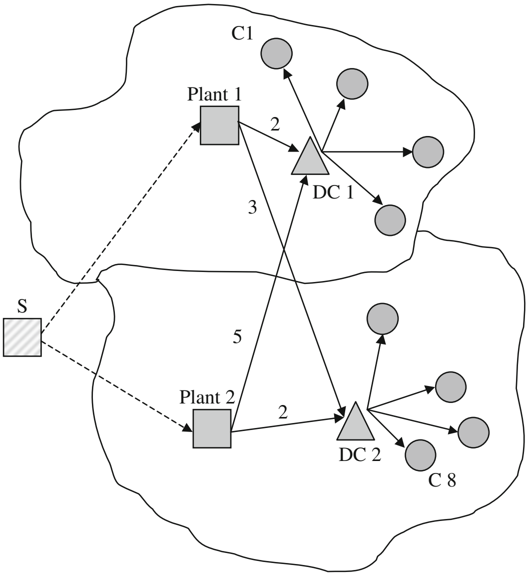


Fig. 8.1 Example of a supply chain

Table 8.1 Seasonal demand peak

Quarter	1	2	3	4
Demand	12	13	10	**45**
Capacity available	20	20	20	20

In introducing a third production unit (supplier S), a multi-stage production problem and, in this example, a common capacity restriction for the production of parts, has to be considered. In the remainder of this chapter the third production unit will not be regarded.

8.1.1 Planning Horizon and Periods

The planning horizon is characterized by the interval of time for which plans are generated. It is important to select a planning horizon that covers at least one seasonal cycle. Otherwise, there would be no possibility to balance capacities throughout a season, and hence, peaks in demand would possibly not be covered. If, for example, demand peaks were to occur in the last quarter of a year, and only half a year were considered, it might not be possible to balance this peak during planning of the second half (see following simplified example, Tables 8.1, 8.2, and 8.3). Often, the planning horizon for Master Planning covers 12 months.

Table 8.1 shows the quarterly demand and the available capacity. Producing one part takes one capacity unit. If it is not possible to extend capacity, a plan with a horizon of two quarters would lead to the infeasible plan shown in Table 8.2. Considering a whole seasonal cycle (in this case four quarters), a feasible plan can be derived (see Table 8.3).

Table 8.2 Infeasible solution

Quarter	1	2	3	4
Demand	12	13	10	45
Capacity available	20	20	20	20
Capacity used	12	13	20	**35**

Table 8.3 Feasible solution

Quarter	1	2	3	4
Demand	12	13	10	45
Capacity available	20	20	20	20
Capacity used	20	20	20	20

As we have already seen in the previous example, the planning horizon is divided into several periods, the so-called *time buckets*. The length of these periods (often a week or month) must be chosen carefully with respect to the lead-times at every stage of the supply chain. In *bucket-oriented* Master Planning, the lead-time of each process[1] that uses potential bottleneck resources is usually defined as one time bucket or an integer multiple. A potential bottleneck resource might cause delays (waiting times) due to a high utilization rate. It is also possible that one might neglect the lead-time of some activities performed on non-bottleneck resources. Then, a part has to be produced in the same bucket as its predecessor and successor, respectively. This imprecision may lead to instructions that may not be disaggregated into feasible schedules at the lower planning levels, but then, shorter planned lead-times are possible. On the other hand, using one bucket or an integer multiple regularly leads to more appropriate instructions, but artificially extends the planned lead-times.

Shorter time buckets result in a more accurate representation of the decision situation and the lead-time modeling, but imply a higher complexity for the planning problem. Higher complexity, inaccuracy of data in future periods and the increasing expenditure for collecting data emphasize the trade-off between accuracy and complexity. Only the use of big time buckets allows for the planning of quantities, but not for individual orders or product units.

Another possibility is the use of varying lengths for different periods; that is, the first periods are represented by shorter time buckets to enable more exact planning on current data. The more one reaches the planning horizon, the bigger the chosen time buckets are. However, this approach poses problems with the modeling of lead-time offsets between production and distribution stages (see also Chap. 4).

To work on current data, it is necessary to update the master plan at discrete intervals of time. Thus, new and more reliable demand forecasts as well as known customer orders are considered in the new planning run. During the *frozen horizon* (see also Chap. 4), the master plan is implemented. Looking several periods ahead is necessary to be able to balance demand and capacities as already mentioned.

---

[1] Here, a process is an aggregation of several successive production and transportation activities (see also Sect. 8.2.3).

8.1.2 Decisions

Master Planning has to deal with the trade-off between costs for inventories, production, transports and capacity extension. The corresponding quantities that are produced, moved or stored need to be determined in the master planning process.

Production quantities (for each time bucket and product group) are mainly determined by the production costs and the available capacity. Capacity extensions have to be modeled as decision variables in Master Planning if production quantities also depend on these enhancements. Not only production capacity, but also transport capacity on the links between plants, warehouses and customers needs to be planned in Master Planning. Decisions on setups and changeovers are taken into account in Master Planning only if lot sizes usually cover more than a period's demand. Otherwise, the decision is left to Production Planning and Scheduling, and setup times are anticipated in Master Planning.

While transport capacities only set a frame for the quantities that can be carried from A to B, the decision on the transport quantity (for every product group and time bucket) also needs to be addressed. Generally, linear transport costs are considered in mid-term planning. Hence, it is only possible to determine the quantities, not the detailed loading of single transportation means. This is to be done in Transport Planning for Procurement and Distribution (see Chap. 12).

With regard to the sales quantities, there are two major modeling approaches: (1) The sales quantities are set equal to the forecast. They are considered as fixed input parameters and not as (variable) decisions within Master Planning. (2) Decisions about sales quantities are explicitly included. That means, there is the option for not fulfilling the forecast when appropriate. Here we can further distinguish two subcases. First, unfulfilled demand is backordered. That is, customers wait for the fulfillment of the outstanding orders in case of shortages. Hence, the unfulfilled forecast quantities will enter as "new" demands into the system in the next period. The backorder case is especially relevant for seller markets and customer-specific products. Second, missed sales are assumed to be lost. For example, customers will buy from a competitor (as it is possible in commodity markets) or choose a different product. The forecast can be considered as upper bound on the sales quantities then.

Case (1) is the best choice if it is a priori clear that deviating from the forecast will lead to suboptimal results. Indicators for that are flexible capacities and high contribution margins or large penalties for late delivery. Case (2) should be chosen if production capacities are too small for covering the whole demand, while not being extendable at medium term (this occurs frequently in process industries, see Timpe and Kallrath 2000 for a corresponding model formulation). A particular motivation for case (2) with lost sales can be that production costs exceed the gains from serving specific customers or product portfolios. Note that this trade-off is covered by S&OP, too.

If production, transport, and sales quantities are determined, the stock levels are known. Inventory variables are used to account for inventory holding costs.

For sake of simplicity, our *example* assumes that sales quantities are fixed. Hence, its decision variables are:

- Production quantities for every product, period and plant
- Transport quantities on every transportation link from plant to DC, for every product and period
- Ending inventory level for every product, period and DC
- Overtime for every plant in every period.

8.1.3 Objectives

As described in the previous section, a model for Master Planning has to respect several restrictions when *minimizing total costs*. The costs affecting the objective function depend on the decision situation. In Master Planning they do not have to be as precise as, for example, within accounting systems; they are only incorporated to find out the most economical decision(s). A simple example may clarify this. If two products share a common bottleneck, it is only necessary to know which of the two products has the least inventory cost per capacity unit used. This will be the product to stock first, irrespective of "correct costs," as long as the relation between the costs remains valid.

In most master planning settings, products can be stored at each production site and DC, respectively. Therefore, the inventory holding costs (e.g. for working capital, handling) have to be part of the objective function. Furthermore, the ability of extending capacity has to be taken into account. The corresponding costs need to be considered in the objective function. Also, variable production costs may differ between production sites, and thus, are part of the master planning process. If lot-sizing decisions should be made in Master Planning, it is necessary to incorporate costs for setups as well.

The different prices of the suppliers have to be considered in the objective function if Master Planning models are extended to optimize supply decisions.

Every stage of the production-distribution network is connected to other entities of the supply chain by transportation links, which are associated with transport costs. Usually, only variable linear cost rates for each transportation link and an adequate lead-time offset are considered in mid-term Master Planning.

In case where the forecast is taken as an upper bound for the sales quantities (case (2) with lost sales in Sect. 8.1.2), the objective can best be described by maximizing the contribution margin, i.e., variable profit minus variable costs (see Fleischmann and Meyr 2003 for an example. Note that this objective can equivalently be modeled as cost minimization, setting penalty costs for lost sales equal to the contribution margins).

The objective function of the simplified *example* minimizes the sum of

- Production costs
- Inventory holding costs
- Additional costs for using overtime
- Transport costs.

8.1.4 Data

Master Planning receives data from different systems and modules. The forecast data, which describe the demand of each product (group) in each period in the planning horizon, are a result of Demand Planning.

Capacities need to be incorporated for each potential bottleneck resource (e.g. machines, warehouses, transportation). Transport capacities need not to be modeled if a company engages a third-party logistics provider who ensures an availability of 100 %. But if capacity has to be extended on condition that cost rates increase, this additional amount of capacity and the respective cost rates have to be considered. For the calculation of necessary capacity, production efficiency and production coefficients have to be part of the model.

The BOMs of all products (groups) form the basis of the material flows within the model and provide the information on input-output coefficients. For every storage node (e.g. warehouse, work-in-process inventory) minimum (e.g. safety stocks and estimated lot-sizing stocks) and maximum stock levels (e.g. shelf lives) need to be defined for each product (group).

Additionally, all cost elements mentioned above are input to the model.

Data for the *example* are

- Forecasts for each sales region and product in every period
- Available regular capacity for each plant (machine) and period
- Maximum overtime in each plant
- The production efficiency of products produced at specific plants (e.g. in tons of finished products per hour)
- The current stock levels at each DC and for every product
- The minimum stock levels at each DC and for every product.

8.1.5 Results

The results of Master Planning are the optimized values of decision variables, which are instructions to other planning modules. Some decision variables have only planning character and are never (directly) implemented as they are determined in other modules in more detail (e.g. production quantities are planned in Production Planning and Scheduling).

Therefore, the most important results are the planned capacity usage (in each bucket for every resource (group) and transportation link) and the amount of seasonal stock at the end of each time bucket. Both cannot be determined in the short-term planning modules because they need to be calculated under the consideration of an entire seasonal cycle. Production capacities are input to Production Planning and Scheduling. Seasonal stocks (possibly plus additional other stock targets), at the end of each Master Planning bucket, provide minimum stock levels in detailed scheduling.

Capacity extensions need to be decided during the frozen period as they often cannot be influenced in the short term. The same applies to procurement decisions for special materials with long lead-times or those that are purchased on the basis of a basic agreement.

Results in the *example* are

- Seasonal stock, which is the difference between the minimum stock and the planned inventory level, for every product, period and DC
- Amount of overtime for every plant in every period that should be reserved.

8.2 Model Building

In most APS, Master Planning is described by a *Linear Programming* (LP) model with continuous variables. However, some constraints (including binary and integer variables, respectively) imply to convert the LP model to a more complex *Mixed Integer Programming* (MIP) model. Solution approaches for LP and MIP models are described in Chap. 30. In this section we will illustrate the steps of building a Master Planning model, and we will illustrate how complexity depends on the decisions modeled. Furthermore, it will be explained how complexity can be reduced by aggregation and how penalty costs should be used for finding (feasible) solutions.

Although it is not possible to give a comprehensive survey of all possible decisions, this chapter will show the dependence between complexity and most common decisions. In contrast to a perfect representation of reality, Master Planning needs a degree of standardization (i.e. constraints to be modeled, objectives, etc.), at least for a line of business. Thus, it is possible to use a Master Planning module that fits after adjusting parameters (i.e. costs, BOMs and routings, regular capacities, etc.), as opposed to after building new mathematical models and implementing new solvers.

8.2.1 Modeling Approach

Figure 8.2 shows a general approach for building a supply chain model that can be applied to most APS.

Step 1: Model Macro-Level

In the first step, key-customers, key-suppliers, and production and distribution sites of the supply chain are modeled. These entities are connected by directed transportation links. In some APS, transportation links are modeled as entities and not as directed connections.[2] The result of this step is a general network of supply chain entities.

---

[2] For example, JDAs' Supply Chain Planner (the former i2 Technologies' Supply Chain Planner, see also Chaps. 18 and 23).

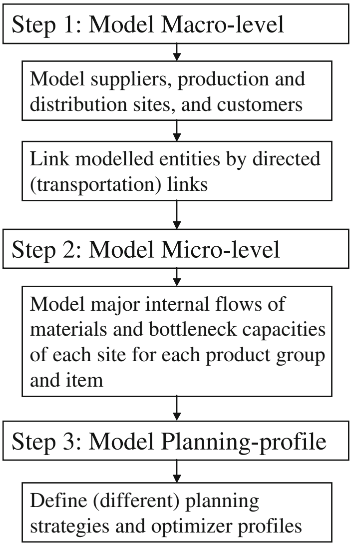


Fig. 8.2 Building a supply chain model

In our example (Fig. 8.1) the two plants (Plant 1 and Plant 2) and the distribution centers (DC 1 and DC 2) are modeled; that is, their locations and possibly their types (e.g. production entity and distribution entity) are determined. Afterwards, the key-supplier (S) and the key-customers (C 1, ..., C 8) are specified. The supplier (S) does not represent a potential bottleneck. Hence, he should not explicitly be modeled in this step. The customers represent the demand of products of the supply chain. Finally, the transportation links are modeled. If no transportation constraints are applied, transportation links represent a simple lead-time offset between two stages.

Step 2: Model Micro-Level

Each entity of the supply chain can be modeled in more detail in the second step, if required. All resource groups that could turn out to become a bottleneck should be modeled for each entity and transportation link. The internal flows of material and the capacities of potential bottlenecks are defined for each product group and item (group). The dependence between product and item groups is modeled by defining input and output materials for each process. Table 8.4 shows selected features that can be modeled in APS.

In our example, capacities and costs are modeled for each entity and transportation link. Plant 1 has a regular capacity of 80 units per time bucket. Each unit of overtime costs 5 monetary units (MU) without fixed costs, and producing one part of Product 1 or Product 2 costs 4 MU. Plant 2 is equally structured except that linear production costs amount to 5 MU for each unit produced. Then, the internal structure of each distribution center is modeled. The storage capacity of each distribution center is limited. DC 1 has linear storage costs for Product 1 of 3 MU per product unit per time bucket and for Product 2 of 2 MU per product unit per time bucket. DC 2 has linear storage costs of 4 and 3 MU for one unit of Product 1

Table 8.4 Selected model features of Master Planning in APS

Process	Parameter	Characteristics
Procurement	Purchase costs	Linear piecewise linear
Production	Production costs	Linear piecewise linear
	Production quantities	Continuous semi-continuous
	Capacity	Regular capacity enhanced capacity with linear costs per extra unit
	Capacity requirements	Fixed or linear
Storage	Inventory costs	Linear
	Capacity	Regular capacity enhanced capacity with linear costs per extra unit
Distribution	Transport costs	Linear piecewise linear
	Transport quantities	Continuous integer partially integer
	Capacity	Regular capacity enhanced capacity with linear costs per extra unit
Sales	Backorders	Maximum lateness linear penalty costs
	Lost sales	Linear penalty costs

and 2, respectively, per time bucket. Finally, the transportation links are modeled on the micro-level. All transportation links are uncapacitated. Transport costs from Plant 1 to DC 1 are linear with 2 MU per unit of both Products 1 and 2, and to DC 2 costs of 3 MU per product unit are incurred. The transport from Plant 2 to DC 1 and 2 costs 5 and 2 MU per product unit, respectively. Transportation from distribution centers to customers is not relevant.

Step 3: Model Planning-Profile

The last step is to define a planning-profile. Defining the planning-profile includes the definition of resource calendars, planning strategies for heuristic approaches and profiles for optimizers. Planning strategies could include how a first feasible solution is generated and how improvements are obtained. Optimizer profiles could include different weights for parts of the objective function (inventory costs, transport costs, etc.). For example, an optimizer profile that forces production output could be chosen within a growing market. One way to force production output could be setting a lower weight on penalties for capacity enhancements and a higher weight on penalties for unfulfilled demand.

The example of this chapter should be solved by Linear Programming. The only objective is to minimize total costs resulting from inventories, production, overtime and transportation. A planning-profile would instruct the Master Planning module to use an LP-solver without special weights (or with equal weights) for the different parts of the objective function.

8.2.2 Model Complexity

Model complexity and optimization run time are (strongly) correlated. For this reason, it is important to know which decisions lead to which complexity of the model. Thus, it is possible to decide on the trade-off between accuracy and run time. The more accurate a model should be, the more the decisions are to be mapped. But this implies increased run time and expenditure for collecting data. The following paragraphs show the correlation between decisions described in this chapter and a model's complexity.

The main *quantity decisions* that have to be taken into consideration in a Master Planning model are production, transport, and sales quantities. For these quantities integer values are mostly negligible at this aggregation level. Mainly, they are used to reserve capacity on potential bottleneck resources. Because these are rough capacity bookings, it is justifiable to abstract from integer values. If different production or transportation modes can be used partially, additional quantity decisions for each mode, product and period are necessary. Other important quantity decisions are stock levels. They result from corresponding production and transport quantities as well as stock levels of the previous period.

Capacity decisions occur only if it is possible not to utilize complete regular capacity or to enhance capacity of certain supply chain entities. One aspect of enhancing regular capacity is working overtime. This implies a new decision on the amount of overtime in each period for each resource. Additional costs have to be gathered. Binary decisions have to be made if extra shifts are introduced in certain periods (and for certain resources) to take fixed costs for a shift into account (e.g. personnel costs for a complete shift). Thereby, the problem is much harder. Performance adjustments of machines usually lead to non-linear optimization models. Computational efforts increase, and thus, solvability of such models, decrease sharply.

Decisions concerning production and transportation processes are, for example, decisions about the usage of alternative routings. Such additional decisions and more data will increase the model's complexity. However, if it is not possible to split production and transport quantities to different resources—e.g. supply customers from at least one distribution center—process modes have to be considered. In contrast to the quantity decision on different modes as described above, additional binary decisions on the chosen process mode have to be made.

If *lot-sizing decisions* have to be included in Master Planning, (at least) one additional binary decision is required for each product and period. This increases the complexity significantly. Therefore, much caution is needed here when defining

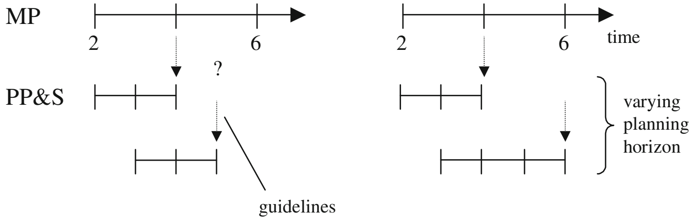


Fig. 8.3 Aggregation of time

the modeling scope. In particular, modeling minor setups (low setup costs and time) explicitly is usually counterproductive at the Master Planning level.

8.2.3 Aggregation and Disaggregation

Another way to reduce complexity of the model is *aggregation*. Aggregation is the reasonable grouping and consolidation of time, decision variables and data to achieve complexity reduction for the model and the amount of data (Stadtler 1988, p. 80). The accuracy of data can be enhanced by less variance within an aggregated group, and higher planning levels are unburdened from detailed information.

Furthermore, inaccuracy increases in future periods. This inaccuracy, e.g. in case of the demand of product groups, can be balanced by reasonable aggregation if forecast errors of products within a group are not totally correlated. Therefore, capacity requirements for aggregated product groups (as a result of Master Planning) are more accurate, even for future periods.

Aggregation of time, decision variables and data will be depicted in the following text. Regularly, these alternatives are used simultaneously.

Aggregation of Time

Aggregation of time is the consolidation of several smaller periods to one large period. It is not reasonable to perform Master Planning, for example, in daily time buckets. Collecting data that are adequate enough for such small time buckets for 1 year in the future, which is mostly the planning horizon in mid-term planning, is nearly inoperable. Therefore, Master Planning is regularly performed in weekly or monthly time buckets. If different intervals of time buckets are used on different planning levels, the disaggregation process raises the problem of giving targets for periods in the dependent planning level that do not correspond to the end of a time bucket in the upper level. To resolve this problem, varying planning horizons on lower planning levels can be chosen (see Fig. 8.3).

Aggregation of Decision Variables

Generally, aggregation of decision variables refers to the consolidation of production quantities. In the case of Master Planning, transport quantities also have

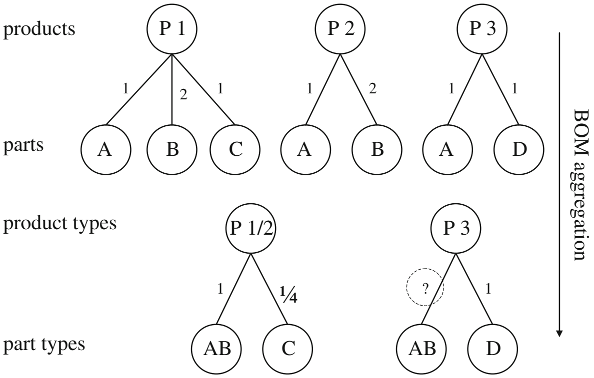


Fig. 8.4 BOM aggregation (following Stadtler 1988, p. 90)

to be aggregated. Bitran et al. (1982) suggest aggregating products with similar production costs, inventory costs and seasonal demand to product types. Products with similar setup costs and *identical* BOMs are aggregated to product families. A main problem in Master Planning, which is not regarded by the authors, is the aggregation of products in a multi-stage production process with *non-identical* BOMs. The similarity of BOMs *and* transportation lines is very important. But the question of what similarity means remains unanswered. Figure 8.4 illustrates the problem of aggregating BOMs. Products P 1 and P 2 are aggregated to product type P 1/2 with the average quotas of demand of P 1/2 of $\frac{1}{4}$ for P 1 and $\frac{3}{4}$ for P 2. Parts A and B are aggregated to part type AB. The aggregated BOM for P 1/2 shows that one part of P 1/2 needs one part of type AB and $\frac{1}{4}$ part of part C (caused by the average quota for demand). Producing one part of type AB means producing one part of A and two parts of B. The problem is to determine a coefficient for the need for type AB in product P 3 (an aggregation procedure for a sequence of operations is discussed in Stadtler 1996, 1998). Shapiro (1999) remarks with his 80/20-rule that in most practical cases about 20 % of the products with the lowest revenues regularly make the main product variety. Thus, these products can be aggregated to fewer groups while those with high revenues should be aggregated very carefully and selectively.

It is important to perform an aggregation with respect to the decisions that have to be made. If setup costs are negligible for a certain supply chain, it does not make sense to build product groups with respect to similar setup costs. No product characteristic, important for a Master Planning decision, should be lost within the aggregation process.

Aggregation of Data

The aggregation of data is the grouping of, for example, production capacities, transport capacities, inventory capacities, purchasing bounds and demand data. Demand data are derived from the Demand Planning module and have to be aggregated

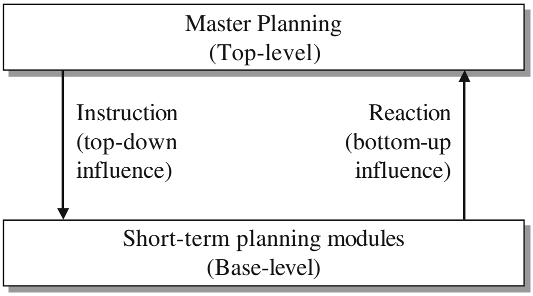


Fig. 8.5 Instruction and reaction in Master Planning (following Schneeweiss 2003, p. 17)

with respect to the aggregation of products. Particularly, aggregating resources to resource groups cannot be done without considering product aggregation. There should be as few interdependencies as possible between combinations of products and resources. Transport capacities, especially in Master Planning, have to be considered in addition to production and inventory capacities. Due to the various interdependencies between decision variables and data, these aggregations should be done simultaneously.

8.2.4 Relations to Short-Term Planning Modules

Master Planning interacts with all short-term planning modules by sending instructions and receiving reactions (see Fig. 8.5). Furthermore, master plans provide valuable input for collaboration modules and strategic planning tasks such as mid-term purchasing plans or average capacity utilization in different scenarios (see also Chaps. 13 and 14).

Instructions can be classified as primal and dual instructions (Stadtler 1988, p. 129). The first type directly influences the decision space of the base-level model (here: the short-term planning modules) by providing constraints such as available capacity and target inventory at the end of a period. The second one influences the objective function of the base-level model by setting cost parameters.

After a planning run for the short-term modules is performed, Master Planning is able to receive feedback/reactions from the base-level. Instructions that lead to infeasibilities have to be eliminated or weakened. By changing some selected Master Planning parameters, e.g. maximum capacity available, elimination of particular infeasibilities can be achieved.

To avoid a multitude of instruction/reaction loops, an anticipated model of the base-level should predict the outcome of the planning run of this level according to given instructions (see also Sect. 8.1).

Finally, ex-post feedback, gathered after executing the short-term plans, provides input, e.g. current inventory levels or durable changes in availability of capacity, to the Master Planning module.

As part of model building, the coupling parameters, i.e. instructions, reactions and ex-post feedback parameters, have to be defined (see also Chap. 4).

Additionally, the type of the coupling relations (e.g. minimum/maximum requirements, equality) and the points of time in which to transfer the coupling parameters have to be assigned (Stadtler 1988, pp. 129–138). To build the anticipated base-level model, the main influences of the short-term planning decisions within Master Planning have to be identified. For example, lot-sizes and setup-times resulting from Production Planning & Scheduling might be anticipated.

8.2.5 Using Penalty Costs

A model's solution is guided by the costs chosen within the objective function. By introducing certain costs that exceed the relevant costs for decisions (see Sect. 8.1.3), these decisions are penalized. Normally, relevant costs for decisions differ from costs used for accounting, e.g. only variable production costs are considered without depreciations on resources or apportionments of indirect costs. *Penalty costs* are used to represent constraints that are not explicitly modeled. Consider the case where sales quantities are fixed to the demand forecast (case (1) in Sect. 8.1.2). Here it may be necessary to penalize unfulfilled demand to avoid infeasible plans. Similarly, if setup times are not explicitly considered, the loss of time on a bottleneck resource can be penalized by costs correlated to this loss of time.

To be able to interpret the costs of the objective function correctly, it is important to separate the costs according to accounting and penalty costs. Regularly, penalty costs exceed other cost parameters by a very high amount. To obtain the "regular" costs of a master plan, not only the penalized costs of a solution, this separation is indispensable. Among others, the following penalties can be inserted in the objective function:

- Setup costs to penalize the loss of time on bottleneck resources (if not explicitly modeled)
- Costs for backorders and lost sales of finished products and parts (see Sect. 8.1.3)
- Costs for enhancing capacity (especially overtime) to penalize its use explicitly
- Additional production costs for certain sites to penalize, for example, minor quality
- Penalty costs for excessive inventory of customer specific products.

8.3 Generating a Plan

This section illustrates which steps have to be performed to generate a master plan (see Fig. 8.6) and how to use Master Planning effectively.

As already mentioned, the master plan is updated successively, e.g. in weeks or months. Thus, new and accurate information such as actual stock levels and new demand data are taken into consideration. It is necessary to gather all relevant data before performing a new planning run (see Sect. 8.1). This can be a hard task as data are mostly kept in different systems throughout the entire supply chain. However,

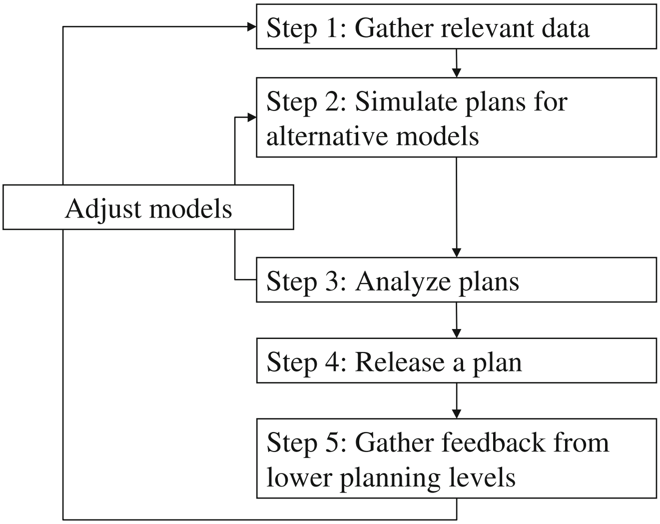


Fig. 8.6 Steps in Master Planning

Table 8.5 Demand data

Period		1	2	3	4	5
Product 1	Sales region 1	20	30	30	50	40
Product 2	Sales region 1	50	40	60	40	50
Product 1	Sales region 2	40	30	30	40	40
Product 2	Sales region 2	50	40	50	60	50

to obtain accurate plans this task has to be done very seriously. To minimize expenditure in gathering data, a high degree of automation to execute this process is recommended. For the previous example, the parameters described in Sect. 8.2.1 and the demand data shown in Table 8.5 have been gathered.

Most APS provide the possibility to simulate alternatives. Several models can be built to verify, for example, different supply chain configurations or samples for shifts. Furthermore, this simulation can be used to reduce the number of decisions that have to be made. For example, *dual values* of decision variables (see Chap. 30) can be used after analyzing the plans to derive actions for enhancing regular capacity.

The master plan does not necessarily need to be the outcome of an LP or MIP solver. These outcomes are often unreproducible for human planners. Thus, insufficient acceptance of automatically generated plans can be observed. Following the ideas of the OPT philosophy (Goldratt 1988), an alternative approach comprises four steps:

1. Generate an unconstrained supply chain model, disregarding all purchasing, production and distribution capacities.
2. Find the optimal solution of the model.

Table 8.6 Production quantities

Period		1	2	3	4	5
Product 1	Plant 1	30	30	30	50	40
Product 2	Plant 1	50	50	50	40	50
Product 1	Plant 2	30	30	30	40	40
Product 2	Plant 2	50	40	50	60	50

Table 8.7 Costs for five periods

Production	3, 780.00
Overtime	250.00
Transportation	1, 690.00
Inventory	20.00

3. Analyze the solution regarding overloaded capacities. Stop, if no use of capacity exceeds upper (or lower) limits.
4. Select the essential resources of the supply chain of those exceeding capacity limits. Take actions to adjust the violated capacity constraints and insert those fixed capacities into the supply chain model. Proceed with step 2.

If each capacity violation is eliminated, the iterative solution matches the solution that is generated by an optimization of the constrained model. Due to the successive generation of the optimal solution, the acceptance of the decision makers increases by providing a better understanding of the system and the model. In contrast to a constrained one-step optimization, alternative capacity adjustments can be discussed and included. It must be pointed out that such an iterative approach requires more time and staff than a constrained optimization, particularly if capacity usage increases. It seems to be advisable to include some known actions to eliminate well known capacity violations in the base supply chain model.

In the next step one has to decide which plan of the simulated alternatives should be released. If this is done manually, subjective estimations influence the decision. On the other hand, influences of not explicitly modeled knowledge (e.g. about important customers) are prevented by an automated decision.

Table 8.6 shows the planned production quantities of our example. The transport quantities correspond to the production quantities, except for transport of Product 1 from Plant 1 to the DCs in the first period. Twenty units of Product 1 produced in Plant 1 are delivered to DC 1, while 10 are delivered to DC 2 to meet the demand of Sales region 2, even though transport costs are higher. Seasonal stock is only built in the second period for Product 2 in DC 1, amounting to 10 product units. Overtime is necessary for both plants in periods four and five. Plant 1 utilizes 10 time units of overtime each, while Plant 2 utilizes 20 and 10 time units, respectively. The costs for the five periods' planning horizon are shown in Table 8.7.

Having forwarded the master plan's instructions to the decentral decision units, detailed plans are generated. The results of these plans have to be gathered to derive important hints for model adjustments. For example, if setups considered by a fixed estimate per period result in infeasible decentral plans, it is necessary to change this amount.

The mid-term purchasing quantities for raw materials from supplier S in our example (see Fig. 8.1) can be derived from the mid-term production plans for plants P1 and P2. These purchasing quantities are input for a collaborative procurement planning process (see Chap. 14). The joint plan of supplier S and plants P1 and P2 then serves as adjusted material constraint. Once an adequate master plan has been generated, decisions of the first period(s) are frozen and the process of rolling schedules is continued.

8.4 Sales and Operations Planning

Sales and Operations Planning (S&OP) is basically a combination of Master Planning with Demand Planning. Traditionally, these tasks are carried out sequentially: The forecast quantities are determined first, and master planning takes them as an input, as explained above. There are two major improvement potentials in this process. First, it may be possible to identify a cheaper solution when sales and production decisions are taken simultaneously. Second, and most important, a strictly successive planning of sales and operations is often suboptimal from an organizational perspective. It is well-known that the supply side (production, logistics, procurement) and the demand side (sales, marketing) have conflicting goals (e.g., Shapiro 1977). Therefore, it is crucial to create a common view on demand and supply decisions, as well as accountability for the results. A precondition for this common view is that everybody involved knows the impact of the S&OP master plan on sales, production quantities, and inventories. This can be supported by simulation and collaboration tools in APS and related software, and a consensus based decision process.

Apart from production and sales, further departments such as finance and product development can participate in the S&OP process. That way, financial constraints regarding the working capital can be taken into account and counter measures can be anticipated. Regarding product development, decisions about product (re-)launches may significantly affect the demand and production resource utilization. Hence, including these decisions into S&OP can improve the quality of the master plan substantially.

As S&OP is an extension of Master Planning, most of the descriptions given in Sects. 8.1–8.3 are valid here, too. The main difference is that the demand forecast is not an input, but a decision within S&OP. The question is not only whether to fulfill the demand forecast, but rather how to design the future demand in terms of promotions, product launches, and so on, in order to maximize the firm's profit.

Below, we will present an extension of our numerical example to S&OP. Consider the two products, with the forecast quantities given in Table 8.5. Let there be one production plant with a maximum capacity of 200, except for periods 3 and 4, where the capacity is 140 due to vacation. Table 8.8 shows the sales plan for these products together with a feasible production plan and the resulting inventory build-up.

Table 8.8 S&OP planning table

Period		Actual	1	2	3	4	5
Sales plan	Product 1		70	70	90	90	90
	Product 2		90	70	80	100	90
Production plan	Product 1		60	70	90	90	90
	Product 2		80	130	50	50	90
Inventory plan	Product 1	10	0	0	0	0	0
	Product 2	30	20	80	50	0	0

In the S&OP process, all involved parties can take an integrated view on the main outcomes (in our example: production quantities, sales quantities, and inventories). Additional information like financial KPI can be included, too. Based on that, parties can perform what-if analyses to identify plan alternatives that yield an overall improvement. With the knowledge of the data in Table 8.8, the sales manager might raise the question why we have lower production in periods 3 and 4 and inventory build-ups of (the less expensive) product 2. Knowing the answer from production ("vacation close-down in periods 3 and 4"), sales might think about shifting promotional activities from period 4 to period 2 to decrease the inventory build-up. As another example, product development might point out that a major relaunch of product 2 is planned. So the inventory build-up should be done for product 1, instead, to decrease the risk of obsolete inventory.

Supporting the S&OP process by management meetings is recognized to be a key success factor (Lapide 2004). To organize these meetings in an effective way, standard sequences with a formal agenda are necessary (see, e.g., Boyer 2009). An example for such a sequence is given in Wallace (2004):

1. Data gathering: Historical data is collected.
2. Demand planning: The sales forecast is updated.
3. Supply planning: Determine whether the operations plan is feasible.
4. Pre-meeting: Recommendations for top management are prepared, including a description of the issues where no consensus has been reached. Different scenarios may be elaborated.
5. Executive meeting: Conflicts are resolved and the final plan is approved.

References

Bitran, G., Haas, E., & Hax, A. C. (1982). Hierarchical production planning: A two-stage system. *Operation Research*, *30*, 232–251.

Boyer, J. (2009). 10 proven steps to successful S&OP. *Journal of Business Forecasting*, *28*, 4–10.

Cardoso, S. R., Barbosa-Póvoa, A. P. F., & Relvas, S. (2013). Design and planning of supply chains with integration of reverse logistics activities under demand uncertainty. *European Journal of Operational Research*, *226*(3), 436–451.

Fleischmann, B.,& Meyr, H. (2003). Planning hierarchy, modeling and advanced planning systems. In A. de Kok, & S. Graves (Eds.), *Supply chain management: Design, coordination, operation. Handbooks in Operations Research and Management Science* (Vol. 11, pp. 457–523). Amsterdam: North-Holland.

Goldratt, E. (1988). Computerized shop floor scheduling. *International Journal of Production Research*, *26*, 433–455.

Lapide, L. (2004). Sales and operations planning part I: The process. *Journal of Business Forecasting*, *23*, 17–19.

Mirzapour Al-e-hashem, S., Baboli, A., & Sazvar, Z. (2013). A stochastic aggregate production planning model in a green supply chain: Considering flexible lead times, nonlinear purchase and shortage cost functions. *European Journal of Operational Research*, *230*(1), 26–41.

Oh, H.-C., & Karimi, I. A. (2006). Global multiproduct production–distribution planning with duty drawbacks. *AIChE Journal*, *52*(2), 595–610.

Rohde, J. (2004). Hierarchical supply chain planning using artificial neural networks to anticipate base-level outcomes. *OR Spectrum*, *26*(4), 471–492.

Schneeweiss, C. (2003). *Distributed decision making* (2nd ed.). Berlin: Springer

Shapiro, B. P. (1977). Can marketing and manufacturing coexist? *Harvard Business Review*, *55*, 104–114.

Shapiro, J. (1999). Bottom-up vs. top-down approaches to supply chain modeling. In S. Tayur, R. Ganeshan, & M. Magazine (Eds.), *Quantitative models for supply chain management* (pp. 737–760). Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic.

Sousa, R. T., Liu, S., Papageorgiou, L. G., & Shah, N. (2011). Global supply chain planning for pharmaceuticals. *Chemical Engineering Research and Design*, *89*(11), 2396–2409.

Stadtler, H. (1988). *Hierarchische Produktionsplanung bei losweiser Fertigung*. Heidelberg: Physica.

Stadtler, H. (1996). Mixed integer programming model formulations for dynamic multi-item multi-level capacitated lotsizing. *European Journal of Operational Research*, *94*, 561–581.

Stadtler, H. (1998). Hauptproduktionsprogrammplanung in einem kapazitätsorientierten PPS-System. In H. Wildemann (Ed.), *Innovationen in der Produktionswirtschaft – Produkte, Prozesse, Planung und Steuerung* (pp. 163–192). München: TCW, Transfer-Centrum-Verlag.

Timpe, C. H., & Kallrath, J. (2000). Optimal planning in large multi-site production networks. *European Journal of Operational Research*, *126*, 422–435.

Wallace, T. (2004). *Sales & operations planning: The "How-To" handbook* (2nd ed.). Cincinnati: T. F. Wallace & Company.

Demand Fulfilment and ATP

9

Christoph Kilger and Herbert Meyr

The planning process that determines how the actual customer demand is fulfilled is called *demand fulfillment*. The demand fulfillment process calculates the first promise date for customer orders and—thus—strongly influences the order lead-time and the on time delivery.[1] In today's competitive markets it is important to generate fast and reliable order promises in order to retain customers and increase market share. This holds particularly true in an e-business environment: Orders are entered on-line in the e-business front end, and the customer expects to receive a reliable due date within a short time period.

Further, e-business solutions have to support on-line inquiries where the customer requests a reliable due date without committing the order.

The fast generation of reliable order promises gets more complex as

- The number of products increases
- Products are configured during the ordering process
- The average product life cycles get shorter
- The number of customers increases
- Flexible pricing policies are being introduced
- Demand variations increase and get less predictable.

---

[1] In the following, we use the terms *order promising* and *order quoting* synonymously, as well as the terms *promise* and *quote*.

C. Kilger
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8,
66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: christoph.kilger@de.ey.com

H. Meyr (✉)
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart,
Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_9,

The traditional approach of order promising is to search for inventory and to quote orders against it; if there is no inventory available, orders are quoted against the production lead-time. This procedure may result in non-feasible quotes, because a quote against the supply lead-time may violate other constraints, e.g. available capacity or material supply.

Modern demand fulfillment solutions based on the planning capabilities of APS employ more sophisticated order promising procedures, in order

1. to improve the on time delivery by generating reliable quotes,
2. to reduce the number of missed business opportunities by searching more effectively for a feasible quote and
3. to increase revenue and profitability by increasing the average sales price.

In the following section, the principles of APS-based demand fulfillment solutions are described and the basic notion of ATP (available-to-promise) is introduced. Sections 9.2 and 9.3 show how ATP can be structured with respect to the product and the time dimension, whereas Sect. 9.4 introduces the customer dimension and the concept of allocation planning, resulting in allocated ATP (AATP). Finally, Sect. 9.5 illustrates the AATP-based order promising process by means of examples.

An early reference describing the concept of ATP and the improvement of the customer service level by ATP based on the master production schedule is Schwendinger (1979). In Ball et al. (2004) and Pibernik (2005) comprehensive overviews of ATP related work are given. Fleischmann and Meyr (2003) investigate the theoretical foundations of demand fulfillment and ATP, classify the planning tasks related to ATP, and discuss the generation of ATP and order promising strategies based on linear and mixed integer programming models. The practical application of ATP concepts in concrete APS is, for example, described in Chap. 26 for OM Partners, in Dickersbach (2009) and Fleischmann and Geier (2012) for SAP/APO and in i2 Technologies Inc (2000) for i2 Technologies that has been acquired by JDA in 2010.

9.1 Available-to-Promise (ATP)

The main target of the demand fulfillment process is to generate fast *and* reliable order promises to the customer and shield production and purchasing against infeasibility. The quality of the order promises is measured by the *on time delivery* KPI as introduced in Chap. 2. Using the traditional approach—quoting orders against inventory and supply lead-time—often will result in order promises that are not feasible, decreasing the on time delivery.

Figure 9.1 illustrates this by means of a simple example. Consider a material constrained industry like the high-tech industry, and let us assume that a specific component has a standard lead-time of 2 weeks. There are receipts from the suppliers scheduled for the next 2 weeks and—as we assume a material constrained industry—no additional supply will be available for the next 2 weeks. The volume of new customer orders that need to be promised for week 1 and week 2 is exceeding the volume of the scheduled receipts. Figure 9.1a illustrates this situation. Standard

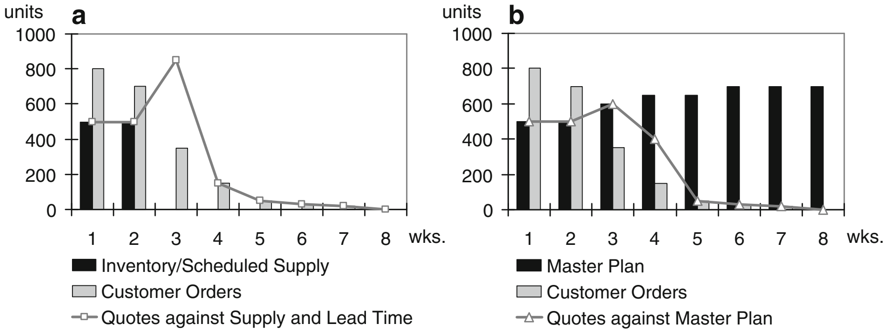


Fig. 9.1 Demand wave beyond the standard lead-time. (**a**) Order quoting against lead-time. (**b**) Order quoting against master plan

MRP logic is to schedule all new orders against the scheduled receipts and—if not all orders can be satisfied by that—against the standard lead-time (in our example 2 weeks). In other words, MRP assumes infinite supply beyond the standard lead-time and creates supply recommendations based on the order backlog. The gray line in Fig. 9.1a shows the quotes created by the MRP logic. In week 3 (i.e. after the standard lead-time) all orders are scheduled that cannot be quoted against the scheduled receipts. It is quite clear that the fulfillment of this "demand wave" will not be feasible, as the available supply will most probably not increase by 100 % from 1 week to the next week.

The master planning process (see Chap. 8) has the task to create a plan for the complete supply chain, including production and purchasing decisions. Thus, master planning generates a plan for future supply from internal and external sources (factories, suppliers) even beyond the already existing scheduled receipts.[2] The idea of APS-based demand fulfillment is to use the supply information of the master plan to create reliable order quotes. Figure 9.1b shows the master plan and the orders quoted against the master plan. For week 3 the master plan reflects the constraints of the suppliers, anticipating a slight increase of the supply volume that is considered to be feasible. As orders are quoted against the master plan the unrealistic assumption of infinite supply beyond the standard lead-time is obsolete—resulting in more reliable order promises.

In most APS—and also ERP systems—the supply information of the master plan that is used as the basis for order promising is called *available-to-promise (ATP)*. ATP represents the current and future availability of supply and capacity that can be used to accept new customer orders.

Figure 9.2 summarizes the role of master planning for demand fulfillment and ATP. The master planning process is based on the forecast, which reflects the capability of the market to create demand. During the master planning process

---

[2] For week 1 and 2 the master plan reflects the scheduled receipts.

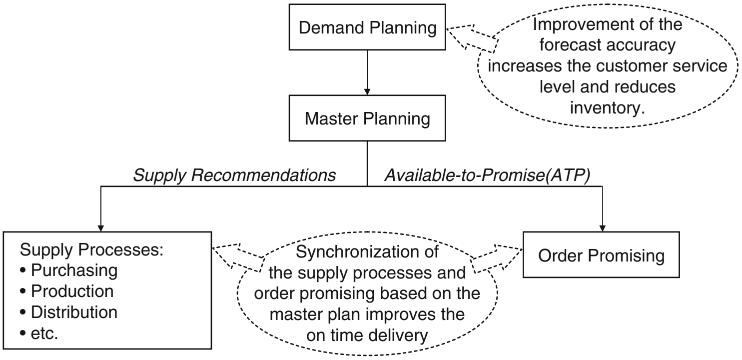


Fig. 9.2 Master Planning as the common basis of supply processes and order promising

all material, capacity and time constraints of the supply chain are applied to the forecast, resulting in a feasible master plan. This plan is the common basis for the supply processes (supply recommendations for purchasing, production, distribution etc.) and the order promising process (based on the available-to-promise quantities). By that, supply processes are synchronized with order promising, resulting in reliable order quotes. As a consequence the on time delivery KPI is improved.

Please note that the on time delivery KPI is mainly influenced by the ability of the master planning model to reflect the reality in a sufficiently accurate way. ATP based on an accurate master planning model guarantees almost 100 % on time delivery which is only influenced by supply deviations on the supply side and unexpected capacity problems, e.g. in production, on the capacity side. Apart from on time delivery the delivery performance KPI plays an important role in demand fulfillment as it reflects how fast the supply chain is able to fulfill a customer order. Delivery performance in contrast to on time delivery depends mainly on the forecast accuracy and the ability of the supply chain to satisfy the forecast. The master planning process is responsible to create a feasible supply plan based on the forecast. If the forecast does not mirror future orders very well the probability is low that there is ATP available when a new customer order requests for it. In this case, the customer order receives a late, but reliable promise and the delivery performance is affected. If new customer orders come in as anticipated by the forecast and the master planning process was able to generate a feasible supply plan for the forecasted quantities, then supply matches the demand, the number of inventory turns increases and orders receive a reliable promise within a short lead-time.

As ATP is derived from the supply information of the master plan, it is structured according to the level of detail of the master plan. The typical dimensions for structuring ATP are product, time, supply location, sourcing type, customer, market, region, etc. For example, if the master plan is structured by product group, month, and sales region, the ATP originating from the master plan is represented on the same level of detail. To enable more detailed order promising decisions ATP can be

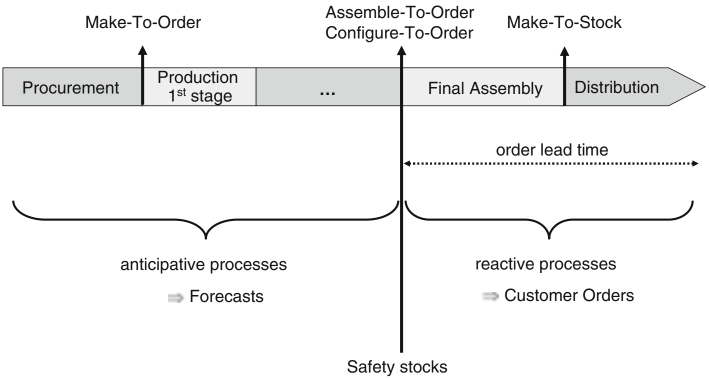


Fig. 9.3 Decoupling point in make-to-stock, assemble/configure-to-order, and make-to-order business environments (adapted from Fleischmann and Meyr 2003)

disaggregated to a more detailed level. In the following Sects. 9.2–9.4 we discuss the structuring of ATP along the most important dimensions: product, time and customer.

9.2 Structuring of ATP by Product

In principal ATP can be represented on any stage of the supply chain, e.g. finished goods, components, or raw materials. The decision where to represent ATP best for a certain business is strongly linked with the location of the decoupling point (see Chap. 3) in that particular supply chain. The decoupling point separates the forecast-driven parts of a supply chain from the order-driven parts (Fleischmann and Meyr 2003). Typically, a safety stock is held at the decoupling point to account for forecast errors. Figure 9.3 shows the location of the decoupling point for make-to-stock (MTS), assemble/configure-to-order (ATO/CTO), and make-to-order (MTO) business environments. Note that decisions on the location of decoupling points are usually made as part of the long term, strategic planning (see Chaps. 1 and 4) because shorter customer order lead times for a downstream decoupling point have to be paid off by higher values and holding costs of decoupling point inventories.

9.2.1 Make-to-Stock

In an MTS environment (see Chap. 3) the standard way to represent ATP is on finished goods level (e.g. actual end products, articles, etc. that are to be sold or aggregated product groups). The supply and production processes in an MTS business are driven by the forecast—not by customer orders. Further, parts of the distribution processes can be forecast-driven (for example if products are to be transported to regional distribution centers, refer to Chap. 12). From there customer orders are served with a shorter lead time than from a central warehouse. The promise would be given under consideration of availability of finished goods ATP and transportation times. Examples for MTS industries are consumer packaged goods, food and beverages, and retail. In some MTS industries the decoupling point even moves with a seasonal pattern in the distribution network.[3]

9.2.2 Assemble/Configure-to-Order

In an ATO environment, all components are produced and/or procured driven by the forecast. Only final assembly is order-driven (see Fig. 9.3). Usually, there are some (or many) configuration options the customer can choose from (e.g. color, technical options, country specific options like power plug), and the actual configuration is determined only at order entry time. This is called *configure-to-order*. In an assemble/configure-to-order environment the forecast is created on finished products or product group level; the forecast is then transformed by master planning into a supply plan on component level. For this, the bills of materials of the finished products are exploded and lead-times and capacity usage are considered. If the master plan is represented on product group level specific *planning bills of materials* for the product groups are used that describe a *typical* representative product of that group. ATP is then represented on component level based on the planned material requirements on component level.

Upon customer order entry, the bill of materials of the (configured) product is exploded, component request dates are derived from the customer requested date, and component availability is checked for all ATP-relevant components. The latest availability date of all ATP-relevant components determines the quote for the complete order; all ATP consumptions are then synchronized according to the final quote, and lead times for assembly and transportation are added. This scheme is also called *multi-level ATP* (Dickersbach 2009), as ATP can be represented on multiple levels of the bill of materials.

For configurable products there exists no deterministic bill of materials representation for final products or product groups. Thus, the distribution of demand for the configuration options must be planned explicitly. For example, consider a color option with three possible values "red", "blue" and "green". The demand for the three options may be distributed as follows: "red" 60 %, "blue" 15 % and "green" 25 %. Based on this distribution of the demand for the configuration options and on the forecast on product group level, master planning provides a supply plan on component level, that is then represented as ATP. Consider the computer industry as an example (see Chap. 23 for further details). From a limited number of

---

[3] In the tire industry the decoupling point is usually located at the central DC. At the start of the winter tire business (in Western Europe usually in October), the demand for winter tires is at peak and exceeds the handling capacity of the central DC. Therefore the decoupling point for winter tire business is moved from the central DC to the regional DCs for that time period.

components—e.g. disk drives, processors, controllers, memory—a huge number of configurations can be made. An order consumes ATP from the base configuration of the computer (motherboard, housing, power supply, key board, etc.), and from all components that were configured by the customer, e.g. speed of processor, size of disk drive and memory.

9.2.3 Make-to-Order

MTO environments are similar to ATO, but the decoupling point is located further upstream. In an MTO environment procurement is driven by forecast, and production, final assembly and distribution are driven by customer orders (see Fig. 9.3). Finished products and components are either customer-specific or there are so many different variants that their demand cannot be forecasted with a high accuracy. Besides material availability, the required capacity is typically an important constraint for the fulfillment of customer orders. Thus, ATP in an MTO environment is representing (a) the availability of raw material (see description of multi-level ATP above) and (b) the availability of capacity. For this purpose, specific ATP sources are formed representing the capacity of a specific kind that is available for promising customer orders. The capacity ATP is either represented in the demand fulfillment module of the APS on an aggregated level (resource groups), or the production planning and scheduling module is used to generate a promise. In the first case, capacity is treated like a component, and the availability of that "capacity component" is checked as described above for ATO and CTO environments. In the second case, the customer order is forwarded to the production planning and scheduling module of the APS, is inserted into the current production plan, and the completion date of the order is returned to the customer as promised date. This concept is also called *capable-to-promise (CTP)*—see, e.g., Dickersbach (2009).[4]

With capable-to-promise, the production process is simulated for the new customer order. This simulation may involve all subordinate production levels (multi-level production). Both, material and capacity availability are checked, resulting in a highly accurate order promise. A further advantage of CTP is that planned production orders are created upon order promising directly, and have only to be changed later if orders have to be replanned (due to material or capacity shortages or additional demand with higher priority). In complex production environments with many levels in the bill of materials and complex capacity constraints including setup constraints, CTP does not lead to an optimal production plan and schedule. The reason is the order-by-order planning scheme applied by CTP, often leading to poor schedules.

---

[4] Note that capable-to-promise can also be applied to ATO environments.

Please note that the consumption of ATP does not mean that a certain supply represented by ATP is reserved for a certain customer order. ATP is a concept that allows a customer order to enter the planning sphere of a supply chain to a certain date (promise date) so that it can be delivered on time. The detailed material and capacity assignment for a customer order is only done in detailed scheduling and execution to keep the flexibility for optimization.

9.3 Structuring of ATP by Time

ATP is maintained in discrete time buckets. As ATP is derived from the master plan, the ATP time buckets correspond to the time buckets of the master plan. Please note that the master plan time buckets might be different from the time buckets used by demand planning. Usually the master planning and ATP time buckets are more granular than the demand planning time buckets. For example the forecast could be structured in weekly or monthly buckets whereas master plan and ATP could be structured in daily or weekly buckets. Orders are quoted by consuming ATP from a particular time bucket.

The time granularity of the master plan is usually a compromise between the needed level of detail to offer accurate promises and the performance of an APS. The higher the level of detail the more exact a master plan has to be calculated and the more time buckets have to be searched for ATP to generate a promise. An approach to combine the generation of detailed promise dates and the achievement of a high performance is to split the time horizon: in the near term horizon ATP is represented in detailed time buckets (e.g. days or weeks); in the mid term horizon, ATP time buckets are more coarse (e.g. months). The near term horizon is often called *allocation planning horizon*. The concept of allocation planning is described in the next section.

9.4 Structuring of ATP by Customer

A supply chain (or a part of a supply chain) operates either in *supply constrained mode* or in *demand constrained mode*. If material and/or capacity are bottlenecks, then there is “open” demand that cannot be fulfilled. The supply chain supplies less finished goods than the customers request and operates in *supply constrained mode*. If demand is the bottleneck, then all demand may be matched with supply. The supply chain operates in *demand constrained mode*. It is the task of the master planning process to anticipate the operating mode of the supply chain, and to provide good decision support to take appropriate counter measures in advance. In the following we describe both operating modes of supply chains in more detail and explain the impact on the structuring of ATP along the customer dimension.

9.4.1 Demand Constrained Mode

In demand constrained mode the supply chain is able to generate "excess" supply that is not requested and will—most probably—not be consumed by customers. In demand constrained mode, the master plan must help to identify sources of excess supply. The usage of the corresponding supply chain components might then be reduced in order to save costs, or additional demand has to be generated by promotional activities or other additional sales measures.

The capability of a supply chain to produce excess supply is an indicator for inefficiencies in the supply chain (refer to Chap. 15). A supply chain is working more profitable if it is "operated on the edge" (Sharma 1997) by removing all inefficiencies, e.g. excess capacity, excess assets and excess expenses. Thus, on the long term a demand-constrained supply chain should move toward supply constrained mode. This can be achieved either by generating additional demand or by reducing the ability of the supply chain to generate excess supply (see Chap. 6).

In demand constrained mode there are no specific considerations for structuring ATP as all demand can be fulfilled by the supply chain.

9.4.2 Supply Constrained Mode

In supply constrained mode, not all customer demand can be fulfilled. Master planning must support the decision how to generate additional supply and also how to allocate supply to demand. If orders are promised on a *first-come-first-served policy*, all orders are treated the same without taking the profitability of the order, the importance of the customer and the fact whether the order was forecasted or not into account. As a consequence the profitability of the business, the relationship to the customers and the performance of the supply chain may be jeopardized.

A good example of how business can be optimized by using more sophisticated order promising policies than first-come-first-served is given by the revenue management activities of international premium airlines (Smith et al. 1992). Premium airlines keep a specific fraction of the business and the first class seats open even if more economy customers are requesting seats than the total number of economy seats. For each flight, some of the business class and first class seats are *allocated* to the business and first class passengers based on the forecasted passenger numbers for that flight. Only a short time before the flight departs the allocations are released and passengers are "upgraded" to the next higher class. By that, airlines achieve a higher average sales price for the available seats and strengthen the relationship to their important customers, the business class and first class passengers.

Talluri and van Ryzin (2004) classify revenue management in price-based and quantity-based approaches. Price-based approaches try to gain higher revenues by varying the sales prices over time, thus actively influencing demand. This is commonly practiced by budget airlines and in retail (see also Elmaghraby and Keskinocak 2003), but also important for promotions planning within demand planning modules of APS (see Chap. 7). Quantity-based approaches, however, segment customers into several groups showing different buying behavior, strategic importance and/or average profits. Thus they try to exploit the customers' different willingness to pay or various profit margins, as it has been illustrated in the premium airline example above.[5]

APS also apply these quantity-based ideas by allocating ATP quantities to customer groups or sales channels in order to optimize the overall business performance. A classification scheme is defined that is used to segment and prioritize customer orders. Typically, the order classes are structured in a hierarchy. The ATP quantities are allocated to the order classes according to predefined business rules (also called *allocation rules*, ref. to p. 187). These allocations represent the right to consume ATP. The principal connection between allocations and ATP is straightforward: When an order is entered, the order promising process checks the allocations for the corresponding order class. If allocated ATP is available, ATP can be consumed and the order is quoted accordingly. Otherwise, the order promising process searches for other options to satisfy the order, e.g. by checking ATP in earlier time buckets, by consuming ATP from other order classes (if that is allowed by the business rules defined) or by looking for ATP on alternate products.

The time buckets for the allocations and the actual ATP quantities may differ. Allocations must be carefully controlled and regularly adjusted by human planners (as described for the "airline" example above). Otherwise the order lead time for some order classes will deteriorate while the ATP buckets for other order classes remain full as they are not consumed as anticipated. Thus, it is helpful to provide allocations in a larger granularity, e.g. weeks or months than the actual ATP quantities, in order to support the manual control and adjustment processes. Furthermore, the two levels of granularity for allocations and actual ATP quantities provide the opportunity to implement a two-phased order promising process: In step 1, customers receive the allocation time bucket (e.g. a week) as delivery date. In step 2, this initial promise is detailed down to the actual delivery day depending on the actual consumption of ATP. A two-step order promising approach keeps a certain degree of flexibility until the actual delivery day is promised to the customer in step 2.

The allocation of ATP to order classes can be exploited to increase the revenue and profitability of the business. For example, the average selling price may be increased by allocating supply to customers that are willing to pay premium prices, instead of giving supply away to any customer on a first-come-first-served basis. Traditional ATP mechanisms without allocation rules have to break commitments that have been given to other customers in order to be able to quote an order of a key customer or an order with a higher margin. It is obvious that this business policy has a negative impact on the on time delivery and deteriorates the relationship to other customers.

---

[5] For an overview on the relations between revenue management, demand fulfillment and ATP, inventory management/rationing, and pricing the reader is referred to Quante et al. (2009).

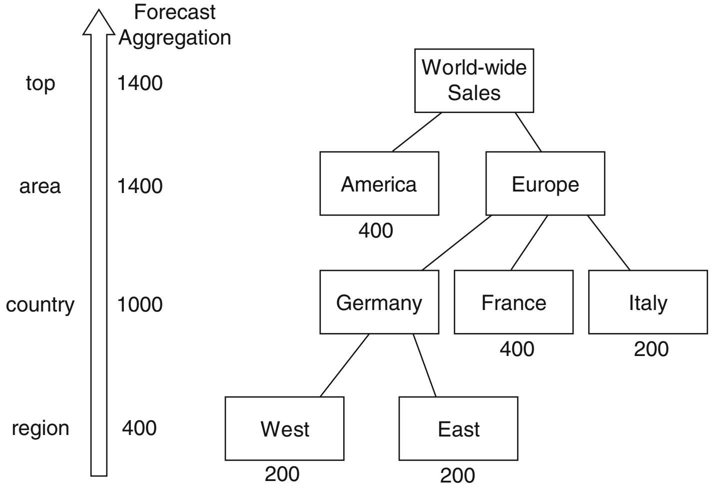


Fig. 9.4 Sales forecast aggregated along the customer hierarchy

9.4.3 The Customer Hierarchy and Allocation Rules

In order to allocate supply to customers a *model of the customer structure* and a *forecast of the future customer demand* is required. The model of the customer structure should be aligned with the geographic dimension in demand planning (see Chap. 7), as demand planning is structuring the forecast in terms of the geographic dimension. Hence, the customer structure forms a hierarchy similar to the geographic dimension in demand planning. Figure 9.4 shows an example of a customer hierarchy.

In the first step the forecast quantities for each customer (or customer group, resp.) are aggregated to the root of the hierarchy. This number gives the total forecast for that specific product (or product group). The total forecast is transferred to master planning, and master planning checks whether it is feasible to fulfill the total forecast considering the supply constraints. In our example, the total forecast is 1,400, and we assume that master planning can confirm only 1,200 to be feasible.

In the second step the total feasible quantity according to the master plan is allocated from the top down to the leaves of the customer hierarchy. This allocation process for our example is visualized in Fig. 9.5 (the quantities in parentheses indicate the original forecast for this customer group). The allocation of the master plan quantities to the nodes of the customer hierarchy is controlled by allocation rules. In our example we have used three different allocation rules:

- *Rank based*: U.S. customers receive a higher priority (rank 1) compared to customers in Europe (rank 2). Thus, the available quantity for the U.S. and European customers is allocated to the U.S. first up to the original forecast for that area. A rank-based allocation policy may be helpful to support sales to a specific market, e.g. if the development of that market is in an early stage.

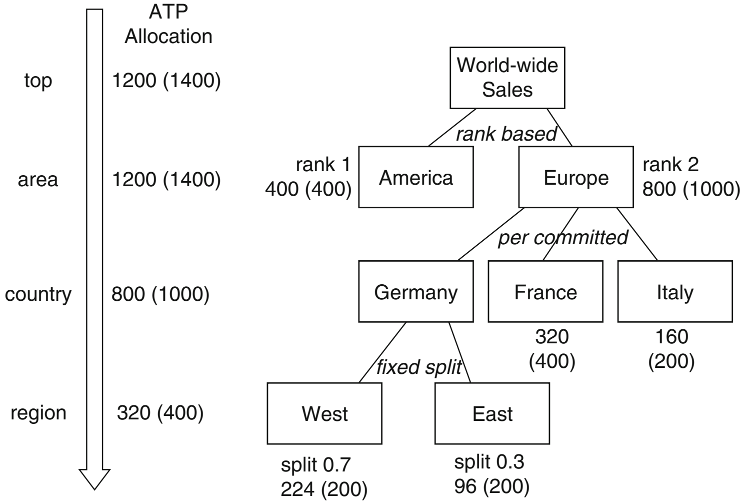


Fig. 9.5 Allocation of ATP in the customer hierarchy

- *Per committed*: The available quantity is allocated to the nodes of the customer hierarchy according to the forecast the customers have committed to. In our example Germany and France have forecasted 400 each, and Italy has forecasted 200, making 1,000 in total. However, for this group of customers, only 800 is available. The quantity of 800 is split according to the fraction of the original forecast, i.e. Germany and France receive 40 % each (320), and Italy receives 20 % (160). The per committed allocation policy is well suited if each customer group shall get a fair share allocation according to what has been forecasted by that customer group.[6]
- *Fixed split*: The fixed split allocation policy applies predefined split factors to distribute the feasible quantity to the customer groups. In our example, the customers in the Western part of Germany receive 70 % of the available quantity, the customers in East Germany 30 %. Please note that the resulting quantities are independent of the individual forecast of the customer groups. (But it does depend on the total forecast of these customer groups.)

In addition to these allocation rules a portion of the available quantity can be retained at every level of the customer hierarchy. These retained quantities are consumed based on a first-come-first-served policy. Retained ATP can be used

---

[6] In allocation situations (supply constrained supply chain) the per committed allocation policy may lead to a so-called *shortage gaming* behavior, as planners are motivated to forecast higher quantities than actually needed in order to increase their allocations. It is necessary to establish incentive systems to prevent shortage gaming. Otherwise this behavior may induce a bullwhip effect into the supply chain. Shortage gaming and the bullwhip effect are described in more detail in Chap. 1.

to account for potential variations of the actual demand related to the forecasted demand. For example, if 25 % of the total quantity available for European customers is retained at the customer group Europe, 200 would be available on a first-come-first-served basis for all European customers, and only 600 would be allocated to German, French and Italian customers as defined by the corresponding allocation rules. The retainment of ATP can be interpreted as a *virtual* safety stock on an aggregate level, as it helps to balance deviations between forecast and actual demand.

The allocations are the basis for generating order quotes. Thus, the allocations are an important information for the sales force before making commitments to their customers. Further, the APS keeps track of the consumptions due to already quoted orders. The total allocated quantities and the already consumed quantities give a good indication whether the order volume matches the forecast. If orders and forecast do not match, some allocations are being consumed too fast, whereas others remain unconsumed. This can be sent as an early warning to the supply chain that the market behaves differently than forecasted—and an appropriate action can be taken. For example, sales can setup a sales push initiative to generate additional demand to consume the planned ATP.

9.4.4 Allocation Planning

The process that assigns the overall ATP quantities received from master planning to the nodes of the customer hierarchy is called *allocation planning*. Allocation planning is executed directly after a new master plan has been created—which normally takes place once a week. Thus, once a week the adjusted forecast is transformed into ATP by master planning and allocated to the customer hierarchy.

In addition to that, the allocations are updated on a daily basis in order to reflect changes in the constraints of the supply chain. For example, if the supplier of some key component announces a delay of a scheduled delivery this may impact the capability of the supply chain to fulfill orders and—because of that—should be reflected in the ATP as soon as the information is available in the APS. Please note, if ATP is short and if additional capacity and raw material might be available, which have not been needed in the last master planning run and thus have not been exhausted, a new run has to be triggered in order to generate a new ATP picture reflecting the current supply capabilities of the supply chain.

The planning horizon of allocation planning cannot be longer than the planning horizon of master planning, as no ATP is available beyond the master planning horizon. The master planning process covers usually 6–12 months. However, in many cases it is not necessary to maintain allocations over 6 months or more. For example, in the computer industry, 90 % of the orders are placed 3 weeks prior to the customer requested delivery date. Thus, dependent on the lead-time from order entry date to the customer requested delivery date a shorter planning horizon for allocation planning can be chosen compared to master planning. In the computer industry, for example, a 3-months horizon for allocation planning is sufficient.

9.5 Order Promising

Order promising is the core of the demand fulfillment process. The goal is to create reliable promises for the customer orders. The quality of the order promising process is measured by the on time delivery and the delivery performance.

The *on time delivery* KPI is described in detail in Chap. 2; it measures the percentage of the orders that are fulfilled as promised (based on the first promise given). Thus, to achieve a high on time delivery it is important to generate reliable promises. A promise is *reliable* if the supply chain is able to fulfill the order as promised, i.e. if the customer receives the promised product in the promised quantity at the promised date. A supply chain that is able to consistently generate reliable promises over a long time period gets a competitive advantage over supply chains with a lower on time delivery.

There are multiple execution modes to promise customer orders (Ball et al. 2004; Pibernik 2005):

- *On-line ("real-time") order promising:* A new customer order is promised during the order entry transaction. After the new order is booked, the promised date and quantity are transferred to the customer immediately.
- *Batch order promising:* Customer orders are entered into the sales transaction system without generating a promise. At certain periods (e.g. once per day) a batch order promising is triggered and all new orders receive a promise. For instance, these promises could be generated by a production planning module.
- *Hybrid order promising:* Each new customer order is temporarily promised at order entry time. In addition to that a batch order promising run is triggered regularly in order to detail the promises (cf. Ball et al. 2004, Sect. 2.3 describing an example of the Dell Computer Corporation and the two-phase approach of Sect. 9.4.2) or to improve the promises of all customer orders in total (re-promising). Please note that hybrid order promising schemes can lead to changes and delays of customer order promises.

On-line order promising offers advantages in responsiveness and performance toward the customer. On the other hand, on-line order promising prevents that promises can be reviewed by order management before they reach the customer. In the remainder of this chapter we focus on on-line order promising schemes.

9.5.1 ATP Search Procedure

The general ATP-based order promising process works as follows: First, the order promising process searches for ATP according to a set of search rules that are described below. If ATP is found, it is reduced accordingly and a quote for the order is generated. If ATP can only be found for a portion of the ordered quantity and partial fulfillment of the order is allowed, a quote is generated for the partial order quantity. If no ATP can be found, no quote is generated, and the order must be either rejected or confirmed manually at the end of the allocation planning horizon.

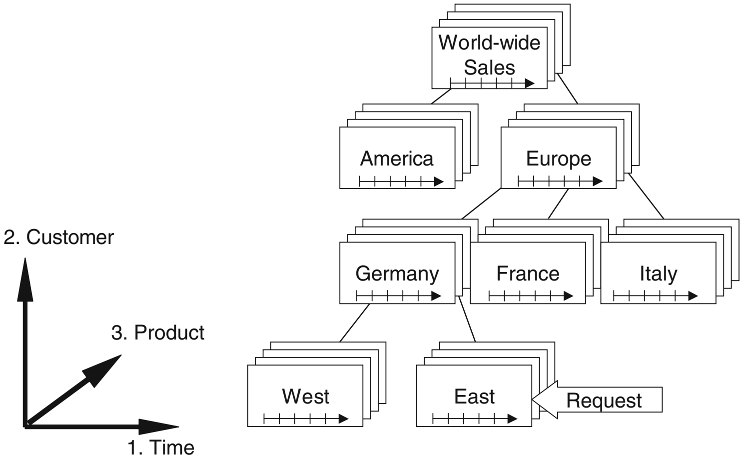


Fig. 9.6 Three dimensions of ATP search paths

Note that if no ATP can be found for an order, the supply chain will not be able to fulfill the order within the allocation planning horizon.

In principal ATP can be searched along all dimensions used to structure ATP (see Sect. 9.1). In the following, we describe the ATP search procedure based on examples where ATP is structured by time, customer and product. Figure 9.6 illustrates these three dimensions of the ATP search paths. The following *search rules* are applied (for simplicity we assume that the ATP is on finished goods level; the search rules are similar for ATP on product group level and component level):

1. The leaf node in the customer hierarchy, to which the customer belongs, the product being requested by the order and the time bucket containing the customer requested date are determined. The ATP at this point is consumed—if available.
2. If ATP is not sufficient, then the time dimension is searched back in time for additional ATP (still at the leaf node in the customer hierarchy and at the product requested by the order); all ATP found up to a predefined number of time buckets back in time is consumed. Note that if ATP is consumed from time buckets earlier than the time bucket containing the customer requested date, the order is pre-built, and inventory is created.
3. If ATP is still not sufficient, steps 1 and 2 are repeated for the next higher node (parent node) in the customer hierarchy (searching for retained ATP quantities), then for the next higher and so on up to the root of the customer hierarchy.
4. If ATP is still not sufficient, steps 1–3 are repeated for all alternate products that may substitute the original product requested by the order.
5. If ATP is still not sufficient, steps 1–4 are repeated, but instead of searching backward in time, ATP is searched forward in time, up to a predefined number of time buckets. Note that by searching ATP forward in time, the order will be promised late.

The set of search rules described above is only one example of an ATP search strategy. In fact, an ATP search strategy may consist of any meaningful combination and sequence of the following search rule types:

- *Search for Product Availability:* This is the standard ATP search for a product including future receipts and constraints.
- *Search for Allocated ATP:* ATP is searched for along the customer dimension.
- *Search for Forecasted Quantities:* The creation of a quote for an order is based on forecasted quantities. The forecasted quantities in general are not customer specific.
- *Search for Component Availability:* For complex production processes and bill of materials structures a multi-level ATP search for component availability is performed.
- *Capable-to-Promise:* ATP is dynamically generated by invoking the production planning and scheduling module.
- *Perform Substitution:* If no ATP can be found for a given product in a given location this type of rule allows to search for (a) the same product in another location, or (b) another product in the same location, or (c) another product in other locations. This so-called *rule-based ATP* search requires the maintenance of lists of alternate products and/or locations and a rule to define the sequence in which the product and/or location substitutions are to take place.

In the following, we illustrate the ATP search procedure by means of a simple example.

9.5.2 ATP Consumption by Example

Let us assume an order is received for 300 units from a customer in East Germany, with a customer requested date in week 4. The ATP situation for East Germany is depicted in Fig. 9.7. First, the ATP is checked for the customer group East Germany for week 4, then for week 3 and for week 2. (We assume that the ATP search procedure is allowed to consume ATP 2 weeks back in time.) The ATP that is found along that search path is 10 in week 4, 60 in week 3 and 50 in week 2, 120 in total (see Fig. 9.7).

As the ATP search procedure may not consume ATP from a time bucket that is more than 2 weeks prior to the customer requested date, 180 units of the requested quantity is still open after the first step. In the second step, ATP is searched along the customer dimension. We assume for this example that there is ATP in the next higher node in the customer hierarchy, i.e. Germany as shown in Fig. 9.8, but no ATP in the next higher nodes, i.e. Europe and World-wide Sales. From the ATP allocated at Germany, another 120 units can be consumed in weeks 4, 3 and 2, resulting in a total promised quantity of 240. Sixty units are still open, as the requested quantity is 300 units.

In the next step, the ATP search algorithm looks for alternate products as shown in Fig. 9.9. The alternates are sorted by priority. First, the alternate with the highest priority is considered, and the same steps are applied as for the original product, i.e.

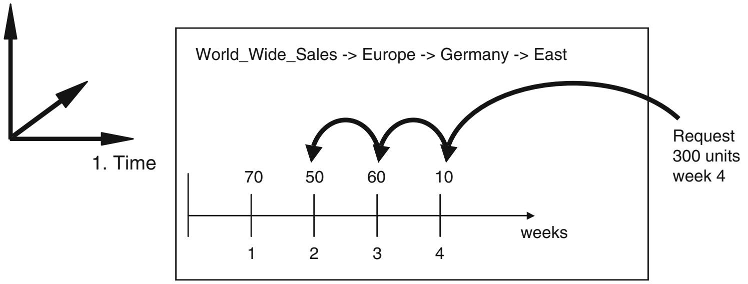


Fig. 9.7 Consumption of ATP along the time dimension

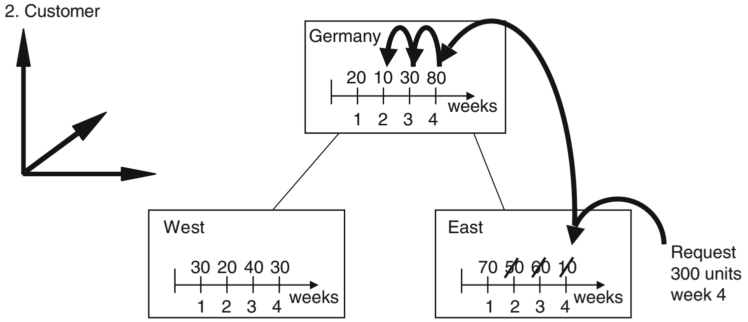


Fig. 9.8 Consumption of ATP along the customer dimension

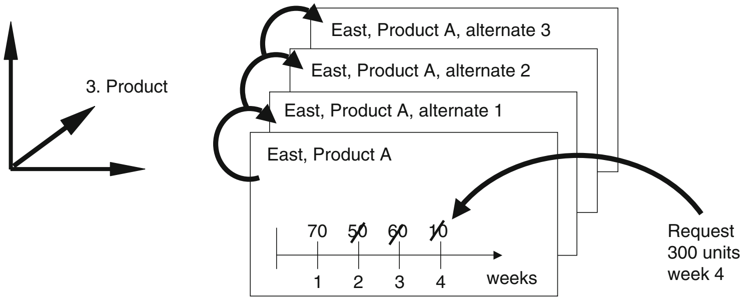


Fig. 9.9 Consumption of ATP along the product dimension

first search back in time and second search up the customer hierarchy. Then, these steps are applied to the alternate with the second highest priority and so on.

The reader who is interested in scientific research on optimization-based allocation planning and order promising is, for example, referred to Meyr (2009) and Quante (2009) for single-level and Vogel (2014) for multi-level customer hierarchies.

References

Ball, M. O., Chen, C.-Y., & Zhao, Z.-Y. (2004). Available-to-promise. In D. Simchi-Levi, S. D. Wu, & Z.-J. Shen (Eds.), *Handbook of quantitative supply chain analysis – Modeling in the e-business era* (Chapter 11, pp. 447–483). Boston: Kluwer Academic.

Dickersbach, J. (2009). *Supply chain management with SAP APO* (3rd ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Elmaghraby, W., & Keskinocak, P. (2003). Dynamic pricing in the presence of inventory considerations: Research overview, current practices, and future directions. *Management Science*, *49*(10), 1287–1309.

Fleischmann, B., & Geier, S. (2012). Global available-to-promise (global ATP). In H. Stadtler, B. Fleischmann, M. Grunow, H. Meyr, & C. Sürie (Eds.), *Advanced planning in supply chains—Illustrating the concepts using an SAP APO case study* (Chapter 7, pp. 195–215). Berlin: Springer.

Fleischmann, B., & Meyr, H. (2003). Customer orientation in advanced planning systems. In H. Dyckhoff, R. Lackes, & J. Reese (Eds.) *Supply chain management and reverse logistics* (pp. 297–321). Berlin: Springer.

i2 Technologies Inc. (2000). *RHYTHM demand fulfillment concept manual, Part No. 4.2.1-DOC-ITM-DFCM-ALL*. Irving, TX: i2 Technologies Inc.

Meyr, H. (2009). Customer segmentation, allocation planning and order promising in make-to-stock production. *OR Spectrum, 31*(1), 229–256.

Pibernik, R. (2005). Advanced available-to-promise: Classification, selected methods and requirements for operations and inventory management. *International Journal of Production Economics, 93*, 239–252.

Quante, R. (2009). *Management of stochastic demand in make-to-stock manufacturing. Forschungsergebnisse der Wirtschaftsuniversität Wien* (Vol. 37). Frankfurt a.M. et al.: Peter Lang.

Quante, R., Meyr, H., & Fleischmann, M. (2009). Revenue management and demand fulfillment: Matching applications, models, and software. *OR Spectrum, 31*(1), 31–62.

Schwendinger, J. (1979). Master production scheduling's available-to-promise. In *APICS Conference Proceedings* (pp. 316–330).

Sharma, K. (1997). Operating on the edge. private conversation.

Smith, B., Leimkuhler, J., Darrow, R., & Samuels, J. (1992). Yield management at American Airlines. *Interfaces, 22*, 8–31.

Talluri, K. T., & van Ryzin, G. J. (2004). *The theory and practice of revenue management. International Series in Operations Research & Management Science* (Vol. 68). London: Kluwer Academic.

Vogel, S. (2014). *Demand fulfillment in multi–stage customer hierarchies. Produktion und Logistik*. Wiesbaden: Springer Gabler.

Production Planning and Scheduling

10

Hartmut Stadtler

Assuming that the master plan has been generated, we can now derive detailed plans for the different plants and production units. In the following we will describe the underlying decision situation (Sect. 10.1) and outline how to proceed from a model to a solution (Sect. 10.2). Some of these steps will be presented in greater detail, namely model building (Sect. 10.3) and updating a production schedule (Sect. 10.4). Whether Production Planning and Scheduling should be done by a single planning level or by a two-level planning hierarchy largely depends on the production type of the shop floor. This issue will be discussed together with limitations of solution methods in Sect. 10.5.

10.1 Description of the Decision Situation

Production Planning and Scheduling aims at generating detailed production schedules for the shop floor over a relatively short interval of time. A *production schedule* indicates for each order to be executed within the planning interval its start and completion times on the resources required for processing. Hence, a production schedule also specifies the sequence of orders on a given resource. A production schedule may be visualized by a gantt-chart (see Fig. 10.4).

The *planning interval* for Production Planning and Scheduling varies from 1 day to a few weeks depending on the industrial sector. Its "correct" length depends on several factors: On the one hand it should at least cover an interval of time corresponding to the largest throughput time of an order within the production unit. On the other hand the planning interval is limited by the availability of known

---

H. Stadtler (✉)
Institute for Logistics and Transport, University of Hamburg, Von-Melle-Park 5,
20146 Hamburg, Germany
e-mail: hartmut.stadtler@uni-hamburg.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__10,

customer orders or reliable demand forecasts. Obviously, sequencing orders on individual resources is useful only if these plans are "reasonably" stable, i.e. if they are not subject to frequent changes due to unexpected events like changing order quantities or disruptions.

For some production types (like a job shop) Production Planning and Scheduling requires sequencing and scheduling of orders on potential bottlenecks. For other production types (like group technology) an automated, bucket-oriented capacity check for a set of orders to be processed by a group within the next time bucket(s) will suffice. Sequencing of orders may then be performed manually by the group itself.

Planning tasks can and should be done decentrally, utilizing the expertise of the staff at each location and its current knowledge of the state of the shop floor (e.g. the availability of personnel). Readers interested in the daily business of a planner and scheduler and resultant requirements for decision support are referred to McKay and Wiers (2004).

The master plan sets the frame within which Production Planning and Scheduling at the decentralized decision units can be performed. Corresponding directives usually are:

- The amount of overtime or additional shifts to be used
- The availability of items from upstream units in the supply chain at different points in time
- Purchase agreements concerning input materials from suppliers—not being part of "our" supply chain.

Furthermore, directives will be given by the master plan due to its extended view over the supply chain and the longer planning interval. As directives we might have

- The amount of seasonal stock of different items to be built up by the end of the planning horizon (for production units facing a make-to-stock policy)
- Given due dates for orders to be delivered to the next downstream unit in the supply chain (which may be the subsequent production stage, a shipper or the final customer).

10.2 How to Proceed from a Model to a Production Schedule

The general procedure leading from a model of the shop floor to a production schedule will be described briefly by the following six steps (see Fig. 10.1).

Step 1: Model Building

A model of the shop floor has to capture the specific properties of the production process and the corresponding flows of materials in a detail that allows to generate feasible plans at minimum costs.

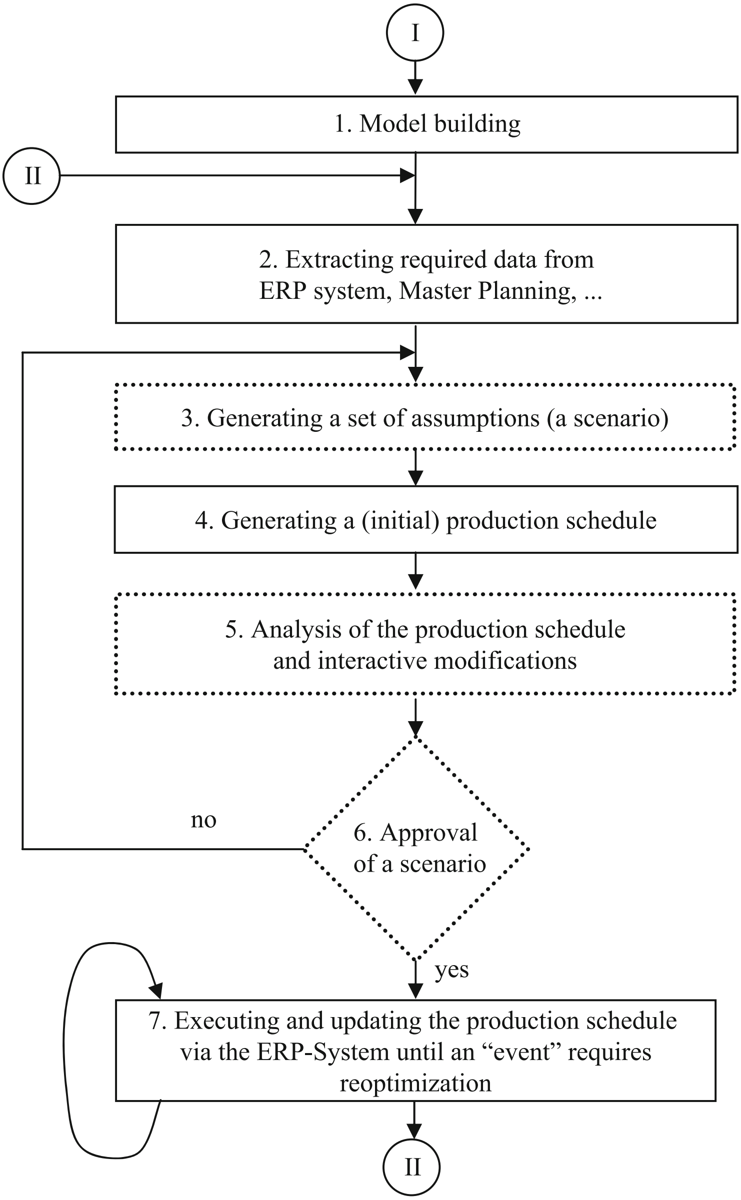


Fig. 10.1 General procedure for production scheduling

Only a subset of all existing resources on the shop floor—namely those which might turn out to become a bottleneck—will have to be modeled explicitly, since the output rate of a system is limited only by these potential bottlenecks. Details on model building are presented in Sect. 10.3.

Step 2: Extracting Required Data

Production Planning and Scheduling utilizes data from

- An ERP system
- Master Planning
- Demand Planning.

Only a subset of the data available in these modules will be used in Production Planning and Scheduling. Therefore, it is necessary to specify which data will actually be required to model a given production unit (see step 2 in Fig. 10.1).

Step 3: Generating a Set of Assumptions (A Scenario)

In addition to the data received from sources like the ERP system, Master Planning and Demand Planning the decision-maker at the plant or production unit level may have some further knowledge or expectations about the current and future situation on the shop floor not available in other places (software modules). Also, there may be several options with respect to available capacity (e.g. due to flexible shift arrangements).

Therefore, the decision-maker must have the ability to modify data and thereby to set up a certain scenario (step 3, Fig. 10.1: A dotted frame indicates that this step has to be performed by the decision-maker and is optional).

Step 4: Generating a (Initial) Production Schedule

Next, a (initial) production schedule will be generated for a given scenario, automatically (step 4, Fig. 10.1). This may be done either by a two-level planning hierarchy or in one step (for more details see Sect. 10.4).

Step 5: Analysis of the Production Schedule and Interactive Modifications

If there is a bucket-oriented upper planning level then this production plan may be analyzed first before a detailed schedule is generated (step 5, Fig. 10.1). Especially, if the production plan is infeasible, the decision-maker may indicate some course of action interactively to balance capacities (like the introduction of overtime or the specification of a different routing). This may be easier than modifying a detailed sequence of operations on individual resources (lower planning level). Infeasibilities—like exceeding an order's due date or an overload of a resource—are shown as *alerts* (see Sect. 13.1).

Also, a solution generated for a scenario may be improved by incorporating the experience and knowledge of the decision-maker, interactively. However, to provide real decision support, the number of necessary modifications should be limited.

Step 6: Approval of a Scenario

Once the decision-maker is sure of having evaluated all available alternatives, he/she will choose the most promising production schedule relating to a scenario.

Step 7: Executing and Updating the Production Schedule

The production schedule selected will be transferred to

- The MRP module to explode the plan (Chap. 11)
- The ERP system to execute the plan
- The Transport Planning module for generating routes and vehicle loadings to deliver customer orders.

The MRP module performs the explosion of all planned activities on bottleneck resources to those materials that are produced on non-bottleneck resources or those to be purchased from suppliers. Furthermore, required materials will be reserved for certain orders.

The schedule will be executed up to a point in time where an event signals that a revision of the production schedule seems advisable (loop II; Fig. 10.1). This may be an event like a new order coming in, a breakdown of a machine or a certain point in time where a given part of the schedule has been executed (for more details on updating a production schedule see Sect. 10.4).

Changing the model of the plant is less frequent (loop I; Fig. 10.1). If the structure remains unaltered and only quantities are affected (like the number of machines within a machine group or some new variants of known products), then the model can be updated automatically via the data that is downloaded from the ERP system. However, for major changes, like the introduction of a new production stage with new properties, a manual adaptation of the model by an expert is advisable.

We will now describe the task of modeling the production process on a shop floor in greater detail.

10.3 Model Building

A *model* of the shop floor has to incorporate all the necessary details of the production process for determining (customer) order completion times, the input required from materials and from potential bottleneck resources. The time grid of a production schedule is either very small (e.g. hours) or even continuous.

10.3.1 Level of Detail

The model can be restricted to operations to be performed on (potential) bottlenecks, since only these restrict the output of the shop floor.

Since Production Planning and Scheduling is (currently) not intended for controlling the shop floor (which is left to the ERP system) some details of the shop floor—like control points monitoring the current status of orders—can be omitted.

All processing steps to be executed on non-bottleneck resources in between two consecutive activities modeled explicitly are only represented by a *fixed lead-time offset*. This recommendation is no contradiction to the well-known statement that Advanced Planning yields lead-times as a *result of planning* and not as an a priori given constant. Here, the lead-time offset consists only of processing and transportation times on preceding non-bottleneck resources, since in general waiting times will not exist.

The model can be defined by the associated data. We discriminate between structural data and situation-dependent data.

Structural data consists of

- Locations
- Parts
- Bill of materials
- Routings and associated operating instructions
- (Production) resources
- Specification of suppliers
- Setup matrices
- Timetables (calendars).

In a large supply chain with many plants at different locations it may be advantageous to attribute all the data to a specific location. Consequently, a part can be discriminated by its production location even if it is the same in the eyes of the customer.

The bill of materials is usually described on a single-level basis (stored in a materials file). There, each part number is linked only to the part numbers of its immediate predecessor components. A complete bill of materials for a given part may be constructed easily on a computer by connecting the single-level representations.

The resource consumption per item can be obtained from the routings and operating instructions. Both the number of items per order as well as the resource consumption per item are required for sequencing and scheduling of individual orders. Hence, a combination of the two representations called *Production Process Model* (abbreviated by PPM) concept is appealing.

As an example the PPMs in Fig. 10.2 describe the two-stage production of ketchup bottles of a specific size and brand. The first PPM represents production of the liquid—including cleaning the tub, stirring the ingredients and waiting to be filled up in bottles. Once the liquid is ready it has to be bottled within the next 24 h. The liquid can be used in bottles of different sizes. For each size there will be an individual PPM. Also the liquid ketchup can be used up for different bottle sizes simultaneously.

A PPM is made up of at least one *operation* while each operation consists of one or several *activities*. An operation is always associated with one primary resource (like a tub). Secondary resources—like personnel—can also be attributed to an activity.

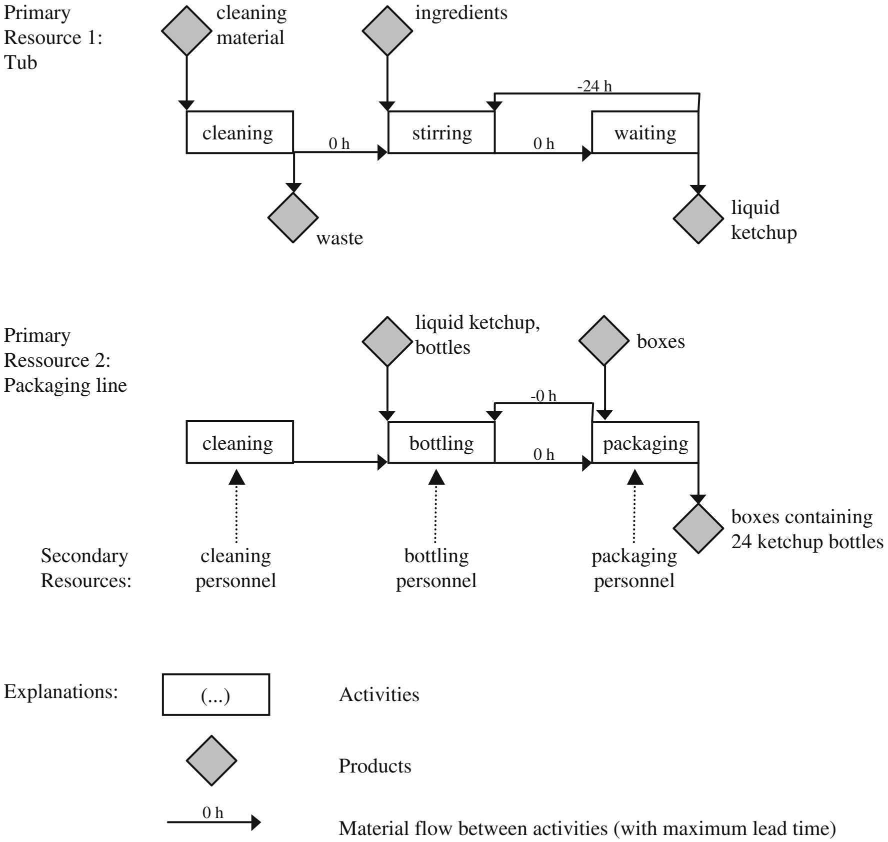


Fig. 10.2 A Production Process Model (PPM) for a two stage ketchup production

Activities may require some input material and can yield some material as an output. Surely, it has to be specified, at which point in time an input material is needed and when an output material is available. The technical sequence of activities within an operation—also called precedence relationships—can be represented by arcs. Like in project planning activities can be linked by

- End-start, end-end, start-end and start-start relationships together with
- Maximal and minimal time distances.

This allows a very precise modeling of timing restrictions between activities including the parallel execution of activities (overlapping activities).

The timing as well as the resource and material requirements of a (customer) order may be derived by linking the associated PPMs by the so-called *pegging arcs* (bolt and dotted arcs in Fig. 10.3). Pegging arcs connect the input material (node) of one PPM with the respective output material (node) of the predecessor (upstream) PPM. Consequently, exploding an order (see order C505X in Fig. 10.3) and the corresponding PPMs, starting with the final production stage, yields information

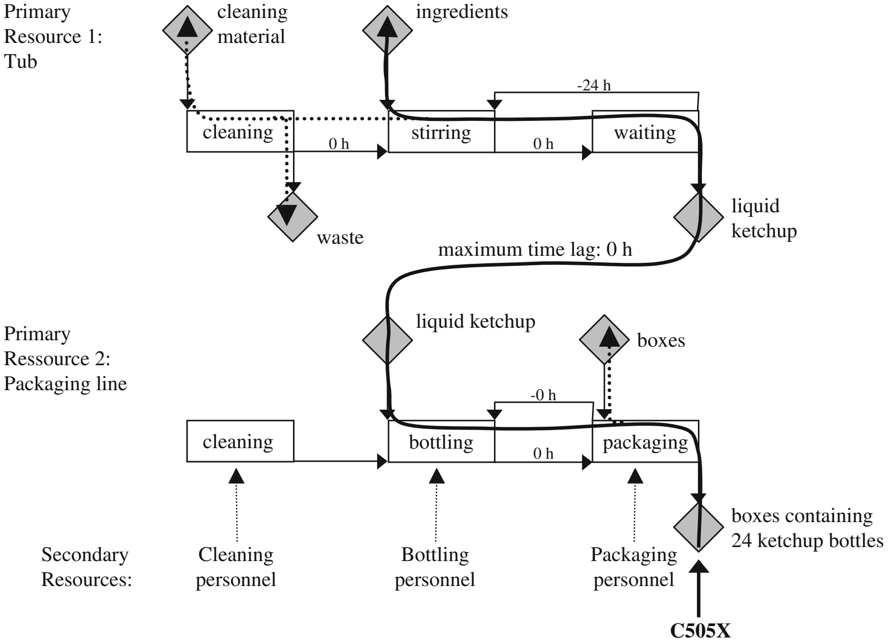


Fig. 10.3 Pegging: linking two Production Process Models (PPMs)

about resource and material consumption within respective time windows. These time windows may be used directly when generating a feasible schedule (see also Vollman et al. 1997, p. 804).

PPMs may be stored and updated solely within an APS. This option allows to take into account more details—like timing restrictions—than are usually stored and maintained in an ERP system. On the other hand operating instructions and routings are also kept in an ERP system. As one can imagine this may give rise to inconsistencies. Hence, some APS vendors propose to take (only) the data from the ERP system and to transfer the BOM, operating instructions and routings to the APS whenever a new production schedule will be created. From these so called *runtime objects* are created resulting in the PPMs needed for an APS. Instead of using runtime objects also flat (ASCII) files may be used.

The (factory) calendar indicates breaks and other interruptions of working hours of resources. Another information included will be whether a plant (or resource) is operated in one, two or three shifts. Usually Advanced Planning Systems offer several typical calendars to choose from.

Situation-dependent data varies with the current situation on the shop floor. It consists of

- Initial inventories, including work-in-process
- Setup state of resources
- Set of orders to be processed within a given interval of time.

Operational procedures to be specified by the user may consist of

- Lot-sizing rules
- Priority rules or
- Choice of routings.

Although rules for building lot sizes should ideally be based on the actual production situation—like utilization of resources and associated costs—Advanced Planning Systems often require to input some (simple) rules a priori. Such rules may be a fixed lot size, a minimum lot size or a lot size with a given time between orders. Software packages might either offer to pick a rule from a given set of rules or to program it in a high level programming language. Note that fixing lot sizes to the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) does not seem wise in many cases because even large deviations only result in small cost increases (regarding setup and inventory holding costs). Instead, lot-sizing flexibility should be regarded a cheap means to smooth production and to avoid overtime (see Stadtler 2007 for a detailed analysis). Rules for determining sequences of orders on a certain resource are handled in a similar fashion (for more details on priority rules see Silver et al. 1998, p. 676).

If alternative routings exist to perform a production order then one should expect that the system chooses the best one in the course of generating a production schedule. However, we experienced that the user has to pick one “preferred” routing. Sometimes alternative routings are input as a ranked list. Only if a preferred routing leads to infeasibilities the solver will try the second best routing, then the third best etc.

10.3.2 Objectives

Last but not least objectives will have to be specified. These guide the search for a good—hopefully near optimal—solution. As objectives to choose from within Production Planning and Scheduling we observed mainly time oriented objectives like minimizing the

- Makespan
- Sum of lateness
- Maximum lateness
- Sum of throughput times
- Sum of setup times.

Three objectives referring to costs should be mentioned, too, namely the minimization of the sum of

- Variable production costs
- Setup costs
- Penalty costs.

Although the degree of freedom to influence costs at this planning level is rather limited one can imagine that the choice of different routings, e.g. declaring an order to be a standard or a rush order, should be evaluated in monetary terms, too.

Penalty costs may be included in the objective function, if *soft constraints* have been modeled (e.g. fulfilling a planned due date for a make-to-stock order).

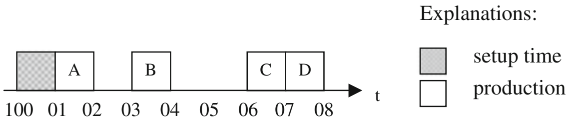


Fig. 10.4 Gantt-chart for four orders on one machine with due dates and sequence dependent setup times

If the decision-maker wants to pursue several of the above objectives, an "ideal" solution, where each objective is at its optimum, usually does not exist. Then a compromise solution is looked for. One such approach is to build a weighted sum of the above individual objectives. This combined objective function can be handled like a single objective, and hence, the same solution methods can be applied (for more details on multi-objective programming see Ehrgott 2006, Eiselt and Sandblom 2012, p. 105).

10.3.3 Representation of Solutions

There are several options for representing a model's solution, namely the detailed production schedule. It may simply be a list of activities with its start and completion times on the resources assigned to it. This may be appropriate for transferring results to other modules.

A decision-maker usually prefers a *gantt-chart* of the production schedule (see Fig. 10.4). This can be accomplished by a gantt-chart showing all the resources of the plant in parallel over a certain interval of time. Alternatively, one might concentrate on a specific customer order and its schedule over respective production stages. Likewise, one can focus attention on one single resource and its schedule over time.

If the decision-maker is allowed to change the production schedule interactively—e.g. by shifting an operation to another (alternative) resource—a gantt-chart with all resources in parallel is the most appropriate.

Now, we will point our attention to the options of updating an existing production schedule.

10.4 Updating Production Schedules

Production Planning and Scheduling assumes that all data is known with certainty, i.e. the decision situation is deterministic. Although this is an ideal assumption, it may be justified for a certain interval of time. To cope with uncertainty—like unplanned variations of production rates or unexpected downtime of resources—software tools allow monitoring deviations from our assumptions taking place on the shop floor immediately, resulting in updated expected completion times of the orders. Whether these changes are that large that a reoptimized schedule is required will be based on the decision-maker's judgment. Current software tools will enhance this judgment by providing extensive generation and testing facilities of alternative

Table 10.1 Data: due dates

Order	A	B	C	D
Due dates	102	104	107	108

Table 10.2 Data: matrix of setup times

to	A	B	C	D	E
A	0	0	1	1	1
B	1	0	0	0	$\frac{2}{3}$
C	1	1	0	0	$\frac{1}{3}$
D	1	1	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	1
E	1	1	$\frac{2}{3}$	1	0

scenarios (also called *simulation*) before a schedule is actually delivered to the shop floor (see also steps three to five; Fig. 10.1).

Another feature to be mentioned here is a two step planning procedure—also called *incremental planning*. Assume that a new order comes in. If it falls into the planning horizon of Production Planning and Scheduling the activities of this new customer order may be inserted into the *given sequence* of orders on the required resources. Time gaps are searched for in the existing schedule such that only minor adjustments in the timing of orders result. If feasibility of the schedule can be maintained a planned due date for the new customer order can be derived and sent back to the customer.

Since this (preliminary) schedule may be improved by a different sequence of orders, reoptimization is considered from time to time, aiming at new sequences with reduced costs.

The following example will illustrate this case. Assume there are four orders that have to be scheduled on a certain machine with given due dates and the objective is to minimize the sum of sequence dependent setup times (Tables 10.1 and 10.2). Then the optimal sequence will be A-B-C-D (see Fig. 10.4). The current time is 100 (time units). Processing times for all orders are identical (one time unit). Sequence dependent setup times are either 0, 1/3, 2/3 or 1 time unit.

After having started processing order A, we are asked to check whether a new order E can be accepted with due date 107. Assuming that *preemption* is not allowed (i.e. interrupting the execution of an order already started in order to produce another (rush) order), we can check the insertion of job E in the existing sequence directly after finishing orders A, B, C or D (see Fig. 10.5). Since there is a positive setup time between order A and E this sub-sequence will not be feasible since it violates the due date of order B. Three feasible schedules can be identified, where alternative c has the least sum of setup times. Hence, a due date for order E of 107 can be accepted (assuming that order E is worth the additional setup time of one time unit).

Once reoptimization of the sequence can be executed, a new feasible schedule—including order E—will be generated reducing the sum of setup times by 1/3 (see Fig. 10.6).

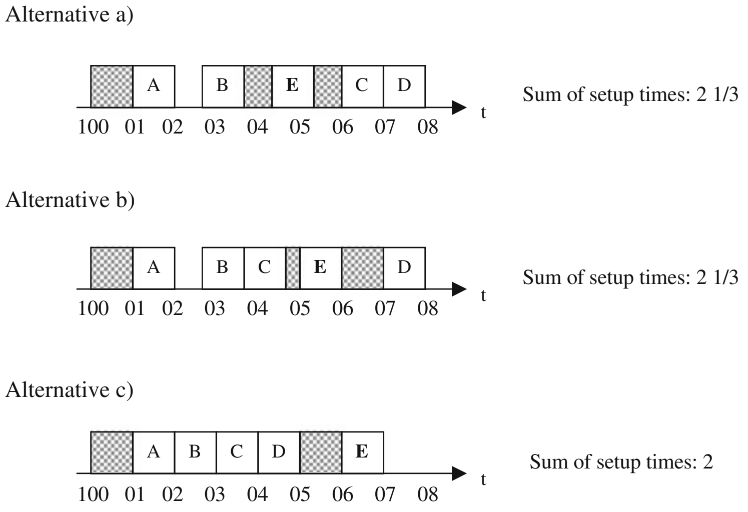


Fig. 10.5 Generating a due date for the new customer order E

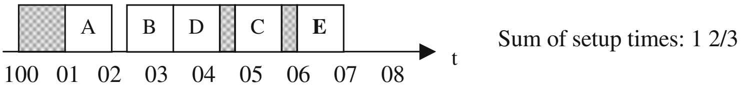


Fig. 10.6 Reoptimized schedule

Generating new sequences of orders is time consuming and usually will result in some *nervousness*. We discriminate nervousness due to changes regarding the start times of operations as well as changes in the amount to be produced when comparing an actual plan with the previous one. Nervousness can lead to additional efforts on the shop floor—e.g. earlier deliveries of some input materials may be necessary which has to be checked with suppliers. In order to reduce nervousness usually the "next few orders" on a resource may be *firmed* or *fixed*, i.e. their schedule is fixed and will not be part of the reoptimization. All orders with a start time falling within a given interval of time—named *frozen horizon*—will be firmed.

10.5 Number of Planning Levels and Limitations

10.5.1 Planning Levels for Production Planning and Scheduling

As has been stated above, software modules for Production Planning and Scheduling allow to generate production schedules either within a single planning level or by a two-level planning hierarchy. Subsequently, we will discuss the pros and cons of these two approaches.

Drexl et al. (1994) advocate that the question of decomposing Production Planning and Scheduling depends on the production type given by the production process and the repetition of operations (see Chap. 3 for a definition). There may be several production units within one plant each corresponding to a specific production type to best serve the needs of the supply chain. Two well-known production types are process organization and flow lines.

In *process organization* there are a great number of machines of similar functionality within a shop and there are usually many alternative routings for a given order. An end product usually requires many operations in a multi-stage production process. Demands for a specific operation occurring at different points in time may be combined to a lot size in order to reduce setup costs and setup times. Usually many lot sizes (orders) have to be processed within the planning interval.

In order to reduce the computational burden and to provide effective decision support the overall decision problem is divided into two (hierarchical) planning levels. The upper planning level is based on time buckets of days or weeks, while resources of similar functionality are grouped in resource groups. These big time buckets allow to avoid sequencing. Consequently, lot-sizing decisions and capacity loading will be much easier. Given the structure of the solution provided by the upper planning level, the lower planning level will perform the assignment of orders to individual resources (e.g. machines) belonging to a resource group as well as the sequencing. The separation of the planning task into two planning levels requires some slack capacity or flexibility with respect to the routing of orders.

For (automated) *flow lines* with sequence dependent setup times a separation into two planning levels is inadequate. On the one hand a planning level utilizing big time buckets is not suited to model sequence dependent setup costs and times. On the other hand sequencing and lot-sizing decisions cannot be separated here, because the utilization of flow lines usually is very high and different products (lot sizes) have to compete for the scarce resource. Luckily, there are usually only one to three production stages and only a few dozen products (or product families) to consider, so Production Planning and Scheduling can be executed in a single planning level.

In the following some definitions and examples illustrating the pros and cons of the two approaches will be provided.

A *time bucket* is called *big*, if an operation started within a time bucket has to be finished by the end of the time bucket. The corresponding model is named a big bucket model. Hence, the planning logic assumes that the setup state of a resource is not preserved from one period to the next. Usually, more than one setup will take place within a big time bucket of a resource (see Fig. 10.7).

In a model with *small* time buckets the setup state of a resource can be preserved. Hence, the solution of a model with small time buckets may incur less setup times and costs than the solution of a model with big time buckets (see operation B in Fig. 10.8). Usually, the length of a time bucket is defined in such a way that at most one setup can take place (or end) in a small time bucket on a resource (a further example is given by Haase 1994, p. 20).

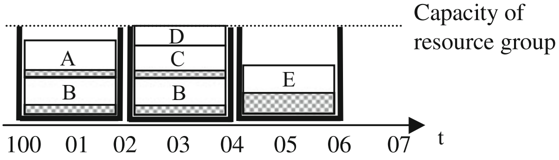


Fig. 10.7 A big bucket model

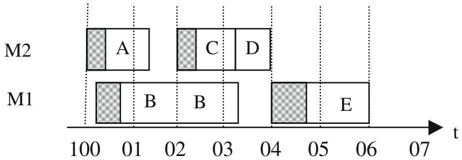


Fig. 10.8 Gantt-chart: a small bucket model (time buckets of one time unit and two resources M1 and M2)

An aggregation of resources to resource groups automatically leads to a big bucket model, because the setup state of an individual resource as well as the assignment of operations to individual resources is no longer known.

Note that although a feasible big bucket oriented production plan exists, there may be no feasible disaggregation into a production schedule on respective resources. This can occur in cases such as

- Sequence dependent setup times
- Loading of resource groups, or
- A lead-time offset of zero time units between two successive operations.

Sequence dependent setup times cannot be represented properly within a big bucket model, since the loading of a time bucket is done without sequencing. Usually a certain portion of the available capacity is reserved for setup times. However, the portion may either be too large or too small. The former leads to unnecessarily large *planned* throughput times of orders while the latter may result in an infeasible schedule. Whether the portion of setup times has been chosen correctly is not known before the disaggregation into a schedule has been performed.

Another situation where a feasible disaggregation may not exist is related to *resource groups*. As an example (see Fig. 10.9), assume that two resources have been aggregated to a resource group, the time bucket size is three time units, thus the capacity of the resource group is six time units. Each operation requires a setup of one time unit and a processing time of one time unit. Then the loading of all three operations within one big time bucket is possible. However, no feasible disaggregation exists, because a split of one operation such that it is performed on both machines requires an additional setup of one time unit exceeding the period's capacity of one machine. To overcome this dilemma one could reduce the capacity of the resource group to five time units (resulting in a slack of one time unit for the lower planning level). Then only two out of the three operations can be loaded within one time bucket. However, one should bear in mind that this usually will lengthen the planned throughput time of an order.

For a multi-stage production system with several potential bottlenecks on different production stages, a feasible schedule might not exist if an order requiring two successive operations is loaded in the same big time bucket. As an example

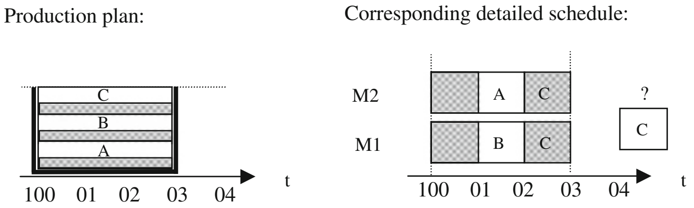


Fig. 10.9 An example of no feasible schedule when resource groups are loaded

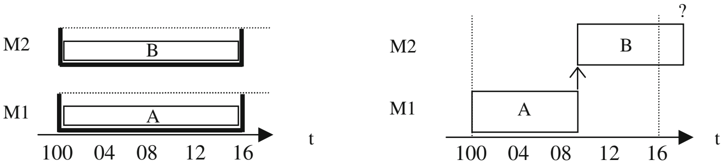


Fig. 10.10 An example of no feasible schedule in multi-stage production with lead-time offset zero

(see Fig. 10.10) depicting a two-stage production system with operation B being the successor of operation A each with a processing time of 9 h. A production stage is equipped with one machine (M1 and M2 respectively). A time bucket size of 16 h (one working day) has been introduced. Although the capacity of one time bucket is sufficient for each operation individually, no feasible schedule exists that allows both operations to be performed in the same time bucket (assuming that overlapping operations are prohibited).

A feasible disaggregation can be secured if a fixed *lead-time offset* corresponding to the length of one big time bucket is modeled. Again this may incur larger planned throughput times than necessary (32 h instead of 18 h in our example).

Consequently, it has to be considered carefully which of the above aggregations makes sense in a given situation. Usually, the answer will depend on the production type. Surely, an intermediate bucket oriented planning level can reduce the amount of detail and data to be handled simultaneously, but may also require some planned slack to work properly leading to larger planned throughput times than necessary.

In order to combine the advantages of both the big and the small bucket model a third approach—a big time bucket with linked lot sizes—has been proposed in Sürie and Stadtler (2003). Here, several lots may be processed within a time bucket without considering its sequence (hence a big bucket model). However, a "last" lot within a time bucket is chosen which can be linked with a "first" lot in the next time bucket. If these two lots concern the same product a setup will be saved. While this effect may only seem to be marginally at first sight, it also allows to model the production of a lot size extending over two or more time buckets with only one initial setup—like in a small bucket model.

Last but not least a fourth approach has to be mentioned which does not use time buckets at all, instead a continuous time axis is considered (Maravelias and Grossmann 2003). Although this is the most exact model possible it usually will result in the greatest computational effort. For a comparison with small bucket models see Sürie (2005).

10.5.2 Limitations Due to Computational Efforts

For finding the best production schedule one has to bear in mind that there are usually many alternatives for sequencing orders on a resource (of which only a subset may be feasible). Theoretically, one has to evaluate $n!$ different sequences for n orders to be processed on one resource. While this can be accomplished for five orders quickly by complete enumeration ($5! = 120$), it takes some time for ten orders ($10! > 3.6 \cdot 10^6$) and cannot be executed within reasonable time limits for 20 orders ($20! > 2.4 \cdot 10^{18}$). Furthermore, if one has the additional choice among parallel resources, the number of possible sequences again rises sharply. Although powerful solution algorithms have been developed that reduce the number of solutions to be evaluated for finding *good* solutions (see Chap. 31), computational efforts still increase sharply with the number of orders in the schedule.

Fortunately, there is usually no need to generate a production schedule from scratch, because a portion of the previous schedule may have been fixed (e.g. orders falling in the frozen horizon). Similarly, decomposing Production Planning and Scheduling into two planning levels reduces the number of feasible sequences to be generated at the lower planning level, due to the assignment of orders to big time buckets at the upper level.

Also, incremental planning or a reoptimization of partial sequences specified by the decision-maker will restrict computational efforts.

Further details regarding the use of Production Planning and Scheduling are presented in Kolisch et al. (2000), Pinedo (2009, p. 195), and Chap. 22.

References

Drexl, A., Fleischmann, B., Günther, H.-O., Stadtler, H., & Tempelmeier, H. (1994). Konzeptionelle Grundlagen kapazitätsorientierter PPS-Systeme. *Zeitschrift für betriebswirtschaftliche Forschung, 46*, 1022–1045.

Ehrgott, M. (2006). *Multicriteria optimization* (2nd ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Eiselt, H. A., & Sandblom, C.-L. (2012). *Operations research: A model-based approach* (2nd ed.). Heidelberg: Springer.

Haase, K. (1994). *Lotsizing and scheduling for production planning. Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 408). Berlin: Springer.

Kolisch, R., Brandenburg, M., & Krüger, C. (2000). Numetrix/3 production scheduling. *OR Spektrum, 22*(3), 307–312.

Maravelias, C., & Grossmann, I. (2003). New general continuous-time state-task network formulation for short-term scheduling of multipurpose batch plants. *Industrial & Engineering Chemistry Research, 42*, 3056–3074.

McKay, K. N., & Wiers, V. C. S. (2004). *Practical production control: A survival guide for planners and schedulers*. Boca Raton: J. Ross Pub.

Pinedo, M. L. (2009). *Planning and scheduling in manufacturing and services* (2nd ed.). Dordrecht: Springer.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Stadtler, H. (2007). How important is it to get the lot size right? *Zeitschrift für Betriebswirtschaft, 77*, 407–416.

Sürie, C. (2005). Planning and scheduling with multiple intermediate due dates: An effective discrete time model formulation. *Industrial & Engineering Chemistry Research, 44*(22), 8314–8322.

Sürie, C., & Stadtler, H. (2003). The capacitated lot-sizing problem with linked lot sizes. *Management Science, 49*, 1039–1054.

Vollman, T., Berry, W., & Whybark, D. (1997). *Manufacturing planning and control systems* (4th ed.). New York: Irwin/McGraw-Hill.

11

Purchasing and Material Requirements Planning

Hartmut Stadtler

An indispensable part of an ERP system, Material Requirements Planning, also plays an important role in APS, because it

- Generates replenishment orders (production orders) for uncritical components and parts (operations) in a multi-stage production environment (Sects. 11.1 and 11.2)
- Provides access to a transactional ERP system and thus can initiate the execution of orders.

The typical tasks of purchasing are to analyze procurement markets, to negotiate the terms of trade with potential suppliers and finally to select suppliers and to place replenishment orders. Here, we are interested in the way APS can support the selection of suppliers and the decisions on order sizes, taking into account the specific cost functions of suppliers, which often allow for quantity discounts (Sect. 11.3). This may apply to input materials for production, indirect materials and articles of merchandise.

11.1 Basics of Material Requirements Planning

Material Requirements Planning (MRP) is regarded as the core engine of an ERP system, which calculates time-phased plans of secondary demands for components and parts based on a time series of primary demands (usually finished products). Time-phased secondary demands are a prerequisite for generating production or replenishment orders so that demands for finished products can be met in time with as little work-in-process and inventory as possible.

H. Stadtler (✉)
Institute for Logistics and Transport, University of Hamburg, Von-Melle-Park 5,
20146 Hamburg, Germany
e-mail: hartmut.stadtler@uni-hamburg.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_11,

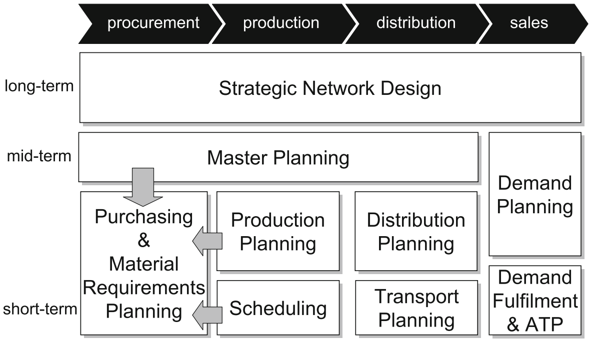


Fig. 11.1 Modules providing the input data (production quantities) for Purchasing and MRP

Although most appealing, this logic suffers from ignoring available capacities. Consequently, production orders may result in overloaded capacities and thus infeasibilities. Experience has shown that a two step procedure, i.e. first calculating all secondary demands and then balancing capacities by means of an ERP's capacity requirements planning (CRP) module, does not provide satisfactory solutions (for a further discussion of the drawbacks of ERP systems see Drexl et al. 1994 or Tempelmeier and Derstroff 1996).

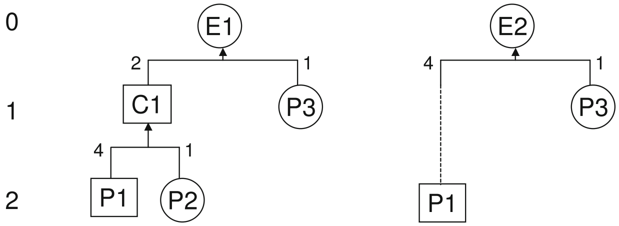
These drawbacks gave rise to develop APS, which do not separate the generation of secondary demands and capacity balancing. However, in order to reduce complexity, APS concentrate on operations to be performed on potential bottlenecks, which usually are only a small subset of all operations relating to factory orders. The time needed to execute non-bottleneck operations (including transport) in between two adjacent *critical operations* is taken into account by a fixed lead-time offset. Once plans have been generated for critical operations, the timing and quantities of non-critical operations can be calculated easily by making use of the standard MRP logic. This is the topic of the next subsection.

There are many textbooks that describe the MRP logic (e.g. Silver et al. 1998; Vollman et al. 1997). Thus we will only briefly describe the terms and the basic logic. More important is a discussion of issues occurring when using MRP in conjunction with an APS.

First of all, we have to decide on the time series of primary demands to take as a starting point. These may be (see Fig. 11.1)

- Production quantities per period for (critical) product groups calculated in Master Planning (see Chap. 8)
- Production quantities per period for critical operations calculated in the Production Planning module or
- Critical production orders generated in the Scheduling module (see Chap. 10).

In case we look for the requirements of parts to be purchased from outside suppliers over a longer period of time (e.g. for negotiating contracts with suppliers or providing an outlook of expected part demands to suppliers), Master Planning will be the starting point. Note that demands for product groups have to be disaggregated into demands of respective products before starting the MRP logic.



Explanations:
– E1, E2 represent end products, C1 a component and P1, P2, P3 single parts
– single digits indicate production coefficients
– materials in circles are regarded as *critical*, materials in boxes as *uncritical*

Fig. 11.2 Bill of materials for end products E1 and E2 as well as low-level codes

For placing replenishment orders or for the timing of uncritical operations (production orders), either Production Planning or Scheduling will be the source of information. If Production Planning is chosen, demands per time bucket will result, while Scheduling will give the exact timing of the start of production orders. Hence, Scheduling best corresponds to a bucketless (continuous time axis) MRP, while the two former are best suited for a bucket oriented MRP logic. Both time axes are possible today (Vollman et al. 1997, p. 30). In the following, we assume Production Planning to be the starting point.

As additional data we will need:

- Bill of materials, indicating for each part number, which other part numbers are required as direct inputs
- Production coefficients indicating the quantity of each direct input part needed for one unit of a given part number
- Lead-times representing a fixed interval of time needed between releasing an order for a part number and its availability
- The inventory status, indicating for each part number, the (physical) stock at hand, scheduled receipts (i.e. outstanding orders and work-in-process), reservations, backorders and safety stock levels
- Low-level code (numbers).

A *low-level code* of a part number or operation corresponds to the longest path in the product structure starting with an end item and terminating in the respective part number. All parts visited along the path are counted yielding the level code. Due to the fact that a part number may be used in several product structures, the maximum has be taken for determining the low-level code. By definition, a low-level code "0" is attributed to end items (for an example see Fig. 11.2). Low-level codes have to be calculated preceding the bill of materials (BOM) explosion, i.e. the generation of secondary demands, to allow a pure sequential execution of calculations.

While in standard text books on MRP the level of detail for a BOM explosion is finished products, components or parts, the level of detail required in the context of APS is *operations*. Normally, several operations are required to transform input material(s) into a specific part. Some of these operations may be critical, i.e. they have to be performed on a potential bottleneck resource, some are uncritical. Consequently, we will have to combine the BOM with the routing of operations—sometimes called the bill of capacities (BOC) (Vollman et al. 1997, p. 128).

To ease understanding we will simplify matters (without loss of generality) by assuming that there is exactly one operation to a finished product, component or part.

11.2 Generation and Timing of Uncritical Orders

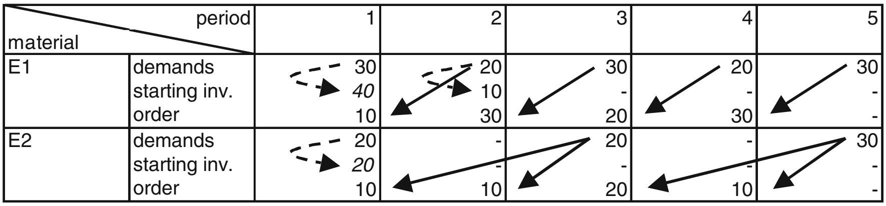
The generation of uncritical orders originating from production orders scheduled on bottleneck resources will be explained now by an example. Firstly, the data required—like the BOM—will be presented (see Fig. 11.2). Secondly, some remarks on the generation of a production plan will follow and thirdly, we will show how to derive orders for uncritical operations. Fourthly, a simplification is shown as proposed by APS vendors today.

E1 and E2 are completed on a highly utilized assembly line. Component C1 is produced in a manufacturing cell. Since the manufacturing cell is underutilized if only C1 is produced, surplus capacity has been sold to a partner company. The terms of the contract establish priorities for scheduling operation C1; hence, the manufacturing cell is no bottleneck. P1 is bought from an external supplier, while P2 and P3 are processed on an injection moulding machine which is a potential bottleneck, too.

Consequently, E1, E2, P2 and P3 are regarded critical operations for which a production plan is generated by the APS module Production Planning.

In addition to the data shown in Fig. 11.2 lead-time offsets are needed for each operation. For the example presented here we assume one period except for C1, which has a lead-time of two periods.

While lot-sizing plays a major role for critical operations, incurring setup times or setup costs on potential bottlenecks, this is generally negligible on non-bottlenecks. Since time is not scarce at non-bottlenecks, an hour saved by saving setup time is of no value. Hence, a lot-for-lot production, i.e. no lot-sizing, for non-critical operations is advisable. Exceptions may only occur in case of technological reasons relating to production or transport activities requiring some minimum quantity or integer multiple of a fixed amount to work properly (e.g. production in full tub loads). Often companies make use of fixed lot sizes based on the economic order quantity. Note that these lot sizes should not be regarded as strict instructions because even a significant deviation will increase total variable cost only marginally. For example assume an optimal lot size (Q) corresponding to a time between orders (TBO) of 5 weeks. Then we can choose a lot size in the range of $[0.25 \cdot Q, 4 \cdot Q]$ with an increase in total variable cost of at most 1 %. This result is based on the assumption that holding cost consist of the interest paid on the lot size stock and an interest rate of 10 % per year. Further findings including general formulas are presented in (Stadtler 2007b).



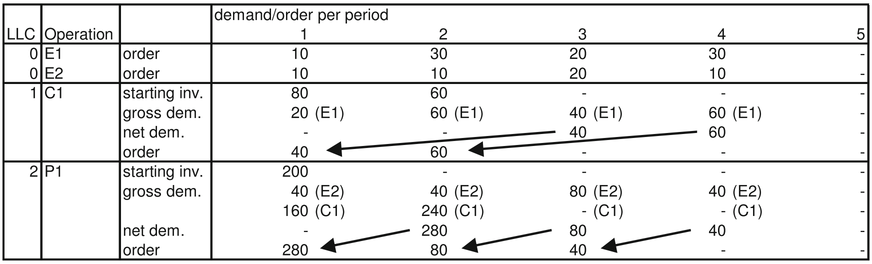
material	period	1	2	3	4	5
E1	demands	30	20	30	20	30
	starting inv.	*40*	10	-	-	-
	order	10	30	20	30	-
E2	demands	20	-	20	-	30
	starting inv.	*20*	-	-	-	-
	order	10	10	20	10	-

Fig. 11.3 Primary demands and production plans for E1 and E2 (in quantities per period; inventory abbreviated by inv.)

In contrast to lead-times used in an ERP system, which usually incorporate a large portion of waiting times, lead-times in the context of an APS pertaining to uncritical operations should only cater for production and transport activities. The reason is that, by definition, utilization rates of non-bottlenecks are low and thus a production order should find the resource empty in general. However, it seems wise to include "some" safety time into the lead-time offset of an uncritical operation being a *direct predecessor* of a critical operation. This will allow for some uncertainties in processing times and will make sure that a bottleneck resource, which governs the throughput of the whole supply chain, will not run empty. Another reason why an APS can do with smaller lead-times than an ERP system (and thus smaller planned throughput times) is due to the fact that lead-times in an ERP system also cater for its inability to take into account finite capacity checks of bottleneck resources when making the BOM explosion. However, in order to avoid an overlap of two adjacent operations—which might cause infeasibilities when it comes to Scheduling—an operation's minimum lead-time should be set to one period.

From these lead-times now *cumulated lead-times* have to be calculated relating two adjacent critical operations simply by adding the single lead-times of operations along the path (in the BOM) from the upstream critical operation to the downstream critical operation—excluding the lead-time of the upstream critical operation. Thereby, the *finishing* point (period) of the downstream critical operation is connected with the *finishing* point (period) of the upstream critical operation. Consequently, cumulated lead-times cover production times and transport activities in between two critical operations plus the lead-time of the downstream critical operation (e.g. cumulated lead-times for E1-P2, E1-P3 and E2-P3 are 3, 1, and 1 period(s), respectively). These cumulated lead-times, as well as (cumulated) production coefficients, primary demands and the inventory status of items, parts, and components form the input to Production Planning.

Figure 11.3 shows the primary demands for finished products E1 and E2 (critical operations) and resultant production orders to meet demands for the upcoming five periods, while taking into account a lead-time offset of one period (see solid arrows). This production plan has been generated assuming that operations E1 and E2 are produced on the same machine with a capacity of 40 units per period and that productions coefficients are "1". Note, that some demands are fulfilled from initial inventory (dashed arrows).



LLC	Operation		demand/order per period 1	2	3	4	5
0	E1	order	10	30	20	30	-
0	E2	order	10	10	20	10	-
1	C1	starting inv.	80	60	-	-	-
		gross dem.	20 (E1)	60 (E1)	40 (E1)	60 (E1)	-
		net dem.	-	-	40	60	-
		order	40	60	-	-	-
2	P1	starting inv.	200	-	-	-	-
		gross dem.	40 (E2)	40 (E2)	80 (E2)	40 (E2)	-
			160 (C1)	240 (C1)	- (C1)	- (C1)	-
		net dem.	-	280	80	40	-
		order	280	80	40	-	-

Explanations:

– LLC: low-level code

– inv.: inventory

Fig. 11.4 BOM explosion with pegging

Positive lead-times are the reason why there are no production orders for E1 and E2 in period five even though the forecast and planning horizon is five periods. Similarly, even for materials with a low-level code greater than "0" production orders cover a smaller interval of time. Consequently, utilization rates near the planning horizon should be interpreted with caution. Furthermore, it becomes clear that a reasonable planning horizon for Production Planning should at least cover the longest path, with respect to lead-times, from a final operation (finished product) to a part with no direct predecessor in the BOM. In our example, the longest path is E1-C1-P1 or E1-C1-P2, both with an overall lead-time offset of four periods. An appropriate planning horizon should also cover a (small) *frozen horizon* and some periods for decision making (e.g. for making lot-sizing decisions).

To keep our example small production plans for critical operations P2 and P3 are not exhibited here, because they don't cause secondary demands. Now we are in the position of calculating the time-phased order sizes of uncritical operations C1 and P1.

Here, the logic of a time-phased BOM explosion (Orlicky 1975; Tempelmeier 2006) has to be slightly adapted. First, finished products (i.e. final operations) are always declared "critical". Second, all orders for critical operations *and* possessing at least one uncritical direct predecessor (i.e. upstream) operation, are labeled with low-level code "0". Now we can start with any operation belonging to low-level code "0" and derive the associated secondary demands for all its uncritical direct predecessor operations by multiplying a period's order size (e.g. generated in Production Planning) by the production coefficient and placing it in the same time period; e.g. the order for operation C1, for 20 units, must be ready at the beginning of period 1 in order to be used for the assembly operation E1 in period 1 (see Fig. 11.4). In order to know which operation caused the secondary demand we further store its name—(see the operation's names in brackets in Fig. 11.4). This identification is called *pegging* and can be most useful in the case that operations are not ready in time. Then, it is easy to see which orders are affected and thus specific counter actions can be initiated.

Once direct secondary demands have been calculated for all low-level code "0" operations, then secondary demands of low-level code "1" operations are complete. Next, we can calculate orders for any low-level code "1" operation and explode these into the secondary demands of its direct predecessors. This is only necessary for uncritical direct predecessors, because a production plan exists for the critical operations. (However, a BOM explosion into critical operations may also be useful in order to check the feasibility of the production plan. In case there is a mismatch of orders between the production plan and the BOM explosion, an alert should be generated automatically.)

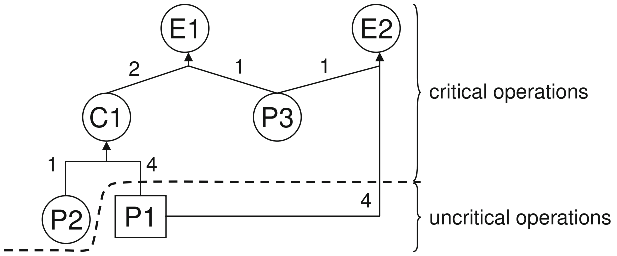
Before starting the BOM explosion, we will have to calculate net demands by netting gross demand with initial inventory. This logic may be more elaborate than shown in our example by considering safety stock requirements, outstanding orders and reservations, too. Given the net demands of an operation these have to be time-phased and assigned to an order period by taking into account the operation's lead-time offset (indicated by an arrow in Fig. 11.4). These tasks are repeated until all operations have been considered.

One may ask what reasons there are for generating an alert during the BOM explosion. Obviously, if we started from an infeasible production plan, e.g. with backlogging, then the BOM explosion would also generate alerts showing that some materials are not ready in time. At this stage a popular counter measure would be *expediting*, resulting in reduced lead-times. A second reason for a mismatch of a (feasible) production plan and the result of a BOM explosion may be that lead-times used in Production Planning are independent of the amount produced, while in a BOM explosion lead-times can be calculated based on the order size. Again, any discrepancy jeopardizing efficiency or feasibility should be shown to the decision maker by an alert.

While the logic of the BOM explosion is rather simple, implementing the interface between the Production Planning module and the MRP module may be tricky. One issue is the generation and exchange of alerts between modules.

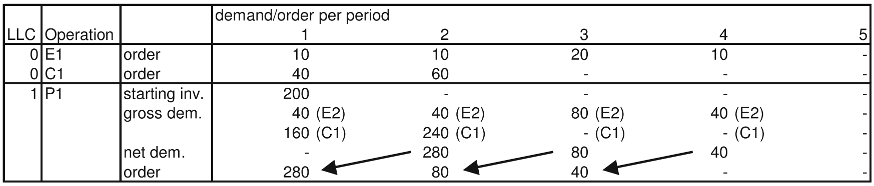
In order to avoid the complexity of an arbitrary mix of critical and uncritical operations some APS vendors propose a distinct separation: The final operation, resulting in a finished good, is always defined as critical. Also, any upstream operation can be defined as critical. However, a critical operation may never possess a direct uncritical downstream operation. This can best be illustrated by our example (Fig. 11.2) transformed into a Gozinto graph (Fig. 11.5). Here, a separation line divides operations into the set of critical operations and the set of uncritical operations.

The advantage is that Production Planning can be executed first, followed by the BOM (or BOC) explosion for uncritical operations—and one can be sure that both plans will match. Hence, an exchange of alerts between modules is unnecessary. Also, there is no need to calculate, maintain and use cumulated lead-times or cumulated production coefficients. The disadvantage is that some formerly uncritical operations now have to be declared as critical (e.g. C1), which increases the scope and efforts of Production Planning. Especially, if the most upstream



Explanations:
- E1, E2 represent end products, C1 a component and P1, P2, P3 single parts
- single digits indicate production coefficients
- materials in circles are regarded as *critical*, materials in boxes as *uncritical*
- the dashed line separates critical from uncritical operations

Fig. 11.5 Gozinto representation of the bill of materials with a separation line for the set of critical and the set of uncritical operations



			demand/order per period				
LLC	Operation		1	2	3	4	5
0	E1	order	10	10	20	10	-
0	C1	order	40	60	-	-	-
1	P1	starting inv.	200	-	-	-	-
		gross dem.	40 (E2)	40 (E2)	80 (E2)	40 (E2)	-
			160 (C1)	240 (C1)	- (C1)	- (C1)	-
		net dem.	-	280	80	40	-
		order	280	80	40	-	-

Explanations:
- LLC: low-level code
- dem.: demand
- inv.: inventory

Fig. 11.6 BOM explosion with pegging

operations are processed on a bottleneck resource then (nearly) all operations in the BOC have to be defined as critical.

Referring to our example, the generation of purchase orders for P1 now starts from production orders for E2 *and* C1 (see Fig. 11.6). For simplification purposes, we assume here that production orders for C1, generated by Production Planning, are equal to those derived by the BOM explosion (Fig. 11.4). Now, applying the BOM explosion for P1 provides the same results as before. The only difference is that computational efforts will be smaller, while they will be larger for Production Planning (not shown here).

Given that the production plan started from is feasible and no alerts have been generated during the BOM explosion, then all production orders for critical and uncritical operations are known and can be handed over for execution (at least for the upcoming period, see Chap. 4). The only exception are purchase orders to outside suppliers which may need further attention due to fixed ordering costs or quantity discounts—which will be dealt with next.

11.3 Quantity Discounts and Supplier Selection

Life cycle contracts are predominant today in many industries for the most important production input. Also, materials to be purchased and considered strategically important are usually procured from a supply chain partner. However, there are a number of additional materials, which are purchased from outside suppliers, where it may be economical to select a supplier and to decide on the order size in the short term and to make use of quantity discounts. These materials may be commodities used as direct production input, often classified as C items, as well as materials for maintenance, repair and overhaul (MRO). In the case of a commodity, quality is also defined by industry standards and there are usually a number of suppliers to choose from. Also, it can be assumed that the quantity to be purchased is rather low compared to the overall market volume so that availability is no problem. Examples are standard electronic components, like a capacitor, or office equipment bought with the help of an e-catalog.

In an abstract form the procurement decision incorporates the following features (Tempelmeier 2002): For each item to be purchased there is a time series of demands over a finite planning interval (e.g. see row "order" for item P1, Fig. 11.4). There may be one or several suppliers to choose from, each with specific costs. These costs will incur

- Supplier specific fixed ordering and procurement costs (including the transport of the consignment)
- Supplier specific quantity discounts (either all-units or incremental discounts).

Figure 11.7 illustrates the two most popular forms of quantity discounts.

Here, the supplier's fixed ordering cost is depicted as "U" on the total acquisition cost axis. The x-axis represents the order quantity. There are three purchasing intervals, each with a specific price per unit. In the *all-units discount* case, the price charged for the last unit ordered also holds for the total order quantity. In an *incremental discount* case, only those units falling within a purchasing interval are charged with the corresponding price (see lower bounds Q_1 and Q_2 of purchasing intervals 2 and 3 in Fig. 11.7). In both cases it is wise to stick to one supplier and item per period and not to split the order, because this will result in the lowest total acquisition cost. Only if the amount ordered exceeds the maximum a supplier is able to procure (Q_3) another supplier will come into play.

In general, the demand of several periods will be combined when forming purchase orders in order to make use of attractive price reductions for a large quantity. Large order quantities usually result in holding stocks for some periods; thus, holding costs counteract savings due to quantity discounts.

Note that it might be difficult to specify an item's "correct" holding cost per period because a large portion of the holding cost is interest on the capital employed. Since an item's purchase price can change over time—especially if there are time-dependent, supplier-specific quantity discounts—one does not know in *advance* which items will be in inventory and at which price. One way to overcome this "problem" is to keep track of each item purchased, its purchase price, purchasing period and the period of consumption.

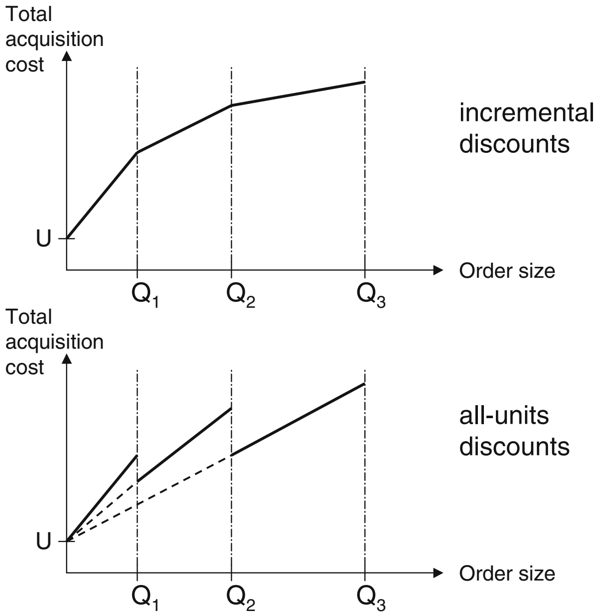


Fig. 11.7 Incremental discounts and all-units discount with three purchasing intervals

Table 11.1 Conditions for purchasing item P1 from two suppliers

Supplier s	Discount	Fixed cost U_s	$p_{1,s}$	$Q_{1,s}$	$p_{2,s}$	$Q_{2,s}$	$p_{3,s}$	$Q_{3,s}$
1	All-units	100	8.00	200	7.80	400	7.60	$+\infty$
1	Incremental	50	7.90	300	7.50	500	7.20	1,000

In a practical setting, one often has to take into account supplier-specific lead-times, delivery schedules or minimum order quantities. Also, if several items are bought from one supplier and procured by a single consignment, fixed ordering costs may be shared among these items. Even more, discounts may be granted for total purchases of a group of products (see Degraeve et al. 2005).

A simple example is constructed to illustrate the decision situation: Let us assume that item P1 can be purchased from two suppliers ($s = 1, 2$). One supplier is offering all-units and the other incremental discounts (Table 11.1). There are three purchasing intervals ($v = 1, 2, 3$) for each supplier s with prices $p_{v,s}$.

Some additional remarks are necessary regarding the time series of demands generated by the BOM explosion. Namely, we require a reasonable number of period demands covering a planning interval that allows for the exploitation of quantity discounts. Also, the first replenishment decision should not be influenced by the target inventory at the planning horizon (usually set to the safety stock level). A rough rule of thumb is a planning interval covering five ordering decisions (i.e. $5 \cdot \text{TBO}$).

Table 11.2 Expected demands for item P1 resulting from BOM explosion and Demand Planning

	Demand/order period				
Source of demand	1	2	3	4	5
BOM explosion	280	~~80~~	~~40~~	–	–
Demand forecast	–	280	240	240	280
Expected demands	280	280	240	240	280

Table 11.3 Purchasing plan from two suppliers

	Order quantity per period from supplier				
Sourcing from supplier	1	2	3	4	5
1	–	–	–	520	–
2	800	–	–	–	–

To keep our example small, we will do with five periods. Here, the demands calculated (see Fig. 11.4) suffer from the effect of the lead-time offset, i.e. there are no demands at all in period five while for periods three and four secondary demands are missing resulting from future production of item C1. Hence, it is recommended to switch to demand forecasts (see Chap. 7) for periods with incomplete secondary demands (periods two to five in our example). Still, one should check whether existing secondary demands for these periods are in line with demand forecasts. Resulting demands are shown in Table 11.2.

The only data missing is the interest rate to be used for capital employed within the supply chain which is assumed 2.5 % per period.

The optimized purchasing plan (Stadtler 2007a) shows that the first order should be placed in period 1 from the second supplier with an order quantity of 800 units while the second order is placed with the first supplier in period four with an order quantity of 520 units (Table 11.3). The total cost within the planning interval comes to 10,333.25 [MU] (monetary units). Here, holding costs sum up to 201.25 [MU] (including interest on fixed ordering costs), fixed purchasing costs are 150 [MU] and variable purchasing cost are 9,982 [MU].

Some APS vendors provide a separate purchasing module for exploiting quantity discounts. This may be particularly appealing for commercial enterprises and for the procurement of MRO items in general. In the case that procurement decisions incur quantity discounts and resulting costs have a strong impact on the overall cost situation of a production unit, it may be advisable to declare respective items as "critical" and to include procurement decisions into the module Production Planning (assuming that corresponding cost functions can be modeled and solved there). If procurement decisions have to cover a longer planning horizon, one might even consider including these items at the Master Planning level.

In summary, the automation of the procurement process by means of an APS module can streamline the traditional, labor intensive tasks of procurement, especially in a B2B environment. Optimized procurement decisions can further reduce holding and total acquisition costs by exploiting quantity discounts and selecting suppliers in the best way possible.

References

Degraeve, Z., Roodhooft, F., & van Doveren, B. (2005). The use of total cost of ownership for strategic procurement: A company-wide management information system. *Journal of the Operational Research Society, 56*, 51–59.

Drexl, A., Fleischmann, B., Günther, H.-O., Stadtler, H., & Tempelmeier, H. (1994). Konzeptionelle Grundlagen kapazitätsorientierter PPS-Systeme. *Zeitschrift für betriebswirtschaftliche Forschung, 46*, 1022–1045.

Orlicky, J. (1975). *Material requirements planning*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Stadtler, H. (2007a). A general quantity discount and supplier selection mixed integer programming model. *OR Spectrum, 29*(4), 723–745.

Stadtler, H. (2007b). How important is it to get the lot size right? *Zeitschrift für Betriebswirtschaft, 77*, 407–416.

Tempelmeier, H. (2002). A simple heuristic for dynamic order sizing and supplier selection with time-varying demand. *Production and Operations Management, 11*(4), 499–515.

Tempelmeier, H. (2006). *Material-Logistik – Modelle und Algorithmen für die Produktionsplanung und -steuerung und das Supply Chain Management* (6th ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Tempelmeier, H., & Derstroff, M. (1996). A lagrangean heuristic for multi-item multi-level constrained lotsizing with setup times. *Management Science, 42*, 738–757.

Vollman, T., Berry, W., & Whybark, D. (1997). *Manufacturing planning and control systems* (4th ed.). New York: Irwin/McGraw-Hill.

Transport Planning for Procurement and Distribution

12

Bernhard Fleischmann, Herbert Kopfer, and Christopher Sürie

12.1 Planning Situations

12.1.1 Transport Systems

Transport processes are essential parts of the supply chain. They perform the flow of materials that connects an enterprise with its suppliers and with its customers. The integrated view of transport, production and inventory holding processes is characteristic of the modern SCM concept.

The appropriate structure of a transport system mainly depends on the size of the single shipments: Large shipments can go directly from the source to the destination in full transport units, e.g. as Full Truckload (FTL) or Full Containerload (FCL). Medium sized shipments are consolidated to FTL or FCL shipments in order to increase the efficiency of transportation. A consolidated set of compatible Less-Than Truckload (LTL) or Less-than Containerload (LCL) shipments constitute an aggregate FTL or FCL and will be fulfilled by a single truck or container, respectively on a single combined tour with several pickup and delivery locations. On this combined tour all shippers and receivers of the consolidated shipments are served without any transshipment. Small shipments have to be consolidated in a transport network, where a single shipment is transshipped once or several times

---

B. Fleischmann (✉)
Chair for Production and Supply Chain Management, University of Augsburg,
Universitätsstraße 16, 86135 Augsburg, Germany
e-mail: bernhard.fleischmann@wiwi.uni-augsburg.de

H. Kopfer
Chair of Logistics, University of Bremen, Wilhelm-Herbst-Straße 5, 28359 Bremen, Germany
e-mail: kopfer@uni-bremen.de

C. Sürie
SAP Deutschland AG & Co. KG, 69190 Walldorf, Germany
e-mail: c.suerie@sap.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__12, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2015

and the transport is broken at *transshipment points (TPs)*. A particularly effective consolidation of small shipments is achieved by a *logistics service provider (LSP)*, who can combine the transports from many senders in his network, which often has a hub-and-spoke structure.

The consolidation of transport flows decreases the transport cost. As the cost of a single trip of a certain vehicle on a certain route is nearly independent of the load, a high utilization of the loading capacity is advantageous. Moreover, the relative cost per loading capacity decreases with increasing size of the vehicles. But even with a strong consolidation of shipments to full loads, e.g. by an LSP, the smaller shipments cause relatively higher costs, because the consolidation requires detours to different loading places, additional stops and transshipments (see Fleischmann 1998, p. 65).

The following transport processes occur in a supply chain:

- The *procurement of materials and their transportation* from external suppliers or from an own remote factory to a production site
- The *distribution of products* from a factory to the customers.

Note that the transport of materials from factory to factory is part of the distribution function of the supplier as well as part of the procurement function of the receiver. The procurement system as well as the distribution system depend on the type of transported items:

- *Investment goods*, e.g. machines or equipment for industrial customers, are shipped only once or seldom on a certain transport link.
- *Materials for production* are also shipped to industrial customers, but regularly and frequently on the same path.
- *Consumer goods* are shipped to wholesalers or retailers, often in very small order sizes (with an average below 100 kg in some businesses), requiring a consolidation of the transports.

Transport planning is usually the responsibility of the supplier. But there are important exceptions, where the manufacturer has the power to control the transports from his suppliers, e.g. in the automotive industry. In this case, transport planning occurs on the procurement side as well. The transport of materials for production, as far as controlled by the distribution system of the supplier, is mostly done in direct shipments.

An LSP may consolidate the transport flows of several *"shippers"*, operating in separate supply chains, in his own network. Then he is responsible for planning how the transports are executed, i.e. by which vehicles along which routes. However, the decisions on the transport orders, i.e. the quantity, source and destination of every shipment, remain a task (of the APS) of the shipper. Usually, it is not practicable to include the flows of all other shippers of an LSP into the APS. However, the additional flows have an impact on the transport cost and should be taken into account implicitly by appropriate transport cost functions.

Distribution Systems

A typical distribution system of a *consumer goods* manufacturer comprises the flow of many products from several factories to a large number of customers (see

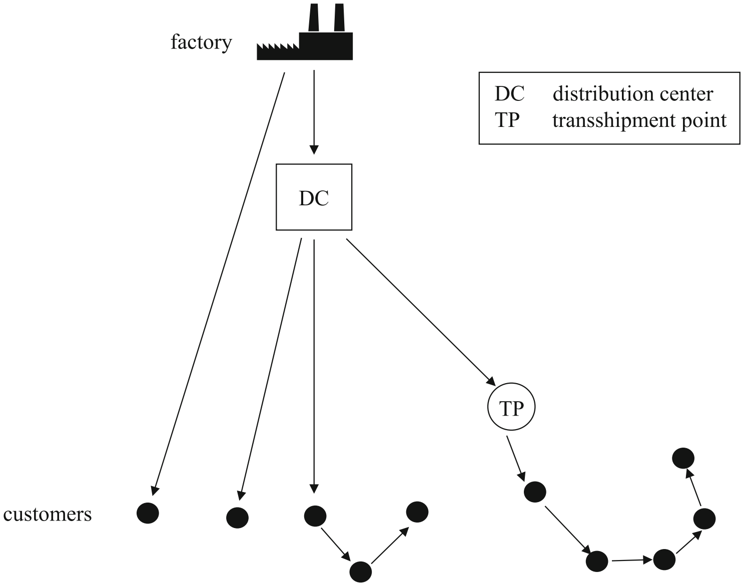


Fig. 12.1 Distribution paths

Fig. 12.1). The consolidated shipment of products to a distribution center (DC) followed by transshipment, deconsolidation and transport of the shipped products to their individual destinations is called pool distribution. Products made to stock are often shipped on forecast by pool distribution. The deliveries of the customer orders may use the following distribution paths:

Shipments may go *directly* from the factory or from a DC to the customer, with a single order. This simplest form of distribution is only efficient for large orders using up the vehicle. Smaller orders can be shipped jointly *in tours* starting from the factory or DC and calling at several customers. A stronger bundling of small shipments is achieved by a joint transport from the DC to a TP and delivery in short distance tours from there. Figure 12.1 illustrates the different distribution paths.

A beneficial concept for the supply of standard materials is the *vendor managed inventory* (VMI), where the supplier decides on time and quantity of the shipments to the customer but has to keep the stock in the customer's warehouse between agreed minimum and maximum levels. In this case, the customer's warehouse has the same function as a DC, so that the planning of VMI supply is similar to the DC replenishment.

Procurement Logistics Systems

If a manufacturer controls the transports of materials from his suppliers, he can use various logistics concepts, which differ in the structure of the transportation network and in the frequency of the shipments. They may occur in parallel for different classes of materials for the same receiving factory. *Cyclical procurement* in intervals of a few days up to weeks permits to bundle the transport flow into larger shipments, but generates cycle stock at the receiving factory. *JIT procurement* with at least daily shipments avoids the inbound material passing through the warehouse. Instead, it can be put on a buffer area for a short time. If the arrivals are even *synchronized with the production sequence*, the material can be put immediately to the production line where it is consumed. The latter case is called *synchronized procurement* or JIS (just in sequence) procurement.

The following transport concepts exist for procurement:

- *Direct transports* from the supplier are suitable for cyclical supply and, if the demand is sufficiently large, also for daily supply. Only if the distance is very short, direct transports may be used for synchronized procurement.
- A *regional LSP* collects the materials in tours from all suppliers in his defined area, consolidates them at a TP and ships them in full trucks to the receiving factory. This concept permits frequent supply, up to daily, even from remote suppliers with low volume. The trunk haulage can also be carried out by rail, if there are suitable connections.
- An *LSP warehouse* close to the receiving factory suits for synchronized procurement: The LSP is responsible for satisfying the short-term calls from the receiver by synchronized shipments. The suppliers have to keep the stock in the warehouse between agreed minimum and maximum levels by appropriate shipments, like in the VMI concept.

Returned empties cause a non-negligible overhead and costs, whose significance is depending on the type of packaging, containers or pallets used for transport. In order to reduce these costs, the return of empties should be consolidated and integrated into the flow of products. In case that the transport of products is outsourced to an LSP, it is favorable to outsource the responsibility and management of empties to the LSP, too.

12.1.2 Interfaces to Other APS Modules

Transport Planning comprises a set of various functions which overlap with other APS modules. It extends from the mid-term aggregate planning of transport processes, which is part of Master Planning, down to the shortest-term planning level: Planning deliveries of known customer orders is the last step of Demand Fulfillment and the release of orders for delivery from stock is part of the ATP function (see Chap. 9).

Transport Planning for Procurement and Distribution is linked to the other modules by the following data flows:

Strategic Network Design (see Chap. 6) provides the structure of the transport network, i.e.

- The locations of factories, suppliers, DCs and TPs
- The transport modes and potential paths
- The allocation of suppliers and customers to areas and of areas to factories, DCs, TPs
- The use of LSPs.

Master Planning (see Chap. 8) determines

- Aggregate quantities to be shipped on every transport link
- The increase and decrease of seasonal stocks at the factory warehouses and the DCs.

The first point can also be considered as part of mid-term transportation planning. The aggregate transport quantities should not serve as strict instructions to the short-term transport planning in order to keep the latter flexible. The main purpose of that quantity calculation is to provide appropriate resources and capacities and to take the duration of the various transport links into account. However, in case of multiple sourcing — e.g. if a material can be ordered from several suppliers or if a product is produced in several factories or if a customer can be supplied from several DCs — the aggregate quantities reflect the global view of Master Planning. Then they represent important guidelines for short-term transportation which could be used, for instance, as fractions of the demand sourced from different locations.

Also *Demand Planning* (see Chap. 7) provides essential data for transport planning:

- Customer orders to be delivered
- Forecast of demand at the DCs
- Safety stocks at the DCs.

The relationship with *Production Scheduling* (see Chap. 10) is twofold: On the one hand, Transport Planning may determine net requirements, timed at the planned departure of shipments from the factory, as input to Production Scheduling. On the other hand, the latter module provides planned and released production orders as input to Transport Planning for the very short term decisions on the release of shipments.

12.1.3 Planning Tasks and Information Management

As mentioned before, Transport Planning for Procurement and Distribution comprises mid-term and short-term decisions.

Mid-Term Planning Tasks

The *frequency* of regular transports on the same relation is a key cost factor. It is a mid-term decision variable for the DC replenishment on the distribution side and for the supply of materials on the procurement side. The objective is to optimize the trade-off between transport cost and inventory (see Sect. 12.2.1). The resulting frequencies set target values for the short-term decisions on shipment quantities. Moreover, they determine the necessary transport lot-sizing inventory (see Sect. 2.4), which should be a component of the minimum stock level in Master Planning as well as in Production Planning and Scheduling.

The selection of *distribution paths* for the delivery of customer orders usually follows general *rules* fixed by mid-term decisions. They are mostly based on limits for the order size, e.g. orders up to 30 kg by a parcel service, up to 1,000 kg from DC via a TP, up to 3,000 kg directly from DC and larger orders directly from factory.

On the procurement side, the *assignment of material items to the supply concepts* — direct, via regional TP or via LSP warehouse — also has to be fixed on a mid-term basis. As explained in the previous section, these decisions are closely related with the supply frequencies.

The determination of *aggregate transport quantities* on every transport link in the supply chain is an essential mid-term transportation planning task. But this task should be integrated in the Master Planning in order to guarantee a close coordination of the production and transportation flows in the supply chain. Transportation tasks can be executed on own account or by assigning them to LSPs. Outsourcing strategies must be laid down as guidelines for the actual make or buy decisions which will have to be made in short term transportation planning. These strategies must be consistent with the availability of vehicles of an own fleet and with the disposability of LSPs being under contract as carriers. With all carriers and forwarders which are frequently assigned to transportation tasks, contracts specifying the quantity and quality of outsourced transportation services as well as the agreed freight tariffs are fixed in mid-term planning.

The rules for assigning transportation tasks to carriers and the individual tariffs of single carriers may be fixed in a bargaining process with the involved LSPs. But this may alternatively be a result of a combinatorial procurement auction for transport contracts (see Sheffi 2004; Buer and Kopfer 2014), which is based on the bids of carriers for transportation lanes or transports to specific delivery areas.

Short-Term Planning Tasks

Short term transport planning is usually carried out daily with a horizon of 1 day or a few days. This task, which is part of the *Deployment function* (see Sect. 12.2.2), consists of the following decisions:

The *quantities to be shipped* within the current horizon have to be determined, in the distribution system and in the procurement system. These quantities can be influenced by the mid-term decisions on shipment frequencies and aggregate quantities.

The task of *shipment consolidation* is to adjust the sum of the shipment quantities of the various items on the same transport link to FTLs. It is relevant for DC replenishment and the supply of materials.

For the *deliveries to customers*, the quantity is fixed by the customer order, but there may be several *sources* from where to deliver and several *distribution paths*. These choices normally follow the guidelines set by the Master Planning quantities and by the general rules on the distribution paths.

The deployment function for products made to stock is closely related to the *ATP function* (see Chap. 9): Customers expect orders to be delivered from stock within a short agreed lead-time, mostly between 24 and 72 h, necessary for order picking, loading and transportation. If the incoming orders of the current day in total exceed the available stock of a certain item, the orders cannot be released according to the standard rules. Instead, some of the following measures have to be decided on:

- Shipping some orders from an alternative source
- Substituting the item by an available product, if the customer accepts it

- Reducing the quantities for DC replenishment which are in competition with the customer orders to be shipped from factory
- Reducing some customer orders in size, delaying or canceling them: This most undesired decision is usually not completely avoidable. Even if it is only necessary for a very small percentage of all orders, the concerned orders must be selected carefully.

If several LSPs are involved in fulfilling the transportation tasks it has to be decided which task will be assigned to which carrier. Due to the agreements made in the mid-term planning, the selection of a carrier may be uniquely determined by the characteristics of the task. Otherwise, this selection process is performed considering cost minimization aspects. The payment of freight charges is calculated by applying the tariffs which have been specified and agreed on during mid-term planning. Most tariffs take into account the compatibility of different shipments and thus offer the possibility of reducing the freight charge by an optimization process which is based on bundling compatible shipments to complex orders. This refers to assembling several LTL shipments to an FTL shipment as well as combining several FTL shipments to a chain of consecutive transportation tasks.

For all own vehicles used for transport fulfillment and in case that the payment to carriers is based on the characteristics of the outsourced tours, the tasks of operational transportation planning has to be done. This refers to the construction, routing and scheduling of the following tours:

- Short distance tours for delivering small orders from a TP in smaller vans
- The trunk haulage from the factory to the DCs, from DCs to TPs and the direct delivery tours from a factory or a DC to customers.

Information Management

Information Management is based on the above planning tasks. It provides and integrates all relevant data which are necessary for the control and fulfillment of the previously planned transportation tasks as well as all data which is needed for the tasks following the factual transportation fulfillment. For shipments on the procurement side, a notification for the supplier should be automatically generated. Concurrently, a transportation order for a LSP should be created and a corresponding announcement for the incoming goods department should be induced. The potential bundling of the created transportation order with other (more or less compatible) transportation orders as well as the choice of the LSP depend on the rules which have been fixed in mid-term planning and on the decision made in short-term planning. A well-functioning Information Management enables to guarantee the consistency of the information which has been sent to the suppliers, the LSP and the incoming goods department. Additionally, all returning information must be checked and reconciled, e.g., the advance shipping notification made by the supplier, the carriage documents, the information on the handling of empties, and the acknowledgment of receipt made by the incoming goods department of the factory. After successful electronic reconsolidation, the freight can be calculated according to the specifications of mid-term planning and the decisions during short term planning. Finally, a credit advice for the carrier can be generated automatically.

For transportation processes on the distribution side, similar support for the generation of documents and the integration of information is needed. Based on the short-time planning for shipments, the following information and documents are generated: the notifications of dispatch which are sent to receivers, the bordereaux (loading lists) and loading plans for the vehicles, accompanying documents as e.g. freight documents and tour schedules, as well as prepared documents for the proof of delivery. After the reconsolidation of all outgoing and returning documents, the freight calculation and payment to the LSP can be initiated.

12.2 Planning Approaches

12.2.1 Transport and Inventory

Transport planning has a strong impact on the inventory in the supply chain. It directly creates transport lot-sizing stock and transit stock and influences the necessary safety stock. The lot-sizing stock results from the decision on the transport frequencies. Unfortunately, the present APS do not (yet) support the optimization of mid-term transport planning with regard to inventory. Nevertheless, this section presents some generic planning models, since the resulting frequencies and inventories are also important data for other APS modules. When setting these data, the following relationships should be taken into account. A review of combined transportation and inventory planning is given by Bertazzi and Speranza (2000).

Single Link, Single Product

The simplest case is a transportation process linking a production process of a certain product at location A with a consumption process at location B. Both production and demand are continuous with a steady rate. In this case, the optimal transportation scheme consists in regular shipments of the same quantity. Figure 12.2 depicts the cumulative curves of production, departure from A, arrival in B and consumption. The vertical distances between these curves represent the development of the stock in A, in transit and in B. With the notations

p	production rate (units per day)
$d = p$	demand rate
Q	maximum load per shipment
L	transport lead-time
t	cycle time
$q = d \cdot t$	shipment quantity
h	inventory holding cost (per unit and day)
$T(q)$	cost of a shipment of quantity $q \leq Q$

the following relationships are obvious: The average transit stock is $L \cdot d$. As it does not depend on the transport schedule, it can be neglected in transport planning, as

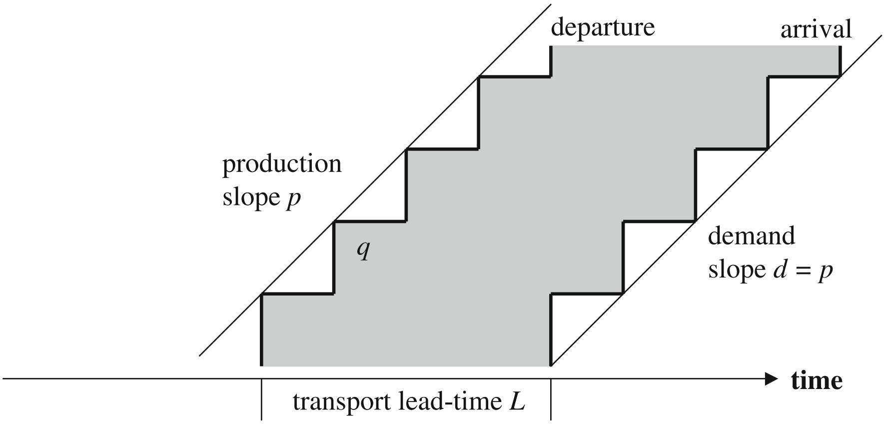


Fig. 12.2 Cumulative production, departure, arrival and demand

long as the transportation time is fixed. Therefore, $L = 0$ can be assumed in the following. The total cost per day due to transportation is

$$hq + T(q)d/q. \tag{12.1}$$

As the transport cost usually shows economies of scale, i.e. $T(q)/q$ is decreasing with increasing q, there is a tradeoff between inventory and transport cost which can be optimized by the choice of q. If $T(q) = F$ is fixed for $0 < q \leq Q$, i.e. the shipment is exclusive for the quantity q, the optimal q is obtained from the usual EOQ formula (see Silver et al. 1998, Chap. 5.2) with two modifications: The factor $\frac{1}{2}$ of the holding cost h is missing and q must not exceed Q, i.e.

$$q^* = min(Q, \sqrt{Fd/h}). \tag{12.2}$$

However, in most cases, the transportation costs are dominant, so that the transport in full loads $q^* = Q$ is optimal.

It follows from Fig. 12.2 that Production Planning must consider the demand in B shifted by the time $L + q^*/d$ or, equivalently, guarantee a minimum stock of $Ld + q^*$.

Single Link, Several Products

Now, several products i are produced in A and consumed in B, each with a steady rate d_i and holding cost h_i. If the transport cost F per shipment is fixed again, it is optimal to ship always all products together, i.e. with a common cycle time t and quantities $q_i = d_i t$ (see Fleischmann 2000). The optimal cycle time is

$$t^* = min(Q/\sum_i d_i, \sqrt{F/\sum_i h_i d_i}). \tag{12.3}$$

Even if demand fluctuates, it is optimal, at a certain shipment, to ship all products with positive net demand in the following cycle. Rules for determining shipment quantities in this case are discussed in Sect. 12.2.2.

General Case

The above assumption of steady demand may be realistic in case of consumer goods, whereas the consumption of materials in production and the output from production mostly take place in lots. In this case, it has to be decided whether the production lots and the transport lots should be synchronized or scheduled independently (see Hall 1996). Synchronization of transports and the consumption of materials is the basic idea of JIT procurement. Synchronization of production and distribution is the rule in a make-to-order or assemble-to-order situation. Production to stock is by its nature not synchronized with the shipments of customer orders.

But shipments from a factory to remote DCs or to VMI customers can be synchronized with production to stock. However, in case of many items produced cyclically on common lines and distributed to several destinations, the synchronization may become very difficult or impractical.

Transportation and Safety Stocks

In a distribution system for products made to stock, the safety stocks that are necessary for guaranteeing a certain service level, depend on the strategy of the transports between the factory and the DCs (see Silver et al. 1998, Chap. 12.4): In a strong *push system* any production lot is distributed immediately to the DCs. A modification consists in retaining some central safety stock at the factory warehouse which is distributed in case of imminent stock-out at some DC. In a *pull system*, transports are triggered by the local stock at every DC, when it reaches a defined reorder point. In a push system, global information on the demand and stock situation at every DC is required for the central control. But also in a pull system, global information can improve the central allocation of stock in case of a bottleneck. In an APS, such global information should be available for the whole supply chain.

The push system corresponds to the case of synchronized production and distribution and thus requires less cycle stock, but in general higher total safety stock or more cross-shipments between the DCs. The local safety stock at a DC has to cover the local demand uncertainty during the transport lead-time, the total system safety stock has to cover the total demand uncertainty during the production lead-time and production cycle time. In a consumer goods distribution system, the transport cycle time is usually very short, as a DC is usually replenished daily, but the production cycle time may last weeks to months, if many products share a production line. Therefore, the system safety stock calculation should be based on a periodic review model with the review period equal to the production cycle.

12.2.2 Deployment

The general task of deployment is to match the short-term demand with the available and expected stock for the next day or few days. As the *source locations* (factories, suppliers), where stock is available, are in general different from the demand locations (DCs, customers), it has to be decided how much to ship from which source location to which demand location. In the case of a single product, this is a simple network flow problem. In the case of several products and restricted transport capacity, it becomes a special LP problem, which is in fact an extract from the Master Planning LP for the entire supply chain (see Chap. 8), restricted to transport processes and to a shorter horizon. It is therefore easy to integrate into an APS as it is offered by most APS vendors.

Delivering Known Customer Orders

In a make-to-order situation, the completion of the orders in due time is the responsibility of production planning and scheduling. Deployment can only deal with completed orders ready for delivery, and the shipment size is fixed by the customer order.

In a make-to-stock situation, many customer orders may compete for the same stock. If the stock at every source is sufficient for the normal allocation of orders, again, all order quantities can be released for delivery.

Otherwise, ATP decisions about measures against shortage have to be taken as explained in Sect. 12.1.3. If there are several sources with sufficient stock in total, reallocations can be made, either by transshipments from source to source or by directly reallocating certain customer orders from their normal source to an exceptional one. The latter measure is both faster and cheaper, in particular if customers are selected near the border between the delivery areas of the concerned sources. While this is difficult in conventional distribution systems with local control within the areas, it is no problem in an APS with global information and central control of deployment.

The optimal combination of the measures against shortage for all customers competing for the stock of a certain product can be determined with the above network flow model, with the following interpretation (see Fleischmann and Meyr 2003):

- Every customer j is modeled as a demand location.
- Besides real locations with available stock, the source "locations" i include other potential measures, in particular a "source" with unlimited availability that stands for reducing or canceling orders.
- The cost c_{ij} includes penalties for delaying, reducing or canceling a customer order, depending on the priority of the customer.

Replenishment of DCs and Procurement

Shipment quantities for replenishment and procurement are not determined by customer orders but have to be derived from Demand Planning. Moreover, the calculation requires the prior specification of a certain *transport cycle time* (or of the transport frequency) for every relation, as explained in Sect. 12.2.1. The *net demand* for a shipment is then

$$\begin{array}{lll} d^N & = & \text{demand forecast at the destination} \\ & & \text{during the following transport cycle and the transport lead-time} \\ & + & \text{safety stock for the destination} \\ & ./. & \text{available stock at the destination.} \end{array}$$

In a *pull system* the shipment quantity is set equal to d^N, if there is sufficient stock at the source *for all destinations*. The quantities may be modified by a shipment consolidation procedure, as explained below. If the stock at the source is not sufficient, it is allocated to the destinations using a *"Fair Shares" rule* which takes into account the demand and stock situation of every destination and therefore requires global information and central control (see Silver et al. 1998, Chap. 12.4.3). The basic idea of fair shares is to balance the stock at various demand locations so that the expected service level until the arrival of a new supply at the source (e.g. by a production lot) is equal at all locations. If the local stocks are included into the allocation procedure, it may result that, for some destination, the allocation is lower than the available stock, indicating that stock has to be transferred by lateral transshipments.

Distribution Requirements Planning (DRP) (see Silver et al. 1998, Chap. 15.6) can be used to propagate the net demand upstream in a network, if every node is supplied by a fixed single source. It is an extension of the MRP demand calculation to the distribution network and permits, like MRP, to consider time-phased dynamic demands and lead times from node to node.

In a *push distribution*, every supply arriving in the source is immediately distributed to the destinations according to fair shares. In case of short transport lead-times and long supply cycles for the source, it is advantageous to retain some central safety stock at the source which is distributed later according to updated fair shares.

In the case of shortage, the determination of the DC replenishment quantities can also be integrated in the network flow model, together with the deliveries of customer orders, where a DC appears as demand location with the above net demand.

Shipment Consolidation

The previous calculations of shipment quantities are carried out separately for every product. They do not consider joint shipments of many products in appropriate transport units (e.g. whole pallets). This is the task of shipment consolidation which starts from those shipment quantities and fits them to FTL or FCL sizes. As far as the quantities represent net demand, they can only be increased, but in general, the demand calculation can specify minimum quantities below the proposed quantities. An upper bound is given by the stock which is ready for shipment. Shipment consolidation comprises the following steps:

- Round up or down the shipment quantity of every product to whole transport units (e.g. pallets)
- Adjust the size of the joint shipment, i.e. the sum of the single product quantities, to a full vehicle capacity, where the vehicle is eventually selected from a given fleet.

Both steps have to consider the minimum quantities and the available stock, the second step should try, within these bounds, to balance the percentages of increase (or decrease) over the products.

Vehicle Scheduling

As explained in the previous section, vehicle scheduling is mostly the task of an LSP and has only a limited importance for advanced planning. Therefore, and in view of the huge body of literature on vehicle scheduling, this subject is not dealt with here. Instead, the reader is referred to the survey by Cordeau et al. (2006).

12.2.3 APS Modules

There is no standard structure of the APS modules for Transport Planning. In any APS, these tasks are covered by several modules or by multi-functional modules, but with different allocations within the SCP-matrix. In the following, essential features of these modules are explained regarding the planning tasks of Sect. 12.1.3. This Section is based on information from JDA Software Group Inc. (2014), Oracle (2014) and SAP (2014).

Mid-Term Planning

The optimization of *transport frequencies* (see Sect. 12.2.1) w. r. t. transport and inventory costs is not supported. The same is true for establishing *rules on the use of distribution paths* and for *assigning materials to supply concepts*. However, the effect of such tactical decisions can be studied by means of analytical modules.

The integration of *Distribution Planning* in the Master Planning function is standard in all APS. Thus, using the LP solver or heuristic algorithms of Master Planning, aggregate quantities can be determined for every transport link in the supply network.

Short-Term Planning

For the short-term *deployment*, the APS provide the same modules as for Distribution Planning, used with a shorter horizon and more detailed demand information. Alternatively, there are special heuristics for calculating deployment quantities following a push or pull strategy, but restricted to the case, where every order has a specified single source. They work in two steps: First, a DRP calculation is performed upstream, starting from the net demand at the demand locations. If the available stock is not sufficient at some location, then fair share rules are applied downstream in a second step. The fair share rules are rather simple, e.g. the inventory is distributed proportionally to the demand or such that the same proportion of the target stock level at every location results. They do not consider service levels. The DRP calculation may differentiate several types of demand: customer orders, forecasts, safety stock replenishment and pre-built stock. Then, the allocation of tight inventory proceeds in this order and fair shares are only applied within one type of demand. Some APS include a more sophisticated allocation algorithm for insufficient inventory that runs after the normal deployment algorithm (LP or heuristics) and allocates the resulting inventory to the customer orders and forecast. It may consider multiple sources and track the effects of reallocations along the supply network.

Shipment consolidation is supported in all APS of the above vendors by particular modules or submodules running after the deployment. For every shipment they perform

- Rounding procedures to multiples of transport units for single items
- Building shipments containing several items.

At least the first step considers the effects of quantity changes on the planned inventories. Sometimes the two functions are split: The first one runs after the Deployment, the second one is done by a separate shipment consolidation module.

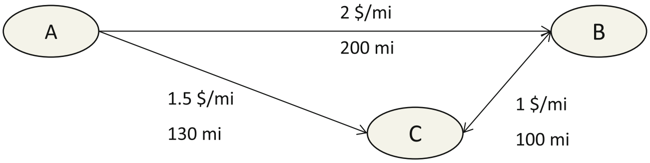
All APS of above vendors perform a detailed planning of the single shipments and aim at an efficient consolidation of the shipments and an optimal use of capacities. They can be used to plan for an own fleet as well as for subcontracting scenarios. From planning perspective they adopt primarily the view of an LSP:

- Input data are shipments (customer orders) with given origin and destination, quantities and (requested) dates/times.
- The paths of shipments through consolidation points (TPs and hubs) and the routes of the vehicles are planned.
- The use of various carriers is controlled.
- Various transport tariffs of the carriers and for billing the customers can be considered.

In contrast, a manufacturer deals with customer orders that specify only quantity and destination, but leave the source location open. For DC replenishment shipments, even the quantity is open. These decisions are typically not in scope of the shipment consolidation modules.

As planning for shipment consolidation comes very close to physical execution of transports, optimization based on real (carrier) costs is aimed for. While real freight rates are usually composed of many items (e.g. base fees, handling fees, fuel surcharges, tolls) based on a multitude of dimensions (e.g. distance based, weight based, volume based, stop based) considering real costs in vehicle scheduling and routing algorithms is not an option, but surrogate costs are used here. However, the final carrier selection decision can be based on real freight rates.

Vehicle scheduling and routing algorithms in standard APS have reached a state to obtain good solutions for most practical transportation planning scenarios. They even cater for different flavors of cost structures e.g. the calculation methods of distance based cost for road transports. While in the North American market this cost is usually calculated destination based, in most other parts of the world, it is calculated route based (see Fig. 12.3).



Destination based cost:

Transport Order (A➔B➔C) = Distance (A➔B➔C) * Cost (A➔C) = 300 * 1.5 = 450 $

Transport Order (A➔C➔B) = Distance (A➔C➔B) * Cost (A➔B) = 230 * 2 = 460 $

Route based cost:

Transport Order (A➔B➔C) = Distance (A➔B) * Cost (A➔B) + Distance (B➔C) * Cost (B➔C) = 200 * 2 + 100 * 1 = 500 $

Transport Order (A➔C➔B) = Distance (A➔C) * Cost (A➔C) + Distance (C➔B) * Cost (C➔B) = 130 * 1.5 + 100 * 1 = 295 $

Fig. 12.3 Destination based vs. route based distance cost calculation

Information Management

Several aspects of Information Management in the area of transportation can be in scope of APS modules. The first one is related to logistics information and deals with either the provisioning of data to vendors (inbound transportation planning) or customers (outbound transportation planning). Provided data ranges from advance shipping notification to goods receipt or proof of delivery documents. While this type of information deals with the goods itself, the second aspect is more related to the transport and deals with the information that is exchanged between shippers and LSPs. Subcontracting transport orders to carriers and their confirmation are usually exchanged electronically. Even auctioning mechanisms (tender to several carriers) are offered by APS or marketplaces like Transporeon can be integrated.

Another aspect of Information Management is the integration of financial flows. With transportation management software being able to even optimize carrier selection based on real freight rates, the calculated numbers based on midterm negotiated tariffs, can be used to substantially gain efficiency in the freight accounting processes. With accurate logistical information being available, freight costs are calculated directly and self-billing schemes allow to send carriers a credit note for their services.

References

Bertazzi, L., & Speranza, M. (2000). Models and algorithms for the minimization of inventory and transportation costs: A survey. In M. Speranza & P. Stähly (Eds.), *New trends in distribution logistics*. *Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 480, pp. 137–157). Berlin/Heidelberg/New York: Springer.

Buer, T., & Kopfer, H. (2014). A pareto-metaheuristic for a bi-objective winner determination problem in a combinatorial reverse auction. *Computers and Operations Research, 41*, 208–220.

Cordeau, J., Laporte, G., Savelsbergh, M., & Vigo, D. (2006). Vehicle routing. In C. Barnhart & G. Laporte (Eds.), *Transportation*. *Handbooks in Operations Research and Management Science* (Vol. 14, pp. 367–428). Amsterdam: North-Holland.

Fleischmann, B. (1998). Design of freight traffic networks. In B. Fleischmann, J. V. Nunen, M. Speranza, & P. Stähly (Eds.), *Advances in distribution logistics*. *Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 460, pp. 55–81). Berlin/Heidelberg/New York: Springer.

Fleischmann, B. (2000). Transport and inventory planning with discrete shipment times. In M. Speranza & P. Stähly (Eds.), *New trends in distribution logistics*. *Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 480, pp. 159–178). Berlin/Heidelberg/New York: Springer.

Fleischmann, B., & Meyr, H. (2003). Customer orientation in advanced planning systems. In H. Dyckhoff, R. Lackes, & J. Reese (Eds.), *Supply chain management and reverse logistics* (pp. 297–321). Berlin/New York: Springer/Heidelberg.

Hall, R. (1996). On the integration of production and distribution: Economic order and production quantity implications. *Transportation Research B, 30*(5), 387–403.

JDA Software Group Inc. (2014). Homepage, http://www.jda.com, accessed 28 Feb. 2014.

Oracle (2014). Homepage, http://www.oracle.com, accessed 28 Feb. 2014.

SAP (2014). Homepage, http://www.sap.com, accessed 28 Feb. 2014.

Sheffi, Y. (2004). Combinatorial auctions in the procurement of transportation services. *Interfaces, 34*(4), 245–252.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Coordination and Integration

13

Boris Reuter and Jens Rohde

A strong *coordination* (i.e. the configuration of data flows and the division of planning tasks to modules) of APS modules is a prerequisite to achieve consistent plans for the different planning levels and for each entity of the supply chain. The same data should be used for each de-centralized planning task and decision. APS can be seen as “add-ons” to existing ERP systems with the focus on planning tasks and not on transactional tasks. In most cases an ERP system will be a kind of “leading system” where the main transactional data are kept and maintained. The data basis of APS is incrementally updated and major changes on master data are made in the ERP system. This task will be called *integration* of APS with ERP systems.

The coordination between the different planning modules described in Part II of this book is very important to derive dovetailed detailed plans for each supply chain entity. Section 13.1 will show which guidelines are given, which data are shared and how feedback is organized. Furthermore, one can see which modules are normally used centrally and de-centrally, respectively.

As we have already seen in Chap. 5, some decisions and tasks are left to the ERP system. These tasks and data which are used by APS but are kept in ERP systems are described in Sect. 13.2. The definition of the interface between ERP and APS has to determine which ERP data are used in APS and which data are returned. Moreover, *Data Warehouses* which keep important historical data and are mainly used by Demand Planning build interfaces to APS (see Chap. 7) as well as *business planning* scenarios that—in contrast to most APS—valuate the

---

B. Reuter
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Willy-Brandt-Platz 5,
68161 Mannheim, Germany
e-mail: boris.reuter@de.ey.com

J. Rohde (✉)
SAP AG, Dietmar-Hopp-Allee 16, 69190 Walldorf, Germany
e-mail: jens.rohde@sap.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_13,

output of planning results and set targets for APS and ERP systems. Though, recent research bridges the gap between analytical systems, like Data Warehouses, the transactional ERP systems and planning systems by performing all tasks on a single database with powerful *in-memory computing* technology (Plattner 2013) practice still has to deal with the integration of these different systems and the so-called ETL (Extract-Transform-Load) processes as described in this section. Besides on-premise analytical and transactional systems more and more cloud services need to be integrated as valuable data input for the planning tasks.

A detailed knowledge of the status of supply chain operations and the occurrence of events within the supply chain is getting more and more important. Thus, the concept of Supply Chain Event Management to effectively manage the different categories of events occurring in a supply chain is discussed in Sect. 13.3.

Modules of APS that support collaboration of supply chain entities as well as external customers and suppliers are part of Chap. 14 and will not be discussed in this chapter.

13.1 Coordination of APS Modules

A general structure for coordination of the different modules cannot be suggested. There are several architectures that range between individual planning modules, which can be used as stand alone systems, and fully integrated planning systems. A fully integrated system regularly has the advantage of an identical look-and-feel for all modules and accessibility to all modules by a single user interface. Furthermore, a single database provides data needed by every module and avoids redundancies and inconsistencies in the planning data caused by multiple databases. Different modules can interact via sending messages and exchanging data directly. In contrast, individual modules mostly do not have an identical look-and-feel and regularly no common data basis. An advantage of this architecture is that modules can easily be combined and chosen (if not all modules are needed) for a specific line of business. Most APS providers with such architectures provide special integration modules that enable controlled data and information exchange within the system (see also Chap. 18). Furthermore, an Alert Monitor is often responsible for the handling of alert situations from different APS modules in one central module.

The following paragraphs describe which guidelines are given and how feedback is organized to generate the different plans for a supply chain as a whole. Figure 13.1 gives a general view of the main interactions. The data flows are exemplified, as they can be different from one supply chain to another (see Chaps. 3 and 4). The main feedback is derived by periodic updates of plans while considering current data. Chapters 6–12 illustrate the interactions between APS modules in more detail.

Strategic Network Design. Strategic Network Design determines the configuration of the supply chain. This configuration consists mainly of locations for each supply chain entity and possible distribution channels. Long-term Demand Planning gives input about trends in future demand. Simulated master plans can provide

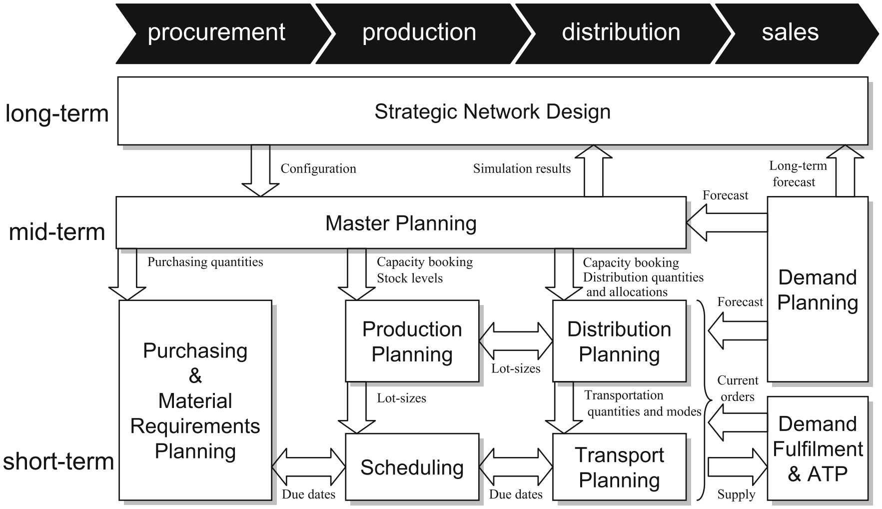


Fig. 13.1 Coordination and data flows of APS modules

useful hints for capacity enhancements. However, the strategic goals of a supply chain (i.e. market position, expanding into new regions and markets, etc.) specify the framework for this module.

Demand Planning. Demand Planning provides demand data for mid-term Master Planning as well as for short-term Production and Distribution Planning. The forecast for end products of a supply chain is input for Master Planning. The short-term planning modules use current, more accurate short-term forecasts from Demand Planning. Furthermore, de-centralized Demand Planning modules provide demand data for products not planned in Master Planning (e.g. non-critical components).

Master Planning. Master Planning determines a production, distribution and purchasing plan for the supply chain as a whole with given demand from Demand Planning on an aggregated level. Therefore, this task should be done centrally. The results provide purchasing guidelines for the Purchasing and Material Requirements Planning—like purchasing quantities from external suppliers, production guidelines for the de-central Production Planning and Scheduling—like capacity booking for potential bottlenecks and stock levels at the end of each period and distribution guidelines—like distribution channel chosen, and distribution quantities for de-central Distribution and Transport Planning. Feedback from short-term modules is derived by current stock levels, updated forecasts and current capacity usage. The average realization of given guidelines from short-term modules should be used for model adjustment in Master Planning.

Demand Fulfillment and ATP. For Demand Fulfillment and ATP demand data from Demand Planning, production quantities for disaggregated products and intermediates, due dates from Production Planning and Scheduling, distribution plans and detailed vehicle routes from Distribution and Transport Planning and purchasing due dates as well as selected suppliers from Purchasing and Material Requirements Planning are used. Furthermore, current inventory levels at each production and distribution stage are needed as input. To be able to influence production and distribution plans, unused capacity bookings have to be known, too.

Production Planning and Scheduling. The main guidelines from Master Planning are capacity bookings and stock levels for each period for the de-central units. Production Planning and Scheduling requires detailed, disaggregated information. Furthermore, current (short-term) forecasts and availability of production resources update the guidelines from Master Planning. Lot-sizes and due dates from this module are exchanged with Distribution and Transport Planning to coordinate production and transportation lot-sizes as well as with Purchasing and Material Requirements Planning to coordinate purchasing lot-sizes and due dates in a more detailed way than it is done by Master Planning.

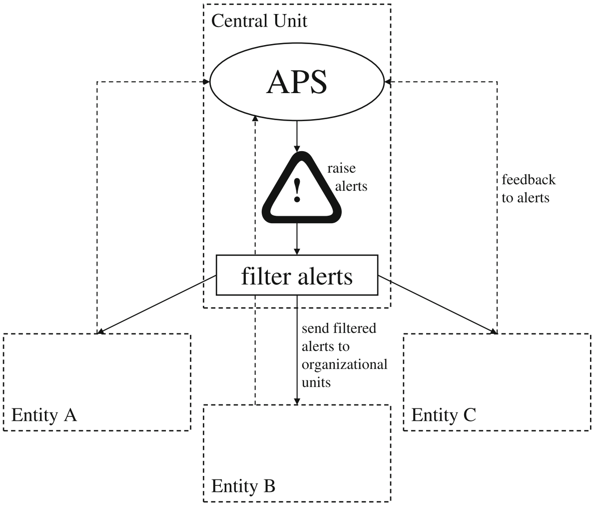
Purchasing and Material Requirements Planning. Purchasing quantities derived from Master Planning provide valuable input for mid-term supplier contracts and supplier selection. Based on these quantities discounts can be negotiated. Considering short-term production due-dates and lot-sizes as well as mid-term contracts for critical components feasible purchasing plans are obtained. Purchasing plans have to be aligned with production schedules to secure an adequate and timely supply of materials.

Distribution and Transport Planning. The coordination of Distribution and Transport Planning is similar to Production Planning and Scheduling. The short-term coordination by lot-sizes and due dates enables accurate production-distribution plans. The actual production quantities provide main input for the transport plans. Furthermore, time windows from customer orders are additional constraints for building and routing vehicle loads.

Alert Monitor. The alert monitor depicts the concept of *management-by-exception*. Management-by-exception is a technique to control guidelines. It differentiates between *normal cases* and *exceptional cases*. Here, the decision whether a situation is an exceptional case or not is delegated to the APS. The prerequisites for this concept are detailed information about tolerances for normal cases, exact definitions for reporting and delegation of decisions (along the lines of e.g. Silver et al. 1998 and Ulrich and Fluri 1995).

The APS raises alerts if problems or infeasibilities occur (see Fig. 13.2). To pass the right alerts to the right organizational units within a supply chain, it is necessary

Fig. 13.2 Alert monitor



to filter these alerts first. Afterwards, filtered alerts are sent to the responsible organizational unit of a supply chain entity. Specifying these responsibilities is part of an implementation project (see Chap. 17). Finally, these alerts have to be sent physically, e.g. by e-mail or an Internet based application.

The responsible units react on alerts by generating new plans, moving orders, using reserved teams, etc. The new or adjusted plans are then sent back to the APS. The APS has to process the changes made and propagate them to each unit affected by the changes.

13.2 Integration of APS

To use an APS effectively, it has to be integrated in an existing IT infrastructure (see Fig. 13.3). The main interactions exist between APS and *online transaction processing* (OLTP) systems, e.g. ERP and legacy systems. Another important system—especially for the demand planning task—is a *Data Warehouse* (DW). This "warehouse" stores major historical data of a business and supply chain, respectively. The next subsection will illustrate the integration of APS with OLTP systems. Afterwards, the integration with Data Warehouses and Business Planning (BP) to achieve a valuation of planning results is described. The integration of OLTP and Data Warehouses will not be subject of this book.

New middleware technology, subsumed as *Enterprise Application Integration* systems, provides a platform for integration of various tools and databases. The last subsection of this chapter will give a brief insight.

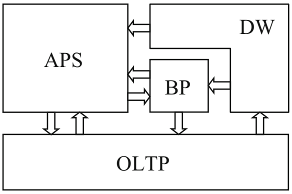


Fig. 13.3 APS integration

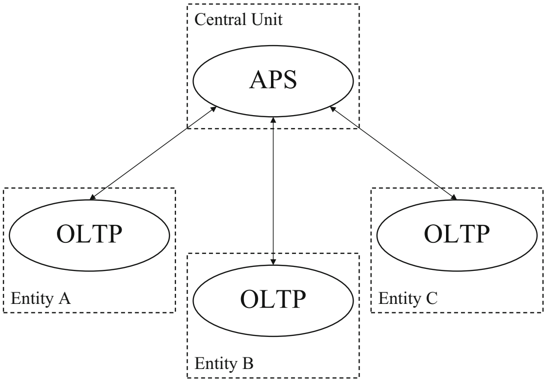


Fig. 13.4 Integration of several OLTP systems

13.2.1 Integration with OLTP

An APS does not replace an existing ERP or legacy system. On the contrary, APS extend them by additional planning functionality. Transactional data are kept and maintained in the OLTP system. An APS is only responsible for its specific data, more exactly, all data that are needed but are not part of the OLTP system's data basis.

As Fig. 13.4 shows, an APS regularly communicates with several OLTP systems of different supply chain entities. Furthermore, planning tasks like BOM explosion for non-critical materials and ordering of materials are mostly left to ERP systems (see Chaps. 4 and 5). The *integration model* defines which objects are exchanged, where they come from and which planning tasks are performed on which system. The *data exchange model* specifies how the flow of data and information between the systems is organized.

Most APS provide a *macro-language* to define these models and enable an automatic exchange of data. While OLTP systems are regularly older systems, the adjustment has to be done by APS. That is, an APS has to be able to match data items from the OLTP system to its implicit structure and to handle different import and export formats, because it is mostly not possible to do all adjustments needed on the OLTP system. Also, it must be possible to maintain specific data like penalty costs and aggregation rules (see Sect. 13.2.3 and Chap. 8) within the APS.

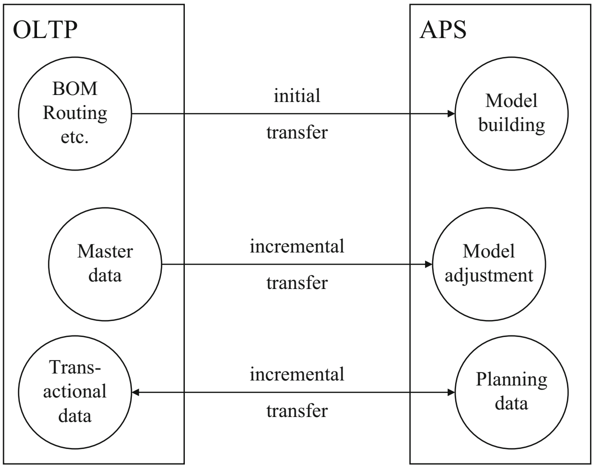


Fig. 13.5 Transferring data between OLTP and APS

Integration Model

Within the integration model, objects which are exchanged between OLTP and APS are defined. If, like it is done in most cases, not all products are planned in APS, the integration model has to define which products and materials are critical. Also, the potential bottleneck resources have to be defined. These objects are e.g.:

- BOMs
- Routings
- Inventory levels
- Customer orders.

Furthermore, the integration model has to define which data are exchanged with which OLTP system. A supply chain consists of several entities with local systems. The right data have to be exchanged with the right system. This assignment can be done by modeling different sites with their flows of materials in the Master Planning module (see Chap. 8).

The integration model also defines which results are returned to the OLTP systems and the planning tasks done by an APS or ERP system (e.g. performing BOM explosion of non-critical components in local ERP systems). By defining several integration models it is possible to simulate different alternatives of a division of labor between APS and ERP system.

Data Exchange Model

Data *which* have to be exchanged between OLTP and APS are mainly defined by the integration model. The data exchange model defines *how* these data are exchanged. The data transfer between OLTP and APS is executed in two steps (see Fig. 13.5).

The first step is the *initial data transfer*. During this step data needed for building the Master Planning, Production Planning and Scheduling and Distribution and Transport Planning models are transferred from OLTP to APS (e.g. the BOM and routings of critical products, properties of potential bottleneck resources, regular capacities, etc.). After the models are generated “automatically”, it is necessary to maintain the APS specific data like optimizer profiles, penalty costs and aggregation rules.

In the second step, data are transferred *incrementally* between the systems. The OLTP system should only transfer changes that have been made on the data to the APS and vice versa (*net change*). The data exchanged are divided into *master data* and *transactional data*. Changes on master data require a model adjustment in the APS. For example, this could be the purchase of a new production resource or the long-term introduction of a second or third shift. Transactional data are transferred to and from APS as a result of planning tasks. For example, the following transactional data are sent incrementally to an APS:

- Current inventories
- Current orders
- Availability of resources
- Planned production quantities and stock levels, respectively.

Current inventories are needed for every APS module. For Master Planning they can be regarded as a feedback in an incremental planning process, the ATP module uses this data to perform online-promises, while in Distribution Planning it is necessary to calculate the actual distribution quantities, etc. Current orders are used to match planned orders. Those planned orders are a result of the Production Planning and Scheduling module if this planning task is performed on forecasts. All short-term planning modules have to consider the availability of resources like machines, vehicles, etc. to generate feasible plans. Planned production quantities and stock levels are for instance needed to perform BOM explosions for non-critical components in local ERP systems.

However, the separated data basis for APS modules poses problems of redundancies and inconsistencies. These problems have to be controlled by the data exchange model. Even though redundancy of data enables the APS to simulate different plans without affecting OLTP systems, it is very difficult to ensure that all systems have the correct data. Changes in each system have to be propagated to avoid an inconsistent data basis. That is, every modification has to be recorded and sent to the relevant systems. If too many changes are made, too many data are transferred between systems and data updates paralyze the APS. The trade-off between 100 %—consistency and paralyzation of the APS has to be considered during the implementation process (see Chap. 17). That is to say, it is possible to perform updates in predefined time intervals to avoid trashing by data transfer but with a reduction in consistency.

13.2.2 Integration with Data Warehouses

While OLTP systems depict the current state of a supply chain entity a *Data Warehouse* is its “memory”. Nearly all data is available—but not information. The goal of a Data Warehouse is to provide *the right information at the right time*. The Data Warehouse has to bring together disparate data from throughout an organization or supply chain for decision support purposes (Berry and Linoff 2004, p. 473).

Several years ago the terms *knowledge discovery in databases* (KDD) and *data mining* kept arising in combination with Data Warehouses. The term KDD is proposed to be employed to describe the whole process of extraction of knowledge from data. Data mining should be used exclusively in the discovery stage of this process (Adriaans and Zantinge 1996, p. 5). The complete set of these tools including data storage in DW is usually known as *Business Intelligence* (Loshin 2003).

Since data is changing very fast and the amount of data is growing faster than the possibility to store it new approaches were elaborated to access and analyze large data sets. One issue in Data Warehouses is the predefined structure of master data and metrics that has to be adopted when changes occur. In case of analyzing not yet modeled structures the Data Warehouse is not able to provide ad hoc mechanism for this type of analyze. There are approaches known as *Analytics* or *Data Discovery* that are typically based on so-called in-memory technologies with specific methods to access, model and store data (Plattner 2013). Visualization components combined with fast data access help users to analyze their data from different angles simultaneously. Prognosis algorithms combined with this type of data management is also known as predictive analytics.

The interaction between APS and the Data Warehouse is a read-only process—the Data Warehouse is updated incrementally by transactional data from OLTP systems. The main use of Data Warehouses is in Demand Planning where statistical tools are applied on historical data to find patterns in demand and sales time-series (see Chaps. 7 and 29). Business Intelligence, especially data mining and predictive analytics provide important input supporting model building for all modules of an APS. While data mining tools focus on *finding patterns by using more complex algorithms* in data, data discovery and analytics tools are fast and powerful tools for *reporting and exploring the results*. Data discovery tools have begun to substitute the former *online analytical processing* (OLAP) tools to provide a fast way for APS to access data not only of the Data Warehouse. The conventional way by queries (esp. SQL) is also possible to access data (see Fig. 13.6).

SCM is a new challenge for the design of Data Warehouses and Business Intelligence. The supply chain inherent dynamic of changing data structures (e.g. organizational changes, new products, new sales channels) drives huge efforts, thus the aim of integrating cross-company supply chain wide master and transactional data is reserved to selected applications and business objects (see e.g. Chap. 14).

13.2.3 Integration with Business Planning

Business Planning is often referred to as a value based planning process which includes the key performance indicators of an enterprise. In the organization of a company, Business Planning is mostly driven by the finance and controlling department. One can distinguish long-term strategic planning, 1 to 3-year-planning

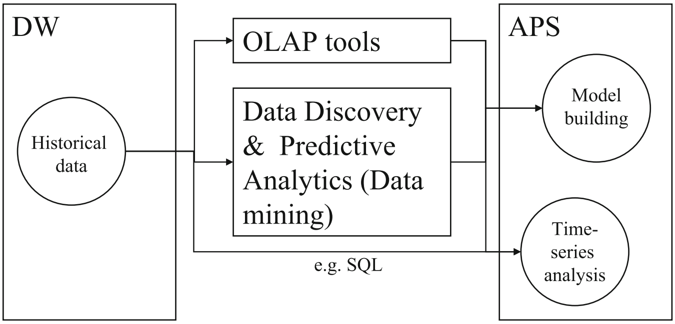


Fig. 13.6 Integration of Data Warehouse

(budgeting) and monthly or mostly quarterly forecasts. As opposed to an OLTP where detailed transactions are focused on, predominantly aggregated values are being planned. Business Planning systems often use the structures of a Data Warehouse, as the reporting structures (legal entities, segments, regions) for controlling purposes are ideally congruent with the planning structures.

Business Planning generally consists of the following elements:

- Planning of guidelines, assumptions and premises
- Sales planning: Based on the services offering (mix, quantity and quality) and price policy
- Cost planning: based on cost elements directly allocatable to a service activity and indirect costs on cost centers; through internal cost allocations, these indirect costs are allocated to activities
- Investment planning: planning of payment flows resulting from longer-term investment decisions
- Profitability planning
- Profit & loss and balance sheet planning
- Cash flow statement.

Methods within sales planning are often congruent with practices of demand planning. For cost planning, predominantly distribution keys or simple allocation methods are in use. More complex allocations are performed in the OLTP based on the exact allocation rules after upload (so-called retraction) of the planned cost center values. Basic amortization calculations or cost comparison calculations are utilized to calculate investments. Capitalized values are not so widespread.

Most significant is the integration of sales and demand planning. Sales targets can be converted top-down into quantity targets using price targets or independent price planning. Sales targets can then be distributed over lower organizational levels or time intervals using distribution keys (see Chap. 20). Sales figures are then reconciled, bottom-up aggregated and evaluated. Most common issues can be found in the reconciliation processes of diverse hierarchy levels to commit to a binding plan. This is because the plan often represents part of the manager's goal-sheet.

Apart from that, price planning and distribution keys used in top-down plans are significant challenges (due to (lack of) stability and completeness of historical data, price elasticity of certain markets etc.). Commitment to a sales plan requires its plausibility. In a case of restricted resources, this means there needs to be a master planning. From the resulting resource and material usage direct costs can be derived. Cost allocations of indirect costs can be calculated from the cost center planning. Both represent a complete bottom-up cost calculation.

One of the integration issues of cost planning and APS is that most of the cost elements are not appropriate to derive optimization penalties directly from them (e.g. for master planning), because of the portion of indirect costs and not relevant direct costs. Investment planning often is done separately either in strategic network design or in an external investment program plan. Thus, the integration of increasing capacities by investments into the supply chain vice versa has to be done manually.

From the plans illustrated, a planned profitability calculation can be derived. Including also non operating costs and income, and financing and investment planning, finally it is possible to generate a plan balance sheet, a plan profit and loss account and a plan cash flow statement.

A Business Planning prepared using all the planning elements of this method represents a closed loop.

13.2.4 Enterprise Application Integration

The growing number of different systems within a single organization makes point-to-point integration no longer applicable. Integrating the various systems of an organization or even the entire supply chain, called *Enterprise Application Integration* (EAI), is a challenging task that could not be performed without powerful middleware systems. According to the task these systems have to perform they are called EAI systems. The goal of those systems is the decoupling of applications. Figure 13.7 visualizes the difference between point-to-point integration and decoupled applications.

Independent of the underlying software component architecture like *Enterprise Java Beans* (EJB), *CORBA* or Microsoft *DCOM*, an architecture for EAI has to be identified. Such an identification provides essential input for software selection and implementation. Lutz (2000) distinguishes the following five EAI architecture patterns:

Integration Adapter. Via this architecture an existing (server) application interface is converted into the desired interface of one or more clients. The client application will then exclusively invoke services of the server application through the interface of the integration adapter. An interface is dedicated to a single server application, but multiple clients can access the server application by using a common integration adapter. Changes in the server application no longer reflect each (accessing) client; only the adapter has to be adjusted. The integration adapter does not provide any logic. Solely, a mapping of the server API (application programming

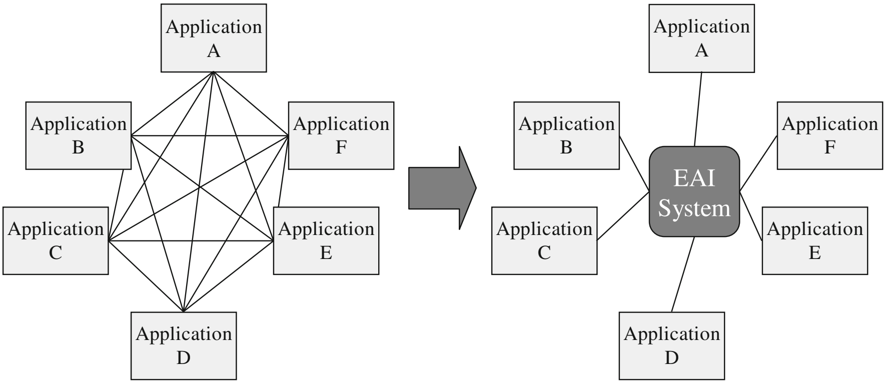


Fig. 13.7 Point-to-point integrated vs. decoupled applications

interface) to the API provided by the adapter is performed. Usually, the integration adapter does not know of the existence of clients and the server application does not know about the existence of the integration adapter unless the server application needs adjustment to be able to provide desired services.

Integration Messenger. Communication dependencies between applications are minimized by this approach. Here, the application interaction logic is not decoupled. The integration messenger delivers messages between applications and provides location transparency services, i.e. distributed applications do not have to know about the actual location of each other to be able to communicate. The design of the integration logic is still left to the applications. One example for an integration logic is *remote method invocation* where an application is able to perform "direct" method calls on another one. In this case both applications have to provide the required services and public interfaces for remote method invocation. A change on the integration logic in one application still affects the other ones while application location changes only concern the integration messenger.

Integration Facade. The interface to several server applications is simplified by providing an integration facade. Server functionality is abstracted to make the back-end applications easier to use. The integration facade has to perform the mapping of its own interface to the interfaces of the server application. Furthermore, internal logic has to be provided to enable the abstraction. For example, an ATP request (see Chap. 9) invokes services on various systems to get information about product availability. The different system are e.g. inventory management systems of different distribution centers. Without an integration facade the client has to invoke these services on each server application. Whereas the integration facade is aware of the different systems. It provides a thin interface to the client(s) and takes over the invocation of the services on different systems as well as processing the information.

Server applications are unaware of the existence of the integration facade while the integration facade itself does not know of the existence of clients.

Integration Mediator. This architecture pattern encapsulates interaction logic of applications and decouples this logic from the participating applications. In contrast to the integration facade the participating applications are aware of the existence of the integration mediator. No direct communication between these applications is permitted. Each interaction has to invoke the integration mediator. Via this pattern dependencies between applications are minimized and maintenance is simplified owing to the centralized interaction logic. The interaction logic encapsulated by the integration mediator includes message content transformation (e.g. mapping of different product IDs) and controlling message destination(s). In stateless scenarios this logic is only dependent on the current content of a message. In contrast, stateful scenarios are additionally dependent on previous application interactions (e.g. accumulation of events). Stateful integration mediators are much more complex to handle as they usually need state management and state persistence to span shutdown situations, for example.

Process Automator. The goal of this architecture is to minimize dependencies between process automation logic and applications. It automates sequencing of activities in a process. The process automator pattern consists of a process controller, activity services and applications providing desired services. The sequencing activity logic of a process is implemented by the process controller. The activity services abstract from the applications and provide request-based services to the process controller, i.e. all system interactions are hidden. The activity service is a specialty of the integration facade pattern that abstracts interactions to the level of an activity. By providing such a simplified and uniform interface to the service applications, the process controller is decoupled from the special APIs of the services. The application integration logic is encapsulated.

The different architecture patterns can be combined. For example, integration adapter and integration messenger can be combined in such a way that the integration adapter provides the interfaces that the integration messenger is expecting. This architecture decouples server APIs and the application itself from the API of an integration messenger.

A major part of the EAI had been performed on so-called on-premise systems that are in the responsibility of the company using these systems. These days cloud services are gaining importance. The model of *cloud computing* operates data and computation power in a collection of data centers owned and maintained by a third party—the so-called *cloud*. Many cloud services follow a pay-per-use model or are delivered to customers by e.g. a monthly fee. Depending on the services offered three different categories are build in general (Jin et al. 2010):

IaaS (Infrastructure as a Service). This is usually the lowest level of cloud service offerings. It provides access to e.g. storage and computing power (e.g.

Dropbox). A consumer of this service has control over operating systems, storage and deployed applications but does not manage the underlying infrastructure itself (like needed when running systems on-premise).

PaaS (Platform as a Service). Offering PaaS implies providing tools for developers to build and host web applications that can be consumed web-based and more and more on mobile devices. An example here is the *Google App Engine*.

SaaS (Software as a Service). The highest level of cloud service offerings is SaaS. The software offered as a service has to be accessible from different devices incl. mobile devices via so-called *thin clients* (e.g. web browsers). Especially, software services offered for mobile devices need to take care of lower bandwidth and computing power on these devices implying that the major part of the computing has to take place on the server offering the service.

Integrating these services into the company's system landscape is also achieved by EAI but relies strongly on the integration technologies offered by PaaS providers—usually the same technologies as used by software developers to connect their software to the platform service. Most commonly used technologies are: Remote Procedure Call (RPC), Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA), Representational State Transfer (REST) and Mashup (an overview of these technologies and the cloud service categorization can be found in Jin et al. 2010).

13.3 Supply Chain Event Management

The task of *Supply Chain Event Management* is to *manage* planned and unplanned events in a supply chain. The effectiveness of the supply chain is to be improved while reducing costs by handling events. Managing events does not only mean to react to events, but also to affect or even prevent their occurrence. Following Otto (2004), SCEM can be characterized as a management concept, a software solution and a software component. Here, we will focus on SCEM as a management concept.

To understand SCEM Alvarenga and Schoenthaler (2003) define the terminology given in Table 13.1. A supply chain event can occur on all levels of detail in the supply chain (from broader cycles to detailed tasks). To be able to manage these events efficiently a reasonable grouping into event categories is inevitable. By giving the probability of an event to occur events can be classified into standard and nonstandard events, assuming that nonstandard events are generally more costly to manage. A documented reaction to supply chain events avoids ad hoc decisions under pressure of time. Planned events are generally less costly to manage.

A reduction in cost by SCEM can be achieved in two ways. Firstly, the reaction to an event can be accomplished more efficiently. Secondly, more costly events can be shifted to less costly events by defining EMPs for so far unplanned events or by eliminating events following the idea of continuous improvement.

When changing the category of events from unplanned to planned the trade-off between costs for defining an EMP and the probability of occurrence and the

Table 13.1 SCEM definitions (Alvarenga and Schoenthaler 2003)

Supply chain event	Any individual outcome (or nonoutcome) of a supply chain cycle, (sub) process, activity, or task
Supply Chain Event Management	The application of statistical, process, and technology identification and control solutions to standard and nonstandard supply chain events
Event category	A logical grouping of supply chain events
Event probability index (EPI)	The statistical measure, on a scale of 0 to 1, of the tendency of an event to occur within the supply chain [...] over a given time interval
Standard event	An event that tends to occur within the supply chain; that is, has an EPI of 0.50× or higher
Nonstandard event	An event that tends not to occur within the supply chain; that is, has an EPI of 0.49× or lower
Event management plan (EMP)	A documented process that outlines the steps taken to control or react to an event
Planned event	An event for which a documented EMP exists
Unplanned event	An event for which a documented EMP does not exist

resulting ad hoc decision should be taken into account. Furthermore, it should be inspected whether external influences like material shortages can be affected, e.g. by using the concept of vendor managed inventory. Thus, probably shifting an event from a standard to a nonstandard event makes a single occurrence more costly, but in sum less costly due to less occurrences.

A software based approach to SCEM has to provide online access to predefined supply chain events. Furthermore, events have to be categorized and management of event shifts has to be provided. By making categorized events and actions to be taken in case of occurrence accessible throughout the complete supply chain a valuable *supply chain visibility* is created. Here, an Alert Monitor offers an important platform for identification of events and notification of their respective owners.

References

Adriaans, P. & Zantinge, D. (1996). *Data mining*. Harlow: Addison-Wesley.

Alvarenga, C. & Schoenthaler, R. (2003). A new take on supply chain event management. *Supply Chain Management Review, 7*, 28–35.

Berry, M. & Linoff, G. (2004). *Data mining techniques: For marketing, sales, and customer support* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Jin, H., Ibrahim, S., Bell, T., Qi, L., Cao, H., Wu, S., & Shi, X. (2010). Tools and technologies for building clouds. *Cloud computing: Principles, systems and applications*. Berlin/Heidelberg/New York: Springer.

Loshin, D. (2003). *Business intelligence* (1st ed.). Amsterdam/Boston: Morgan Kaufman.

Lutz, J. (2000). EAI architecture patterns. *EAI Journal, March*, 64–73.

Otto, A. (2004). Supply chain event management: Three perspectives. *International Journal of Logistics Management, 14*(2), 1–13.

Plattner, H. (2013). *A course in in-memory data management*. Berlin/Heidelberg/New York: Springer.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Ulrich, P. & Fluri, E. (1995). *Management: Eine konzentrierte Einführung* (7th ed.). Bern: Haupt.

Collaborative Planning

14

Christoph Kilger, Boris Reuter, and Hartmut Stadtler

The preceding chapters deal with planning processes within one *planning domain*, e.g. an enterprise (demand planning, master planning) or a factory (production planning). The term *planning domain* constitutes a part of the supply chain and the related planning processes that are under the control and in the responsibility of one planning organization. However, the quality of a plan and the quality of the decision-making process that is based on that plan can often be improved by considering additional information that is beyond the scope of the individual planning domain.

In this chapter, we describe *collaboration processes*, which span multiple planning domains with special emphasis on collaborative planning. The idea is to directly connect planning processes that are local to their planning domain in order to exchange the relevant data between the planning domains. The planning domains *collaborate* in order to create a common and mutually agreed upon plan. Thus, input data is updated faster and planning results become more reliable. Figure 14.1 shows the Supply Chain Planning Matrices of two planning domains that are connected by *a collaboration*.

Collaborative planning can be applied both downstream and upstream, i.e. it may connect planning processes with customers (e.g. sales planning) or suppliers

---

C. Kilger
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8,
66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: christoph.kilger@de.ey.com

B. Reuter
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Willy-Brandt-Platz 5, 68161 Mannheim,
Germany
e-mail: boris.reuter@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler (✉)
University of Hamburg, Institute for Logistics and Transport, Von-Melle-Park 5, 20146 Hamburg,
Germany
e-mail: hartmut.stadtler@uni-hamburg.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__14,

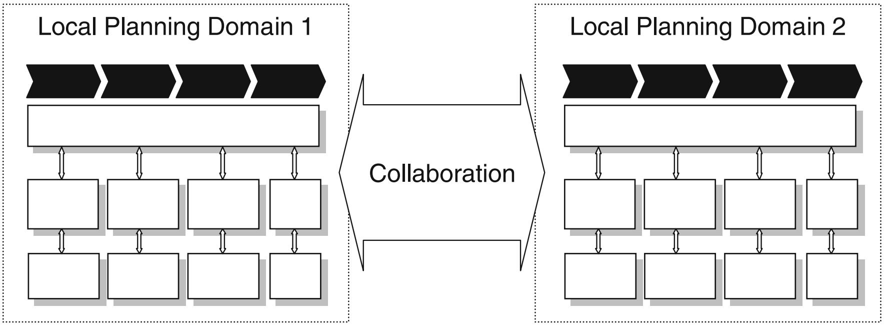


Fig. 14.1 A collaboration connects the planning processes of planning domains

(e.g. procurement planning). According to the planning horizon long-term, medium-term and short-term collaborative planning may exist. Further, collaborations can be distinguished by the objects that are exchanged and collaboratively planned, such as purchase orders for specific items (materials) or maintenance services at certain intervals of time.

A very well-known approach for supply chain collaboration is *Collaborative Planning, Forecasting and Replenishment* (CPFR). It consists of a sequence of steps and corresponding managerial guidelines (see VICS 2004) while collaborative planning software support is not a main issue. Another approach is *Collaborative Development Chain Management* (CDCM), which follows the ideas of simultaneous engineering and focuses on joint development of products by several partners with the use of web-based computer systems (see Becker 2001).

In Sect. 14.1 collaborative planning and the objects of collaboration are introduced by an example. Also, related definitions are discussed. Section 14.2 shows different types of collaborations, then Sect. 14.3 presents the phases of a generic collaborative planning process. Finally, Sect. 14.4 gives an overview of APS-technology that supports collaborative planning processes.

14.1 Introduction

The following example illustrates collaboration processes. Consider a manufacturer of headlight modules for the automotive industry. The manufacturer supplies headlight modules to two car manufacturers. A subcontractor can be employed to cover peak demand situations, providing additional assembly capacity. Headlight modules consist of a body and a glass cover. The body is produced by the manufacturer itself. The headlight glass covers are supplied by an external supplier in a make-to-order process. Bulbs are provided by a second supplier from stock.

Figure 14.2 illustrates the supply chain and gives examples of collaborations:

- The car manufacturers are interested in getting a reliable supply of headlights. Therefore, they provide their demand forecast of headlight modules to the

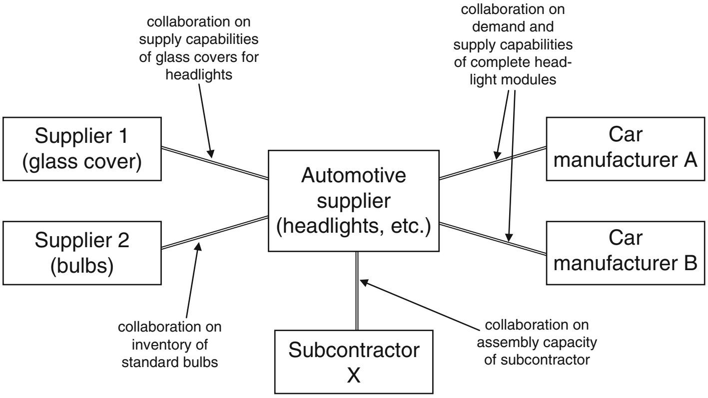


Fig. 14.2 Supply chain structure of a collaboration scenario

headlight manufacturer. From the headlight manufacturer they request a commitment to fulfill the demand forecast and information about the maximum supply capabilities. The latter is needed in case the actual demand exceeds the demand forecast, and in order to catch up fulfillment of the demand in case of a supply shortage (for instance if a die was broken). The headlight manufacturer is interested in getting a minimum demand commitment from the car manufacturer and has to plan its business and provide the appropriate capacity.

- A collaboration between the headlight manufacturer and the supplier of the glass covers helps to plan future demands and the supply capabilities needed.
- Compared to this make-to-order business, bulbs are standard products that are made-to-stock. Both the supplier of bulbs as well as the headlight manufacturer keep a specific safety stock against demand and supply variations. Collaboration on inventory and on demand forecast helps to improve the availability of bulbs when needed.
- The subcontractor matches forecasted production demand with his actual production capacity. Thus, the manufacturer and the subcontractor collaborate on the use of the capacity at the subcontractor's site.

A collaboration is related to specific items, that—as illustrated by the example—may consist of sub-items, forming a hierarchy. For instance, the light system of a specific car model may be a top level item, and the headlight and backlight modules may be second level items. Demand and supply capabilities can be attached to any level. In the example, the demand may be attached to the top level item, expressing the total demand for light systems. This is broken down to the demand for headlight and backlight modules. These modules may be supplied by different suppliers. Thus, the individual supply capabilities of the headlight supplier and backlight supplier are attached to the second level in the item hierarchy.

The example has illustrated some main aspects of *collaboration*: A prerequisite for a collaboration of (at least) two business partners is an agreement regarding the exchange of a specific set of data (like expected future demands) which will improve

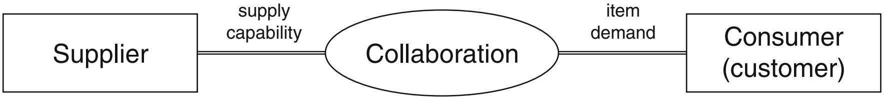


Fig. 14.3 Collaboration as a demand-supply relationship

decision making of both parties. *Collaborative planning* then constitutes the next step of a SC collaboration: Collaborative planning is a joint decision making process for aligning plans of individual SC members with the aim of achieving coordination in light of information asymmetry (Stadtler 2009). Information asymmetry means that SC members do not possess the same information (e.g. about problem characteristics, possible actions, or preferences) relevant for coordinating their activities. Consequently, a central planning approach may be considered unacceptable or even infeasible by the SC members involved. *Coordination* refers to "actions or approaches which lead supply chain partners to act in ways that are best for the chain as a whole ..." (Kouvelis et al. 2006, p. 455). These approaches make use of e.g. price mechanisms (like attractive buy-back prices for perishable goods see Cachon and Lariviere 2005), side-payments or compensations. While in theory "best" often means "optimal", in practice it will suffice that coordination results in an "improved" state compared to "no coordination".

As an example for the first step of collaboration consider an automotive supplier (see Fig. 14.3) calculating and transferring the *item demand* to the suppliers while the suppliers reciprocate by specifying their *supply capability* to the automotive supplier (customer). The next step—collaborative planning—is started in case the automotive supplier (customer) also provides his suppliers with his medium-term procurement plans for glass covers and bulbs. Subsequently, the suppliers of glass covers and bulbs will evaluate the procurement plan in light of their production capacities. Procurement and supply plans may then be amended and exchanged among SC members until a (capacity) feasible or SC optimal plan is reached.

According to a survey in the automotive industry conducted by Landeros and Monczka (1989) a supply chain partnership requires a

- Concentration on preferred suppliers
- Trustworthy commitment of future conduct
- Mutual problem solving
- Exchange of information
- Mutual adaptation to changes in markets.

While a supply chain partnership greatly supports collaborative planning it is not a prerequisite: Cachon and Lariviere (2001) describe a case from the videocassette rental industry where the supplier of videos can specify the conditions of the business relationship with the retailer of the videos (customer) resulting in the maximum profit for the supply chain as a whole. Note, the video retailer decides decentrally about the number of videos to buy that maximizes his own as well as the supply chains profit. Coordination here is achieved by the *supplier* fixing an "optimal" wholesale price *plus* a share of the retailers rental fee (revenue). Given the price and the revenue share are set adequately both parties can achieve a profit which is larger than in a traditional wholesale price setting (with no revenue share commitment). Thus, a revenue sharing contract results in a win-win situation for both parties (for more information about coordinating contracts see Cachon and Lariviere 2001 and Cachon and Lariviere 2005).

14.2 Types of Collaborations

The setting where collaboration or collaborative planning takes place can be classified along multiple dimensions. Three of these dimensions will be described here: Leadership, topography of a supply chain, and objects of collaboration (for a complete list of criteria see Stadtler 2009).

Usually, one of the partners participating in the collaboration has a *leading role*, while the other (or others) are *followers*. As an example take the computer industry: Computer manufacturers like Dell and Fujitsu are in a leading role towards their suppliers of disk drives, memory modules, controllers, etc., but they are in a follower role towards Intel. The leading partner initiates and drives the collaborative planning process, whereas a follower supports the process. Collaborations can be classified according to the leadership in *supplier-driven collaborations* (supplier has the lead) and *customer-driven collaborations* (customer has the lead). This classification corresponds to the notion of leadership in supply chains (as described in Chap. 1).

The topography of a supply chain can be described by the number of tiers: The nodes of the network represent the suppliers and the customers, the directed edges represent the item-relationships connecting suppliers with customers. If the maximum length of any path in the network (following the item-relationships downstream) is one, *two-tier collaborations* have to be considered. In two-tier collaborations the supply chain has no inner nodes, i.e. each node is either a supplier or a customer. If there is a path in the network consisting of two or more arcs, a *multi-tier collaboration* results. Note that in a multi-tier collaboration the inner nodes act both as suppliers *and* customers.

If the supply chain extends over multiple tiers, like in the automotive industry, this may result in a chain of individual two-tier collaborations (see Fig. 14.4). Each collaboration connects one supplier-customer pair. Information about a changed demand-supply situation must be propagated along all collaborations before the entire supply chain works according to the new situation. If for instance the customer and all three suppliers have a weekly planning cycle, it takes 3 weeks until a changed or new demand signal reaches the tier 3 supplier.

In order to speed up the information exchange in the supply chain a *multi-tier* collaboration can be established, directly connecting the customer with the tier 1, tier 2, and tier 3 suppliers. Figure 14.5 visualizes such a multi-tier collaboration. All members of the supply chain work according to the same “beat”; information about demand or supply changes are propagated within one planning cycle to all supply chain members (Kilger and Stahuber 2002).

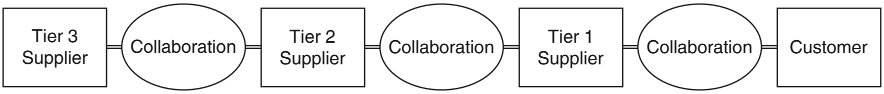


Fig. 14.4 Chain of two-tier collaborations

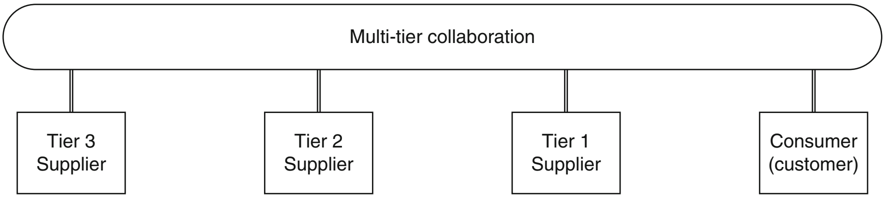


Fig. 14.5 Multi-tier collaboration

One example of a multi-tier collaboration has been implemented by DaimlerChrysler, sharing demand and inventory information of door modules between DaimlerChrysler and tier 1 to tier 7 suppliers (see Graf and Putzlocher 2004).

A successful multi-tier collaboration requires one distinguished supply chain member who is driving the collaborative planning processes and defines the rules and standards of the collaboration. In the automotive industry, this role is usually taken over by the automotive manufacturer, as he is controlling the supplier network.

Common issues of a multi-tier collaboration are different batching rules and inventory policies of the suppliers. For instance, assume the tier 2 supplier shown in Fig. 14.5 has a batching rule telling him to order multiple quantities of 100 from the tier 3 suppliers. The multi-tier collaboration has to know this batching rule, because otherwise the demand signal reaching the tier 3 supplier from the collaboration will be different from the actual demand of the tier 2 supplier.[1]

As already mentioned in the preceding subsection collaborations may be related to specific items (materials) that are provided by a supplier and are used by the customer. Supplier and customer exchange information about the demand and supply of those items. This information may be about the item itself (*material-related collaboration*) or about capacity or services that are required to make the item, to install it, to transport it, etc. (so-called *service-related collaboration*). Consequently, both materials and services may form the object of collaboration which will be described in greater detail in the following.

---

[1] As a result DaimlerChrysler's information about door module demand and inventory turned out to be of limited value to the suppliers in tiers 2 to 7. Actual planning or collaboration functionality was not provided.

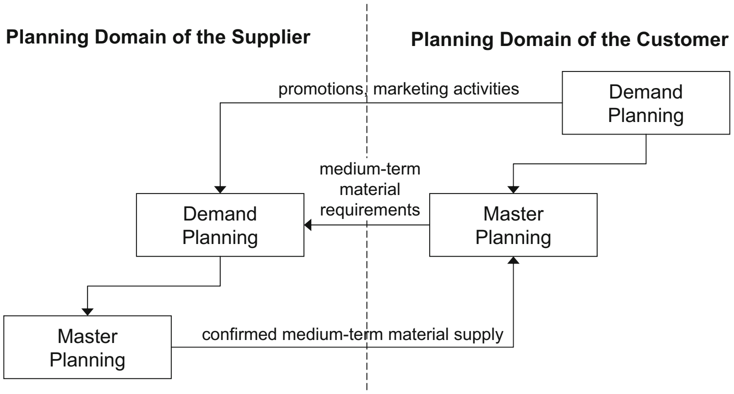


Fig. 14.6 Relationships between the planning domains in a demand collaboration

14.2.1 Material-Related Collaborations

Demand Collaboration. The interface between order-driven and forecast-driven processes in a supply chain is called *decoupling point* (see Chap. 9, p. 181). In a typical supply chain supply processes upstream the decoupling point are driven by demand forecasts. Multiple departments of a supplier are involved in the creation of the forecast, e.g. sales, marketing, product management and enterprise planning. Sales enters the forecast for specific customers or regions, and evaluates the influence of market trends. Marketing adds the effects of marketing activities and promotions to the forecast, and product management provides information about the phase in/phase out of products. Enterprise planning consolidates the plan from an overall perspective. The consolidation of the inputs from the departments is called *consensus-based forecasting*. The statistical forecast serves as a reference and starting point for the human planners (e.g. in marketing). Procedures for the integration of statistical forecasting and the structured judgment of human planners is described in Chap. 7.

The customers—whose demand is being planned—may add valuable input to the forecasting processes. For instance, customers can provide the medium-term material requirements based on their master plan as an input for the demand planning of their suppliers. The suppliers use this information as input to the consensus forecasting processes as described above. Further, the consolidated and approved forecast can be confirmed to the customers (represented as confirmed medium-term supply). In this case a *demand collaboration* is formed between the suppliers and the customers, connecting the forecasting processes of the local planning domains. A demand collaboration is usually driven by the supplier—as he is interested in getting accurate information about future demand. Figure 14.6 shows the connection between the local planning domains in a demand collaboration starting with the customer informing the supplier about expected market demand and planned marketing activities. Furthermore, medium-term material requirements (i.e. the purchase plan) resulting from the customers master plan are transmitted to the supplier. The supplier now can derive his best master plan based on the medium-term material requirements of the customer(s). Usually the customer asks the supplier for a confirmation of the fulfillment of the purchase plan. This simple procedure to align local domain plans—known as *upstream planning*—can be applied even in complex multi-tier supply chains with several partners on each tier. In pure upstream planning the supplier is not allowed to deviate from the purchase plan provided by the customer(s). Consequently, upstream planning may result in high costs for the supplier (e.g. due to the need to use overtime) to meet the purchase plan(s).

The case depicted in Fig. 14.2 (p. 259) provides an example for a demand collaboration: The headlight manufacturer might setup a demand collaboration with both car manufacturers to create a collaborative forecast reflecting expected demand for headlights in the supply chain. Another example of a demand collaboration is collaborative promotion planning: The customer provides detailed information about planned promotions or other marketing activities, the supplier considers this information as input to the demand planning process (for further examples see Smaros 2003).

Prerequisites to enter a demand collaboration are harmonized master and transactional data. Every local planning domain is able to analyze the planning process by custom views. Deviations are reported by alerts and should be discussed and adjusted in cyclic planning meetings. The result of the planning meetings is an agreed demand plan. The quality of past decisions and planned forecasts have to be analyzed ex-post based on historic sales figures.

The demand of a customer participating in a demand collaboration must be treated differently from the demand of other customers not participating in a demand collaboration: Partners in a collaboration are more open and provide better and more reliable input to the collaborative planning processes than other customers.

To avoid shortage gaming (see Chap. 1, p. 24), the demand of partners participating in a collaboration has to be fulfilled with higher priority compared to the demand of other customers.

Inventory Collaboration. Inventory collaboration is a special application of demand collaboration. The customer provides information about his future demand and about the current inventory to the supplier. The supplier uses this information to create the requirements of his own products at the sites of the customer (e.g. factory sites, warehouses). Consequently, the customer no longer needs to create and to send replenishment orders to the supplier. The replenishment of the inventory is automatically planned by the supplier; time-lags due to the replenishment planning and ordering processes of the customer do no longer occur. The replenishment decisions are driven by pre-defined service level agreements between supplier and customer (e.g. expressed as minimum coverage time of the stock level). Inventory collaboration is a service that is usually requested by the customer (or is at least tolerated by the customer). The process itself is driven by the supplier. For inventory

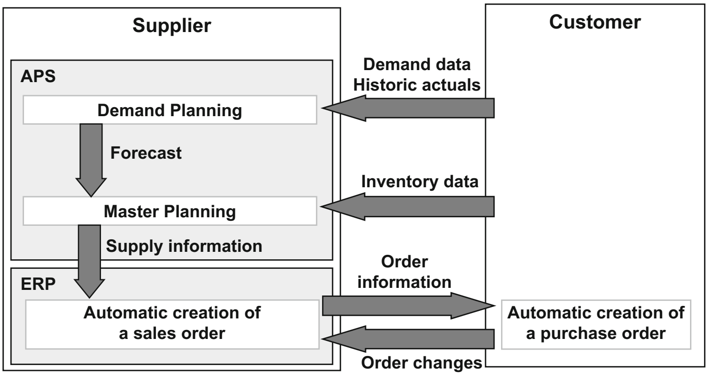


Fig. 14.7 Relationships between supplier and customer in an inventory collaboration

collaborations also the term *vendor managed inventory (VMI)* is used (for different stages of collaborations including VMI see Holweg et al. 2005).

To control his own inventory and his customer's inventory simultaneously the supplier has to be able to access the customer's major inventory levels and forecasts and has to plan with respect to a system-wide inventory. This could be done by using the so-called base-stock-system (Tempelmeier 2012). Modern EDI-techniques support the electronic exchange of the necessary information (e.g. inventory data, demand data, planned replenishments). Usually the supplier automatically generates a sales order in his ERP system based on the replenishment plan. The order information is sent to the ERP system of the customer and a purchase order matching the sales order is created automatically. Figure 14.7 summarizes the relationships between a supplier and a customer in an inventory collaboration.

Procurement Collaboration. A procurement collaboration—also called supply-side collaboration (Fu and Piplani 2002)—is similar to a demand collaboration. The customer and the supplier exchange demand and supply information as shown in Fig. 14.6. The main difference is that a procurement collaboration is driven by the customer, whereas a demand collaboration is driven by the supplier.

Medium-term procurement collaborations provide information about constraints on the supplies of materials for master planning (Chap. 8). Short-term procurement collaborations create short-term material supply information which is used to update short-term plans, for example production schedules. It interfaces with purchasing and material requirements planning (Chap. 11).

Intel Corporation is an interesting case for medium-term procurement collaboration (Shirodkar and Kempf 2006). Intels suppliers of substrates—these are advanced materials containing hundreds of precision electrical connections used for chip production—not only collaborate in providing Intel with data regarding capacity availabilities. Suppliers also have collaborated in generating an optimization model (a MIP model to be more precise, see Chap. 30) of their production facilities.

By combining the submodels of its suppliers, Intel now possesses a medium-term substrate planning tool covering a 9-months planning horizon and incorporating potential bottlenecks of the total supply chain. This (central) model enables Intel to find feasible purchase plans and to minimize purchase and transportation costs. Obviously, this approach is only applicable for a very powerful supply chain leader.

14.2.2 Service-Related Collaborations

Capacity Collaboration. The collaborations discussed so far—demand, inventory and procurement collaboration—are related to the exchange of demand and supply information of materials. A capacity collaboration is an example for a service-related collaboration: Supplier and customer exchange information about demand and availability of production services. For instance, a manufacturer (i.e. the customer) collaborates with a subcontractor (i.e. the supplier) on the usage of the subcontractor's production facility based on the manufacturer's master plan. The manufacturer wants to ensure that he gets a reservation for a specific amount of capacity, without knowing for which production order the capacity actually will be used and what product actually will be produced. Similar to procurement collaborations capacity collaborations are usually driven by the customer.

Besides the forecasted capacity, a minimum and maximum capacity level is often negotiated between the two parties:

- The subcontractor (supplier) is interested in defining a minimum capacity to ensure the load of his production facilities.
- The manufacturer (customer) is interested in knowing the maximum capacity that is provided by the subcontractor.

The difference between the forecasted capacity and the maximum capacity is called the *upside flexibility* of the subcontractor. However, if the subcontractor has multiple customers using the same capacity this upside flexibility range might be announced to more than one customer. In this case multiple manufacturers are sharing the flexibility range.

The typical goal of a capacity collaboration is to provide additional upside flexibility for the manufacturer (customer) in case his own capacity is fully loaded. However, in practice it often occurs that the manufacturer has to make sure that the minimum load negotiated with the subcontractor is considered first before loading its own capacity in order to avoid penalties.

An alternative to setting up a capacity collaboration is to invest in additional manufacturing capacity. This decision can be made by the manufacturer based on a long-term plan (see Chap. 6 about Strategic Network Design). Potential issues of a capacity collaboration like the required know how of the subcontractor about the manufacturing processes and availability of the right manufacturing equipment at the subcontractor's site have to be considered for this decision.

Transport Collaboration. Transport planning and vehicle scheduling is one of the operational tasks of purchasing and distribution (Chap. 12). Often, several logistic service providers are involved in the main purchasing and distribution process of an enterprise or a certain part of the supply chain. The transportation services (for inbound and for outbound transportation) are nowadays provided by external transportation and logistics providers.

A transport collaboration is similar to a capacity collaboration: Both are service-related collaborations driven by the customer. While the capacity collaboration is related to production services, the transport collaboration is related to transportation services. In a transport collaboration the customer is typically a manufacturer or retailer, and the supplier is a transportation and logistics provider.

For example, a transport planner of a manufacturer (i.e. the customer) uses a planning tool to assign transport requests to a provider either by hand or through an optimization run. The requests are sent to the chosen provider, e.g. by e-mail, containing a hyperlink to a website or an XML-document. The provider checks the request and accepts or modifies the conditions, e.g. route, pick-up points and delivery dates, or rejects it in a predefined time window. Alerts are generated, if for example the requested transport capacity exceeds the agreed quantities, response is belated or the request has been changed or rejected. For the latter cases the transport planner can accept the change or choose a different provider. With the acceptance of a request a predefined order fulfillment workflow starts.

14.2.3 Material- and Service-Related Collaboration

Demand, inventory and procurement collaborations are material-related collaborations, capacity and transport collaborations are service-related. Besides these "pure" material- or service related collaborations there exist combined material- and service-related collaborations. These collaborations are formed mainly in industries where materials and services have to be synchronized in order to efficiently and reliably fulfill the customer demand.

As an example for a material- and service related collaboration we consider the procurement of computer equipment. Large organizations such as banks, insurance companies, public administration etc. procure large quantities of computer equipment, including computers, servers, printers, network components etc. The procurement process is often organized as a "rollout project" that is managed by a specialized service company (see Fig. 14.8). Hardware suppliers provide products (materials), service providers provide transport, customization and computer installation services. For instance, the computer equipment that is to be installed in one floor of an office building is collected at the customizing center. If it is complete, all servers, workstations, printers and further equipment are customized, software is installed, network addresses are assigned etc. After customization is complete the transportation and logistics provider forwards the equipment to the installation site. Technicians are arriving at the same time on site and install and replace the old equipment by the new one.

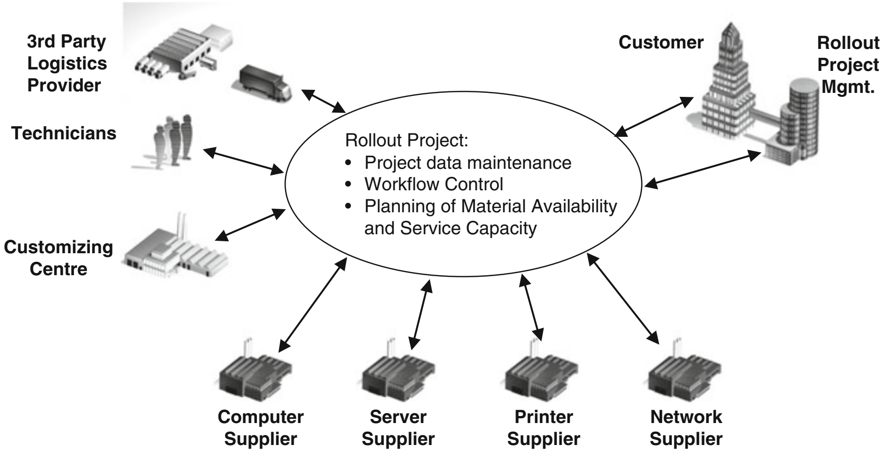


Fig. 14.8 Structure of a rollout project

Traditionally, the availability of materials and service capacity is controlled manually, leading to an insufficient information flow and slow reaction in case of changes. As a consequence, the delivery performance is low and large inventories are stocked at all sites involved to buffer against shortages. In order to better coordinate all parties involved by faster information exchange a material- and service related collaboration is formed. This collaboration is usually driven by the service company coordinating the project. The customer receiving the customized computer equipment has the role of the customer, while the hardware suppliers and service providers act as suppliers.

The material- and service-related collaborations may be supported by collaboration modules of APS, typically in combination with an Internet portal consolidating all information flows and providing role-specific views for all parties involved. As an example, consider a material shortage at the server supplier. Having an APS-based collaboration process installed, the server supplier updates the availability information for the servers that are needed for the rollout project. The remaining hardware suppliers use this information to adjust their production and distribution plans. The service providers update their plans accordingly, and may for instance re-allocate available capacity to other customers or may even reduce capacity in case they employ subcontracted workforces.

The synchronization of services and materials by APS-based collaboration processes gets more and more important as services gain a broader share in many industries. Other examples of industries with a high fraction of services that have to be synchronized with material availability are telecommunications, building and construction industry, and medical technology industry. For further details on collaboration on services and materials refer to Kilger and Holtkamp (2001) and Keinert and Ötschmann (2001).

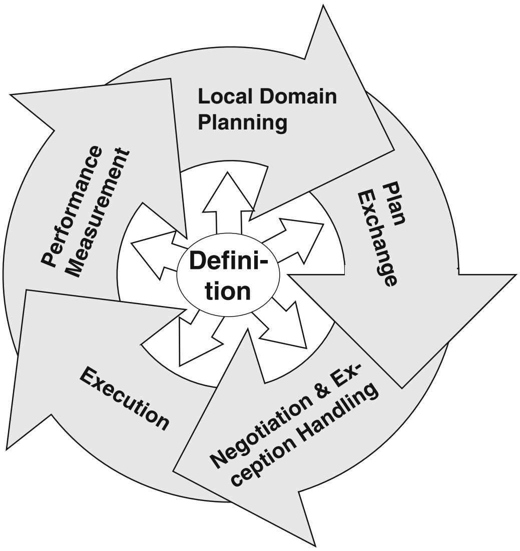


Fig. 14.9 Phases of a generic collaborative planning process

14.3 A Generic Collaboration and Collaborative Planning Process

A typical generic collaboration process consists of the following six phases (see Fig. 14.9):

1. Definition
2. Local domain planning
3. Plan exchange
4. Negotiation and exception handling
5. Execution
6. Performance measurement

Comparing the above phases with the eight tasks corresponding to the CPFR model VICS (2004) reveals a number of similarities. However, CPFR addresses collaborations among manufacturers and retailers in general, while our focus is on collaborative *planning* issues among arbitrary business partners.

Definition. The definition of a collaborative relationship of business partners incorporates the goal of working together in some mutually defined ways by a formal agreement. Four main issues have to be considered: gives & gets, the collaboration objects, including planning horizons, the time horizon of the collaboration and an agreed dispute resolution mechanism in case of conflicts (along the lines of Anderson and Narus 2009, p. 25):

- “Gives” address the contribution of each partner to the collaboration, e.g. personnel, fixed assets, money, knowledge, commonly used software, whereas “gets” are the specific gains of each partner participating in the collaboration,

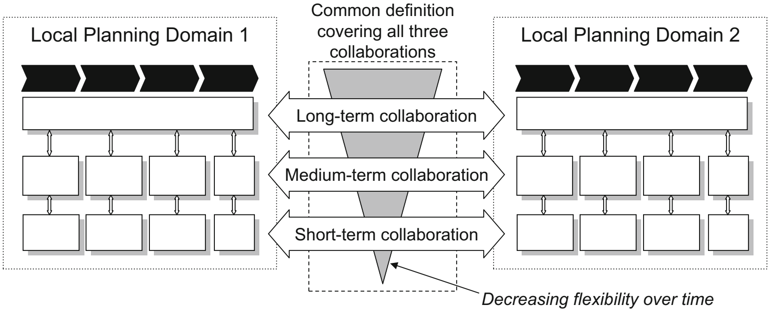


Fig. 14.10 Long-term, medium-term and short-term collaborations

e.g. greater expertise, broader market access and additional earnings. Conflicts often occur if one partner's perception of gives compared to gets received is not balanced. Monitoring gives & gets by success metrics, e.g. KPIs, helps to avoid discrepancies, supports compensations and fosters a continuous improvement process.

- The collaboration objects are materials and/or services to which the collaboration is related. By focusing on main material flows in the supply chain, important items such as bottleneck raw materials, end-products with long lead-times or high-value are potential candidates of a collaboration. Related to the objects are parameters such as a negotiated (demand) levels or minimum demands, exception rules as well as classification of importance for several partners.
- The time horizon determines the duration of the collaboration. It also contains milestones for common aims and review points to analyze the relationship. At the end of the time horizon the partners have to decide whether to continue, expand or curtail the relationship.
- Close relationships include potential disagreements and conflict situations. Thus, an agreed dispute resolution mechanism has to be established. Depending on the severity of the conflict, different mechanisms might be taken into account, e.g. negotiation processes to rearrange agreements, mediation to focus on objective conflict issues by external moderation, or arbitration to accept a third parties' decision as final and binding.

A collaboration addresses a specific *time horizon* relating to a certain level of the Supply Chain Planning Matrix (see Chap. 4). Thus, a supplier and a customer can connect their local domain planning processes to form "seamless" long-term, medium-term or short-term collaborative planning processes. Resulting plans then have to be disaggregated locally (see Fig. 14.10).

The time horizon on a specific planning level is usually structured into multiple time phases, each representing a specific degree of decision flexibility (see also Fig. 14.11). The *history phase* represents actuals of a collaboration, e.g. ordered and supplied quantities, actual inventory levels etc. The actuals are used as a foundation on which the future development of the collaboration is planned. The *frozen phase*

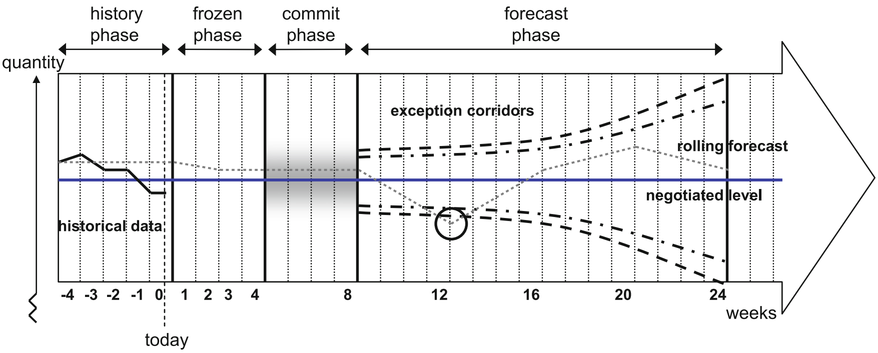


Fig. 14.11 Time phases of a collaboration (example)

covers the next time buckets, e.g. the next 4 weeks. In that time horizon the plan is fixed for execution. During the *commit phase* the plan is being reviewed in detail and approved to become fixed for execution. The length of the commit phase indicates the (maximum) duration of the commitment process. The *forecast phase* covers the remaining time buckets up to the forecast horizon.

Local Domain Planning. A planner organizes his future activities in a local domain plan, that takes into account a certain local planning situation, his individual objective function, current detailed internal information, know-how about process restrictions and assumptions about the environmental development. In particular, assumptions about planned activities of suppliers and customers are uncertain without collaboration. In a decision making process several plans are created, evaluated and ranked by an objective function to identify the best one. Plans having similar objective function values may have very different structures. Thus, alternative plans should not be discarded, but stored in separate versions. This enables the planner to react to changes in the planning environment such as changes in restrictions. In a collaboration the locally created plan will be the basis for communication with partners.

Plan Exchange. Plan exchange is a starting point of negotiations. It is regarded a highly sensitive process. The partners intent is to augment planning quality by exchanging information. In the definition phase of a collaboration objects are defined such as materials on which data might be exchanged. Depending on the content, e.g. inventory of a certain delivered item or inventory of all similar items, the accuracy and the use of data lead to more or less valuable information. The sources of data might be transactional data of suppliers and customers, that are maintained in ERP-systems, or their local domain plans such as forecasted demand, replenishment orders or supply commitments retrieved from an APS.

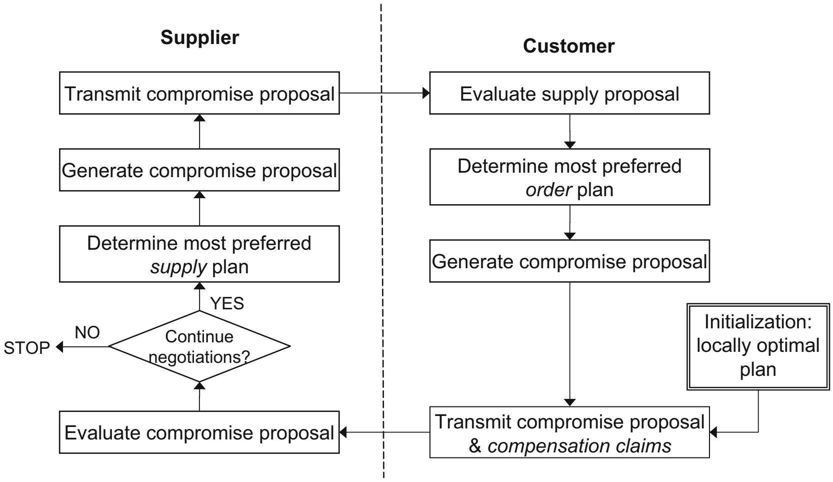


Fig. 14.12 Negotiation-based collaborative planning process (adapted from Dudek 2009)

Negotiation and Exception Handling. The partners exchange information needed for collaborative planning under the terms defined in the collaboration process. This enables partners to gain an overview of the planning situation and identify whether the predefined goals are achieved.

Dudek (2009) describes a negotiation-based collaborative planning process that is based on an iterative improvement process between customer and supplier. The process is depicted in Fig. 14.12. The idea is to only exchange insensitive data, like a purchase plan and a supply plan as well as a compensation request by the customer if a supply plan suggested by the supplier increases his local costs. Note that capacity utilizations and (absolute) cost figures are usually regarded sensitive and will remain local to each party.

The negotiation process starts with upstream planning. In case the purchase plan transmitted by the customer gives rise to further (cost) improvements for the supplier the iterative procedure is continued. If the search for a new compromise solution is continued the supplier generates a new production plan and an associated supply proposal with only minor modifications to the customers purchase plan but large improvements to the suppliers local cost situation. This requires to generate a most "preferred" production and supply plan first. Dudek describes MIP models (Chap. 30) to support these local planning tasks assuming an individual capacitated lot size model for all parties involved.

Once the local steps of the supplier have been completed the new compromise proposal (i.e. the supply plan) is transmitted to the customer for evaluation. Since constraints on the supply side tend to increase the customers local costs he will ask the supplier to compensate for any cost increases resulting from the supply proposal (compared to his initial minimum cost plan). Next, the customer will generate a further compromise proposal by looking for small changes to the suppliers supply plan which result in relatively large cost reductions for the customer. Now the customer is able to transmit to the supplier:

- First, a compensation request associated with the supply plan received
- Second, a new compromise proposal (purchase plan) plus the associated compensation request.

It is up to the supplier to terminate negotiations. This will be the case if the suppliers local costs plus the compensation request from the customer are at a minimum—also representing a minimum for the supply chain as whole! (To be more precise the supplier will not know when the minimum is reached. Hence, Dudek (2009) proposes a Simulated Annealing stopping criterion to control the procedure.) Note, that the customer starting from his locally optimal plan will never lose in the course of negotiations provided compensations are calculated correctly. However, the supplier can and usually will win by these negotiations.

Dudek generalizes the procedure to general two-tier collaborations (with multiple partners on one tier, see Dudek 2009). While Dudek assumed a capacitated lot size model for the local planning domain of each party, Albrecht (2010) even outlines a mechanism which is based on any type of Linear Programming model (and with some limitations also for Mixed Integer Programming models). These models are very well suited for the Master Planning level. If detailed schedules have to be coordinated there is a very nice and practice oriented proposal by Scheckenbach (2009) which is based on an adaptation of the Genetic Algorithm (for details see Chap. 31) utilized as a solver in SAP's Production Planning and Detailed Scheduling (PP/DS) module.

Note that time for coordinating plans is scarce the closer we get to execution. As a result, in mid-term Master Planning personal negotiations supported by a solver for generating alternative solutions are advisable while for collaborative scheduling dealing with short-term events, like a machine breakdown, a fully automated procedure requiring only little CPU-time is required. Comprehensive surveys of computer supported negotiation processes are given by Rebstock (2001) and Stadtler (2009).

Execution. An adjusted plan leads to replenishment-, production- and purchasing orders to fulfill the planned goals and is then executed.

Performance Measurement. The common goals and conditions of the partners are measured by KPIs. Planning results, both for the local domain and collaborative plans, are compared with the real-world data based on the KPIs. Analysis of plan deviations helps in identifying ways in which future plans may be improved. Various data views and aggregation levels of the data to be compared support this analysis. Reactions to deviations from the plan are closely associated with the plan review.

If the partners have decided on a particular threshold value for a given KPI exceeding this value should trigger a process which either pushes the KPI back within its allowed range or allows an exception to occur. The first case strictly disciplines unauthorized actions by partners, initiates a negotiation process to mutually align plans between partners or is used to achieve a desired supply chain behavior (such as less planning "nervousness"). The second case comes into play where structural changes or other exceptional situations occur. Causes for exceptions might be internal, e.g. planning faults or insufficient decision support, or external such as changed economical or competitive situations. Exception handling is triggered by alerts indicating specific planning problems, for example:

- Mismatch between the demand forecast and the supply capability
- Violation of a minimum demand level
- A missing response from the supplier to match a forecasted demand
- An item demand planned by a customer that is not yet released for collaboration by the supplier.

In a rolling schedule environment "as-is/to-be" analysis is used at predefined intervals of time to measure the effects of collaboration. Planning results are more easily accepted by everyone in the case of a win-win situation throughout the entire supply chain. More difficult is the case in which some members lose. Compensation approaches must be developed in this case which lead to reimbursement of the members who agree to "lose" for the benefit of the supply chain as a whole. The deviation from a local domain plan can be used as a measurement.

14.4 Software Support

Planning and coordination within an enterprise are difficult tasks for today's software, and the addition of collaborations increases this complexity. Challenges for software tools supporting collaborative planning include master data integration, user-specific secure data access and the mutual decision-making process. Systems that enable collaborative planning must support partners during each step of the process.

Definition. The definition-step establishes a framework of collaboration and consists of a management agreement to confidential cooperation as well as the definition of common goals, objects of collaboration, success metrics and incentives/penalties. The selection process of appropriate objects or partners is supported by reporting systems based on Data Warehouses. As the selection process is qualitative and thus not supported by APS, the results of a collaborative planning agreement must be customized in the APS. For example, SAP APO allows the authorization of specific users, the specification of the type of collaboration as well as the definition of exchanged data such as master data and—in case of forecast data—the time series of dedicated key figures. This issue is of critical importance, because an incorrect mapping of master data or time series granularity causes severe planning problems.

Local Domain Planning. The step of local domain planning to generate individual plans by each partner is the main focus of APS. As planning becomes more complex with respect to the consideration of partners' plans, several "good" plans with different structures or containing changed data-scenarios might be stored in so-called versions. Thus, changes of considered planning restrictions are anticipated and responsiveness is improved.

Plan Exchange. The step of exchanging plans with a partner is related to the data implemented by the customizing of the collaboration. Furthermore, the way in which data are exchanged is defined by workflows. These include entering data using a web-based interface, or exchanging information such as orders or time series in one of several formats: XML-documents, RosettaNet, EDI, Excel spreadsheet or flat file.

SAP ICH (Inventory Collaboration Hub) is a typical example for a web-based exchange platform for demand and supply plans. SAP ICH supports two basic collaboration types on the procurement side. The first one—*Supplier Managed Inventory (SMI)*—supports a traditional min/max-based supplier-driven replenishment and inventory monitoring process. The second method is *Release Processing*. It represents support of buyer-driven replenishment via SAP R/3 delivery schedules, typically derived from buyer-side internal MRP runs. In addition, SAP ICH supports alert monitoring, master data maintenance and processing of advanced shipment notes (ASN).

A main problem facing todays software tools is the lack of considering interdependencies between multiple exchanged items, resulting from the bill of materials or limited machine capacity (e.g. shifting the due date of an order for one item might result in delays for an order for another item).

Negotiation and Exception Handling. To support the step of negotiation and exception handling, rules that trigger information flows indicating specific planning problems have to be defined. The rules are related to collaborative planning objects such as resources indicating capacity overload, materials indicating shortage situations or lateness of an order. Most APS contain some predefined rules (e.g. SAP APO Alert Monitor profiles) or have a programming interface to trigger alerts by deviations from calculated key figures such as exception corridors shown in Fig. 14.11 (e.g. JDA—violation of funnel agreement; SAP APO—MacroBuilder to define user specific alerts). Depending on the severity of deviations from the agreed limit and the ability to influence the plan either negotiation processes are started by defined workflows to align the plan (e.g. splitting an order) or an exception is allowed (e.g. sourcing from a partner's competitor).

Execution. The execution step contains the fulfillment of an aligned plan between the partners. It leads to activities in transactional systems (e.g. SAP R/3) such as entering production or replenishment orders. Shop floor control systems support "track and trace" of orders and material flows, resource loads and staff assignments.

Performance Measurement. In order to evaluate the results of collaboration "Plan vs. as-is" data are analyzed using reporting tools. For example, input of transactional data such as sales are compared to sales forecast data to identify gaps and opportunities for improvement. Inside a single APS it is customary to define KPIs and KPI schemes in order to measure supply chain performance. Special tools (e.g. SAP APO Plan Monitor or SAPBW for reporting) are then used to keep track of the KPI values. KPI schemes throughout the entire collaboration have to be customized in each of the partners' APS. That is, in order to measure collaboration performance, the KPI schemes must be agreed upon by each collaboration partner.

References

Albrecht, M. (2010). *Supply chain coordination mechanisms, new approaches for collaborative planing*. *Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 628). Berlin/Heidelberg: Springer.

Anderson, J. & Narus, J. (2009). *Business market management: Understanding, creating, and delivering value* (3rd ed.). Upper Saddle River: Prentice Hall.

Becker, T. (2001). Collaborative development chain management. *Supply Chain Management, 1*(1), 27–36.

Cachon, G. & Lariviere, M. (2001). Turning the supply chain into a revenue chain. *Harvard Business Review, 79*(3), 20–21.

Cachon, G. & Lariviere, M. (2005). Supply chain coordination with revenue-sharing contracts: strengths and limitations. *Management Science, 51*(1), 30–44.

Dudek, G. (2009). *Collaborative planning in supply chains: A negotiation-based approach* (2nd ed.). *Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 533). Berlin: Springer.

Fu, Y. & Piplani, R. (2002). Supply-side collaboration and its value in supply chains. *European Journal of Logistics, 152*, 281–288.

Graf, H. & Putzlocher, S. (2004). DaimlerChrysler: Integrierte Beschaffungsnetzwerke (2nd ed.). In D. Corsten, & C. Gabriel (Eds.), *Supply Chain Management erfolgreich umsetzen* (pp. 55–71). Heidelberg: Springer.

Holweg, M., Disney, S., Holmström, J., & Småros, J. (2005). Supply chain collaboration: Making sense of the strategy continuum. *European Management Journal, 23*(2), 170–181.

Keinert, W. & Ötschmann, K. (2001). Vom SCM zum e-Service-Chain Management. *Computer@Production*, (3), 68–69.

Kilger, C. & Holtkamp, R. (2001). Koordinierung von Dienstleistungen und Material mit eBusiness- und Supply-Chain-Management-Technologien. In W. Dangelmaier, U. Pape, & M. Rüther (Eds.), *Die Supply Chain im Zeitalter von E-Business und Global Sourcing* (pp. 373–388). Paderborn: Fraunhofer-Anwendungszentrum für Logistikorientierte Betriebswirtschaft and Heinz-Nixdorf-Institut.

Kilger, C. & Stahuber, A. (2002). Integrierte Logistiknetzwerke in der High Tech-Industrie. In H. Baumgarten, H. Stabenau, & J. Weber (Eds.), *Management integrierter logistischer Netzwerke* (pp. 477–506). Bern: Haupt.

Kouvelis, P., Chambers, C., & Wang, H. (2006). Supply chain management research and production and operations management: Review, trends, and opportunities. *Production and Operations Management, 15*, 449–469.

Landeros, R. & Monczka, R. (1989). Cooperative buyer/seller relationships and a firms competitive posture. *Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management, 25*(3), 9–18.

Rebstock, M. (2001). Elektronische Unterstützung und Automatisierung von Verhandlungen. *Wirtschaftsinformatik, 43*(6), 609–617.

Scheckenbach, B. (2009). *Collaborative Planning in Detailed Scheduling*. Ph.D-thesis.

Shirodkar, S. & Kempf, K. (2006). Supply chain collaboration through shared capacity models. *Interfaces, 36*(5), 420–432.

Smaros, J. (2003). Collaborative forecasting: A selection of practical approaches. *International Journal of Logistics, 6*(4), 245–258.

Stadtler, H. (2009). A framework for collaborative planning and state-of-the-art. *OR Spectrum, 31*(1), 5–30.

Tempelmeier, H. (2012). *Bestandsmanagement in Supply Chains* (4th ed.). Norderstedt: Books on Demand.

VICS (2004). Collaborative planning, forecasting and replenishment: an overview. http://www.gs1us.org/DesktopModules/Bring2mind/DMX/Download.aspx?PortalId=0&TabId=56&EntryId=631. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Part III

Implementing Advanced Planning Systems

The Definition of a Supply Chain Project

15

Christoph Kilger

Supply Chain Management aims at improving competitiveness of the supply chain as a whole, by integrating organizational units along the supply chain and by coordinating material, information and financial flows in order to fulfill (ultimate) customer demands (Sect. 1.1). Supply Chain Management projects range from functional improvements on the IT level to large-scale change programmes. Functional improvements might be the introduction of a new forecasting method or the adjustment of the master planning optimization profile. Examples for larger SCM projects are the optimization of the supply chain network, the redesign of the planning processes or the adjustment of the business strategy based on SCM concepts. In either case, the goal of SCM projects is to improve competitiveness of the supply chain.

In recent years since the peak of the e-business hype Supply Chain Management and especially Advanced Planning Systems were viewed more and more critically by industry firms, as many SCM projects failed or did not realize the promised business value. There are three reasons for that.

The first reason for the failure of SCM projects is the perception "that the more you spend on IT (e.g. APS) the more value you will get from it" (Willcocks et al. 2001). This attitude leads to technical capabilities searching for business problems to be solved. The role of IT (and APS) was clearly over-estimated in the past as the single source of business value. In order to get "value" out of an APS implementation the SCM concept must be formulated prior to the APS implementation. The SCM concept defines the needs and priorities for the APS implementation; the APS supplies advanced planning functionality to be utilized by the SCM concept. For example, the SCM concept describes the network

---

C. Kilger (✉)
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8,
66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: christoph.kilger@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__15,

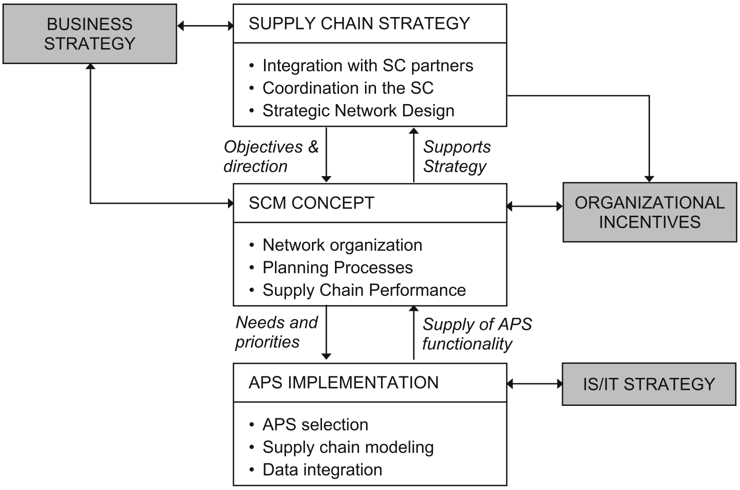


Fig. 15.1 Strategic SCM framework (adapted from Ward and Peppard 2002)

organization, the planning processes and the supply chain performance targets and indicators.

A second reason for the failure of SCM projects in the past is an inadequate alignment of the SCM concept with the supply chain strategy. Many decisions that have to be taken as part of SCM projects have a direct impact on the supply chain strategy (i.e. support the strategy or not) and must therefore be aligned with the supply chain strategy. Examples are the integration with supply chain partners, coordination and leadership in the supply chain and the results from strategic network design. The supply chain strategy sets the objectives and the direction for the SCM concept; the SCM concept must support the supply chain strategy. The supply chain strategy itself must be derived from the overall business strategy and may influence the business strategy. Further, decisions about organizational incentives (e.g. profit sharing, management bonus) for the supply chain participants must be aligned with the supply chain strategy and concept. Note that the APS implementation layer must be aligned with the information systems and information technology strategy (IS/IT strategy). In particular, the selection of an APS vendor is governed by the IS/IT strategy (see also Chap. 16). The relationship between business/supply chain strategy, SCM concept, organizational incentives, APS implementation and IS/IT strategy is depicted in Fig. 15.1.

A third reason for the success or failure of SCM projects is found in the organizational and managerial culture of industry firms. Based on our experience from many SCM projects six management practices are important prerequisites to make SCM projects successful. These practices were also described in a study by Collins (2001) of 11 large companies that consistently and massively outperformed their competitors over a decade or more:

- A mature and strong leadership
- A focus on people and their strengths and skills
- An ability to confront the brutal facts without losing faith in the end goal
- A clear and well-formulated business strategy, backed by a viable financial model, passion and ability to be world class in delivering the idea
- A culture of discipline
- Seeing technology as an accelerator of business performance rather than a single cause of momentum and breakthrough.

The initial phase of a SCM project must deliver a thorough understanding of the current situation, potential improvement areas and associated risks. Section 15.1 describes the phases of a supply chain evaluation process. Further, it describes the functional areas of a supply chain that have to be examined in order to make an initial assessment of the current structure and performance of the supply chain. The supply chain evaluation answers the question *Where are we today?*

Based on the business strategy and the results from the supply chain evaluation the improvement areas in the supply chain are identified. These are mapped to SCM concepts capable of improving the supply chain performance. To-be APS models are designed supporting the SCM to-be concept, and the related benefits are described and quantified—with the help of logistical and financial *key performance indicators* (KPIs). In particular, the impact of *external factors* influencing the performance of the supply chain can be attenuated by SCM concepts, as closer integration and coordination enables quicker and optimized reactions to external changes. This phase—Supply Chain Potential Analysis—is described in Sect. 15.2, and answers the question *Where do we want to go?*

In the last step of the definition of a SCM project the total scope of the project is broken down into smaller sub-projects, each of those having a specific business objective. The sub-projects are time-phased according to a high-level implementation plan. Benefits and implementation costs are time-phased based on the implementation plan, resulting in a business case and a return on investment calculation for the SCM project. Section 15.3 describes the procedure to create a project roadmap, answering the question *How do we get there?* All three phases together—supply chain evaluation, potential analysis, and roadmap—constitute a systematic approach to defining a supply chain project (see Fig. 15.2).

15.1 Supply Chain Evaluation

The supply chain evaluation is structured according to the functional areas of the supply chain organization, including executive management, the IT function, suppliers, customers and competitors. The following paragraphs discuss topics that have to be clarified with the various functional entities in an organization before entering an APS implementation project. Figure 15.3 shows the structure of a supply chain evaluation.

To get an initial overview of the supply chain, the SCOR methodology can be applied as part of the supply chain evaluation. With SCOR, the logistical structure of

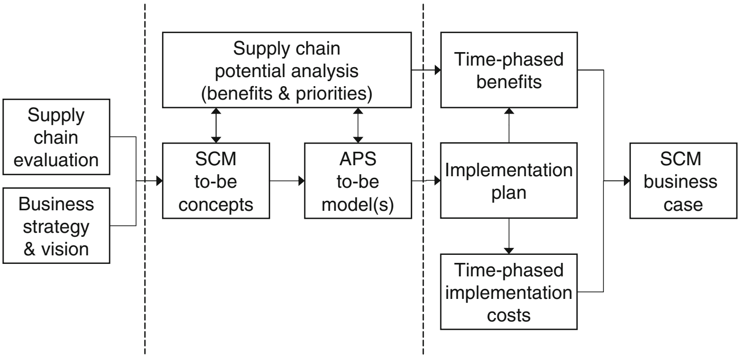


Fig. 15.2 Structuring the phases of a SCM project definition

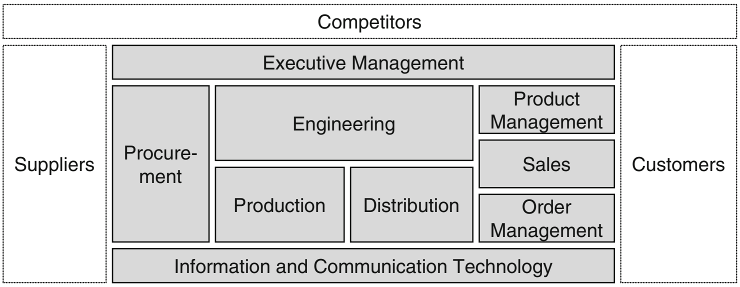


Fig. 15.3 Participants of a supply chain evaluation

the supply chain can be visualized using Supply Chain Threads, and the processes of the supply chain can be documented by mapping them to SCOR process categories on level 2. For details on the SCOR methodology and further techniques for analyzing supply chains refer to Chap. 2.

Another tool that has proven to be helpful in the early stage of SCM projects is the lead time analysis of supply chain decisions shown in Fig. 15.4. On the right hand side of the figure the typical distribution of customer orders on hand—based on their due date and the number of orders or the order quantities—is shown over time. On the left hand side the lead time of decisions that have to be taken prior to order fulfillment is depicted. For example, if the procurement lead time of some material is 4 weeks, assembly lead time is 1 week and distribution and transportation lead time is also 1 week, the procurement decision must be taken 6 weeks in advance before customer orders using that material can be fulfilled. This analysis helps to understand the position of the decoupling point in the supply chain which is an important indicator for many decisions related to Supply Chain Management, in particular the need for planning processes. The lead time analysis is conducted with the help of interviews with order management, distribution, production and procurement—its purpose is to give a rough overview of the demand and supply lead times in the particular supply chain.

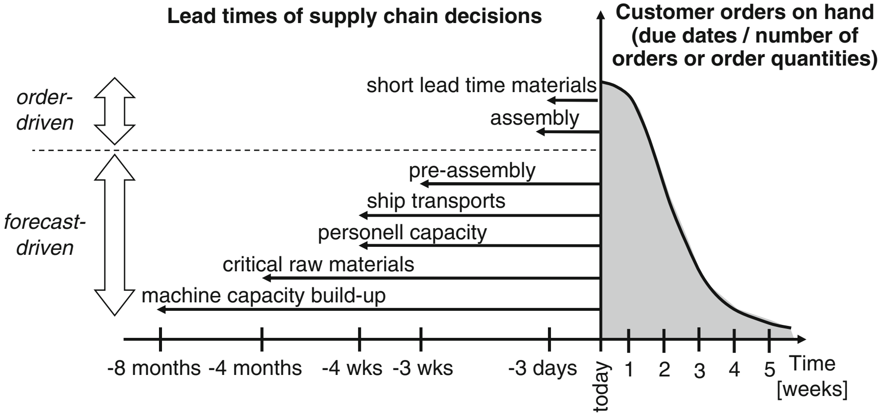


Fig. 15.4 Lead time analysis of supply chain decisions

Figure 15.4 shows an example of a lead time analysis. In this example procurement of materials with a short lead time and assembly operations can be executed order-driven, whereas the remaining supply decisions have longer lead times and—therefore—need to be executed driven by the forecast.

15.1.1 Executive Management

Executive management is an important information source related to strategic issues, cross-functional change programmes and the right target levels of the supply chain.

An example for a strategic decision related to Supply Chain Management is the creation of a new e-business sales channel in parallel to the existing sales channels (Kilger 2000). This decision will clearly influence the existing sales channels—direct sales via sales representatives as well as indirect sales via channel partners—and hence, has to be managed from the top. Another example is the question whether to enter an electronic marketplace on either side of the supply chain—suppliers or customers. In particular, if some marketplace is open to other companies, it is possible that competitors will participate as well in the marketplace. Thus, this decision must be aligned with the strategic differentiation from competitors and the targeted collaboration level with suppliers and customers, respectively.

Strategic decisions are long lasting decisions and have a big impact on all aspects of the business. They should be taken before entering a change program, as they influence the general direction and the initial scope of the SCM project. Furthermore, strategic decisions in a supply chain should be centered around a common vision of the supply chain participants (see Chap. 1 and Poirier 1999).

The second role of executive management is to enable the change of procedures across multiple functional areas and departments. Most planning processes stretch across multiple functional areas. It must be investigated how these planning processes are done currently and how management is enforcing the collaboration between the departments. Examples for cross-functional planning processes are demand planning and master planning. Executive management must break barriers between the departments, bridge gaps in understanding and enforce collaboration between the functional areas.

The third role of executive management is to set the target levels and organizational inventives for the functional areas and the departments. In many cases, the target definitions of the departments are not consistent or even contradictory. For example, procurement is responsible for keeping inventory levels low, order management has to guarantee a high due date performance and production must ensure a high utilization rate of the production equipment. All three have to collaborate in the master planning process and thus have to agree on uniform goals and targets for the master planning process. Executive management must approve the common master planning targets and make sure that all three departments work towards these targets. Conflicting targets are even more likely to occur if the APS project includes multiple partners in the supply chain, e.g. suppliers and customers.

15.1.2 Sales

The sales force is closest to the customers and thus can give input about the behavior of the customers, the market segments, the demand patterns per segment etc. Sales should be the owner of the demand planning process, resulting in an unconstrained demand plan representing future market demand. Important aspects to investigate are the planning frequency, the planning cycle time, the planning accuracy, the structure of the forecast (along the three forecasting dimensions product, geography and time) and issues like seasonal demand patterns, product cannibalism etc. (for details on the demand planning process see Chap. 7). Also the basic questions *What is being forecasted?* and *Who is giving input to the forecast* must be clarified. Often there is no common understanding of the definition of the forecast—which is a prerequisite for measuring the accuracy of the forecast against actuals and to setup a collaborative forecasting process, with input from sales, product management, production, procurement, management and customers. It must also be clarified who is committing to the approved forecast.

One common trap when talking to sales must be observed. In most companies, there is a central sales organization in the headquarter, and there are multiple sales organizations, e.g. regional sales offices. The sales representatives create the demand plan for their sales region. The regional plans are merged to one uniform demand plan by headquarter sales. When talking to sales it is important to distinguish between these two sales functions. As SCM projects are started by the headquarter, it is obvious that project activities focus on headquarter sales. However, it is very important also to involve the sales regions in the project from the beginning on, as the sales regions are closer to customers, and by that, have better knowledge about the customers' behavior and expectations. Further, changes in the forecasting procedures directly affect central sales operations and the sales regions.

15.1.3 Product Management and Engineering

Product management is responsible for the definition and the positioning of the product lines on the markets. Engineering is in charge of designing new products defined by product management. One important aspect of product management and engineering is the product life cycle management. Especially in industries where the product life cycles are short as in the high tech industry, product life cycle management directly impacts the performance of the supply chain. At the beginning and at the end of a product life cycle, supply and demand are difficult to predict, often leading to excess inventory and/or unmet demand. As an example consider the assembly of computers. Disk drives being one of the major components of a computer have an average product life cycle of 4 months—there are three product generations per year. Product management/engineering must align the product life cycles of their own products with those of the disk drives and make sure that all planning processes that are dependent on the supply of disk drives—e.g. demand planning, master planning, order promising and production scheduling—observe the product life cycles.

Secondly, product management and engineering gives input to postponement strategies (see also Chap. 1). Postponement helps to reduce marketing risk. Every differentiation which makes a product more suitable for a specified segment of the market makes it less suitable for other segments (Alderson 1957). Thus, differentiation has to be applied as late as possible in order to be able to react to demand from a large variety of market segments.

A third aspect of product management are marketing activities, e.g. marketing events, the definition of special product bundles or special product offers etc. Marketing activities may influence the demand plan by creating additional demand. All planning processes related to procurement, production and order fulfilment must be aligned with the marketing activities.

15.1.4 Procurement

All in-bound supply processes are executed by procurement. In many industries the supply lead-time (from procurement to shipment) is greater than the order lead-time. As a consequence raw materials must be ordered based on the forecast. In order to give the suppliers a forecast of what will be procured in the future, procurement forecasts the future purchasing decisions as part of master planning. In practice the following issues related to the supplier forecast are often apparent:

- *Gap between sales forecast and supplier forecast*: Theoretically, the sales forecast is the direct input to the supplier forecast. However, in many companies there are gaps between demand planning and master planning, the latter creating the supplier forecast. These gaps may be due to disconnected information systems or due to communication barriers within the company's organization (i.e. sales department and procurement department).

- *No feedback to sales about feasibility of the forecast*: In material constrained industries it is very important to get an early feedback from the suppliers whether they can fulfill the forecasted quantities. Especially in an allocation situation, where material is short in the market, the master plan will be constrained by the supply. In this case, sales should receive information about the supply they can expect (see also Chap. 14 about collaborative planning).
- *No clear representation of supplier flexibility*: In order to represent the supply capabilities of a supplier, a "flexibility funnel" can be defined, specifying—per time bucket—the lower bound of the quantities that have to be purchased and the upper bound of the quantities to which the supplier is bound by the terms and conditions of the supplier contract.
- *Accuracy of supplier forecast not being measured*: The supplier forecast accuracy measures the forecasted quantities against the actually procured quantities. The supplier forecast accuracy is a KPI for the procurement processes, as it steers the production of the procured materials at the suppliers' sites.

Besides the supplier forecast, the number of inventory turns (or average days of supply), the distribution of the inventory age and the on time delivery of suppliers are important KPIs indicating the performance level of the procurement processes.

15.1.5 Order Management

The management of customer orders gets more important as markets get more competitive. The responsibility of order management is to manage and control customer orders throughout the order life cycle, i.e. from the first customer inquiry to the delivery of an order. Order management is responsible for the creation of an initial order promise. Together with sales, order management defines specific allocation policies, allocating the feasible production supply to customer segments (allocated ATP—see Chap. 9).

If the supply, the capacity or the demand situation changes, orders have to be rescheduled in order to get a new feasible promise. In many organizations, orders are not rescheduled even if the situation has changed—leading to unrealistic order promises.

As products on global markets get more and more interchangeable due to comparable quality and features, the reliability as a supplier becomes more important—being measured by the customer service level. The customer service level is measured by three KPIs, the on time delivery, the order fill rate and the order lead-time (see Chap. 2). Besides the customer service level, the order volume, the average number of orders per day and the peak order entry rate are important measures of the order management processes.

15.1.6 Production

In industries with a complex production process and significant production lead-time, one of the most important performance criteria is the work-in-process (WIP) inventory level. Low WIP inventory levels have a positive impact on many related processes and performance indicators (Goldratt and Fox 1986):

- *Low WIP reduces production lead-time and increases on time delivery:* The production lead-time directly depends on the WIP level. The more material sits in the queue in front of a workstation the longer is the average queuing time, leading to a longer production lead-time. The variability of the production lead-time is increased if the queue in front of a workstation grows. This directly reduces the on time delivery, as it is more difficult to predict the exact production time and to confirm orders accordingly.
- *Low WIP improves quality of products:* In most industries production failures leading to quality problems occur in the early production steps, but are detected at later production stages (usually the testing operations). In order to improve the quality of the products, the quality of the whole process must be improved. If the WIP level is high the average lead-time is also high (see previous item). A long lead-time (induced by a high WIP level) may result in a long time lag between the actual producing operation and the final test operations. Thus, the test operation is reached a long time after the operation being responsible for the failure has terminated. Potentially the whole production process changed in the meantime, and the root cause of the quality problems cannot be determined—preventing an improvement of the process. Thus, the lower the WIP, the easier is the detection of quality problems in a complex production environment.
- *Low WIP speeds up time-to-market of new products:* As product life cycles get shorter, the importance of the time-to-market of new products grows. If the WIP level is high the production lead-time is also high—leading to a longer time to market. Furthermore, the old products that are still in production can often be sold only for a lower price. Thus, lower WIP enables a business to bring new products more quickly to market and to get a higher margin for their products.
- *Low WIP improves forecast accuracy:* The accuracy of the sales forecast depends on the input sales get from customers. In many industries a specific time window exists, and customers give their suppliers visibility of their demand within that window. This "window of visibility" is often derived from the average production lead-time of this industry—and thus depends on the WIP level. If actual production lead-time is below the average forecast accuracy will be high. If production lead-time is above the average forecast accuracy will be low as sales does not get an accurate demand signal outside the window of visibility. This increases the risk that purchasing will procure the wrong materials, production will start the wrong production orders, WIP levels increase even further.

Besides the WIP level, manufacturing lead-times, excess capacity, bottlenecks in production and sourcing decisions are further potential improvement areas.

15.1.7 Distribution

Distribution can give information about the distribution strategy, distribution and transportation planning processes, merge in transit operations, physical material flows and inventory levels at distribution centers (see also Chap. 12). It is important that these processes are synchronized with the demand (i.e. the customer orders) and with the production supply. One of the main issues found in distribution is the synchronization of the supply feeding multiple order line items that have to be shipped together. If the supply is not synchronized unnecessary inventory is build up, and the delivery of the complete order in time is jeopardized.

15.1.8 Coordination and Integration Technology

One root cause for disconnected planning processes is the extensive use of spreadsheets to support the planning processes:

- Spreadsheets maintain data locally; they do not enforce data consistency and data integrity. Thus, it is highly probable that planners use different data sets, leading to inconsistent planning results.
- Spreadsheets are highly flexible; they can easily be adapted to the needs of the individual planners. However, this flexibility leads to a continuous change of the spreadsheets, making it difficult for others to understand the planning process and the planning results.
- Spreadsheets are stored as individual files, limiting the integration with transaction systems (for loading historic sales, orders on-hand, etc.) and restricting the capabilities to exploit historic data as input to planning.
- Disconnected, spreadsheet based planning processes normally do not consider constraints, leading to planning results without checking feasibility.

Due to the sequential execution of the planning processes based on spreadsheets and the insufficient decision support functionality of spreadsheets planning cycles tend to be long, decreasing the quality of the planning results.

The second important aspect of integration technology is the availability of data (Kilger and Müller 2002). APS require highly accurate data, including data elements that are normally not maintained within spreadsheets. Even ERP systems like SAP R/3 and Peoplesoft do not maintain data at a level of detail as required for an APS. For example, the detailed product structure and geographic structure as needed by an APS to support forecasting is normally not maintained in spreadsheets or ERP systems. But also "standard" data like routings and BOMs are often not maintained in a quality requested by an APS—especially if no planning functionality has been employed that would need this data. The precise review of the available data and the data maintenance processes in place are important input to the supply chain evaluation.

15.1.9 Graphical Visualization of the Supply Chain

In order to make the communication with the supply chain experts in the organization more effective, graphical visualization techniques should be employed. Especially the visualization of the material and the information flows of the supply chain helps in the discussions with the various departments and is a good starting point for identifying constraints and/or improvement areas in the supply chain. Additional information to the operation and the material buffer representations of a supply chain flow model can be attached representing specific characteristics like vendor managed inventory, multi-plant sourcing, security stock levels, batch sizes, lead-times etc. If already possible in this step, all constraints in the supply chain should be identified in the model, as well as locations of inventory.

The next step in a supply chain evaluation would be to get an overview of the planning processes, e.g. *sales forecasting*, *master planning*, *production planning*, *distribution planning*, *detailed scheduling*. A simple process flow notation can be employed, showing sequential relationships between the individual planning processes, the IT systems (decision support systems, transactional systems, ERP systems) supporting the planning processes and the data flows between the IT systems. Chapter 4 gives an introduction to the various planning processes. The most important item to be checked is the integration of the planning processes. In many organizations, planning processes are performed sequentially and disconnected. Planning results of a former process step are not or only partially used as input to the subsequent steps. This leads to non-synchronized process chains and sub-optimal planning decisions.

15.2 Supply Chain Potential Analysis

Based on the results from the supply chain evaluation and the analysis of the business strategy potential improvement areas are identified and the initial scope of the project is defined. To achieve the improvements and related benefits specific SCM concepts are applied and to-be models for an APS implementation are designed. To-be SCM concepts include

- *Processes:* planning, execution, performance measurement
- *Organizational models:* intra-organizational and inter-organizational models (e.g. collaboration mode with supply chain partners)
- *Structure of the supply chain:* physical structure of the production and distribution network
- *IT support:* support from APS and other IT systems to support the intended to-be models.

The design of the to-be SCM concepts and the required APS-functionality to support these concepts must—even in this early phase—be mapped against the capability of the organizations participating in the supply chain and the project. As Willcocks et al. (2001) observe in the context of e-business initiatives, “people are at the heart of strategic transformation. [. . .] An essential part of the planning process is a detailed analysis of the current capabilities of the available resources. An assessment of the skills and competencies necessary to deliver and implement in a world where change is continuous and where the contribution of the IT department is measured as much by its intellectual capital as by the reliability of its systems." The capability of people must be assessed on two levels: On the project level and the operational level. On the project level, the question must be answered: *Do we have the right people and skills to improve business by applying SCM concepts?* On the operational level, the question is *Are our employees capable of operating the new system and work according to the new processes in their daily work?* Both questions must be answered positively before advancing with the project.

The SCM concepts that can be applied to improve business performance are described in detail in Part I; the APS modules to support these concepts are described in Part II of this book. In this chapter we focus on the *benefits* that can be created from SCM in an industrial organization.

15.2.1 Financial Performance Indicators

Following Goldratt and Fox (1986), the goal of an industrial organization (or supply chain) is to be profitable and to improve earnings (defined as revenue minus cost of sales, operating expenses and taxes). Financial benefits can be measured in three ways. *Net profit* is an absolute measurement of making money. However, if we know that a company earns $ 20 million a year, we cannot tell whether this is a good or a bad performance—as the performance of a company depends on the money that has been invested in the business.

In the business environment at the beginning of the third millennium the performance of a business relative to the invested capital is in the focus of managers and shareholders. The term *shareholder value* is ubiquitous. The *return on capital employed (ROCE)* is "a measure of the returns that a company is realizing from its capital. ROCE is calculated as profit before interest and tax divided by the difference between total assets and current liabilities. The resulting ratio represents the efficiency with which capital is being utilized to generate revenue" (InvestorWords 2014). The invested capital consists of multiple components, e.g. cash, receivables, inventories, property, buildings, equipment and liabilities. SCM concepts mainly affect the assets, not the financial components of the invested capital like debts and equity. That is why from a Supply Chain Management perspective the *return on assets (ROA)* is often used as relative business performance measure instead of the ROCE.

The third measurement of the financial performance of a business is the *cash flow*. "Cash flow equals cash receipts minus cash payments over a given period of time; or equivalently, net profit plus amounts charged off for depreciation, depletion and amortization" (InvestorWords 2014). Cash Flow is rather a short-term measure of a company's financial health than a long term performance indicator.

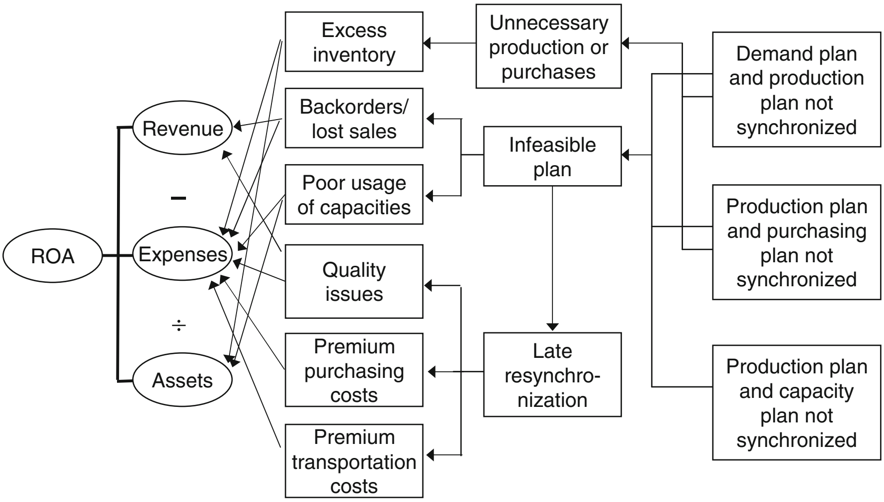


Fig. 15.5 Impact of SCM planning on the ROA

15.2.2 Return on Assets

In the following, we focus on the return on assets as the bottom line performance measure. A common definition for the ROA is as follows (InvestorWords 2014):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ROA} &= \frac{\text{Earnings}}{\text{Assets}} \\ &= \frac{\text{Revenue} - \text{Cost of Sales} - \text{Operating Expenses} - \text{Taxes}}{\text{Assets}} \end{aligned} \tag{15.1}$$

Revenue is all the money the customers pay for the offered products and services. Cost of Sales—also called Cost of Goods Sold (COGS)—equals the cost of purchasing raw materials and manufacturing finished products. Operating Expenses are expenses arising in the normal course of running a business. Assets include all equipment and material that is involved in turning inventory into sales. On a balance sheet, assets are equal to the sum of liabilities, common stock, preferred stock and retained earnings.

In order to evaluate the benefits from SCM, we have to analyze how revenue, costs/expenses and assets can be improved by SCM concepts. Figure 15.5 gives examples of how SCM planning capabilities impact the ROA.

15.2.3 External Variability

Let us illustrate the impact of poor planning capabilities on the ROA by means of an example (adapted from Kilger 1998). Figure 15.6 shows a supply chain with

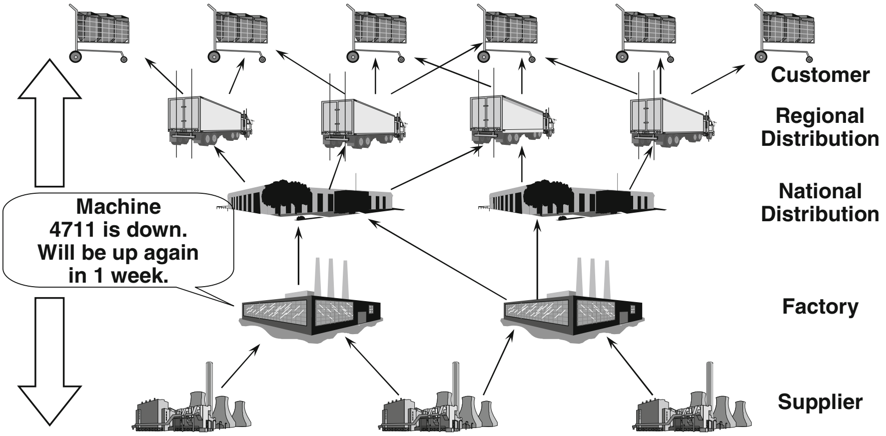


Fig. 15.6 Propagation of changes in a supply chain

suppliers, factories, national and regional distribution centers and customers. For example, let us assume that in one factory a machine goes down and due to the service required the machine will be up again in 1 week. An ERP system would adapt the schedule of that machine accordingly and move out all manufacturing orders that are impacted by the change. But what is the impact of the downtime of that machine on the ROA of the complete supply chain? In order to answer that question the new situation has to be propagated upstream and downstream:

- *Upstream:* Due to the machine downtime of 1 week manufacturing orders have been moved out and the required raw material will be consumed later. The supplier can peg this material potentially to other customers (factories) and thus make revenue elsewhere.
- *Downstream:* The national distribution center receiving the finished goods 1 week later may run into a stockout situation, if the supply that is now delayed is required to fulfill all customer orders on time. This would reduce revenue and increase inventory (assets) and expenses.
- *Planning scenario:* In order to assess whether the plan at the national distribution center can be re-optimized a planning scenario is created to check whether the national distribution center may receive the short material from an alternate factory. This potentially can help to ship the orders in time, by that securing revenue.

This example indicates that the performance of a supply chain is to a large extent influenced by external disturbances and external variability. Thus, in order to assess the potential benefits of SCM concepts and an APS implementation, focus should be laid on the impact of external factors on the ROA components—revenue, expenses and assets. It is interesting to note that transaction systems like Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems (SAP R/3, Peoplesoft, etc.) focus rather on the internal processes than on the external factors influencing the ROA. For example,

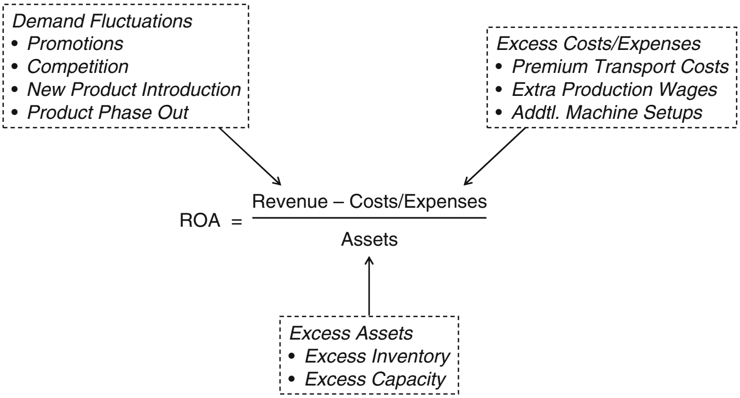


Fig. 15.7 Impact of external variability on the ROA

the MRP and production planning modules of an ERP system help to create an initial production schedule (that is often not feasible) and support the tracking of the material flow on the shop floor—but they do not provide simulation capabilities and problem resolution functions to quickly react to external changes.

In the following, we discuss examples illustrating the impact of external factors on demand, expenses/costs and assets (see also Fig. 15.7).[1]

15.2.4 Demand Fluctuations

The impact of external factors on the revenue is obvious as sales are generated by external customers. However, there are some specific situations in which it is particularly difficult to predict sales quantities:

- Promotional actions (reduced promotional prices, special product offerings, etc.) may create higher additional demand than planned for.
- Competition may attack in certain markets or in specific product areas, leading to an unexpected drop in demand.
- The introduction of new products may be more successful than expected and/or may cannibalize the demand for other products.
- The phase out of products may result in a demand drop of other products, as customers were used to buying both products together.

Fluctuations of demand directly impact revenue. In addition, they may have side effects on expenses and assets. For example, introducing a product in a new regional market costs money due to marketing activities. If the resulting demand is not properly planned or if it is not properly supplied (as other product/market combinations are more profitable or are prioritized for other reasons), the additional demand will

---

[1] The examples are partially based on discussions with Sidhu (1999).

not be transformed into additional revenue—but the additional expenses have been spent.

15.2.5 Excess Expenses/Costs

Expenses are partially controlled internally and partially externally. In every industry there is a cost segment that is determined by the type of production. For example, computers are assembled in a similar way all over the world: get all components you need and assemble them into the housing, test the device, pack it and ship it. The costs implied by this process are comparable across the computer industry and—more important—there is only a marginal impact of Supply Chain Management techniques on the internal production costs. However, there is a big impact of Supply Chain Management on the expenses determined by external factors and corresponding actions, being for example:

- Payment of premium air freight fare to get material because of late or short supply by the standard suppliers.
- Payment of extra production wages for subcontractor manufacturing in order to account for peak load situations due to additional demand or delayed production.
- Rescheduling of the production plan (including the need to pay overtime rates for the workers) because of short term additional demand or delayed supplies of material.
- Buying critical components on the spot market (e.g. processors, memory) for a higher price compared to the preferred supplier.

15.2.6 Excess Assets

The total value of assets in a supply chain can be split into "base assets" that are required for the production operations and "excess assets" that are being used to shield the supply chain from external variability. For example, excess inventories may exist for raw material, work in progress and finished goods. Excess inventories are used to buffer production from the demand variability of the market, and may lead to increased material costs due to

- Price reductions (e.g. the price of electronic components reduces by 2 % per week in the average)
- Obsolescences (i.e. components that cannot be sold on the market any longer because a better successor has been introduced to the market for the same price)
- Stock keeping costs
- Internal capital costs
- Material handling.

By better controlling the volatility in the supply chain, excess inventory may be reduced and business performance will increase. However, please note that some safety stocks will in most cases be required due to uncertainties that are "inherent" to the supply chain and may not be controlled (Chap. 7 gives an overview of safety stock policies). Further, the reduction of excess inventories may lead to an increased risk of capacity shortages and—as a consequence—to excess expenses as described in the previous section.

Excess capacity is built up in order to have sufficient capacity to cover peak load situations. Due to the interdependencies in a production system—a resource can start a production operation only if all preceding operations have been completed and all required raw material is available—the load variability of a resource increases with the number of preceding operations. Thus, load variability is higher the more downstream the resource is located, and—because of that—excess resources are often built up at the end—downstream—of the supply chain (this is typically the test area or the distribution network).

15.3 Project Roadmap

In the preceding section we have shown that external factors and external variability influence the financial performance of a supply chain. Especially demand fluctuations, excess expenses and excess assets have a negative impact on the ROA. SCM concepts supported by APS functionality enable a supply chain to quickly react to external changes and by that help to improve the ROA.

However, having identified improvement potentials related to revenue, expenses or assets does not necessarily tell how to realize these potentials. Which levers exist to create additional demand and transform this into additional revenue? What is the root cause of excess expenses or assets? Which SCM concepts can help? What module of an APS do I need? In case there are multiple things I can do to improve the ROA, how shall I prioritize?

15.3.1 Enabler-KPI-Value Network

In order to answer these questions and to create a project roadmap, the targeted financial improvements have to be related to concrete project activities. The bridge between these financial criteria and the project activities is formed by logistical KPIs. The following steps describe the way to define a SCM project roadmap by a value driven approach:

1. identify improvement potentials based on financial performance indicators (i.e. conduct a supply chain potential analysis as described in Sect. 15.2),
2. transform the targeted improvements of the financial indicators into targeted improvements of logistical KPIs, and
3. map the targeted improvements of the KPIs to SCM concepts and/or APS modules enabling the improvement.

As there are many SCM concepts and a broad range of APS functionalities—as described in detail in Parts I and II of this book—it is very important to start the definition of an APS implementation project from the value perspective, as indicated by steps 1–3 listed above. Starting the definition of an SCM project from the functional perspective bears the risk that the system gets overengineered, i.e. the system would contain many functions that do not necessarily help to improve the business performance.

For example, in the computer industry, order promising and production planning is normally constrained by the material supply and not by capacity. Thus, exploiting the finite capacity planning abilities of APS in order to improve the production scheduling process would not lead to a big business improvement. Following the three steps listed above, one could define the project scope as follows:

1. The main target of the project is to generate additional sales and to increase revenue.
2. Additional sales can be generated by improving the on time delivery. (This value proposition can be backed by industry benchmarks and interviews with the customers; refer to Chap. 2 for additional details.)
3. On time delivery can be improved by an APS by
    - Synchronization of purchasing decisions and order promising based on forecast/ATP
    - Creation of feasible master plans considering all constraints
    - Simulation of receipts according to different scenarios/rescheduling of orders in order to improve the short term production plan.

Thus, the focus of the project should be laid on forecasting, master planning and order promising, instead of production scheduling.

In general, the relationships between financial performance indicators, logistical key performance indicators and APS enablers form a complex network. The structure of the network strongly depends on the particular situation of the supply chain, its improvement potentials and the initial scope of the SCM project. Figure 15.8 shows an Enabler-KPI-Value network based on the example given above, connecting APS enablers with logistical KPIs and their relation to financial performance criteria. The arrows in the boxes indicate whether the value of the KPI or financial performance indicator will be increased (arrow upwards) or decreased (arrow downwards). A detailed description of logistical KPIs can be found in Chap. 2. Setting up one or—in complex situations—multiple Enabler-KPI-Value networks defines the framework for improvements, linking SCM and APS enablers with financial performance indicators by logistical KPIs. Each path through that network represents a logical relationship of an enabler, a KPI and a financial performance indicator. Usually, the enabler has a *positive* impact on the logistical KPI (e.g. reduction of order lead time or increase of inventory turns). In some cases an enabler may also have a *negative* impact on a KPI. For example, the creation of an optimized master plan may result in higher inventory (reducing the KPI inventory turns) if additional inventory is needed to buffer the supply chain against large demand peaks and to achieve a high service level. Negative implication of an enabler to a KPI is indicated by a dashed line (Fig. 15.8). Note that a negative implication of an enbabler should be compensated by a greater positive implication on some value component via other paths in the network—in order to assess this enabler as beneficial.

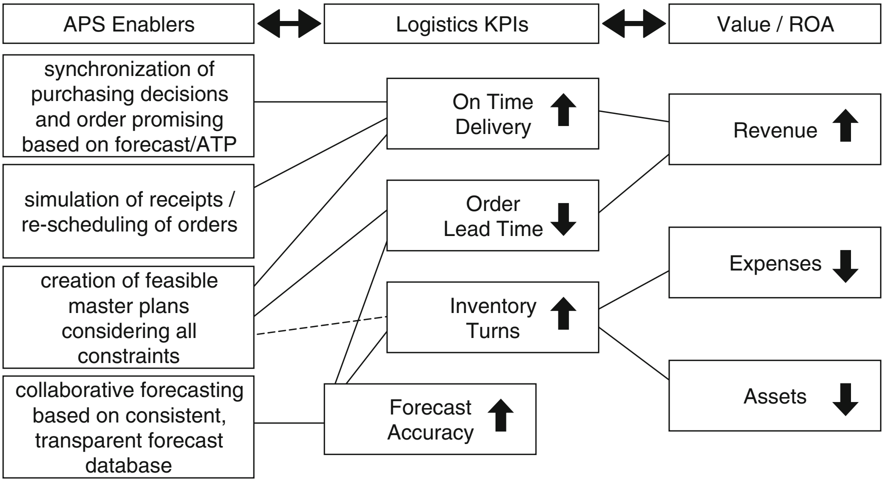


Fig. 15.8 Enabler-KPI-value network

15.3.2 KPI-Driven Improvement Processes

Having identified a collection of logistical KPIs that shall be improved the next step is to further detail the improvement. This is done by setting up a *KPI profile* for each of the KPIs. A KPI profile consists of the following constituents (Kilger and Brockmann 2002):

1. The first step is to determine the current as-is value of the KPI. This fixes the starting point of the targeted improvement activities and is the base for measuring the success of the project.
2. Then, the targeted to-be value of the KPI has to be set. This gives us the goal we want to reach by the project.
3. In the next step, the time horizon to reach the to-be KPI value is estimated. This can only be a rough estimate as a detailed project plan has not yet been created.
4. From the targeted improvements the enablers of APS that can help to reach the targets have to be determined, as well as additional influencing factors like process restructuring, reshaping the organizational structures, analyzing high-level data requirements etc. Especially process changes are required in most cases to realize the full benefit as expressed by the to-be KPI value.
5. Based on the as-is value, the to-be value, the estimated time horizon and the considered APS enablers, actual project activities are setup and implemented. It is important to note that each of these sub-projects have to generate business value in a given time period, by applying predefined APS enablers.
6. In order to enter a continuous improvement process, one can go back to step 1 and start the cycle again from a higher performance level.

Note that at this point in time, we are still in the definition phase of the project. The KPI profiles help breaking down the complete project scope into a sequence of sub-projects, each having a clear objective and a well-defined scope. By that we make sure that the definition of the sub-projects is value driven and not driven by the "nice functional features" of an APS—helping to prevent the system to get overengineered. The result of the project roadmap definition phase is a high level project plan, consisting of the identified sub-projects, including preliminary milestones and a first estimate of project schedule, resources and implementation costs. The targeted financial benefits and the implementation costs can be structured along the milestones and the project schedule, resulting into a cash flow series and an initial ROI calculation and business case for the project.

From the APS enablers that are used in the KPI profiles a requirements list for the selection of an APS can be derived. In the next chapter we focus on the selection process of Advanced Planning Systems—with the requirements list being one major input to the APS selection. However, despite the fact that APS are providing advanced planning capabilities that may help to improve business, it is important to realize that additional measures have to be taken to achieve the full business objectives as documented by the KPI profiles. Especially process changes and the provision of additional data for the APS are required in most cases and should be roughly planned already at this stage.

References

Alderson, W. (1957). *Marketing behavior and executive action*. Homewood, IL: R. D. Irwin.

Collins, J. (2001). *Good to great* (1st ed.). New York: HarperBusiness.

Goldratt, E., & Fox, R. (1986). *The race*. Croton-on-Hudson: North River Press.

InvestorWords (2014). http://www.investorwords.com. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Kilger, C. (1998). Optimierung der Supply Chain durch Advanced Planning Systems. *Information Management & Consulting*, *13*(3), 49–55.

Kilger, C. (2000). Supply-based eBusiness: Integration von eBusiness und Supply Chain Management. In W. Dangelmaier, W. Felser (Eds.), *Das reagible Unternehmen* (pp. 74–86). Paderborn: Heinz-Nixdorf-Institut.

Kilger, C., & Brockmann, K. (2002). Supply chain detectives in der high tech industrie. In W. Dangelmaier, A. Emmrich, & D. Kaschula (Eds.), *Modelle im E-Business* (pp. 139–154). Paderborn: Fraunhofer-Anwendungszentrum für Logistikorientierte Betriebswirtschaft und Heinz-Nixdorf-Institut.

Kilger, C., & Müller, A. (2002). *Integration von Advanced Planning Systemen in die innerbetriebliche DV-Landschaft*. In A. Busch, & W. Dangelmaier (Eds.), *Integriertes Supply Chain Management* (pp. 213–234). Wiesbaden: Gabler.

Poirier, C. (1999). *Advanced supply chain management: How to build a sustained competitive advantage*. San Francisco: Berrett-Kochler Publishers.

Sidhu, S. (1999). Private conversation.

Ward, J., & Peppard, J. (2002). *Strategic planning for information systems* (3rd ed.). Chichester: John Wiley.

Willcocks, L., Petherbridge, P., & Olson, N. (2001). *Making IT count*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann.

The Selection Process

16

Christoph Kilger and Ulrich Wetterauer

In the last decade Advanced Planning Systems became a relatively mature software technology. Many major software vendors—especially the providers of ERP systems like SAP (Dickersbach 2009) and Oracle (Siddiqui 2010)—invested in APS technology and provide now a broad spectrum of APS modules and functionality.

One of the first Advanced Planning Systems was OPT that was implemented end of the 1980s (Schragenheim and Ronen 1990; Silver et al. 1998). OPT is based on the *Theory of Constraints* (Goldratt 1990), stipulating that the constraints of a production system have to be represented in detail in a planning system in order to exploit and to control its performance. The software vendor of OPT—STG Holdings Inc.—was acquired by Manugistics in 2001, which was acquired by JDA in 2006. Since 2005, more than 20 acquisitions of APS vendors could be counted. Twelve of these took place between 2010 and 2013. There is a continuous consolidation of the APS market on-going. Figure 16.1 gives an overview of the acquisitions of major APS providers of the last 15 years. The APS vendors included in Fig. 16.1 were selected according to a high degree of coverage of the APS functionality as defined by the supply chain planning matrix (see Fig. 4.3 on p. 77).

The major players in the SCM software arena are SAP, Oracle, JDA, Ariba, and Manhattan Associates. In 2012, these five software vendors together had a share of 49 % of worldwide SCM software revenues. In 2012, SAP took over Ariba, increasing the gap in SCM related revenue between Oracle and SAP. In 2012 SAP had a market share of 21 %, being followed by Oracle with a market share of 17 %.

C. Kilger (✉)
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8,
66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: christoph.kilger@de.ey.com

U. Wetterauer
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Willy-Brandt-Platz 5, 68161 Mannheim,
Germany
e-mail: ulrich.wetterauer@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__16, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2015

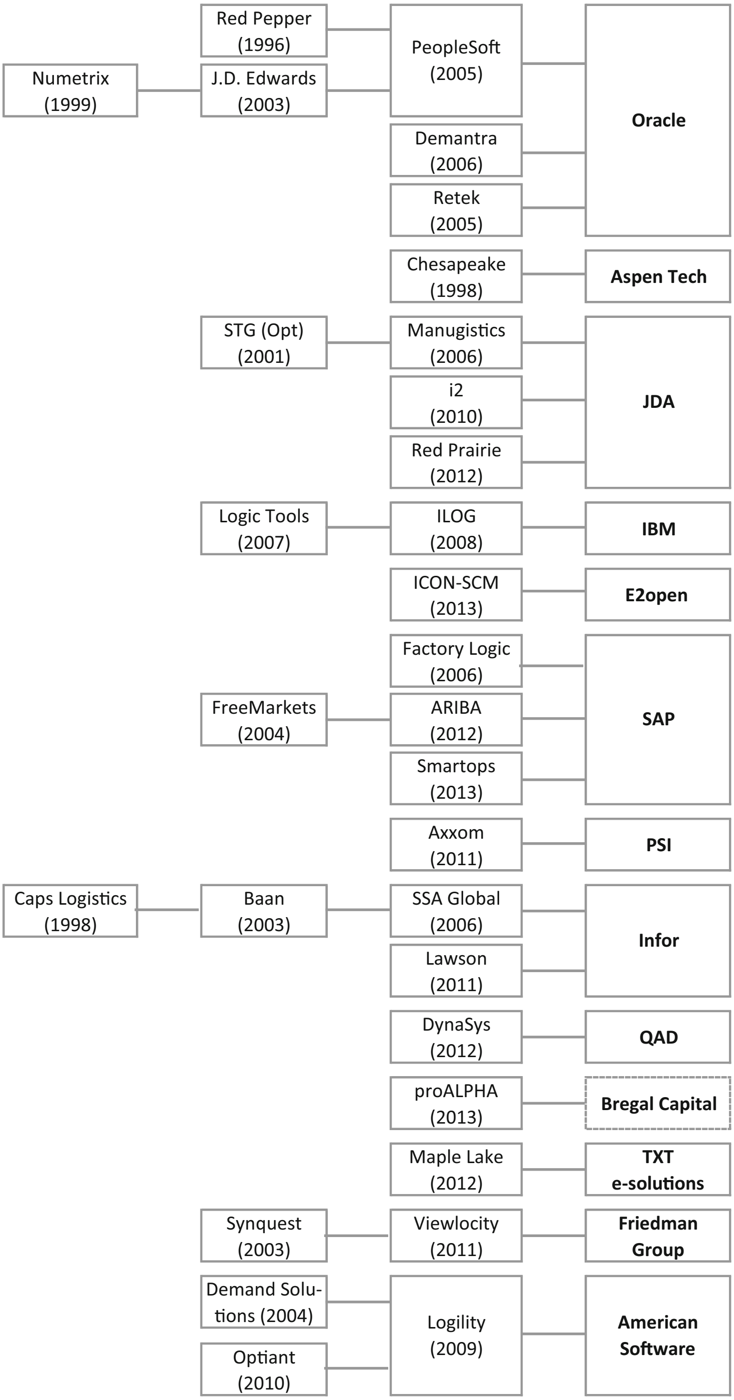
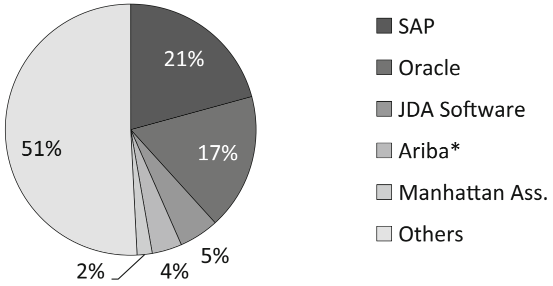


Fig. 16.1 Overview of acquisitions of APS vendors since 1996



Company	2012		2011		2011-2012
	Revenue	Market Share (%)	Revenue	Market Share (%)	Growth (%)
SAP	1.721	20,8	1543	19,9	11,6
Oracle	1.453	17,5	1297	16,7	12,1
JDA Software	426	5,1	430	5,6	- 1,0
Ariba*	319	3,8	367	4,7	- 13,0
Manhattan Ass.	160	1,9	142	1,8	13,2
Others	4.216	50,9	3115	51,3	20,4
Total	8.296	100,0	6893	100,0	7,1

* Ariba's estimates represent nine months of business operations before its acquisition by SAP.

Fig. 16.2 Top five SCM software vendors by total software revenue, worldwide 2012 (millions of dollars) (Gartner 2013)

JDA is number three with a market share of 5 %, being the largest supply chain focused software vendor. Figure 16.2 shows the market volume and market share 2011 and 2012 of the top five SCM software vendors as published by Gartner (2013).

Besides the top five (after the acquisition of Ariba by SAP: top four) software vendors, there are still many small to mid-sized software vendors on the market; mainly in specific market niches. The potential user has a large variety of systems to choose from, and in many cases, a clear indication which system to buy and implement is not at hand. Thus, a systematic approach for the selection of an APS is required. The following four steps provide a guideline and a proven methodology for the selection of an APS:

1. Create a *short list of APS* based on parameters such as supported planning processes, industry specifics, information on the APS vendor companies, license fees and typical implementation time and effort for the APS (Sect. 16.1).
2. Assess the APS on the short list based on the *requirements* that have been collected in the definition phase of the APS project (see Chap. 15). Remove APS from the short list that do not fulfill the major requirements (Sect. 16.2).
3. Setup a detailed implementation plan including a refined estimate of the effort and the timelines for the *implementation and integration* of the APS (Sect. 16.3).
4. Compare the APS vendors based on their *post implementation effort and support model* (availability and costs for user support, service fees, release migration, etc.; Sect. 16.4).

The results from the requirements analysis, implementation and integration planning and the support model are consolidated, resulting in a ranking of the APS vendors. In the following sections we detail the selection methodology for the selection of an APS.

16.1 Creation of a Short List

In the early phase of the selection process the "strategic fit" of the APS with the targeted planning processes, the industry within which the supply chain is operating (as far as industry solutions are concerned), the budget targeted for the APS implementation project and the planned implementation time may be equally important as the features and functions. The assessment of the APS by these criteria cuts down the number of APS that have to be considered in the subsequent detailed analysis. By that, time and effort for the selection process can be reduced.

16.1.1 Planning Processes

Table 16.1 lists a range of APS vendors. The information about the selected APS as shown in Table 16.1 (and in the other tables of this chapter) is based on three APS market surveys:

1. The first study is a market survey of Supply Chain Management software conducted 2003 by the Supply Chain Management Competence & Transfer Center (Laakmann et al. 2003). Laakmann et al. compare 23 APS vendors and give detailed information about the individual modules of the 23 APS, grouped by vendor.
2. The second study is a market survey focusing on SCM solutions for the medium-sized businesses conducted by the Business Application Research Center (BARC), a spin-off from the Chair for Information Science at University of Würzburg (Albert et al. 2006). Albert et al. compare 14 APS vendors regarding planning philosophy and concept, functionalities and user friendliness.
3. As not all APS covering modules from the supply chain planning matrix were contained in these two studies, J & M Management Consulting conducted additional market surveys in 2007 and in 2013. These studies are based on information from a questionnaire that was filled in by the APS vendors directly and on internet research by the authors.

Note, that some of the APS vendors included in the first two studies were not included in this chapter, as the intersection of their functionality with the supply chain planning is too small, because the information that was available about the products of these vendors was not sufficiently detailed or because the APS vendors were acquired by other software vendors as shown in Fig. 16.1. The planning tasks that may be supported by an APS are summarized by the Supply Chain Planning Matrix. The columns in Table 16.1 represent APS software modules according to the SCP matrix (refer also to Fig. 5.1 on p. 100). In addition to the modules

Table 16.1 Planning processes covered by APS modules

	Strategic Network Design	Demand Planning	Master Planning	Demand Fulfilment/ATP	Production Planning & Scheduling	Distribution & Transport Planning	Collaborative Planning	Alert Management	
Adexa		●	●	●	●		●	●	J&M 2013
American Software		●	●	○	○	●	●	●	J&M 2013
Aspen Tech		●	●	○	●	●	●	●	J&M 2013
Friedman Group	○		●	○	●	●	●	●	J&M 2013
IBM	●	○	●	●	○	●	○	●	J&M 2013
Infor		●	●		●	●	○	●	J&M 2013
Inform	○	●	●	●	●	●	○	●	J&M 2013
JDA	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	J&M 2013
Manhattan Assoc.	○	●	○			○	●	●	J&M 2013
OM Partners	○	●	●	●	●	●			J&M 2013
Oracle	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	J&M 2013
ORsoft	○	○	●	●	●		○	○	J&M 2013
proAlpha		○	●	●	●		○		Albert et al. (2006)
PSI	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	J&M 2013
QAD		●	●	○	●	●		○	J&M 2013
Quintiq	○		●	●	●	●	●	●	J&M 2013
SAP		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	J&M 2013
TXT e-solutions		●	●	●	●	○	●		Albert et al. (2006)
Wassermann	○	●	○	●	●		●	●	J&M 2013

● Core functionality of software vendor
○ Additional functionality of software vendor

shown in Fig. 5.1 we included two further processes: Alert Management (Chap. 13) and Collaborative Planning (Chap. 14). For each software vendor, information is provided how the functionalities of the APS software modules are included in the product offering of that vendor, e.g. whether an APS software module is considered to be core functionality (indicated by a "•") or additional functionality of the respective software suite (indicated by a "○"). An empty field means either that no information was provided by the vendor, or that this functionality is not covered by the APS.

16.1.2 Industry Focus and Experience

The supported industry sectors are important selection criteria for APS, as some vendors have specific expertise in certain industries, supporting the planning processes of these industries better than other vendors. The manufacturing processes, the used terminology, the business rules, the planning processes, the optimization procedures and the reporting requirements strongly differ across industries (Felser et al. 1999). Although the main APS vendors have substantial credentials in almost all industry sectors, for a number of reasons APS vendors often have a focus on one or two specific industry sectors, for example:

- The engineers that are responsible for the design and the implementation of the system already had experience in these industries.
- The first successful implementations were installed in these industries.
- For strategic reasons the APS vendor is focusing on these industries.
- Specific planning features are a prerequisite for specific industries. Unless there are potential clients no effort is spent to include these features in the APS.

Some of the APS vendors launch implementation initiatives for specific industries, trying to extend the scope of their expertise to a new area.

The main improvement areas of an APS implementation strongly depend on the type of industry and the type of the supply chain according to the supply chain typology, respectively (refer to Chap. 3). See Chap. 4 for a description of the dependency between industry specific planning tasks and the supporting planning concepts and methods. In distribution intensive industries, the main potentials are in the optimization of the distribution and transportation operations, including the deployment of supply and the reduction of inventory. In asset intensive industries, major improvements are possible by the optimization of the throughput, the detailed scheduling of the capacity bottlenecks and the reduction of change over time. In material intensive industries forecasting and procurement decisions influence business performance and should be optimized by the APS. Table 16.2 gives an overview of the industries supported by the APS vendors.

A remark has to be made related to a metric, that is often used by software vendors to indicate experience in certain industries: the number of installations. The procedure to measure the number of installations strongly depends on the APS vendor. Some vendors take only the number of sites that are supported by their APS, others count all installations of individual APS modules separately, leading to a larger number of installations. Furthermore, some vendors consider any installation, whether productive or in an early implementation stage, whereas others consider only installations where the customer has announced that the system is being used productively. Thus, it should be defined precisely by the vendor how the number of installations is being measured.

16.1.3 Information on the APS Vendor Companies

Besides the supported planning processes and the industry focus, information on the APS vendor companies are important for the selection process to be able to identify a reliable business partner. Table 16.3 lists the following information:

- The year the company entered the APS market
- Number of employees

Table 16.2 Industry focus and experiences of APS vendors

	Aerospace & defense	Automotive	Clothing/apparel	Consumer packaged goods	Electronics/high tech	Food & beverage	Logistics service providers	Pharma/chemicals/petroChem	Semiconductor	Machinery	Retail	Paper & metals
Adexa	○	○	●	●	●	○			●	●		
American Software			○	●	●	●	●	●			●	
Aspen Tech				●		●		●				
Friedman Group	●	●		●	●	○	●	●		○		
IBM	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Infor	○	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	●	●	
Inform	●	●	○	●	○	●	○	●	○	●	○	●
JDA	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Manhattan Assoc.			○	○	●	●	●	●		○	●	
OM Partners		○	○	●	○	●		●				●
Oracle	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
ORsoft	○	○	○	○	○	●		●	○	●		○
proAlpha				●	●	○				●	○	
PSI	○	●	○	○	○	●	●	○		○		●
QAD		○		●	●	○		●		●		
Quintiq	○		●			●	●	●				●
SAP	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
TXT e-solutions			●	●	●	●					●	
Wassermann	○	●	○	●	●	○		●		●		○

● Numerous references available for this industry sector
○ Limited number of references available for this industry sector

- Revenue of the year 2012
- Link of the vendor's website.

Note that, as mentioned before, many APS vendor companies went through a series of mergers and acquisitions, making the historic information difficult to interpret and compare.

16.1.4 License Fees

Typically, the size of the customers of an APS vendor also relates to the license fees. Whereas APS vendors with larger customers tend to be in the upper price

Table 16.3 Information on APS vendor companies

	Year of APS market entry	Number of employees	Revenue 2012	Website
Adexa	1994[1]	150 [1]	274 m $ [1]	www.adexa.com
American Software	1996	na	102 m $	www.amsoftware.com
Aspen Tech	1984	1,325	243 m $	www.aspentech.com
Friedman Group	2011	na	na	www.friedman-group.com
IBM	na	430,000	104 bn $	www.ibm.com
Infor	na	12,400	2.8 bn $	www.infor.com
Inform	1980s	450	50 m euro	www.inform-software.de
JDA	1978	4,600	> 1 bn $	www.jda.com
Manhattan Assoc.	1989	2,400	376 m $	www.manh.com
OM Partners	1985	250	> 31 m $	www.ompartners.com
Oracle	1990	120,000	37 bn $	www.oracle.com
ORsoft	1990	67	8 m €	www.orsoft.net
proAlpha	1995	528	58.8 m €	www.proalpha.de
PSI	2011	1,590	181 m €	www.psi.de
QAD	2012	na	252 m $	www.qad.com
Quintiq	1997	750	60 m €	www.quintiq.com
SAP	1998	65,000	16 bn €	www.sap.com
TXT e-solutions	1989	580	47 m €	www.txtgroup.com
Wassermann	2004	na	na	www.wassermann.de

[1] For Adexa, no up-to-date information was available. Therefore, we used the last information available from 4th edition

segment, the APS vendors with small and medium sized customers are more often found in the lower price segment. In many cases, the license fees are determined based on the number of users and the expected business benefits created by the implementation of the APS—measured by KPI improvements as described in Chap. 15. The license fees should match the expectations and the targeted budget of the APS implementation project. However, it is often difficult to get information about the pricing model applied by the APS vendors without entering actual contract negotiations.

16.1.5 Implementation Time and Costs

Besides the supported planning processes, the industry focus and the general vendor information and license fees, the typical implementation time and costs should be considered. From this, an estimate of the required use of internal resources as well as external consultants and experts from the APS vendor may be derived. The best information source to estimate the time and effort are reference projects in the same industry—or in related industries, as direct competitors most probably will not talk about their experiences. The APS vendors should provide a list with references where projects with a similar scope had been completed and set productive. A visit at one or several reference sites is strongly recommended at an early stage of the selection process in order to learn from the experiences that have been made with the APS vendor and its systems.

16.2 APS Requirements

The main result of the definition phase of the APS project has been the detailed requirements list (see Chap. 15). The list can contain more than 100 individual requirements; in order to be able to handle large numbers of requirements, these should be grouped according to the planning processes that are in the scope of the APS implementation project.

The SCP Matrix shown in Fig. 4.3 (p. 77) can be used to identify the planning processes that are to be supported by the APS, e.g. Demand Planning, Master Planning, Demand Fulfillment and Production Planning and Scheduling. All requirements should be assigned to one or multiple of the selected planning processes.

Although APS are a relatively mature software technology, covering all main functional areas, most systems are only partially developed with respect to the full functional scope announced by the APS vendors, especially as far as requirements of specific industries on a very detailed level are concerned. In some areas, the APS therefore have to be further developed, either by adding additional functionality, resolving issues within existing functionality or better integrating the functional modules. The latter issue—lack of integration—is especially a problem for APS vendors that have acquired another APS vendor in order to include the systems of that vendor into their own product suite. To reflect the coverage of the functional requirements and the plans of the APS vendors to further develop their systems, the following assessment scheme has been developed, consisting of five levels:

- *Level 1:* The functionality is not available; there is no plan to develop this functionality.
- *Level 2:* The functionality is not available; it is planned to develop this functionality in the future.
- *Level 3:* The functionality is partially available; there is no plan to develop this functionality further.
- *Level 4:* The functionality is partially available; it is planned to further develop this functionality in the future.
- *Level 5:* The functionality is currently fully available.

There are three options to evaluate the functional requirements according to these five levels. The easiest and fastest way to get an assessment is to hand over the detailed requirements list grouped by the planning processes to the APS vendors and ask them to provide a self-assessment of their respective systems. For requirements being evaluated to be at levels 2 and 4, a date for the availability of the future development must be provided by the APS vendor; for requirements being evaluated to be at levels 3 and 4, details about the degree to which the functionality is currently available must be provided by the APS vendor.

The second option is to ask the APS vendors to demonstrate the required functionality in a live demo. As this takes more time and effort than the first option—on both sides, the potential customer and the APS vendor—only key functionality should be selected for demonstration. Typically, the second option is combined with the first option: Based on the self-assessment of the APS vendor, critical functional requirements are selected to be shown in a live demo. In order to prepare this, the APS vendor can be asked to state for each functional requirement his ability to demonstrate that functionality, according to the following scheme:

Level A The functionality can be demonstrated with an existing demonstration set with less than 24 h lead-time.
Level B The functionality can be demonstrated, but requires changes to the standard demonstration models (no changes to the software).
Level C The functionality can be demonstrated at another customer's site.
Level D The functionality cannot be demonstrated easily.

The third option is to implement a prototype to assess in detail to what degree a specific functional requirement can be fulfilled by an APS. This of course creates additional effort and must be carefully planned. The following issues should be clarified before starting a prototype implementation:

- The scope and the target of the prototype must be clearly defined. Only critical functional requirements and interface issues should be prototyped. For example, the integration of the APS into an existing order entry system can be evaluated by implementing a prototype system.
- A data set for the prototype implementation may be generated or may be extracted from the operational systems, e.g. ERP-systems.
- A detailed project plan for the prototype implementation and a budget (cost and time) must be set up. This includes the decision of what portion of the effort is taken over by the APS vendor.
- In relation to this it must be decided which APS shall be included into the prototype implementation effort. Normally, the number of systems that are prototyped is restricted to one or two. Otherwise, too much effort is invested into development work that cannot be reused in the real implementation project after the selection process.

Based on the prototype implementation(s) it must be possible to answer all open questions that have been included in the scope of the prototype.

The results of the self-assessment by the APS vendors, the results of the system demonstrations and the results of the prototype implementation are summarized in a report on which the selection decision will be based.

16.3 Implementation and Integration

The estimated effort for the implementation of the system and the integration of the APS into the existing IT landscape has to be considered upon the selection of an APS, in order to match budget restrictions.

16.3.1 Implementation of the APS Functionality

The implementation tasks can be grouped into

- The modeling of the supply chain, including the definition of the locations, sites, material flows, operations, buffers, resources etc.
- The customization of the planning procedures and the optimization algorithms (e.g. the parameters of a scheduling heuristic)
- The setup of internal data structures and databases
- The realization of organizational changes
- The training and project management activities.

Typically, APS use specific modeling techniques and representations of the supply chain and employ system specific planning and optimization techniques. Thus, the implementation approach and the implementation effort strongly depend on the selected APS.

Based on the initial estimate of the implementation effort for each of the APS modules that are in the scope of the project, a rough-cut project plan is created. This is done for those APS that are on the top of the short list; in order to keep the planning effort low, the creation of rough-cut implementation schedules should be restricted to the top two or three systems. The plans have to account for the availability of the required APS functionality. If one of the vendors has announced that a specific functionality is available at a certain point in time, all related implementation tasks have to be moved out accordingly. In the next step, the functional implementation plan is extended by the required integration tasks.

16.3.2 Integration Technology

The integration approaches for APS range from vendor specific integration techniques to standard middleware systems (see Fig. 16.3 for an overview; a detailed description of integration and communication approaches for supply chain planning is given in Chap. 13).

There are three approaches to integration: Internal integration technology of the APS, special integration technology provided by the APS vendor, integration technology provided by third-party vendors. As an example for the first approach, SAP provides a tight integration of their Advanced Planning System APO into SAP's ERP system R/3 via the Core Interface (CIF), taking care of the exchange of master data, transactional data, and planning data between SAP R/3 and SAP APO.

As an example for the second approach, JDA provides its own middleware product *JDA Platform* that is open to a large variety of other systems including SAP, Oracle/PeopleSoft/JD Edwards, Microsoft Dynamics GP (Great Plains) and AX (Axapta) and Infor/SSA Global and provides a wide range of integration mechanisms, formats and protocols including flat file, table-to-table, tRFC, XML parsing, message queue processing, transactional exchange and web services. SAP

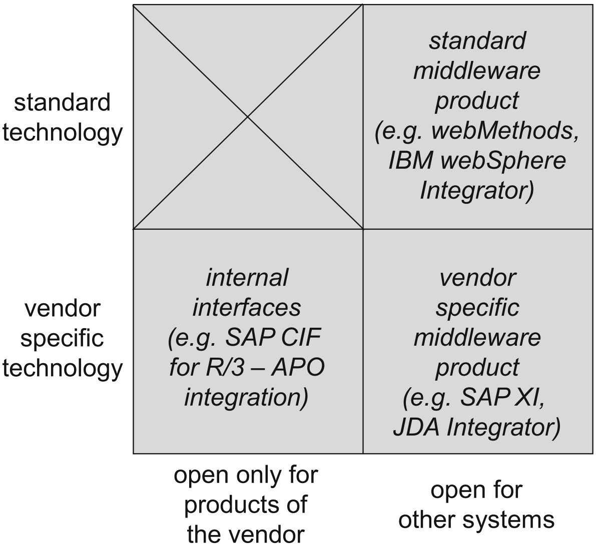


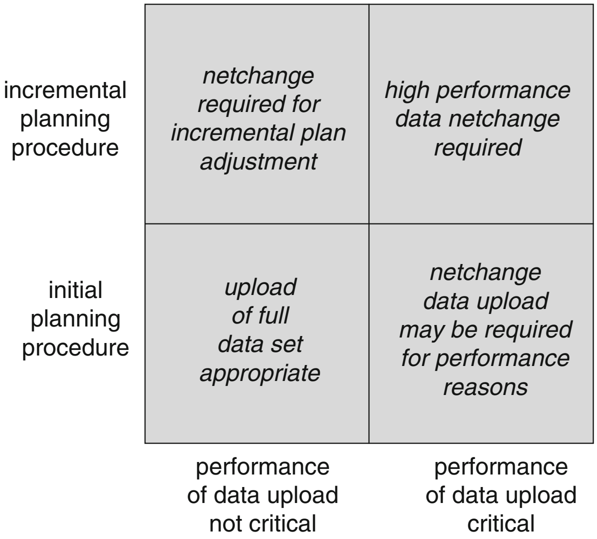
Fig. 16.3 Classification of APS integration technology

also provides an open integration tool SAP eXchange Infrastructure (XI) that is open for other systems.

Examples for the third approach, integration technology provided by third-party vendors, are Enterprise Application Integration (EAI) systems like webMethods or IBM webSphere Integrator (formerly CrossWorlds).

There are advantages and disadvantages for each of the three integration approaches. Internal interfaces like those between SAP R/3 and SAP APO are the easiest to implement. Base data and dynamic data are transferred between R/3 and APO via the internal interface without the need of further interface implementation. However, this holds true only for data *that is already maintained by the ERP system.* Data that is provided by external systems, for example a shop floor control system, requires extra interface programming. Furthermore, the aggregation of data required to map operational data from the ERP system to a master planning model is only partially supported (see also Chap. 8).

APS vendor specific middleware products are open to external systems. Interfaces between the APS and external systems are customized; programming is normally not required to setup the data transfer. Many integration systems use *mapping structures*, mapping the fields of a data source to the fields of a data target. For example, the source could be the master plan as maintained by the APS, the target could be a table in the ERP system. SAP provides a full EAI system called XI that is open to SAP and non-SAP systems. Standard middleware products and EAI systems provide a similar functionality as APS vendor specific middleware products, with the additional advantage that the system is not proprietary technology of the APS vendor, but is supported by a wider range of applications.



	performance of data upload not critical	performance of data upload critical
incremental planning procedure	*netchange required for incremental plan adjustment*	*high performance data netchange required*
initial planning procedure	*upload of full data set appropriate*	*netchange data upload may be required for performance reasons*

Fig. 16.4 Integration modes dependent on performance and planning process requirements

Both APS vendor specific and standard middleware products support the creation of *data interfaces* between a source and a target system very well. Aggregation and filtering rules can easily be implemented on top of these middleware products. But note that data integration is only the first step. In order to fully integrate an APS with other systems, the integration must be extended to the *functional level*. Consider as an example the transfer of the master plan from the APS to some ERP system. The transfer of the master plan into some table of the ERP system is just the first step. The full integration requires that appropriate transactions in the ERP system are invoked to further process the data. For example, demand data could be created in order to drive purchasing decisions within the MRP module based on the master plan (see also Chap. 11).

16.3.3 Integration Mode, Performance and Availability

Besides the integration technology, the integration mode has to be assessed. In general, a *full data upload* into the APS is distinguished from a *netchange of the data* (refer to Chap. 13). The decision whether upload of the full data set is acceptable or whether a netchange interface is required, depends on the planning processes that will be supported and on the performance of the data load (see Fig. 16.4).

If an initial plan is created and the performance of the data upload is not critical, a full data upload is appropriate. If performance is critical or if the planning process incrementally maintains a plan, only the changes of the data have to be uploaded into the APS. Some APS like SAP APO even provide an online interface between the APS and the ERP system. For example, new production orders and changes to existing production orders are continuously transferred to the production planning and scheduling module of APO, and the netchange to the plan is computed by APO. This enables the continuous update of the production plan and quick responses from the APS to the shop floor.

For some planning processes, e.g. order confirmation, not only the performance, but also the availability of the interface and the integrated system must be considered. It may be crucial for the business performance that *every order* gets a quote in nearly real-time, i.e. within milliseconds, even in case of system failure. In order to guarantee a high availability of the order promising system, some APS vendors employ highly available transaction systems like the TIBCO data bus that has been developed for use in highly available, online transaction environments as for example the finance sector (Tibco 2014). The mean time between failures can be used as a measurement for the availability of the integrated system.

16.4 Post-implementation Effort and Support Model

The fourth step in the selection process is the assessment of the expected post-implementation effort and the support model of the APS vendor. The efforts—and costs—that are created after the completion of the implementation can be classified into

- The yearly maintenance and support fees requested by the APS vendor
- The costs for a release update and the typical frequency of release updates
- The costs for the system administration
- The costs for the user support.

Most APS vendors charge a specific percentage of the license fees per year for the continuous support services they provide to their customers. Typically, the yearly support fees are in the range of 15–25 % of the license fees. However, the availability of the support centers, the languages in which support can be given and the range of the support services differ. Some APS vendors offer the full range of their services online via the Internet, while others rely more on telephone support. It is especially useful if the APS vendor is able to login remotely to the APS in order to detect and resolve issues.

As APS are still evolving very rapidly, APS vendors offer several updated and extended releases per year. According to the guiding rule *Never change a running system*, one should not follow every release change immediately. However, some APS vendors offer support services only for the latest release. Thus, the APS of these vendors should be upgraded on a regular basis to the latest release (e.g. every second release). In order to get a rough idea about the effort for an upgrade of the system to a new release, other customers of the APS vendor should be interviewed about their experience related to release changes. Especially, the question whether external support in addition to the support of the APS vendor is required or not has to be answered, as external support would require a higher budget for release changes.

Besides release changes, general administration tasks have to be assessed. Examples of these tasks are

- Administration of databases used by the APS
- Rollover of a rolling monthly or weekly plan to the next planning cycle
- Administration of the APS servers on operating system level (in most cases, Unix or Windows servers are used)
- Extension and/or adaption of the APS, e.g. creation of new reports, installation of new clients, modification of models, user administration etc.

For each of these administration tasks it must be decided whether it will be managed internally or whether the task will be outsourced. In both cases, the skills required and the effort generated have to be assessed for all APS considered.

The fourth post-implementation task that should be evaluated in order to compare APS is user support. In practice, a three level support structure is often setup: First level support is given by so-called *super-users*. A super-user is an especially skilled and trained end user, who is able to receive descriptions of issues from other end users, explain and resolve simple issues and transmit a complete description of a complex issue to second level support. Typically, the super-users have already been members of the implementation team and have supported the APS implementation project in a leading role. Second level support is normally embedded into the standard IT support organization. Some issues, especially those related to system administration, will be resolved there. Internal issues of the APS will be forwarded to third level support, i.e. the support of the APS vendor. APS differ in the tools for issue detection and resolution they provide. Again, it might be useful to ask other customers of the APS vendors about their experience with costs and effort related to the end user support for the product of the APS vendors.

References

Albert, C., Klüpfel, S., Fuchs, C., & Kaiser, C. (2006). Software im Vergleich: ERP mit fortschrittlicher Produktionsplanung im Mittelstand - 14 Lösungen für das Supply Chain Management, technical report. Würzburg: Business Application Research Center.

Dickersbach, J. (2009). *Supply Chain Management with SAP APO* (3rd ed.). Berlin/New York: Springer.

Felser, W., Kilger, C., Ould-Hamady, M., & Kortmann, J. (1999). Strategische Auswahl von SCM-Systemen. *PPS Management, 4*(4), 10–16.

Gartner (2013). *Gartner says worldwide supply chain management software market* (1st ed.). Connecticut: Stanford. http://www.gartner.com/newsroom/id/2488715. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Goldratt, E. (1990). *What is this thing called theory of constraints and how should it be implemented?* Croton-on-Hudson: North River Press.

Laakmann, F., Nayabi, K., & Hieber, R. (2003). Market survey 2003: Supply chain management software: Detailed investigation of supply chain planning systems, technical report. ETH Zürich BWI, Fraunhofer IPA Stuttgart, Fraunhofer IML Dortmund.

Schragenheim, E., & Ronen, B. (1990). Drum-buffer-rope shop floor control. *Production and Inventory Management Journal, 31*(3), 18–22.

Siddiqui, M. (2010). *Oracle e-business suite R12 supply chain management* (1st ed.). Birmingham: Packt Publishing.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Tibco (2014). www.tibco.com. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

The Implementation Process

17

Ulrich Wetterauer and Herbert Meyr

A successful implementation of the selected APS is the obvious goal of any organization that has decided to go for a supply chain project. The first section of this chapter details an approach to ensure the success of supply chain initiatives based on the experience of several realized projects. In the second section, an APS implementation project will be considered from a modeling point of view.

17.1 The APS Implementation Project

As an SCM project affects multiple functional areas like sales, production, procurement, distribution or order management (see Chap. 15) the risks involved in such an implementation are considerable. Many enterprises have experienced spectacular project failures due to a number of reasons, surprisingly few of which have to do with the technology involved. Reasons that show up consistently include:

- The business strategy did not drive process design and deployment.
- The user expectations were not met.
- The time to implement was much longer than expected.
- The cost to implement was much greater than expected.

In the following, a proven approach to ensure the success of supply chain projects is detailed. It provides guidance on the five major implementation phases (see also Fig. 17.1):

U. Wetterauer
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Willy-Brandt-Platz 5, 68161 Mannheim, Germany
e-mail: ulrich.wetterauer@de.ey.com

H. Meyr (✉)
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__17,

- Project definition
- Solution design
- Solution details
- Execution and deployment
- Close.

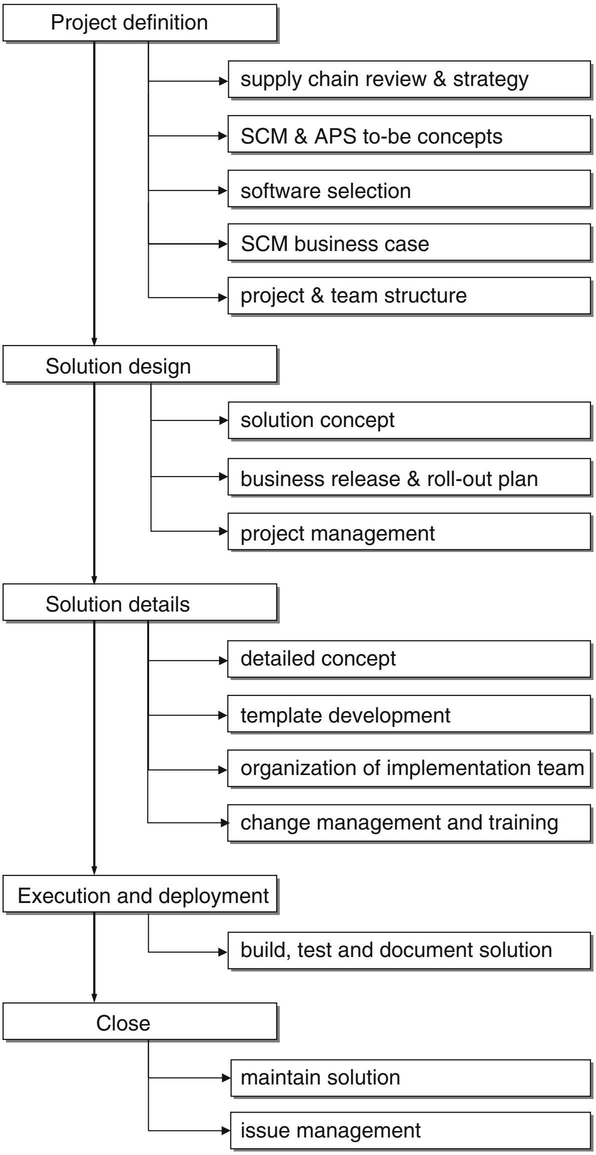


Fig. 17.1 Phases and activities of an implementation project

For each phase we will show the necessary organizational tasks and some proven ways to avoid the major pitfalls. The most important deliverables of the involved activities will be mentioned as well.

The company which has decided to implement the APS will subsequently be called *client* organization or enterprise.

17.1.1 Project Definition

In the *project definition* phase the company's business vision and SCM strategy have to be related to the drivers for supply chain management, which are benefit realization and cost reduction, and subsequently to the goals of the SCM initiative. Examples for goals are inventory reduction, profit optimization or improvement of customer service.

The main deliverable of this phase is the *business case* that will be presented to senior management. A systematic approach to defining a supply chain project including the business case methodology is given in Chap. 15 (see also Fig. 15.2). In this chapter the focus is on the main tasks and deliverables for this process.

- **Supply chain evaluation:** The current processes, organization and systems in use are analyzed and documented. Possible benefits of a supply chain project can arise in different functional areas like sales, production or procurement and include additional revenues by attracting new customers, reducing inventory and procurement cost, decreasing lead times in production and much more. All major improvement opportunities have to be identified during the as-is analysis process, specified and documented according to the company goals and taken into account in the to-be model development.
- **Business strategy and vision:** Based on the company's business vision and SCM strategy the scope of the project has to be defined and documented carefully, both for the required functions as well as for the business processes which have to be changed. No amount of advanced technology can offset the problem of inefficient business processes. The time needed for this activity is well spent as it prevents cost overruns due to scope extensions in future stages of the project. In addition, areas which are out of scope should be documented as well to set the expectations for the implementation results and to avoid later discussions about what has to be included in the project.
- **SCM to-be concepts & APS to-be model:** Solution options and a high-level to-be model are developed based on industry best practices (see also Sect. 2.2.2) and employee suggestions. The project scope is refined and detailed. This activity may include the selection of a suitable software package (for a detailed description of the APS selection process see Chap. 16 and Sect. 17.2). Best practice processes and APS functions are explored to determine the best fit to the future business model. The functions and processes that are to be addressed should be decomposed into lower-level activities (e.g. process: demand management → activities: collect historical sales data, determine forecast proposition, manage forecast entry, achieve consensus about forecast, release forecast to production)

to allow the mapping of these activities to the modules and functions of the selected APS.

Note that the team conducting this phase should avoid to jump right into looking at software functions—the analysis may even yield the result that for major benefits no technology implementation is required at all.

- **Supply chain potential analysis:** Benefit areas are identified and the baseline information is calculated for these benefit areas using a suitable, mutually agreed calculation method.
- **Implementation plan:** Based on the to-be model (possibly including several solution options) a transition strategy including project phases and activities is determined and constitutes to a high-level implementation plan.
- **Time-phased benefits:** The benefits associated with the solution options are calculated over the project timeline based on the implementation plan.
- **Time-phased implementation costs:** Direct and indirect cost are determined including resource requirements and risk estimations. The management should realize that supply chain improvements to achieve strategic business opportunities almost inevitably require a redefinition of business processes. Potential changes may address any aspect of the current organization, including process, technology and people.
- **SCM business case:** The assumptions are verified, combined to the business case and presented to the management.

The project definition phase usually requires a combined effort of internal resources which cover the enterprise-specific requirements, specialists with detailed software know-how and consultants contribute their experience in industry practices. The management should carefully assess the availability of internal and external skills and knowledge. It has to ensure that all skill gaps are closed already in this early phase. As a suitable project structure and team staffing is a critical activity in every project, these topics will subsequently be addressed in more detail.

The design of the *project structure* requires several activities. A project sponsor and the initial contractors have to be found, the team organization has to be determined and the project control and reporting processes have to be defined as well as the project rules. These topics will be discussed in detail below.

The *project sponsor* must have the authority to make changes happen within the enterprise and to maintain a sense of urgency for completing the implementation activities on time. To implement supply chain management strategies successfully traditional cross-functional barriers and contradictory performance measurements (supporting local optima as opposed to a global optimum, e.g. local capacity usage) have to be aggressively removed. In addition the solution strategy must have the support of senior management and all departmental heads affected. Obtaining and maintaining this support is a major responsibility of the project sponsor.

The initial *contractor* relationships must be established. Consulting firms are usually required to provide resources with experience in best practice processes, software features and project management. Software firms can provide resources with detailed technical know-how. As APS are complex software products, the commitment of the software provider in case of package changes or programming efforts has to be ensured.

The *project control and reporting* processes must be defined, e.g. steering committees, escalation procedures and project management. Clear reporting structures and responsibilities are crucial for the success of the project, especially if several parties are contributing to the project leadership, e.g. different departments or internal and external resources.

Projects can only be executed successfully with an efficient implementation team. In building a team, the technical skills of the team members as well as their characters and organizational needs (e.g. coverage of different departments) must be considered. The structure of the *project team* usually reflects the distribution of responsibilities among the parties involved, i.e. client organization, software provider and consulting firm:

- **Project management:** Full-time resources, both internal and external, are required for project management, quality assurance and guidance. Special emphasis must be put on an efficient integration of the different sub-projects.
- **Team leaders:** Each major process area, usually represented by a sub-project (*functional*: demand planning, master planning or *organizational*: different departments or business areas), requires both an internal and external team leader. They have the responsibility to ensure that all business requirements are covered as well as to supervise the design and configuration of the solutions.
- **Coordinators:** Typically the implementation of an APS radically changes the way in which people do their jobs and interact. With the exception of small pilot projects, successful change projects cross organizational boundaries. The most important team members next to the project leader are therefore the so-called coordinators, full-time team members acting as experts for the enterprise-specific processes. Each coordinator represents a distinct business unit or group affected by the project. Without their participation and buy-in during every single step of the project, an APS project cannot succeed. They have the responsibility to support the design and validation of solution concepts, to improve the communication between the project team and the client organization, to prepare the organization for the necessary changes and, in the end, to achieve the final goal of the project. It is therefore essential to keep the motivation of the coordinators at a high level, by monetary or other means.
- **Functional and process team:** Each functional area's scope has to be addressed by experienced resources. Internal users provide the knowledge with respect to enterprise processes while consultants act as best-practice and application specialists, usually also having an integrative role between the different workstreams. The selection criteria for these team members will be described in more detail in Sect. 17.1.3.

The project management reports to the steering committee which meets on a regular basis, for example every 2 weeks. The task of this institution is to supervise the whole project based on the project reports, to make decisions about major changes in the project plan and to approve or "sign-off" the project results.

The steering committee should be composed of senior management representatives of all organizations and departments involved.

17.1.2 Solution Design

In this phase, the high-level design of the proposed solution is refined and adapted to the selected software in more detail, utilizing the available solution options, if necessary. Key processes and functionalities are validated to identify the potential risks and constraints to the implementation. It is essential that all organizational units which will be affected by the implementation project participate in this task to avoid resistance against the necessary changes. This participation is typically managed by the coordinators mentioned in the last section. Any anticipated constraints to implementing the proposed design have to be assessed. The *solution concept* developed in the previous phase is refined in the three areas *concept*, *activities* and *scope* (see also Fig. 17.2):

Concept

The solution has to be designed considering the future processes, organization and systems:

- **Processes.** As far as the processes are concerned it can be distinguished between *Supply Chain Planning*, *Supply Chain Execution* and *Supply Chain Controlling*. Supply Chain Planning refers to the SCP-Matrix as introduced in Chaps. 4 and 5, including the integrative and collaborative processes. As Supply Chain Planning directly affects operative processes like production (e.g. by generating start and completion lists) or order management (by calculation of ATP quantities and due dates), the transactional processes related to SCM (called Supply Chain Execution) have to be considered as well. Finally, KPIs relevant for SCM have to be monitored and analyzed by Supply Chain Controlling to implement a continuous improvement process.
- **Organization.** The realization of SCM processes will likely require some organizational changes, e.g. the shift of responsibilities, the implementation of Supply Chain Planning groups or even the foundation of a new SCM department.
- **Systems.** The system landscape and the development of interfaces and add-ons have to support the planning and controlling processes while balancing the process needs (which might require a deviation from supported software standards) with the related one-time and on-going cost for development and maintenance.

Mapping the refined solution to the selected software typically results in an adaptation of the concept for two reasons. First, every enterprise has its own specialties as far as their processes are concerned, and no APS will be able to cover all details, resulting in functional gaps. Second, to limit the time and cost for the project very often industry-specific, preconfigured templates are implemented (if available, see also Sect. 17.2). Consequently, most companies have to accept

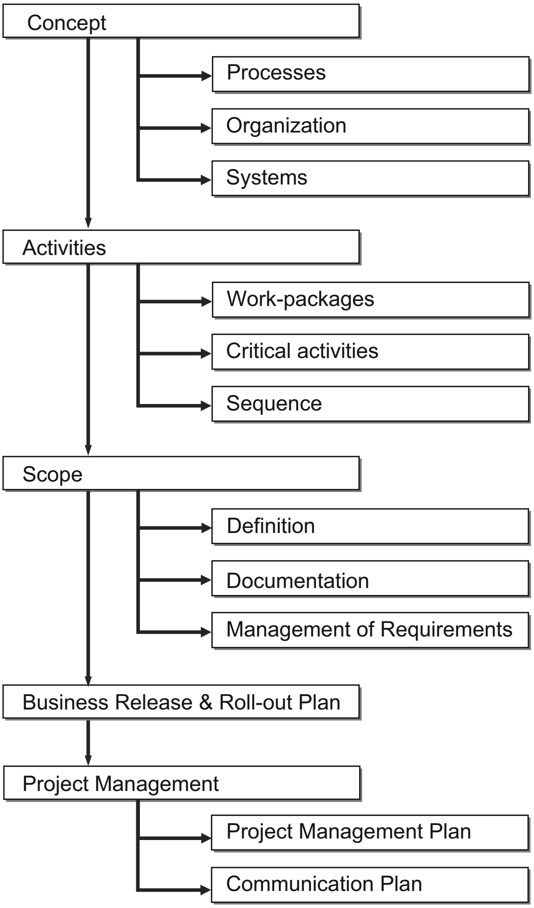


Fig. 17.2 Tasks of the solution design phase. Instead of the task *solution concept* the detailed tasks *concept*, *activities* and *scope* are shown

compromises and trade-offs, for example a redefinition of the project scope or a change of internal processes.

To identify the functional gaps, the key APS functionalities which are needed to support the solution are validated, for example by building a small pilot using a very limited set of data. It is very important to determine the major gaps in this early phase of the project in order to have a solid basis for the cost and risk estimate.

Activities

The detailed concepts are organized into work-packages or activities which are the basis for the high-level project plan. The critical activities have to be identified and sequenced to determine the critical path. Wherever possible, milestones should be included to enhance the visibility of the project development.

The development of a reliable estimation of implementation cost and duration is a key requirement for successful projects. Gartner estimated in 2001 that, for

40 % of enterprises deploying ERP or ERP II systems through 2004, the actual time and money spent on these implementations will exceed their original estimates by at least 50 % (Strategic Analysis Report, Zrimsek et al. 2001). A more recent study for the success rates of IT projects from The Standish Group International indicates that only 39 % of all projects were successful (delivered on time, on budget, with required features and functions), while 43 % were challenged (late, over budget, and/or with less than the required features and functions) and 18 % failed (canceled prior to completion or delivered and never used; see The Standish Group International 2013).

Considering that SCM projects are typically even more complex than ERP implementations due to their cross-organizational character, it can be safely assumed that similar figures can be applied there as well. It is therefore essential that the cost and risk management process is supported by experienced personnel (possibly external consultants) with sufficient know-how in this area based on successful projects.

Scope

Special emphasis should be put on the topic of scope. The scope has to be defined, documented and communicated carefully to limit the expectations to the feasible. How to deal with requirements and expectations will be discussed in more detail later in this section.

Business Release and Roll-Out Plan

To ensure a smooth implementation of the SCM concepts in the *execution and deployment* phase, a suitable business release & roll-out plan has to be developed. A business release denotes a set of functionalities covered by the solution whereas the implementation of a solution or business release is called roll-out.

Business release planning should consider the following approach:

- Start small and simple with transparent standard supply chain processes.
- Develop functionalities for less complex regions first.
- Increase functional complexity and automated planning after learning phases.
- Avoid non-beneficial functional enhancements by stringent scope management.

The roll-out strategy typically has to cover regional areas and/or functional aspects, e.g. roll-out of a business release first to Italy, then to France and Eastern Europe or roll-out of the demand planning and master planning module of an APS (first business release) in a first stage and of the detailed scheduling module (second business release) in a following stage.

Project Management

The implementation plan (including all tasks related to concept, activities and scope) is completed by adding the efforts needed for project management and for a suitable communication plan. Because of their importance these topics will be discussed now in more detail.

Experience has shown that many SCM projects exhibit the same characteristics: budget overruns, missed deadlines and failed organizational expectations. Not all of these can be related to project management problems, but too many can.

The importance of project control can be appraised by the multitude of literature that exists about this topic (see, e.g., Kerzner 2013, Project Management Institute 2013 and Meredith and Mantel 2012). In this section we will give a general introduction and highlight some of the major pitfalls.

Project management activities must be planned to span the complete life time of the project. The control and reporting procedures are essential for the effective management of any project, regardless of size or scope. Key aspects of any reporting procedure are deadlines and an *early warning* capability. The procedures must effectively deal with project work progress, issues and risks. The main project management activities in order to minimize cost and risks are

- To manage the stakeholders
- To structure the scope
- To plan and control the project activities
- To organize the resources
- To assure quality.

The goal of *stakeholder management* is to identify project stakeholders with their specific characteristics to better understand how they need to be treated in order to ensure project success. The tasks are to identify those individuals or groups of individuals that are involved in or are affected by the project, to understand their importance, their interests and expectations and their influence on the project. Finally actions have to be defined to achieve and ensure continued stakeholder contribution.

To *structure the scope* means to divide the project scope into parts and subparts and to assure the integration between the different workstreams. This is especially important for SCM projects where several initiatives are realized simultaneously. An example is the implementation of an SCM concept including demand planning and master planning where the result of the demand planning process is the starting point for the master planning. In such a common scenario the project would typically be organized into the two workstreams “Demand Planning” and “Master Planning”. The project management team has to assure that the solution for the master planning process considers the demand planning concepts and the timelines of this workstream.

The main tool to control a complex project is the *project plan*. It should consist of a project master plan for the whole project, with a limited level of detail, and detailed project plans for the different sub-projects (e.g. Demand Planning and Master Planning in the example above). It is necessary for the project plan to be broken into easily definable phases. Regular updates are mandatory tasks for the project managers. Experience has shown that weekly project management meetings are required to keep the different parts of the project under control.

There are several ways to *organize a project plan*, typically involving software tools like Microsoft Project or Excel. Every project manager should consider the difficulty to change the way the advancements of the project are controlled and should therefore carefully choose a suitable kind of method for himself. Most methods are based on monitoring the critical path, although the major problem, the combination of unexpected delays and dependencies of tasks, is often not addressed with the right emphasis. Given the nature of implementation projects, unanticipated tasks will come up that must be completed without revising the final deadlines. Therefore buffer times included in the project plan have to be used with a great sense of responsibility and must not be wasted, otherwise delays in the project time lines are unavoidable (see Goldratt 1997 and Leach 2004). Communicating this fact has a top priority for the project leaders, especially with an inexperienced, temporary project team.

The project plan has to consider the required resources for the different implementation phases. Typical implementation phases are

- The creation of an enterprise-wide template
- The roll-out of this standard solution at a pilot site, validating the standard concepts
- The roll-out of the solution to all sites including site-specific adjustments and enhancements.

To ensure the availability of these resources is the responsibility of the project management team.

Quality assurance is based on periodical reviews of the concepts, on the implementation of approval processes and on proactively looking at potential risks. The expected result of all these project management activities is a reduction of cost and risks for the project.

It has been mentioned above that, next to the project management processes, a proper *communication plan* has to be installed to ensure the success of the project. All goals and expected benefits should be communicated to the relevant people, starting with a carefully organized kick-off workshop to create an atmosphere of anticipation and motivation. These activities have to be considered in the cost estimation.

Although the communication of the goals and expected benefits is important, this is not sufficient to create the atmosphere which is required to successfully implement SCM processes. Additional trainings are needed to explain the basic concepts of SCM to the key users in all areas affected by the project. It is essential to create this acceptance, commitment and enthusiasm in the team, in the environment of the project (production planning, order management, sales etc.) and in the supporting management (department managers etc.) in a very early phase of the project by applying the following principles:

- Let the participants experience the benefits of the SCM concepts, e.g. via interactive simulations.
- Demonstrate the (basic) functions and features of APS.
- Provide a clear understanding of the risks involved, especially for the project team.
- Focus on acceptance and commitment rather than on mere knowledge.

The cost for these activities have to be included in the cost estimation as well.

In addition to the kick-off meetings and trainings, periodical workshops with the users should be organized to show the progress of the project and to preserve and improve their commitment. Especially in long-term projects people tend to loose focus on the goals and expected benefits which might result in discouragement and even resistance.

In every SCM project unexpected issues will arise which cannot be solved by the implementation team itself. Examples for these issues are serious software bugs or unexpected resistance within the organization. In addition to project management it is therefore essential that an issue management process is established, clearly understood by the project management team and then implemented during the early stages of the project. The procedures to be defined are analysis, assignment of responsibility, tracking and resolution.

A very important aspect of issue management is to deal with requirements and expectations. Unrealistic expectations, for example concerning the difficulty of implementing a new concept, and a short-term focus can lead to a shift from a planned implementation to “quick fixes” that do not solve the fundamental business problems. These conditions in combination with the lack of a formal process for defining business requirements often lead to a loss of focus and scope creep, thus drastically increasing the implementation time. This can be avoided by rigidly using a formal process to incorporate user requirements or change of requirements, preferably using the coordinators to filter out less important requests.

The implementation plan is combined with the benefit, cost and risk estimation to form the business plan which is the basis for the final proposal presented to senior management. After approval, the senior management should demonstrate and communicate its commitment and buy-in to the proposed high-level solution throughout the organization.

17.1.3 Solution Details

In this phase the details of the proposed solution are defined and software templates are developed, if appropriate. The project plan is refined and a detailed description of the work packages necessary to complete the project is prepared. This also includes the roll-out and training plans for the sites and users as well as change management activities. The packages are assigned to the required team members and the resulting activities are scheduled considering the availability of the resources.

Detailed Concept and Template Development

The concepts from the previous *solution design* phase are reviewed to gain a full understanding of the implications that the implementation of the solution will have on the affected units and on the organization as a whole. It has to be ensured that the available functionality of the selected software is applicable also on a detailed level, although this should have been tested already in the selection phase by the use of mini- and maxi-prototypes (see Sect. 17.2). All functional gaps have to be identified in this phase.

Typically a *template* covering the standard processes is developed including system customizing and the resolution of functional gaps (see also Sect. 17.2).

An example for this approach is the implementation of a detailed production planning system for a multi-site company. The standard processes which are used in all plants would be considered in the template whereas site-specific enhancements would be developed in the next phase, *execution and deployment*, during the roll-out of the solution.

Organization of Implementation Team

Team staffing is not required in full at the start of the project but typically ramps up in this and in the next phase. If some members are not assigned full-time to the project, this must be considered in the project plan. Even for full-time resources no more than 80 % of the available work time should be planned to allow for travel time, administration and vacation. It is essential that the coordinators are assigned full-time as they should have a start-to-end responsibility for the success of the project.

Experience has shown that SCM projects are typically staffed with roughly an equal share between internal and external resources. The selection and provision of internal project team members is an important step. External experts are essential to provide experience and know-how, but only those who live within the organization can carry the project to a successful end. As the implementation of an APS is an inter-disciplinary effort, the criteria which should be applied to select the right internal people for the core team include:

- Experience: All critical aspects of the project should be covered, e.g. sales, product management, order management, production planning, IT services etc. People with influence in the key areas will be very valuable.
- Skills: Required are advisers who know the business very well and internal consultants who build up know-how which remains in the client company after the project is finished.

For external personnel who are to participate in the project, a similar scheme of criteria should be applied. The requirements include

- Experience: in project management, in change management, in best-practice processes and with the software product
- Skills: in programming and customization of the software product and in the development of requirement specifications, roll-out activities and training of users.

Although it is not possible to staff every project exclusively with experienced people, especially for long-term projects with the inevitable replacement of team members it is important to insist on and control a certain level of experience and skills of the internal and external project members.

Change Management and Training

An important part of any SCM project where external resources are typically employed is the area of change management. The implementation of an APS almost inevitably requires change to an organization's structure and culture. The dynamics of change processes which have to be addressed during the realization phase are listed in the following (for further information about change dynamics related to processes and teams see, e.g., Hayes 2010, Belbin 2010 and DeMarco and Lister 2013):

- *Shock*: Confrontation with an unexpected event or environment.
- *Refusal*: No acceptance of the need for changing the own behavior to react to the changes.
- *Rational understanding*: The need for change is recognized, but the willingness to change the own behavior does not yet exist.
- *Emotional acceptance*: New chances and risks are identified and the necessity for change is accepted.
- *Training*: Readiness for training and to change the own behavior. New forms of behavior are tested.
- *Knowledge*: Gained experience helps to decide what behavior fits best to the according system.
- *Expertise*: The new behavior is fully integrated in the daily work, accepted and evident.

In addition to the usual problems (resistance to change in general, satisfaction with the status quo, threats to job security and career objectives, etc.), there are two more barriers specific to the implementation of an APS: The acceptance of *automation* and the *shift of responsibility*.

APS are based on problem solvers and optimization algorithms which help to rapidly respond to changing conditions by automatically generating proposals and alerts or even by automated decisions. This has an impact on the daily work of sales people, production planners and other people concerned with the planning process, as the responsibility for a successful planning shifts from these people to the software tool (and indirectly to the people concerned with the maintenance of basic data).

An example for this is a scenario where a production planner of a plant now has to trust the production plan of an APS, thus only reviewing and solving the problems indicated by the software (usually via alerts or messages). The part of the production plan without problems might get directly transferred to the execution. The planner has to assume that the software calculations are correct (which is generally the case) and that the foundation of this calculations, the input data, is accurate (correct lead times, yield figures etc.). This is typically only the case if the people responsible for this input data know about their influence on the overall planning process.

Resistance against the planning tool is an obvious consequence. This problem can only be solved using an appropriate change management approach (communication plan, involvement of employees, rewards and recognition etc.).

There is another aspect to the shift of responsibility, from local to central, which has to be addressed as well. Typically SCM processes require a central planning organization, for example in the areas demand management (consolidation of forecast from different sales organizations, central management of allocations) or master planning (coordination of material and capacity constraints across the supply chain). As a result the scope of the local planners becomes restricted, which is usually not appreciated by the people affected.

The availability and quality of basic data are further major problems in APS projects. An APS has more extensive requirements to the quality of basic data than the old processes and legacy systems which have evolved on-site and which are therefore more adapted to the current basic data situation.

As far as the availability of basic data is concerned, the project team will face the problem that SCM is executed across the borders of departments (or divisions or companies). This typically involves the integration of data from diverse application systems on different databases running on multiple hardware platforms. The consequence is a common situation: The people needed to maintain the basic data do not have the overall responsibility. As a result improvement of data quality is a slow and painful process.

Lack of basic data or poor data quality inevitably leads to delays in every stage of the project plan: software development becomes very difficult, professional tests of software releases are almost impossible and a productive use of the final solution is unlikely. To avoid the pitfalls associated with basic data, the process for basic data maintenance has to be revised and, if necessary, has to be set up right from the start of the implementation project.

The requirements for basic data have to be communicated to all relevant people within the organization. In general, the activities connected with the communication plan have to be continued and intensified. These include newsletters, workshops and preliminary trainings to make the concepts of SCM as well as the selected software functionalities accessible to the users.

17.1.4 Execution and Deployment

In the *execution and deployment* phase the key components of the detailed solution are constructed, tested and documented. This includes software development and customization, implementation of best practice processes and user training. The template designed in the *solution details* phase is enhanced to include specific organizational requirements and eventually rolled out to the different sites. To limit the time and cost for this phase, it is essential to establish and retain the following success factors:

- Focus on the objectives and benefits
- Limit the implementation to the predefined scope
- Show constant support by senior management
- Ensure effective communication between everyone in the project.

The complexity of APS projects is the reason for one of the most dangerous pitfalls in this phase: scope creep or, in other words, loss of focus. This tendency to model and implement every detail of emerging user requirements, in contrast to the approach based on the carefully designed solution defined in the previous phases, leads to drastically increased implementation times or even to the failure of entire projects.

The only way to avoid scope creep is to install a rigid change-request-management process with the objective to validate every new user requirement and to reject (or at least postpone to a later release) the ones that are not critical for the success but mere enhancements. Only the part of the requirements that still remains after this process has to be developed and included into the model.

The development activities have to be supported by a well designed testing environment and a defined test base for the validation of software releases and ongoing enhancements. Especially with regard to a final approval by the client management staff it is necessary to implement a formal test-plan management system with a sign-off process.

The IT infrastructure typically includes:

- A development system
- A test and training system
- A quality assurance system
- A productive system.

The hardware for each of these systems has to be configured to allow sufficient performance, even for the development system. The processes to transfer functional developments from one system to the other, e.g. from the test environment to a quality assurance system and subsequently to the productive system, have to be designed carefully in an early stage of this phase.

To avoid problems during later stages of the project, it is necessary to set up a sufficient documentation system as well as to insist on a complete and precise documentation from the start. A professional *document and knowledge management system* supports the implementation efforts as well as the development of training materials and, in the next phase, the setup of a support and maintenance organization. Although this statement seems trivial, it is much too often ignored, especially in the first phases of the project where the complexity is still limited and the need for a rigid documentation as well as for an extensible documentation system is not yet coercive. In addition to the technical documentation the minutes of every important or official meeting should be maintained in the documentation system as a future reference.

The user training is based on the project documentation developed in the phases *solution details* and *execution and deployment*. It has to address the to-be processes as well as to cover all software functionalities required for the daily business of the users and should include hands-on exercises using a training system. In addition the training team should provide support materials such as desk reference manuals and self paced training exercises. The user training has to be performed timely and with sufficient effort, especially in APS implementation projects, as insufficient knowledge transfer can impede the progress of the desired business solution.

As mentioned in the *solution design* phase the work progress as well as the budget have to be monitored and controlled carefully. To maintain and increase the acceptance for the project within the organization it is important to communicate all success stories, goals achieved and milestones reached on a regular basis as part of the overall communication plan.

17.1.5 Close

This is the period late in the project life cycle during which the post-implementation processes are planned and organized:

- Maintenance of IT environment
- Maintenance of solution
- Issue management.

The maintenance of the IT environment (e.g. productive system, quality system, interfaces etc.) can be carried out by the IT department of the client organization. Alternatively, an outsourcing solution can be considered.

The team responsible for the maintenance of the solution (i.e. the functionalities covered by the APS system as well as the stability of the software itself) should already be established at the end of the *execution and deployment* phase. It should consist at least in part of experienced team members who have participated in the implementation of the solution. This team should also manage all issues which might arise after the go-live of the project, for example user requests, bug-fixes or performance problems.

The documentation has to be finalized and signed-off by representatives of the client, typically the coordinators.

Ultimately, the measures for the performance benefits of the business solution have to be installed and the solution has to be officially approved by top management, closing the implementation project.

17.2 Modeling Phases of an APS-Project

The last section, introducing the five major implementation phases, was primarily focusing on project management and change management issues. In the following, an APS implementation project will be considered from a *modeling* point of view. The different types of models will be sketched that implicitly and explicitly represent the supply chain and its planning system during the implementation life time. A "guideline" for modeling and integrated planning with APS will be given by referencing the chapters of this book that are related to the respective modeling phases.

17.2.1 Major Phases

As a quintessence of Sect. 17.1 one can state that two decisions of general principle have to be made in an APS implementation project: The first one is to check whether a computerized support of planning is useful and necessary at all and—in case it is regarded beneficial—to decide that the APS market should be evaluated thoroughly. The second one is to select a certain APS for the implementation. With respect to these decisions, from a modeling perspective three major phases of an APS implementation project have to be distinguished:

Evaluation phase: In the evaluation phase a concept for the company's (client's) future planning activities has to be developed *independently of a particular APS*. This concept gives a first impression of the crucial planning tasks and coordination links.

Selection phase: In the selection phase there is a common belief that an APS might be helpful for supply chain planning. However, among the many systems on the market the one has to be chosen which best fits the company's needs. From a modeling perspective, it is essential to evaluate the planning capabilities *of each potential APS* as carefully as possible in order to recognize functional gaps *before* an APS is bought. As Chap. 16 has shown, there are several options for evaluating the functionality of an APS, differing with respect to the evaluation time, the evaluation costs and the reliability of the insights gained. In the following, we will concentrate on the most reliable option, the prototyping, which should only be executed for one or just a few "hot candidates".

Introduction phase: In the introduction phase the decision for a single APS has already been made and this decision usually will not be revised because of the high investment costs necessary. Thus, for a given APS executable supply chain models have to be designed which support the long-term to short-term planning tasks introduced in Fig. 4.3.

Note that only at the end of the introduction phase "executable models" of the supply chain exist. Supply chain models of the preceding evaluation and selection phases are not designed for a final application. They represent preliminary, aggregated views of the supply chain and merely support the decision processes concerning the introduction of an APS in general and the selection of a particular APS. Nevertheless, after these jobs have been accomplished successfully, the insights gained will not be lost but can provide guidelines for the final implementation process.

17.2.2 Steps of Supply Chain Modeling

Figure 17.3 shows the various models and modeling steps that lead to the final application of an APS. The models are assigned to the three major phases mentioned above. During the following discussion of the respective modeling steps a reference to the corresponding book chapters that offer more detailed descriptions of the modeling processes is given.

In a first step the main planning tasks with a high potential for improvement have to be identified. The ones that show strong interrelations and a similar planning horizon have to be considered simultaneously and should be combined to manageable planning modules, each of them being in the responsibility of a specific planner or planning department (see Chap. 4). Since supply chain planning occurs on several

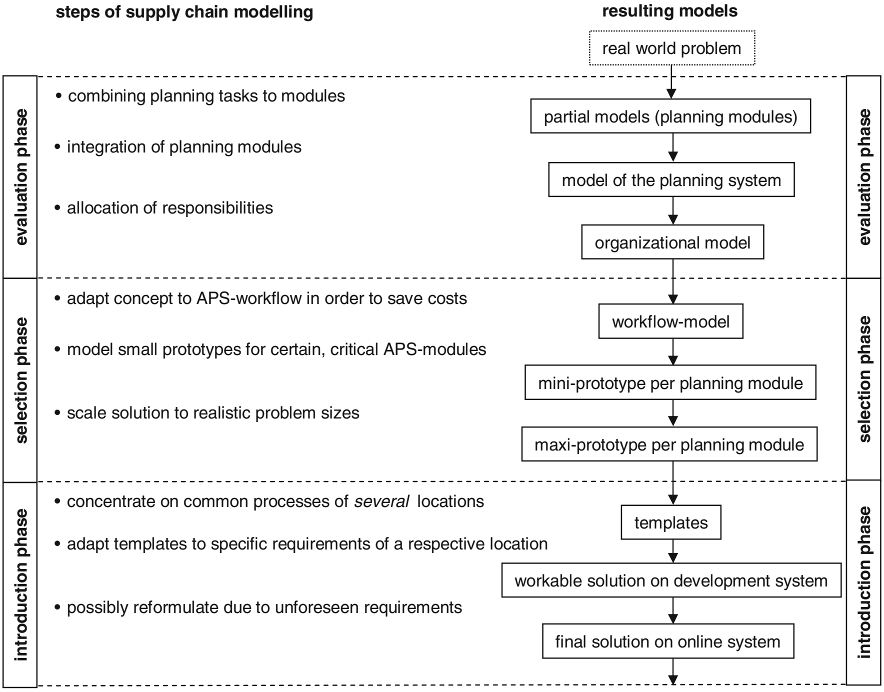


Fig. 17.3 Modeling phases of an APS implementation project

planning levels with different planning horizons, the resulting planning modules are merely *partial models* of an overall planning system, in which the individual planning modules are in a (weaker) mutual interrelation.

These planning modules have to be coordinated so that the supply chain as a whole shows the best possible performance and the highest possible degree of integration. In order to achieve this coordination, various information has to be exchanged between the planning modules (see e.g. Fig. 13.1). For example, directives of higher-level, coordinating planning modules (e.g. Master Planning) are sent to lower-level, coordinated planning modules (e.g. Production Planning or Distribution Planning) or feedback of lower-level modules is sent the other way round. Therefore, a *model of the planning system* (i.e. of the planning modules and their mutual informational links) has to be developed which defines the basic data flows between the different planning modules. Guidelines for installing these information flows by means of hierarchical planning are given in Chap. 4. At this early stage of a business process re-engineering project important aspects of planning, like the technical practicability, can only be assessed to a certain extent. Thus, the resulting model is a high-level design of a planning system that has to be adapted in later stages though its essential features should remain unchanged.

In order to prevent potential solutions from being excluded too early and to ensure that an "ideal" planning system can be developed, existing organizational structures have been assumed to be changeable during the first two modeling steps. Only in the subsequent step, the model of the planning system should be adapted consciously. Within this third modeling step responsibilities for the individual planning tasks and planning modules have to be assigned to the existing or future organizational departments. All in all, the resulting *organizational model* of the planning system may deviate significantly from the preceding rough planning concept. Note that hierarchical planning, as introduced in Chap. 4, can also respect such organizational constraints, and thus, can be used to derive and compare both the "ideal" and the organizational model of the future planning system.

This organizational model is the basis to decide whether the *selection phase* is started or not. In case it is, the following three steps of SC modeling should be executed for only the few APS that are short-listed.

In order to save time and money during implementation, APS vendors sometimes provide (industry-specific) "workflows" for their systems, i.e. planning concepts with pre-configured data flows between the software modules. These planning concepts are designed to meet the requirements of "typical" companies of a respective industry or line of business. To be generally applicable they also are, as far as possible, independent of the organizational structures of different companies. A basic way to generate such workflows has already been sketched in the course of this book (see Sects. 3 and 4.3). If in the selection phase an APS vendor is tested which offers such a workflow for the company's type of supply chain, it has to be reviewed how the organizational model had to be adapted to the pre-configured data flows of the workflow. In case the gap between the originally desired organizational model and the *"workflow model"* (resulting from this adaptation) is limited, the existence of a time- and cost-saving workflow is an indication to select the respective APS vendor.

The expenditures in cost and time forbid to implement the complete workflow model physically during the selection phase and to test the complete planning system by means of a prototype. However, some presumably critical planning modules can usually be implemented as prototypes, either by the company itself or by the APS providers. This is necessary in order to check whether a software module is capable of representing all functional requirements appropriately and to test whether high quality solutions can be achieved within an acceptable time frame. In case of failures, both the "modeling gap" and the "solution gap" constitute the functional gap introduced in Sect. 17.1.2. In order to identify the modeling gap of a software module, a small and easily solvable *"mini-prototype"* of the corresponding planning module should be implemented whose structure shows all (presumably) critical features of the desired final application. If some of the requested features cannot satisfactorily be represented, it has to be decided whether an adapted model would also be acceptable. It should be mentioned that the willingness of an APS vendor to introduce a missing function in a new software release is typically very limited (see Chap. 16).

Solely after the basic structure of the mini-prototype has been verified, the model should be scaled to a realistic, i.e. practically relevant, problem size which may reveal potential solution gaps. If a solution gap exists, a re-modeling, e.g. by using general principles of hierarchical planning like aggregation and decomposition (see Sects. 4.1 and 8.2), may be helpful. In the best case, the *"maxi-prototype"* that results after scaling and re-modeling increases the solution time and/or decreases the solution quality only slightly. In the worst case, it has to be recognized that the real-world planning problem cannot satisfactorily be solved by the software module tested. As Chap. 30 shows, this can happen e.g. by increasing the number of integer variables of a Mixed Integer Programming problem. In order to limit an investment in the wrong software, a careful test of the solution capabilities is already important in the selection phase, *before* buying a software module.

The maxi-prototypes of critical software modules help to estimate the risks and costs of an implementation of the short-listed APS. At the end of the selection phase, it has to be decided whether an APS should finally be used, which APS should be chosen and which software modules should be employed to support the various planning tasks. The following *implementation phase* can also be subdivided into three modeling steps.

If a planning and software module can be used for similar purposes at several sites, in order to save implementation time and costs, it may be useful to create a standard *template* that can be used as a basis for the implementation at all of these sites. This template has to subsume as many common features of the various sites as possible.

As a next step the templates are installed at the various sites. At each site, *workable solutions* are created on a development and quality assurance system that are used to prepare and test the finally aspired operational solutions. In order to build the workable solutions, the templates have to be adapted to the particular requirements of the respective sites. There is a general trade off to be balanced regarding the use of a template. On the one hand, using a template saves time and money of installation. On the other hand, a workable solution resulting from adapting a template usually differs from a solution that would be tailor-made for a respective site. Thus, for each site it has to be decided whether the savings gained by a template are worth the compromises that have to be made in the operational use later on.

Finally, the APS has to be connected with the (in most applications) already running ERP system or with other OLTP systems (see Sect. 13.2). If the testing has been done thoroughly, the workable solution can be transferred directly to the operationally used online system. However, if undesirable surprises occur like an abnormal behavior because of missing or obsolete data or an (despite of all tests) insufficient scalability of hard- and software, the *final solution* has to be adapted to such new requirements. During the regular use, a continuous monitoring and controlling of KPIs (see Sect. 2.3) is necessary in order to evaluate whether the planning system finally installed yields the desired effects.

The sequence of the three major phases “evaluation”, “selection” and “introduction” is pre-determined by the decisions to be taken. The proposed sequence of models within a major phase is a proven but certainly not the only useful one. Of course, some of the individual modeling steps can also be combined into a more comprehensive overall model.

It should be noted that modeling skills remain important even after the final solution has been installed successfully. They are, for example, needed when a new product is to be launched or when a new technology has to be introduced that fundamentally changes the underlying planning requirements. Thus, it has to be checked regularly, whether the currently applied models of the supply chain and the currently applied planning models are still up to date or have to be re-formulated.

References

Belbin, R. (2010). *Management teams* (3rd ed.). Amsterdam: Butterworth-Heinemann.

DeMarco, T., & Lister, T. (2013). *Peopleware: Productive projects and teams* (3rd ed.). Upper Saddler River: Addison-Wesley.

Goldratt, E. (1997). *Critical chain*. Great Barrington: North River Press.

Hayes, J. (2010). *The theory and practice of change management* (3rd ed.). Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Kerzner, H. (2013). *Project management: A systems approach to planning, scheduling and controlling* (11th ed.). New Jersey: Wiley.

Leach, L. (2004). *Critical chain project management* (2rd ed.). Boston: Artech House.

Meredith, J., & Mantel, S. J. (2012). *Project management: A managerial approach* (8th ed.). New York: Wiley.

Project Management Institute (2013). *A guide to the project management body of knowledge* (5th ed.). Pennsylvania: Project Management Institute.

The Standish Group International (2013). CHAOS manifesto 2013: Think big, act small. https://secure.standishgroup.com/reports/reports.php. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Zrimsek, B., Phelan, P., Karamouzis, F., & Frey, N. (2001). Estimating the time and cost of ERP and ERP II projects: A 10-step process, technical report, Gartner Group. www.gartner.com. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Part IV

Actual APS and Case Studies

Architecture of Selected APS

18

Baptiste Lebreton, Herbert Meyr, Heidrun Rosič, Christian Seipl, and Ulrich Wetterauer

This chapter will introduce the APS used in the case studies from *AspenTech, JDA, OM Partners, Oracle and SAP*: aspenONE, JDA Manufacturing Planning Suite, OM Plus, Value Chain Planning and SAP Advanced Planner and Optimizer (APO). As these tools regularly consist of a multitude of software modules and special add-ons, only a brief survey without claiming completeness can be given. Furthermore, different lines of business can use different modules of an APS. It is also possible to use an APS only partially, e.g. without modules for scheduling or only using modules for demand planning and demand fulfillment. For each individual case the composition of modules has to be evaluated and selected (see Chap. 16).

B. Lebreton
Eastman Chemical Corporation, Operations Research Group, 200 South Wilcox Drive,
37660 Kingsport TN, USA
e-mail: blebreton@eastman.com

H. Meyr (✉)
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart,
Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

H. Rosič
Kleistgasse 11/25, 1030 Vienna, Austria
e-mail: heidrun.rosic@wu.ac.at

C. Seipl
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Rothenbaumchaussee 78,
20148 Hamburg, Germany
e-mail: christian.seipl@de.ey.com

U. Wetterauer
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Willy-Brandt-Platz 5, 68161 Mannheim,
Germany
e-mail: ulrich.wetterauer@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__18,

18.1 AspenTech: AspenONE

AspenTech was founded in 1981 with the objective of commercializing technology that was developed as part of the Advanced System for Process Engineering (ASPEN) Project at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Headquartered in Burlington, Massachusetts, AspenTech is one of the leading providers of software for process industries. Its focus has been on applying process engineering know-how to modeling the manufacturing and supply chain processes that characterize the process industries. In 1994, the company went public and in the years afterwards it grew mainly through acquisitions of small companies like Chesapeake Decision Sciences Inc. Due to this acquisition strategy AspenTech incorporated technologies in the four areas engineering, process simulation, plant operations and supply chain management. Today AspenTech offers integrated solutions for chemical, pharmaceutical, petroleum, oil and gas, and engineering and construction companies which are all sold under the name aspenONE. AspenONE provides a single platform that integrates AspenTech's core products, one of them being Aspen PIMS for planning and scheduling in the process industries, especially in petroleum (and oil and gas) industries.

18.1.1 AspenTech's Software Modules

AspenTech offers distinct supply chain software suites for several industries, distributed as aspenONE packages. Each of these packages consists of various modules especially suited to its industry. With respect to the case study of Chap. 24 in the following we will mainly focus on the aspenONE solution for the petroleum industry (see also Fig. 18.1).

Strategic Planning provides the tools necessary to assess the economic and operational impacts of long-term strategic plans for multiple scenarios. It is used to evaluate the impacts of new markets and new government regulations, as well as the effects of modifying physical assets and downstream networks. This assessment can include adding or removing terminals, tanks and transportation modes, developing financial budgets and operations models, and performing capital investment analysis.

Collaborative Demand Manager is a solution, applicable across all of the vertical industries served by Aspen Tech, offering the functions demand planning and collaborative forecasting. The resulting consensus demand plan is a primary input into downstream functions such as master planning. It supports history conditioning, forecast generation, reconciling forecasts with firm orders, reviewing forecast accuracy, reporting forecast error on different levels, creating an annual budget, and comparing versus year-to-date projections. The collaboration capability allows for marketing and sales data, customer data, and point-of-sale (POS) data to be incorporated into the demand plan via a web-based interface. Forecasts, sales history, budgets, and constrained forecasts can be aggregated to

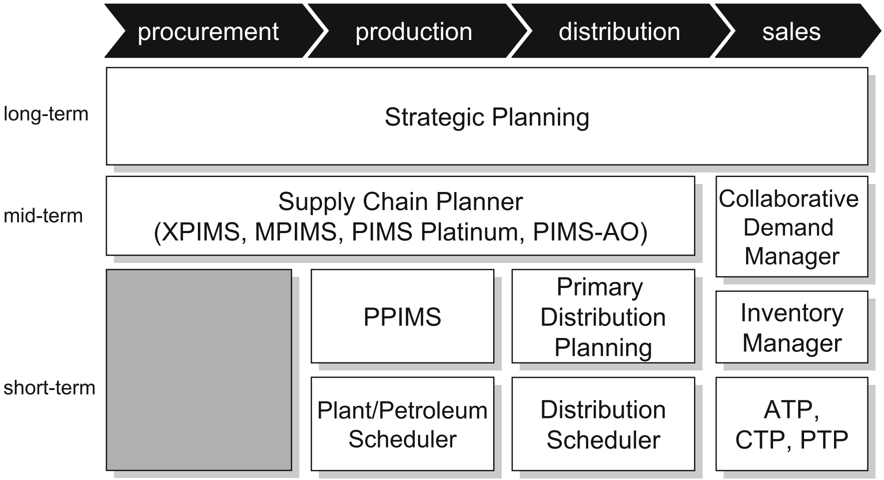


Fig. 18.1 Software modules of AspenTech's AspenONE

any brand, family, region, market or custom grouping required by the business. This module bases on statistical methods augmented with real-time collaborative data collected from the different stakeholders aiming at the increase of forecast accuracy. With the help of the coefficient of variation analysis it can be decided which customers require close cooperation and which customers' demand can be forecast with statistical methods based on historical data to arrive at an accurate forecast. The statistical method to be used can be selected automatically by the tool relying on a best-fit analysis or manually by the user.

Supply Chain Planner offers mid-term planning functionality for use of labor and equipment, raw materials or feed stocks, inbound/outbound transportation, storage capacity, and other constraints that may affect the decision of what to make, when, and in what quantity. *Aspen Supply Chain Planner* also provides web-based S&OP Analytics for company-wide reporting and access to data during the planning process. It is further enhanced by a scenario tool to make "what-if" analysis in case of, for instance, capacity or demand changes. *Petroleum Supply Chain Planner* includes a set of capabilities that are targeted specifically at the petroleum industry. It offers multi-plant operational planning, multi-plant blend optimization, inventory balancing of crude and intermediates, and capital investment analysis. It is built on *Aspen PIMS* (Process Industry Modeling System). Optimization techniques include non-linear and successive linear programming, non-linear recursion, mixed integer modeling and further heuristics. AspenTech integrates the CPLEX and XPRESS algorithms as solvers. Furthermore it offers simulator interfaces that link to process simulator models. Aspen PIMS is a scalable planning system that includes a set of capabilities that are targeted specifically for the petroleum industry. PIMS helps companies optimize feedstock selection, product slate, plant design, and operational execution. Originally, the single-plant, single-period base formulation of Aspen PIMS provides the foundation for other functionality. *Aspen PPIMS* allows the user to solve multi-period problems, with the help of periodic-specific data that is added to the base model. *Aspen MPIMS* is the global model that allows the user to link together a number of single-plant Aspen PIMS models to form a complex multi-source, multi-plant, multi-market supply/demand/distribution network. *Aspen XPIMS* solves multi-plant and multi-location models with interplant transfer, distribution to market demands, and distribution of feeds to plants. MPIMS and PPIMS are prerequisites to XPIMS.

PIMS Platinum leverages the data from traditional PIMS and enhances it with a new layered application to visualize the output. It facilitates profitable refining decisions through customizable layouts and 2D and 3D charts. Customized reports can be saved to reveal only the data pertinent to the planner so that more time can be spent running scenarios and analyzing results. These reporting views can also be saved and easily shared among key stakeholders. *Aspen PIMS-AO* (Advanced Optimization) adds capabilities for performing extended non-linear programming, solution ranging, and global optimization. It lets users optimize a combination of several objectives by setting primary, secondary, and tertiary goals for a solution. For example, Aspen PIMS-AO can be set up to provide a balance between the economic objective while maximizing total crude unit throughput and minimizing the purchase of a particularly risky imported crude. It identifies the optimum solution while providing sufficient detail on secondary and tertiary objectives. Aspen PIMS-AO reveals local optima and the highest value global solution. It also provides a convenient way to automatically vary selected feedstock purchase costs or product sales prices and monitor the development of the solution as these variables change.

Plant Scheduler is the basic module of the Aspen Plant Scheduler family which is a three-tiered scheduling solution to address the varying degrees of scheduling complexity. *Plant Scheduler* provides basic finite capacity production scheduling. The schedule is readily viewed and manipulated via an interactive Gantt chart called the Planning Board. Based on a simulation engine, drag-and-drop manual schedule modifications are accompanied by inventory projections and exception reporting to assist the scheduler in visualizing the impact of changes. *Plant Scheduler-EA* (Extended Automation) generates detailed plant production plans using advanced heuristics and further solvers, creating an optimal short-term schedule of operations. While minimizing changeover, production and inventory costs, Aspen Plant Scheduler-EA determines the precise timing and sequence of production activities throughout the plant. It works in finite capacity in order to generate production plans that are feasible from both a capacity and material flow perspective. *Plant Scheduler-EO* (Extended Optimization) layers on top of Plant Scheduler-EA, optimizes specific aspects of a schedule such as blend recipes or tank selection and considers routing and batch sizes. *Aspen Petroleum Scheduler* formerly known as *Aspen Orion* is a petroleum-specific scheduling module which provides event-based coordinated scheduling and enables generation of optimal recipes for individual blends on an event-driven time period basis. For optimized blending, it integrates with *Aspen Refinery Multi-Blend Optimizer*.

Primary Distribution Planning for Petroleum generates distribution plans, optimizes multi-commodity and multi-period transport of several modes of distribution, and analyzes economics of the buy versus make trade off and export/import alternatives.

Distribution Scheduler plans replenishments while minimizing transport and handling cost. It creates distribution schedules for bulk shipping (focusing on mode selection and sourcing as e.g. necessary in chemical companies) and for packaged goods shipping (focusing on load consolidation as e.g. necessary in CPG companies).

Inventory Manager allows process manufacturers to calculate inventory levels and targets of safety and cycle stocks in complex distribution networks. It calculates target minimum and maximum inventory levels.

ATP/CTP/PTP Available-To-Promise, Capable-To-Promise, and Profitable-To-Promise refer to the ability to commit and fulfill customer requests for product delivery quickly and reliably. ATP evaluates whether there is inventory available for the customer order or when inventory will be available, given the current production schedules. CTP is an extension to this capability, where the model attempts to reschedule production in order to fulfill the order. PTP takes this to another level where the profitability of taking the order is determined. Aspen Capable-To-Promise links Order Fulfillment systems directly to scheduling and/or planning applications. Orders can be promised to customers interactively based on existing inventory, already-planned production, available but not yet scheduled capacity, or any combination of these sources.

18.1.2 Coordination of Modules

AspenTech's APS modules are built on a *relational database model* which allows the relevant data to be shared across several modules without unnecessary duplication. This database also transforms and manages the master and transactional data from ERP systems or other legacy plant systems required to maintain a timely and accurate representation of business and manufacturing functions.

18.2 JDA: Manufacturing Planning Suite

JDA, based in Scottsdale, Arizona, with European branch offices offers a broad range of supply chain, retail merchandising, store operations and all-channel commerce solutions through the cloud to synchronize and optimize the management of the flow of goods from raw materials to finished products and into the hands of consumers.

JDA was established in 1978, when it offered its first software solutions for the Retail-Industry. Over time JDA developed and acquired solutions in the area of merchandize planning, allocation planning, planograms and replenishment planning. Starting with the acquisition of Manugistics in 2006 and continuing with the acquisition of i2 Technologies in 2010, JDA complemented its portfolio with solutions for Strategic Network Planning, Demand Planning, Supply Chain Planning (Master Planning), Factory Planning and Scheduling, Inventory Optimization, Order Promising, and Transportation Planning. Through the merger with Redprairie in late 2012 JDA created an integrated Supply Chain offering connecting retail with manufacturing and supply chain planning with supply chain execution. JDA now offers five major solution suites: Distribution Centric Supply Chain, Retail Planning, Collaborative Category Management, Manufacturing Planning, and Store Operations.

In the following we concentrate on the Manufacturing Planning Suite which mainly, but not exclusively, consists of the former APS modules from Manugistics and i2 Technologies. These modules were united in one platform. Planning functions that were covered by Manugistics and by i2 modules were added just once to JDA Manufacturing Planning Suite, by selecting the better suited of the corresponding Manugistics and i2 modules. All modules of the planning suite are now accessible via one user interface. The planning suite also provides cloud-based services.

18.2.1 Modules of the JDA Manufacturing Planning Suite

In the following, we describe the core Manufacturing Planning Suite modules in more detail and link them to the according business processes of the SCM Matrix (see Fig. 18.2). Further, we give an overview of additional JDA supply chain solutions. The JDA Manufacturing Planning Suite components are complemented by a set of services ranging from strategic consulting, implementation consulting and education services. The solution is delivered through the cloud with services for rapid project launches, high performance application management services as well as value added services to constantly adapt the customers' solutions to changing business environments.

Supply Chain Strategist (SCS) supports strategic what-if-analysis across the entire supply chain. The optimal combination and location of production sites, distribution centers and other entities is determined. Material flows with all related costs as well as constraints can be modeled in different scenarios.

Sales & Operations Planning (S&OP) supports the S&OP process by profitable synchronization of demand and supply, identification and quantification of opportunities and risks, through conduction of what-if scenario analysis and by tying tactical plans to strategic objectives. Effectively sitting "on top" of the mid-term planning solutions of the Manufacturing Planning Suite it is integrated to the "below" optimization solutions in order to enable fast data reconciliation.

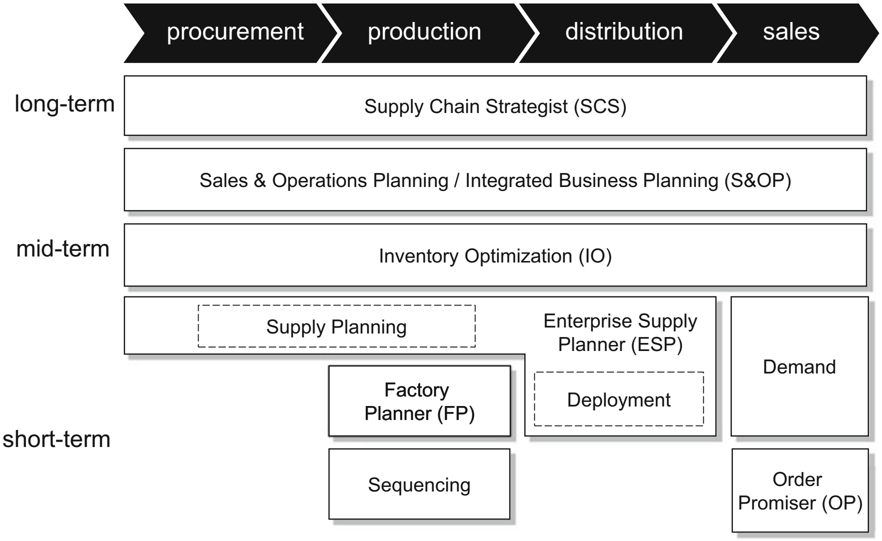


Fig. 18.2 Overview of JDA Manufacturing Planning Suite

This enables executive reviews and informed decision making supported by comprehensive S&OP process orchestration. Key enablers are extensive rapid impact analysis tools as well as interactive rough cut capacity planning combined with qualitative data analysis and issue tracking. There exists an Oliver Wight Class A Management best practice template for S&OP. The S&OP module relies on in-memory cube technology.

Demand supports the forecasting process through statistical methods, inclusion of causal factors and management of multiple inputs from different organizational units. For the selection of the best suited statistical method for the forecasting object (e.g. a product, SKU, product group, etc.) JDA offers a method called Demand Classification which suggests the appropriate algorithm based on an analysis of the object's history and auto-configures it on object level to improve forecast accuracy. POS (point of sales) data can be integrated and different views on demand data can be offered. Furthermore, in-memory cube tools enable efficient access to relevant data. Forecast data can be aggregated and allocated across sales hierarchies, product hierarchies and time, or can be segmented into further definable hierarchies, e.g. manufacturing locations, packaging types or financial measures. Attach-rate forecasting supports the creation of dependent forecasts. Dependent forecasts are used for example in the consumer packaged goods industry or consumer electronics industry to derive a forecast for individual finished goods (e.g. digital camera and memory card) from a forecast for a bundle of finished goods (e.g. camera plus memory card that is bundled for marketing purposes). This functionality is also used in industries like the high-tech industry where a forecast on component level is derived from the forecast on finished goods level to drive purchasing decisions (see Chap. 23).

Inventory Optimization (IO) provides micro-segmentation capabilities to drive differentiated inventory strategies combined with a multi-echelon inventory optimization engine based on the mathematical convolution of the functions describing the demand and supply variability. Three main workflows are supported: strategic inventory target setting, e.g. on an annual or quarterly basis, tactical review of the targets including auto-approve, auto-reject and manual approval of target changes based on definable thresholds and thirdly short term root-cause analysis to prevent impeding stock-outs or to do an analysis in the retrospective.

Enterprise Supply Planner (ESP) enables modeling and optimizing supply chains with respect to material, capacity, transportation and customer-service constraints. The ESP Supply Planning module generates optimized, feasible plans across several factories and independent ERP systems. The Strategy Driven Planning allows planners to define types of problems and strategies to solve them. Furthermore, it is possible to apply appropriate solvers like Linear Programming, heuristics and genetic algorithms. The module provides overall visibility over the supply chain model and the generated plan including a variety of predefined reports in order to analyze the plan and compare multiple planning scenarios to each other. The main plan generation engines are complemented with an ad-hoc scenario-engine called Pro-Agile in order to support user-driven short term plan adaptation and decision support through rapid scenario creation. The ESP Deployment module enables optimized decisions to assign supply to demand on a short-term level.

Factory Planner (FP) provides detailed visibility over the production plan and helps to reduce manufacturing cycle times. It generates optimized production plans by scheduling backward from the requested date, as well as scheduling forward from current date while considering material and capacity constraints simultaneously. After a first infinite planning step where demand and supply is matched, a finite capacity plan can be determined by JDA's proprietary Constraint Anchored Optimization. However, the planner can manually interact by analyzing capacity shortages and performing what-if-analysis. In the last planning step a detailed schedule can be generated for the factory.

Sequencing supports manufacturing environments requiring detailed scheduling and sequencing. It builds detailed sequences and schedules based on different algorithms suited for different industry sectors recognizing the differences between process and discrete manufacturing. The flexible definition of constraints and the selection and parameterization of an appropriate optimization algorithm allows the handling of a large number of complex constraints and generation of optimized schedules. For application in process industry scenarios, complex change-over matrices might be setup and used for computation of a schedule. Constraints include shop floor capacities, workload balancing, material availability, etc. Additionally, an interactive schedule editor allows for manual changes.

Order Promiser (OP) provides functionality to assign short supply to customers and to quote feasible delivery dates for customer orders. Allocation of supply (ATP, Available-to-Promise, and A-ATP, Allocated ATP) can be based on current and projected inventory positions or available capacities (CTP, Capable-to-Promise, and A-CTP, Allocated CTP). It respects customer priorities modeled in a sales hierarchy (e.g. global pool of available supply versus restricted supply for important customers only), fair share and profitability based strategies with the assignment of supply to particular customers. Orders are promised in real-time based on the current and projected status of inventories and capacities in the supply chain network. It typically is integrated to existing order management systems and respects all supply and its allocations. For SAP ERP environments JDA provides a standard integration package to connect SAP SD with JDA Order Promiser in real-time.

18.2.2 Coordination of JDA Planning Modules

The planning workflows using the modules of the JDA Manufacturing Planning Suite described above are coordinated by the JDA Platform. JDA Platform provides a common user interface for all modules embedded in a Web-User Interface and a pre-packaged application integration.

JDA Platform is an open and service based architecture that incorporates several modules for data integration (see below), managing data, for establishing workflows across systems and for measuring and comparing performance indicators through reporting capabilities spanning the entire supply chain. JDA Platform includes the SCPO data warehouse (Supply Chain Planning and Optimization) which incorporates all data relevant for planning in an integrated data model. Data integration is based on the SCPO data model between the JDA planning modules (e.g. Enterprise Supply Planning, Factory Planning, Demand, etc.), and towards external systems. The functionality can be exposed both as an API and a service. A new forecast, for example, that is created using JDA Demand, can be automatically transferred via the Platform to JDA ESP as input to the master planning process. Supported by a design environment, the JDA Platform Studio, logic across applications and detailed workflows can be adapted to changes in business processes.

JDA Platform Reporting provides reports and dashboards to create individual reports of key performance indicators of the supply chain, to compare multiple plans and simulations and to alert users to potential problems so they can be resolved proactively.

18.2.3 System Integration

The data integration between the JDA planning modules internally and to external systems like an ERP-system is achieved by JDA Platform Services, which support existing Enterprise Application Integration (EAI) software such as

- Webmethods for message-based integration and Extract-Transfer-Load (ETL) concepts
- Informatica for mass data transfer.

JDA Platform uses services of multiple JDA modules and integrated external systems to define workflows and logic across these applications. Based on a common data model for the workflows it connects business relevant services and enables a synchronization of the underlying systems.

JDA Platform also supports Supply Chain Master Data Management (MDM) through a process-oriented data management tool that enables enterprises to create a common business vocabulary for all their data but also manages business rules, like the relationship of an order to its shipping details. It also manages data synchronization processes between applications—if data changes in one application, it will synchronize the impact of that change with all affected applications.

18.2.4 Collaboration Modules

Collaborative planning with suppliers is supported by the Collaborative Supply Execution (CSE) module. CSE is a system that helps companies bring together all their supplier interactions related to direct material procurement irrespective of the size, process or technological sophistication of the suppliers. It enables the company and its supply partners to collaborate on supply plans, purchase orders/schedules, inventory, shipments, receipts and invoices, which allows for the company to manage the entire order lifecycle for orders with different business processes including managing lean processes like VMI, JIT, Kanban, etc., by connecting order execution with shipment visibility. The Demand module of JDA supports collaborative planning with customers.

18.2.5 Overview of Further JDA Supply Chain Suites

Distribution Centric Supply Chain Suite (DCS) provides single enterprise-wide demand shaping and forecasting to optimize both planning and execution decisions. It enables proactive constraint-aware planning to minimize rework and deliver profitable decisions while streamlining execution. DCS features intelligent Order Lifecycle Management to orchestrate flexible and profitable order fulfillment decisions and maximize pallet and load building results through dynamic wave planning, robust containerization and iterative task optimization that considers warehouse inventory availability, assets, and labor and transportation constraints. The DCS solution suite combines JDA Demand's demand planning and JDA's Fulfillment's distribution planning capability with the execution capabilities of JDA Warehouse Management (WMS), Transportation Management (TMS) and Workforce Management (WFM).

Retail Planning Suite (RP) is a merchandise planning and assortment management solution enabling retailers and wholesalers to establish financial, merchandise and localization strategies driving consumer centric, inventory and item lifecycle plans. It has embedded retail optimization and analytics to provide consumer demand insights driving strategies and assortment recommendations. Based on visual planning it provides plan evaluation, performance insights and consumer offer validation and enables end-to-end financial merchandise planning, space-aware assortment and micro and macro space management.

Collaborative Category Management Suite (CCM) provides an end-to-end solution allowing manufacturers to collaborate with retailers to automate localized assortment and space plans, and monitor plans at the shelf. The suite combines many of the JDA Retail capabilities around space planning, floor planning and space automation to make them available for manufacturers. Complemented with the demand classification, forecasting and collaboration capabilities this suite is intended for joint category management between manufacturers and retailers. It includes cloud collaboration capabilities and space-based insights to monitor execution results, leading to deeper analytics and driving proactive recommendations.

Store Operations Suite (SO) is designed to maximize the retail supply chain organization's operation and workforce utilization through optimization, integration and mobility that delivers higher profitability, better customer service, improved compliance, enhanced goal adherence or lowered operating cost. The SO suite uses JDA's workforce management capabilities. It supports a single view on the global retail supply chain. SO integrates planning across different stages and enables the simultaneous planning of work and tasks, e.g. in store pricing.

18.3 OM Partners: OMP Plus Suite

OM Partners, headquartered in Wommelgem Belgium, was founded in 1985. Initially developing mathematical programming software, the company gradually extended to provide a complete suite of supply chain planning software called OMP Plus. Unlike competition, the company grew organically in the past 28 years, with a strong foothold in the Mill Products (paper, metals, plastics and floor coverings) and Semi Process industries (chemicals, food and beverages, consumer products). OM Partners followed the internationalization of its customers and has now offices in the USA, China, United Arab Emirates and several key European countries.

18.3.1 OMP Plus Modules

Initially developed as stand-alone applications, OM Partners has now integrated all modules into the OMP Plus suite. An overview of all modules is provided in Fig. 18.3.

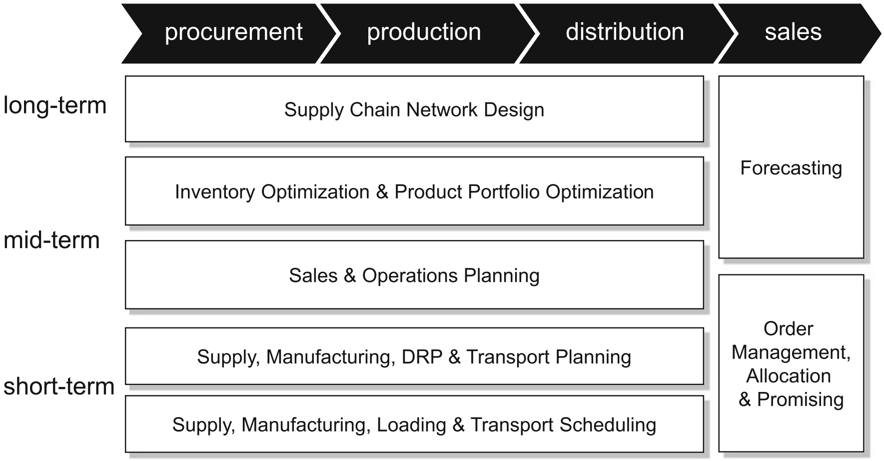


Fig. 18.3 Overview of OMP Plus modules

Supply Chain Network Design manages different strategic supply chain questions and provides optimization functionalities to solve these. It uses a standard discounted cash flow optimization model that can be customized. OMP Plus enables scenario management and has extended reporting and visualization capabilities, leveraging the functionality of the whole OMP Plus suite.

Inventory and Portfolio Optimization builds on the Strategic Supply Chain Network Design functionality to determine target safety stock levels. Based on the optimization results, the module runs a multi-echelon simulation model that will calculate safety stocks for every product at every level of the supply chain. Forecast accuracy metrics can be sourced from the Forecasting module directly and the results can be populated directly to the Master Planning module.

Forecasting in OMP Plus provides a flexible modeling of demand information and advanced statistical methods to derive forecasts and measure forecast accuracy. Built in artificial intelligence functionality identifies exceptional sales patterns and helps choose the most adequate forecast aggregation/disaggregation strategy. The forecasts are populated automatically to all other modules.

Sales and Operations Planning (S&OP) balances demand with supply within a tactical horizon. OMP Plus' S&OP functionality uses data from the operational plan as input (firmed production plan, current inventories). The Sales and Operations Plan can be run at an aggregated level as well as at a detailed level. In case of a run at an aggregated level, the S&OP target volumes will be automatically populated to the Supply, Manufacturing and DRP planning module as guidelines. OMP Plus allows planners to use optimization techniques to run a value-based S&OP (contribution maximization or cost minimization).

Supply, Manufacturing, DRP and Transport Planning/Scheduling encompasses decisions on supply planning, master production scheduling and distribution planning. It mostly operates using daily planning buckets, receiving planning data from the S&OP module, the forecasting module as well as the inventory optimization module. Planning results are fed back to the ERP system using standard interfaces (see next section and Chap. 26 for a practical application). In the past 25 years, OMP has developed a various range of optimization models and custom heuristics (solvers) for discrete and process industry applications. One of OMP Plus' strengths is the ability to run solvers interactively, provide a good visualization of the results and let the planner the freedom to take over only a part of the solver's results.

Order Management, Allocation and Promising is also covered in OMP Plus. Two main functionalities are available. On the one hand, it allocates orders to forecasts automatically based on user-defined logic. On the other hand, OMP Plus provides advanced functionality to allocate orders to supply using business rules, allowing accurate promise dates based on Available-to-Promise (ATP), Capable-to-Promise (CTP) or mixed ATP/CTP logics. The benefits of business rules are that it allows the planner to automate part of the allocation work while taking into account very specific constraints without "hard-coding" them. The allocation plan is visible within the whole OMP Plus suite, providing real-time visibility on product availability.

18.3.2 Coordination and Integration Modules

Due to the consolidation of all modules in the OMP Plus suite, all modules now use the same data model and are accessed using the same application. A user can be modifying forecasts next to scheduling production and adjusting S&OP forecast within the same session. Consistency of planning can be ensured using a hierarchical planning products structure. Thanks to the in-memory functionality of OMP Plus, changes by a planner can be immediately seen by another planner.

OMP Integrator makes it possible to link OMP Plus with ERP systems such as SAP or Oracle. This link can be file- or message-based (e.g. iDocs for SAP ERP). OMP Integrator also provides standard integration with SAP using the POIM/POIT interface and OMP's own SAI modules.

OMP Data Manager provides a standard interface to maintain OMP Plus data without going into the SQL database itself.

OMP Feedback Manager provides functionality to link non-ERP systems such as quality or shop-floor systems with the OMP Plus Suite.

OMP Reporter includes embedded versions of SAP Crystal Reports® and MapInfo®. This allows users to create their own visualization of planning data and results.

18.3.3 Collaboration Modules

OMP provides a web-based functionality to enter and share forecasts via a portal (intra- or extranet). The same applies for all planning results within the OMP Plus suite using Crystal Reports.

18.4 Oracle: Value Chain Planning

Oracle, founded in 1977 and headquartered in Redwood Shores, California, started as a specialist for relational database software, but has in the meantime extended its portfolio to a broad range of software packages on business intelligence, business applications, collaboration, and middleware. In 2005, Oracle took over Peoplesoft, a software company traditionally offering ERP software for non-productive and manufacturing industries, which again had acquired J.D.Edwards, a Denver-based provider of ERP and Advanced Planning software for medium-sized companies, in 2003. Due to these acquisitions and the later acquisition of Demantra—a specialist for demand management, sales & operations planning and trade promotion management—in 2006, Oracle had a broad choice to streamline its advanced planning solution *Oracle Value Chain Planning* (VCP) as part of its more comprehensive Supply Chain Management suite (see e.g. Oracle 2014).

18.4.1 Oracle's APS Modules

In the following, selected APS software modules of Oracle's Value Chain Planning are briefly introduced. An overview of the most important ones is given in Fig. 18.4.

Strategic Network Optimization (SNO) is intended to be applied on the strategic planning level. Optimization methods of Linear and Mixed Integer Programming (CPLEX; see IBM ILOG CPLEX Optimizer 2014) and special purpose heuristics (e.g. for capital asset management and single sourcing) support the choice of appropriate supply chain structures. The most striking feature of SNO is its visualization. Even complex supply chains can be "designed" graphically without any knowledge of mathematical modeling being necessary. The case study of Chap. 21 will show that SNO is not restricted to strategic planning, but can also be used for Master Planning.

Advanced Supply Chain Planning (ASCP) is Oracle's actual tool for mid-term Master Planning and Production Planning in multi-site supply chains. It offers three different types of algorithms, namely unconstrained, constrained and optimization-based planning. The unconstrained one bases on principles of Distribution Requirements Planning (DRP) and Materials Requirements Planning (MRP). The constrained one also applies priority rules in a successive manner, but at least tries to respect limited capacities and given delivery dates. If this is not successful due to the algorithm's heuristic nature, violations of constraints

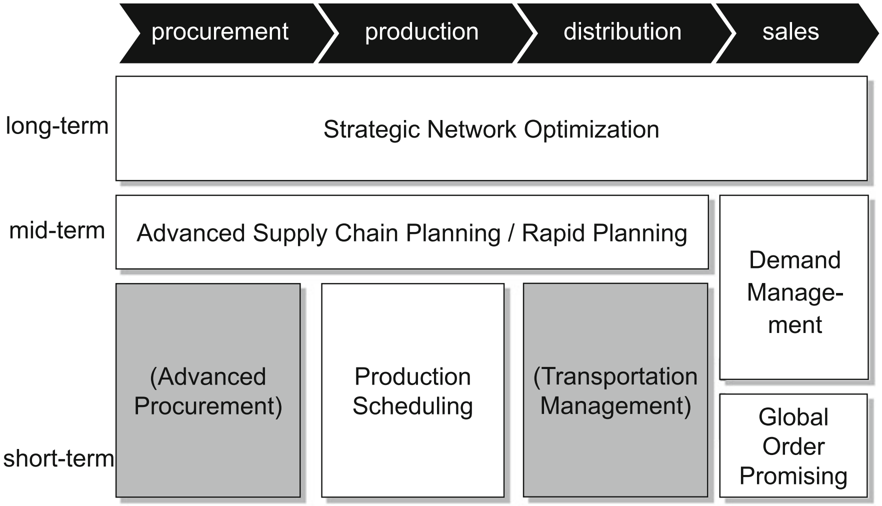


Fig. 18.4 Software modules of Oracle Value Chain Planning

are explicitly revealed to the user. Optimization-based planning uses LP and MIP methods to minimize costs or maximize profits while simultaneously taking into account all relevant supply chain constraints. ASCP also comprises a simple scheduling tool in order to quickly build rough schedules for a short-term horizon or to simulate the effects of mid-term planning on short-term scheduling.

As a fast and interactive, alternative tool for mid- and short-term planning, also *Rapid Planning* can be used.

Demand Management(DM) is a module that originates from Oracle's acquisition of Demantra in 2006. It uses a mixed-model Bayesian approach to forecast multi-dimensional data hierarchies. Mixed-model means that causal forecasting is applied (see Chap. 7) and that several possibly fitting causal models are weighted with probabilities in order to get an overall forecast. Even though causal factors like seasonality, prices and promotions can already be respected by DM, in consumer goods industries DM can be supplemented by *Trade Promotion Management* (TPM), which is further specialized on analyzing and predicting the effects of trade promotions. In order to hedge against forecast errors, the software module *Inventory Optimization* can be applied. It proposes safety stock levels for multi-echelon supply chains.

Production Scheduling (PS) is concerned with short-term production planning and detailed scheduling. Its original version was mainly dedicated to multi-stage production processes with floating bottlenecks and complex BOMs, which can frequently be found in discrete parts' production.

However, during the last versions a number of further functionalities have been added to PS in order to extend its footprint also to process industries (thus being able to handle planning tasks that in former times had been in charge of a module called *Production Scheduling Process*). For example, *Campaign Run Optimization* heuristically tackles lotsizing and scheduling problems by letting the user define preferences for building lot sequences (e.g., with respect to changeover costs or changeover times) and by solving continuous Linear Programs as sub-problems to determine appropriate lot sizes and inventories.

Global Order Promising (GOP) Based on a capacitated ASCP run, GOP allows to define ATP and CTP for multi-stage supply chains and BOMs. Allocation and consumption rules—including "stealing" or "nesting", as they are successful in yield management systems of service industries like the airline industry—can be defined to prioritize customer groups of higher importance. Besides ATP and CTP checks, GOP provides also "*Profitable To Promise*"(PTP) functionality, i.e. different fulfillment options can be assessed by their profit margin. As a new feature, GOP now also allows to extend ATP and CTP checks to a company's immediate suppliers.

Advanced Procurement and *Transportation Management (OTM)* are not part of Oracle VCP in a strong sense. They originally stem from Oracle's Enterprise Resource Planning and Value Chain Execution solutions. They are mentioned here to emphasize that there are further software modules of Oracle's Supply Chain Management suite, which do offer some planning functionality and thus supplement Oracle VCP.

18.4.2 Coordination of Modules

The VCP software modules do not directly communicate with each other. Instead, the horizontal and vertical information exchange between the different software modules of Oracle VCP is established via a common data base, the so-called *Planning Data Store*. All VCP modules read their planning data from and write their planning results to this data base. Data are always stored in the highest level of detail necessary. Thus, aggregation and disaggregation rules have to be defined if modules like DM, SNO, ASCP or PS need to work on different levels of aggregation. For example, if DM and ASCP work with products groups and months, but PS with final items and days, the latter one would define the storage detail. Then, a transfer of forecasts from DM to ASCP would necessitate a disaggregation followed by an aggregation, even though both of them actually work on the same level of aggregation. Nevertheless, the user is not bothered because data transformation happens in the background.

Data exchange and information flows can be automated using the *Advanced Planning Command Center* (APCC) and the *Business Process Execution Language* (BPEL). The APCC is a central planning cockpit that allows access to the above software modules of VCP, manages planning scenarios (e.g., S&OP; see below), and consolidates the manifold KPIs, which result from the planning modules, to compact business reports. Because of this latter functionality it serves as a business intelligence layer for the planning software. While BPEL builds the technical basis do develop user-defined workflows, APCC helps to administrate and concert these different workflows.

18.4.3 System Integration

BPEL is part of the *Oracle Fusion Middleware* (FMW), which is not only responsible for the “internal” information exchange between the different software modules of Oracle VCP, but also connects Oracle VCP with “external” software suites like, for example, Enterprise Resource Planning or Customer Relationship Management software. FMW consists of several software suites addressing, for example, service-oriented architectures, business process management and data integration. These again contain many software modules like the *Oracle BPEL Process Manager* (providing BPEL) or the *Oracle Data Integrator* (allowing to extract, transform and load data concerning the Planning Data Store). These can be used to build flexible adapters, e.g., connecting to Oracle’s inhouse ERP software *Oracle Peoplesoft Enterprise One*, but also to third party applications or applications in the cloud.

18.4.4 Collaboration Modules

DM already offers a basic functionality for web-based collaboration between a company’s internal (e.g., its various purchasing, production, and sales departments) and external (e.g., suppliers and customers) supply chain partners.

This can further be enhanced by *Demantra Real-Time Sales and Operations Planning* (S&OP), which is specialized on consolidating information of several functional departments like finance, sales, marketing, logistics and production in real-time. For example, it can be used to obtain a consensus forecast of the various internal members of a company’s sales hierarchy. But external supply chain members can be integrated in this process, too, e.g., when point-of-sales data of retailers are collected to improve the forecasts of a consumer goods manufacturer in a CPFR-like collaboration process (see Chap. 14).

However, S&OP can also help to agree on a mid-term master plan by offering a common interface and pre-defined workflows for a comfortable interplay between sales-related VCP modules like DM or TPM and operations-related modules like SNO or ASCP, supporting several planning rounds. For instance, a scenario could look like this: TPM forecasts the effects of a price discount on demand. Both price and demand forecasts are sent to ASCP in order to check whether supply chain capacity is sufficient or capacity enhancements like overtime would still be profitable to fulfill the increased demand. If not, TPM would again forecast the effects of a decreased discount, etc. Typically, S&OP is executed in fixed frequencies, for example, once per month. “Real-time” means in this context that S&OP permanently compares the mid-term S&OP master plan with actual data in order to generate alerts if serious deviations occur.

The *Collaborative Planning* module of VCP supports external collaboration by posting demand forecasts and replenishment information across the whole supply chain and by supporting Vendor Managed Inventory processes from both the vendors' and the customers' points of view. Note that further collaboration functionalities can be found in other modules of the Oracle system. For example, APCC can allow access also to external supply chain partners.

18.5 SAP: SCM and SAP APO

SAP AG (Walldorf/Germany) has been active in the APS market since 1998. The *Advanced Planner and Optimizer* (APO) was originally intended and sold as an independent software suite. Until 2007 it was part of the mySAP suite and it is now sold as *SAP Supply Chain Management* supplemented with different solutions/systems like *Extended Warehouse Management (EWM)*, *Transportation Management* or *Supply Network Collaboration (SNC)*.

The technology for this applications is based on *SAP Netweaver*, which provides an application and integration platform for all SAP applications. *Netweaver* hosts several components and the *Business Intelligence* including the *Business Information Warehouse* (SAP's Data Warehouse).

In 2010 SAP introduced *SAP HANA*, an in-memory database technology to reduce the access times and enable near real-time access to business data. The first applications were in the area of business intelligence and analytics. Starting from 2013 all SAP SCM solutions are enabled to access and store their data in HANA.

This section will provide an overview of selected APO components. For more information, see the current SCM documentations (e.g. SAP 2014 and Dickersbach 2009).

18.5.1 SAP's Software Components

APO is a fully integrated APS. All APO components can be accessed through the *Supply Chain Cockpit* and have an identical look-and-feel. The paragraphs below give a brief description of the individual APO components illustrated in Fig. 18.5 based on SCM 7.0.

Demand Planning offers—in addition to conventional statistical methods—promotion planning tools, life cycle concepts, what-if-analysis, phase-in planning for new product initiation and collaborative forecasting methods. Reports on forecast accuracy can be generated and alerts can be raised. Furthermore, this component provides OLAP tools for Data Warehouse integration. It provides a functionality called *characteristics-based-forecasting* having special aggregation and disaggregation procedures for components of configurable products and material availability constraints.

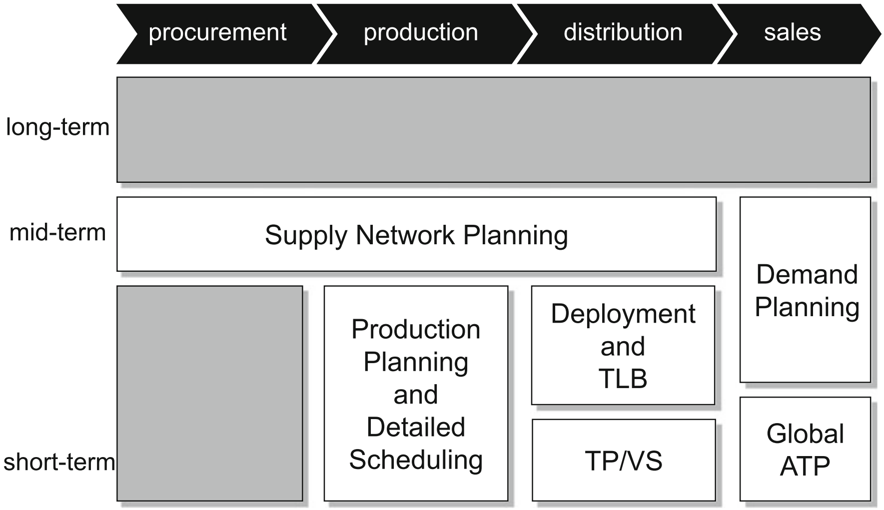


Fig. 18.5 Software components of SAP APO

Supply Network Planning serves planning and optimization functionality that take into consideration capacity and material availability constraints and costs. Optimization is based on automatically generated *Linear and Mixed Integer Programming* models (see Chap. 30) which use IBM ILOG CPLEX (see IBM ILOG CPLEX Optimizer 2014) as a solver. Decomposition rules regarding time, resources and products can be applied to speed up the solution process. Additionally, proprietary heuristic approaches are used, such as *Capable-to-Match* (CTM), a rule based approach. Simulations of different supply chain configurations as well as matching of supply and demand with respect to alternative production sites, substitution of products, prioritizing customers, shelf-life etc. are supported. Alerts can be raised in case of late deliveries and violation of bottleneck capacities. Supply Network Planning contains the components Deployment, Safety Stock Planning and Transport Load Builder (see below). Supply Network Planning provides functionality to manage different planning scenarios, and thus, can be used for evaluation in strategic planning. An explanation tool for the optimizer communicates the reasons for a solution to the user (e.g. capacity constraints led to a stock out).

Global ATP performs a rule based multi-level component and capacity check based on current data. It provides product substitution methods, alternative site selection for production and purchasing, and methods for allocating scarce products and components to customers, markets, orders etc.

Production Planning and Detailed Scheduling (PP/DS) offers methods for optimizing detailed capacity and material planning simultaneously. It can perform multi-level forward and backward scheduling. Different constraints can be considered in simulations and interactive scheduling using gantt-charts is provided. Current, short-term data can be integrated into optimization runs. Production Planning and Detailed Scheduling uses proprietary evolutionary algorithms (see Chap. 31). These approaches can be combined with decomposition approaches regarding time and resources. An explanation protocol can be used to understand and analyze the solution.

Deployment and Transport Load Builder (TLB) allocates actual supply (produced quantities and inventory) to planned supply. This allocation is controlled by *push* and *pull* strategies, predefined quotas and priority rules. For example, results from the Supply Network Planning optimization run can be used for defining such quotas. Inventory and allocation plans are displayed graphically. Transport Load Builder ensures that vehicles are loaded within a specified minimum and maximum range. Iterations are used to derive a feasible deployment plan respecting vehicle loads (see SAP 2014).

Transportation Planning and Vehicle Scheduling (TP/VS) is a planning component for transportation processes. On the basis of shipment requirements optimal vehicle loadings and routings can be derived. A proprietary evolutionary algorithm (see Chap. 31) and additional heuristics supplement TP/VS's solution process. TP/VS allows to model e.g. multi-pick, multi-drop scenarios, the inclusion of hubs, compatibilities and time windows.

18.5.2 Coordination and Integration of Software Components

APO offers a graphical user interface, the *Supply Chain Cockpit*, that gives an overview of the supply chain being modeled and from which all APO software components can be accessed. The Supply Chain Cockpit also provides the *Supply Chain Engineer* to graphically build a macro-model of the supply chain. This model can be shown in detailed views, and special information can be extracted for each entity. The *Alert Monitor* is also part of this component. APO planning components use a common database. To enable fast access for all software components this database is kept memory resident (the so-called *live*Cache).

With the introduction of SAP HANA the Supply Chain InfoCenter was built to provide a unified user interface (UI) for analytics and operational reporting. The InfoCenter is placed as an alternative to reporting via BW and is integrated through HANA into the data from the ERP and APO. This enables the planner to process near real-time data and to gain an overview of supply chain metrics like demand, supply and stock information.

SAP *Supply Chain Event Management* provides automated collection and tracking of information such as order status, shipments and inventory using Internet and mobile technologies. In response to exception-based events activities in planning and execution system can automatically be triggered.

18.5.3 System Integration

APO provides two different options for integrating OLTP systems. The *Core Interface* (CIF) allows direct access to SAP ERP data objects and vice versa. Integration to non SAP systems is achieved through so-called *Business Application Programming Interfaces* (BAPIs). By using BAPIs the objects of APO can be accessed by a kind of programming language. Thus, it is possible to map, for example, ASCII-files to APO data objects. SAP also provides the *Business Information Warehouse* for storing historical data. APO is able to receive these data, which are particularly relevant for Demand Planning, using predefined queries and OLAP tools.

18.5.4 Software Components for Collaboration

SAP uses Internet and associated technologies, such as XML, to enable the collaboration between business partners. Using conventional Internet browsers APO can be accessed online. The SAP APO *Collaborative Planning* modules enable this collaboration. They support consensus based planning processes for collaboration on shared plans within demand planning, procurement planning etc. (e.g. Inventory Collaboration Hub, web-interfaces of Demand Planning). They further provide read-write data access as well as access to planning activities for authorized users using Internet browsers, user specific negotiation processes, user defined screens and workplaces, visualization of alerts, the connection to multiple systems, and links to partner systems.

References

Dickersbach, J. (2009). *Supply chain management with SAP APO* (3rd ed.). Berlin/New York: Springer.

IBM ILOG CPLEX Optimizer (2014). Homepage, http://www-03.ibm.com/software/products/de/ibmilogcpleoptistud/. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Oracle (2014). Homepage, http://www.oracle.com. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

SAP (2014). SAP help portal, http://help.sap.com/. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Strategic Network Design in the Chemical Industry

19

Jochen Häberle and Christoph Kilger

In the chemical industry final products of one producer act as input material to the production process of the following producer (i.e. the customer of the first producer). The following producer may be also a chemical company, further refining and processing the input chemicals, or it may be a producer of some other products, such as textiles, food, pharmaceuticals, etc., using the input chemicals as ingredients for their final products. As production lead times in the chemical industry are usually longer than the order lead times, chemicals are—in most cases—produced in make-to-stock mode. Thus, after production, the final products are pushed into a distribution network and stored in distribution centers. The structure and operational parameters (e.g. safety stock levels) of the distribution network are directly influencing the performance of the chemicals supply chain.

In this case study we describe the reorganization of the European distribution network of a global chemicals manufacturer. The analysis and the optimization of the distribution network has been supported by PRODISI SCO, an APS-module specialized in Strategic Network Design. The structure of the case study is as follows:

- Section 19.1 describes the structure and the typology of the supply chain and the situation prior to the reorganization of the distribution network.
- The objectives of the project are summarized in Sect. 19.2.
- Section 19.3 introduces a framework used to structure and guide the project.

J. Häberle
Federal-Mogul Friedberg GmbH, Large Bore Engine Rings, Engelschalkstr. 1, 86316 Friedberg, Germany
e-mail: jochen.haeberle@federalmogul.com

C. Kilger (✉)
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8, 66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: christoph.kilger@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__19,

- The initial model of the distribution network, called *baseline model*, is described in Sect. 19.4.
- Section 19.5 summarizes the creation and analysis of scenario models.
- Results and lessons learned are the topic of Sect. 19.6.

19.1 Case Description

19.1.1 Structure of the Chemicals Supply Chain

A typical chemicals supply chain consists of suppliers (being not considered in this case study), manufacturing plants (own and sub-contracted plants), distribution centers (typically multi-staged, central and regional DCs), and the customers' sites.

The chemical company described in this case study is a worldwide leader in specialty and basic chemicals, with approx. 10,000 employees and subsidiaries worldwide. There are five business units, each being specialized in a particular product portfolio (e.g. oleochemicals, care chemicals, nutrition & health, functional products, and process chemicals). Important clients are in the detergents and cleaners industry, the health and nutrition sector, the cosmetics industry, and a number of other industrial markets such as coatings and inks, textiles and plastics, as well as synthetic lubricants, agriculture, mining, and oil extraction. The company has several production plants and warehouses across Europe. Due to the current production and distribution network there are about 30 % of compound deliveries. These are transports between the plants and/or warehouses, as well as supplies to the European sales organizations and end customers. The following figures describe the supply chain structure in Europe:

- 10,000 articles
- 14 production sites
- 24 toll manufacturers
- A two-staged distribution network with 40 locations, consisting of larger distribution centers and smaller shipping points
- 16,000 customers (goods recipients)
- 2.6 million tons of transport volume per annum
- 280,000 delivery notes with 400,000 positions per annum.

Table 19.1 summarizes the typology of the chemicals supply chain.

19.1.2 As-Is Situation

Because of a constant growth and expansions of business, it was necessary to consolidate and adjust the corporate structure in Europe. To support these measures, a cross-European supply chain organization was formed. The tasks of this organizational unit are to consolidate the regional markets and country-specific customers and to formulate suggestions for restructuring the existing distribution

Table 19.1 Supply chain typology for the chemicals industry

Functional attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Number and type of products procured	Multiple, standard (raw materials), few, standard (packaging materials)
Sourcing type	Multiple (raw materials), single, multiple (packaging materials)
Supplier lead time and reliability	Long, reliable (raw materials), medium, reliable (packaging materials)
Materials' life cycle	Long
Organization of the production process	Continuous, flow line
Repetition of operations	Batch production
Changeover characteristics	High sequence dept. setup times & costs
Bottlenecks in production	Known, almost stationary
Working time flexibility	Low (additional shifts sometimes)
Distribution structure	Two staged: DCs, shipping points
Pattern of delivery	Dynamic
Deployment of transportation means	Individual links
Loading restrictions	Full-truck loads from production to DCs
Availability of future demand	Forecasted
Shape of demand	Nearly constant
Products' life cycle	Several years
Number of product types	Multiple (bulk, packaged)
Degree of customization	Standard products
Products' structure	Divergent
Portion of service operations	Tangible goods
Structural attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Network structure	Divergent
Degree of globalization	Production plants in Europe, global distribution network
Location of decoupling point(s)	Deliver-to-order
Major constraints	Capacity of production & Warehouses
Legal position	Intra-organizational
Balance of power	Customers
Direction of coordination	Mixture
Type of information exchanged	Forecasts and orders

network structure. The design of a European network structure should be assisted and possible financial benefits realized.

In detail, the supply chain organization was facing the following issues:

- There was no overview over the complete network structure.
- The material flows of the product groups were not known in detail.
- The independent sales and logistics organizations in the European countries had no consolidated processes; there was only very little exchange of information between the European organizations.

- The master data (ZIP codes, country codes, etc.) were neither harmonized nor well maintained (e.g. transport cost data).

19.2 Objectives of the Project

In general, the benefits of a network redesign will lead to competitive advantage by providing faster and more accurate supply of products to customers at reduced costs. The main goal of strategic network design is to redesign the supply chain and find the best possible network configuration between suppliers, production sites, distribution centers and customers, so that the material flow, in this network, guarantees the maximum profit.

The supply chain management department, responsible for Germany and Europe, had to build a European distribution network with optimized costs for the whole supply chain. Furthermore, a distribution network should be created that is able to react faster to changes in the production network and to maximize the economic performance of the supply chain. The detailed objectives of the project, European Distribution Network Concept, were the following:

- The European material flows and the complete European network, consisting of production plants, distribution centers, shipping points, and customers, should be made transparent.
- A concept for simulating changes in the European supply chain should be developed.
- An IT-based tool for simulating changes to the existing supply chain structure should be implemented, to find an optimal supply chain structure and supply chain configuration. The *supply chain structure* is defined as all production plants, distribution centers, warehouses and shipping points, and customers. The *supply chain configuration* is the network combining these elements. The tool should support the modeling of the supply chain structure and its configuration. Optimization of the supply chain should be supported as well as simulation of so-called "what-if" scenarios. Product flows, associated costs, capacities, and service constraints from raw materials through production and distribution should be included in the model. In addition, "on" or "off" decisions about physical locations and transport links should be supported as well as particular attributes within the network components, e. g. adjusted shipment lot sizes, target stock levels, capacities and costs. The impact of changes to the network structure should be simulated not only locally, but also across the entire supply chain.
- A continuous improvement process should be implemented, that is driven by the supply chain management department using the distribution network simulation tool, in order to optimize transportation and warehousing costs. The project had to take into consideration all critical cost elements, including real estate, warehouse labor, inbound transportation, outbound transportation and key inventory cost factors.

19.3 Framework for Strategic Network Design

The framework for strategic network design consists out of the following four building blocks:

1. As-is analysis
2. Software selection
3. Baseline model
4. Alternative scenarios

19.3.1 As-Is Analysis

In the As-Is Analyze phase all relevant information regarding the supply chain is gathered. This information forms the foundation for the requirements analysis, the selection of the appropriate Strategic Network Design module supporting the requirements, and the creation of a baseline model. During the As-Is Analyze phase the following information were collected and analyzed:

- Structure of the supply chain (production sites-, stocking locations, distribution centers, shipping points, suppliers)
- Configuration of the supply chain (transportation links and modes)
- Customer groups and product groups
- Changeable and unchangeable parts of the supply chain
- Structure of transactional systems (e.g. ERP-systems).

Based on the information collected for the analysis, the scope of the project had to be defined precisely. In this project, it was decided to include the shipment areas of production plants (only finished products), the DCs, the shipping points and the customers into the scope. From the analysis, requirements for the software selection have to be derived. For instance, in this project, the existence of non-linear cost functions for transportation costs was confirmed. Further it was detected that in some distribution centers, materials were re-packaged (for instance bulk material was re-packaged into bags). Thus, the software module used for strategic network design must be able to represent the transformation of one material number (e.g. bulk material) into another material number (e.g. bags); for this purpose, bills of materials data structures must be supported by the software module.

19.3.2 Software Selection

Out of the results of the As-Is Analysis and the scope and requirements of the project, the best suitable APS software can be chosen. There is a broad variety of tools on the market, most of them designed to solve specific problems and therefore having specific data requirements. For an overview of Strategic Network Design modules see Chap. 16.

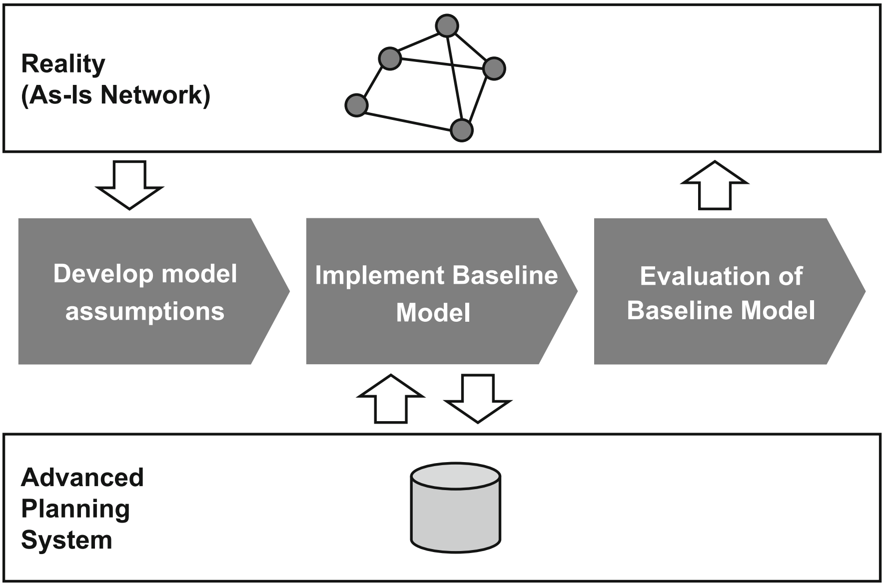


Fig. 19.1 Three-step approach to develop the baseline model

When selecting the appropriate simulation tool—besides the results of the As-Is situation—the following criteria's should be considered:

- One-time planning vs. regular planning
- Single period vs. multi period models
- Optimization vs. manual calculation of scenarios.

In this case study it was decided to regularly use the software tool, to update the models and assess the current configuration of the distribution network (regular planning). The planning horizon is 1 year, consisting of a single period. And, due to the complexity of the distribution network and the huge amount of data (see Sect. 19.1), it was obvious that an automatic optimization was required. Out of a short list of three Strategic Network Design modules, PRODISI SCO by PROLOGOS was selected. The two main reasons for the selection of PRODISI were (1) the features and the good optimization results of the network optimization algorithms of PRODISI and (2) the ability of PRODISI to represent complex and detailed transportation cost structures.

19.3.3 Baseline Model

The baseline model is the representation of the As-Is network in the simulation software. To develop the baseline model three steps are required as shown in Fig. 19.1.

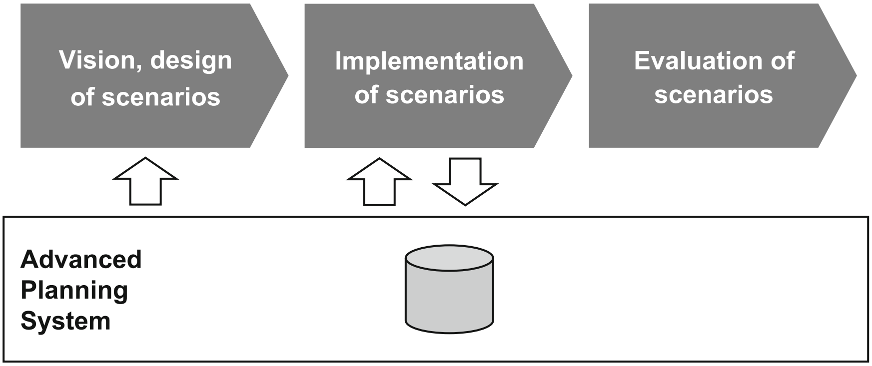


Fig. 19.2 Two-step approach for the development of alternative scenarios

In step 1 the model assumptions are developed. First, the elements of the network have to be determined and included into the data set. Second, the constraints that shall be represented in the model have to be determined, e.g. capacity constraints, source-destination combinations, handling of products in specific sites. Third, aggregation rules are determined. An example is the aggregation of shipping conditions into groups, such that all shipping conditions in the same group, can be represented with the same cost function. Fourth, filter rules are defined to filter wrong or inaccurate data, and to limit the data set to the elements of the network that are in scope.

The second step is the implementation of the baseline model. In this step, the data set is extracted from the transactional systems, and all aggregation and filtering rules determined in step 1 are applied. Then, the data set is imported into the APS tool. Furthermore, the APS tool is customized according to the functional requirements and the constraints determined in step 1.

After the baseline model was implemented, it is evaluated against reality. This takes place in step 3. An important indicator for the validity of the baseline model is the correspondence between the calculated transportation costs based on the baseline model and the actual transportation costs from the considered period.

19.3.4 Alternative Scenarios

One of the reasons for the implementation of a Strategic Network Design module of an APS is the ability to quickly evaluate alternative scenarios. The creation and evaluation of alternative scenarios is divided into three steps. Figure 19.2 summarizes the approach for the development of alternative scenarios.

The first step is to envision a new scenario. Ideas for new scenarios can be drawn from the analysis of the baseline model in order to find areas for improvement. Other sources for new ideas can be observations of issues in the real world network, e.g. high transportation costs per unit in specific regions of the distribution network, or the business development strategy. For instance, the expansion of business in a specific area can be supported by the evaluation of an appropriate scenario.

In the second step, the envisioned scenarios are designed and detailed. It is important to assign a specific and well-defined objective function to each scenario in order to use the network optimization functionality of the APS. Examples for objective functions are: "Minimizing the fixed costs of the locations by keeping a given service level" or "Minimizing the transport costs with the actual given network structure and locations".

After the design of the scenarios these have to be implemented in the APS tool. Since some scenarios are not included in the baseline model, additional data has to be collected (e.g. new locations in new markets, where there was no business so far). After implementing the scenarios, the optimization will take place automated by an optimizer or manually by the planner.

An evaluation of the alternative scenario models is necessary in most cases because not all constraints and evaluation criteria's can be incorporated into the model. These are mainly soft factors like regulations with the workers union if locations are shut down or availability of new employees if new locations in new markets will be opened. For these reasons the different alternative scenarios will be evaluated outside the APS tool. The decision which scenarios will be implemented in reality will be taken based on the evaluation.

19.4 Setting Up the Baseline Model

In this section we describe specific issues and challenges we had to face when setting up the baseline model. As already mentioned, the scope was the European distribution network, including plants, distribution centers and customers' sites. The production plants were fixed objects for the purpose of this project. Thus, the re-allocation of products to different production plants was not in scope. Suppliers were not in cope and thus not included in the model. The APS PRODISI SCO from PROLOGOS was used to model the network.

19.4.1 Data Collection

The first big challenge when building the European model for the customer was the collection of all required basic data, mainly the delivery notes with some additional attributes from all the European logistics organizations. For this purpose, a specification of the data model was given to the logistics departments of all European country organizations. The heads of logistics in the country organizations were made responsible to collect all data according to the basic model data for their country.

When checking and filtering the returned data from the different countries a loop back was often necessary, in order to deal with country-specific issues (e.g. specific shipping conditions, free of charge deliveries) and data errors. Although all

European countries use the same type of ERP system (SAP), single attributes from the data sets have still to be harmonized, in order to integrate them into one data model (e.g. ZIP codes).[1]

Besides the basic data for the model, all transportation and warehouse related cost data for the model had to be manually collected, in order to have a cost basis for the evaluation of alternative scenarios (see next section). The cost data was not stored in the ERP systems and had to be compiled from multiple local data sources. As a consequence, the collection and transformation of cost data was very time consuming and required a lot of data checking. Sometimes it was even not possible to get a fixed cost function, e.g. for the transportation relation from one warehouse to all locations in a country. Based on the cost of the past transports a cost function was then extrapolated.

19.4.2 Modeling of Distribution Network

The modeling of the locations (production sites, toll manufacturers, distribution centers, etc.) turned out to be the next challenge. In PRODISI the distribution network is modeled by a directed, acyclic graph. The nodes represent the locations of the network, and the arcs represent the material flows between the locations. In most cases, material flows from the manufacturing plants to the distribution centers, and from there to the customers' sites (three-staged network). However, in reality, there are further flows

- From a manufacturing plant to a toll manufacturer or to some other plant
- From a regional warehouse to some other warehouse or shipping point.

These flows within the same level of the network even form loops. For instance, one material might be transported from one warehouse to a second and from there back to the first one.

In order to represent these material flows in PRODISI we decided to double all plants, warehouses and shipping points and represented them on two separate levels. Thus, the original, three-staged network became a network with five levels: Level 0 representing the customers, levels 1 and 2 the warehouses and shipping points, and levels 3 and 4 the plants and toll manufacturers. Figure 19.3 shows the structure of the model.

The "simple" material flows—plant X → warehouse Y → customer Z—are represented in this model by a chain of five locations, i.e. plant X → plant X → warehouse Y → warehouse Y → customer Z. The transportation costs from one location to the second representation of this location in the model were set to zero (see Fig. 19.3).

---

[1] Note that there were five individual ERP-systems for the European country organizations, as mentioned already in Sect. 19.1.

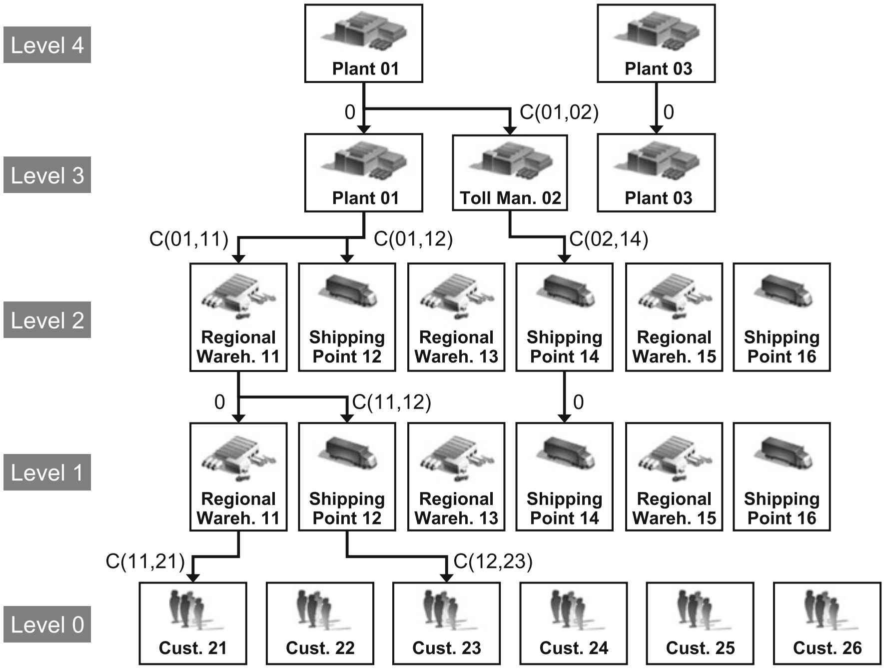


Fig. 19.3 Modeling of the distribution network model

19.4.3 Transportation Links

Transportation links connecting sites that lay within the scope of one ERP-system, can easily be included into PRODISI. However, there are many transportation links spanning the "borders" between the European ERP-systems. For example, consider a situation where some Plant 4711 in Country 1 (in ERP-system 1) delivers a product to some Distribution Center 0815 in Country 2 (in ERP-system 2). Note, that both countries are represented in different ERP-systems. As a consequence, Plant 4711 is only represented in ERP-system 1, and DC 0815 is only represented in ERP-system 2. Figure 19.4 illustrates this example.

Transportation links from Plant 4711 to DC 0815, i.e. deliveries of products from Plant 4711 to DC 0815, are represented by delivery notes in ERP-system 1 (and by purchase orders and goods receipts in ERP-system 2). Thus, there is a formal supplier-to-customer relationship in both ERP-systems established. In order to establish the required transportation links in PRODISI, we setup a table with all locations of the network and used the country codes and ZIP codes as identifiers for the locations. As all delivery notes contain the country code and ZIP code, it was possible to check for each delivery note whether it represented

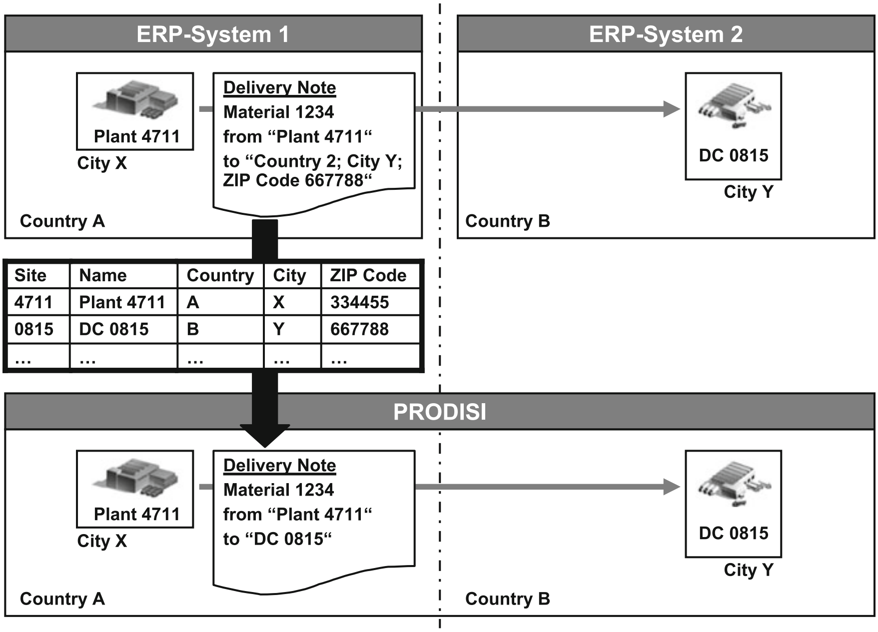


Fig. 19.4 Transformation of delivery notes for the representation of transportation links

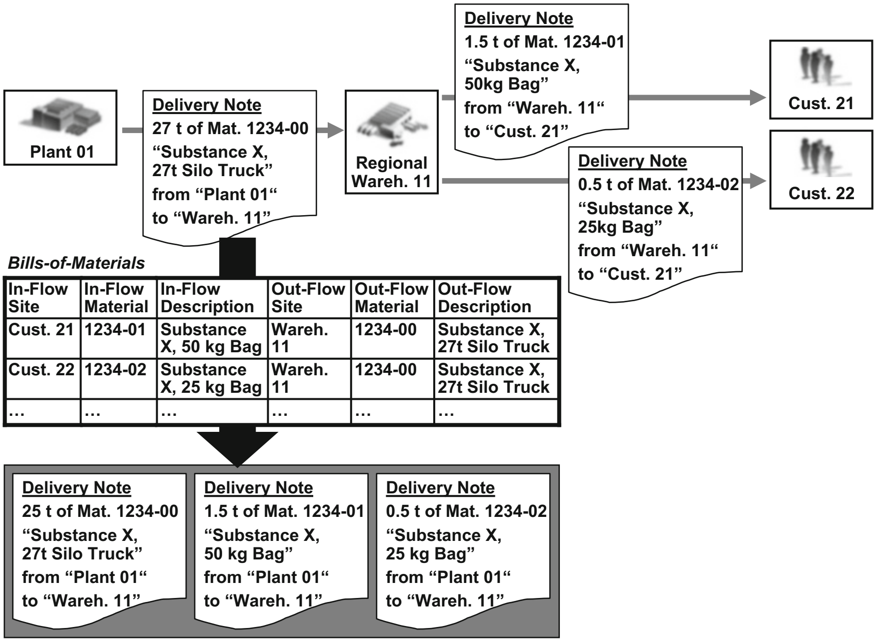
- An internal delivery, i.e. a transportation link to an internal node in the distribution network
- Or an external delivery, i.e. a transportation link to an actual customer.

In all delivery notes representing internal deliveries the destination address was then replaced by the location code of the receiving site (see Fig. 19.4).

19.4.4 Bills of Materials

The focus of the project was on the European distribution network. Usually when modeling distribution networks there is no need to represent bills of materials as only finished goods have to be considered. However, in this project there were some materials that were shipped as bulk products (tank car, full truck) from a plant to a distribution center, and were then packaged into smaller packaging sizes, e.g. bags. Unfortunately, PRODISI is not able to represent bills of materials directly.

Our solution was to identify all locations where the in-flow and out-flow material quantities, including changes of stock levels, were not balanced. We implemented a simple heuristic, matching in-flow quantities with out-flow quantities based on bills of materials that were manually maintained by the project team in an Access database. The heuristics detected in-balances of the material flow and changed the upstream delivery notes such that the delivery notes are adjusted to match



In-Flow Site	In-Flow Material	In-Flow Description	Out-Flow Site	Out-Flow Material	Out-Flow Description
Cust. 21	1234-01	Substance X, 50 kg Bag	Wareh. 11	1234-00	Substance X, 27t Silo Truck
Cust. 22	1234-02	Substance X, 25 kg Bag	Wareh. 11	1234-00	Substance X, 27t Silo Truck
...	...	...	...	...	...

Fig. 19.5 Transformation of delivery notes for the representation of bills-of-materials

the downstream delivery notes (after change of material codes, e.g. due to re-packaging). Figure 19.5 illustrates the transformation of delivery notes, in order to represent bills of materials.

Note, that due to the fact that we used a heuristic, we just *estimated* the actual material flows and related costs. However, by comparing the results from the baseline model with reality we learned that the deviation of computed costs to actual costs was very low and did not impact conclusions drawn from the model.

19.4.5 Product Groups

In order to facilitate the modeling of the later scenarios and because of a restriction in the software, it was necessary to build up to 60 logistical product groups. Logistical product groups are defined as products which have the same material flows in the network. In later scenarios you can then easily reallocate complete groups of material to other locations or fix them to specific locations.

For the implementation of the APS tool we have chosen a two-step approach. First, we built a model for each individual country (or data set), in order to control the consistency and robustness of the model with less data and under less complexity. This made it easier for the responsible logistic department to compare the model with reality. After the correction and fine-tuning of each individual model, all of them were integrated into a complete European model, which then was the basis for the alternate scenarios.

19.5 Alternative Scenarios

With the complete baseline model the project target to improve the overall transparency over all locations and the complete European material flow, was fulfilled. In this phase the focus lays on the simulation of new network scenarios, in order to streamline the material flow and to consolidate the network structure, to gain cost savings. The creation and design of the alternative scenarios was done in a workshop with all regional supply chain managers. A few scenarios were already proposed by the central supply chain organization through the detailed analysis of exceptions in the baseline model (e.g. customers in Italy delivered from Spain, but with materials which can also be produced in Italy). For most scenarios no additional data collection was necessary because the focus was more on streamlining the existing supply chain than on expanding it.

One easy to implement scenario was to simulate the material flow of one particular material group. For this simulation the logistical material grouping functionality was used to limit the input data to the simulation. The goal was to see if the closing of a production facility for this material group will have a big effect on the network because of more transportation activities from other locations. The cost benefits (because of necessary renovation) of removing the products from the production facility and the higher transportation costs were calculated and a decision was made.

In the next scenario a more political issue was investigated. In one area several storage locations belonging to different divisions of the business were located only a few kilometers apart from each other. Technically there were no restrictions for joint storing of material used by different divisions. Together with the leaders from the affected divisions a new local warehouse structure was designed for this area. The special requirements of the divisions were collected and different possible locations for a central warehouse used by all divisions were chosen by an evaluation done outside the APS tool. In a simulation run, these different locations were brought into the model and the optimizer was let to choose the best solution according to transportation costs. With the outside evaluation and the cost calculation from the APS tool, a robust business case could be presented to the business managers. For a special location, mainly delivering to end-customers not to the network, the transportation structure and customer structure was extracted from the baseline model to perform a tender for transportation services. With the tender data given from the APS tool the transportation companies returned a new cost function for the deliveries to the end-customers. The tool was used to compare the related transportation costs by taking the received cost function into account.

Even if some scenario to be implemented needs no additional data compared to the baseline model, a few optimization runs have to be executed in order to detect possible data errors that might falsify the result of the simulation (e.g. a cost function with zero cost on a specific transport relation). Before presenting the results from a scenario run, a rough-cut plausibility check should be done. Otherwise, small errors in the input data may lead to wrong conclusions, which then might foil the credibility of the whole baseline model and APS-based simulation.

19.6 Results and Lessons Learned

Due to the existence of five SAP ERP-systems in the European country organizations, the implementation of PRODISI provided for the first time a transparent, consolidated view on the demand fulfilment structures, the transportation links and operations, and the stock situation. This improved transparency enabled the newly formed cross-European supply chain organization to improve the network structure, to reduce inventories, while keeping a good service level. In particular, the following benefits were created:

- Reduced transportation costs for the fulfilment of customer orders by switching to a distribution center that is more closely located to the delivery site
- Avoidance of costs for the required renovation of a distribution center by moving products to another distribution center at the same operating and transportation cost structure
- Reduced fixed costs of four distribution centers in a region and reduce the transportation and delivery costs by calculating the optimal location for a new distribution center and closing the four old distribution centers.

To optimize a complex baseline model by pressing the overall "optimization button" makes no sense, because the results depend heavily on accurate data and cannot be interpreted by the planners in a big model. Even if it is the best solution, no acceptance of this result can be achieved, because there is still a resistance to use advanced optimization algorithms and somehow believe in the results of the sometimes called "black box". Because of these reasons it is recommended to design small alternative scenarios where it is possible to control the correct data input and avoid data errors. In small scenarios it is partially possible—even in big models—to understand the results of an optimizer. The acceptance of the user is higher and the benefits are still very high and near to an overall optimal solution.

The most important topic is the collection of the correct basic input data and the cost information. The greatest effort for this project was spent to cross-check the collected data, filter it and harmonize the different country-specific data sets, in order to build one common European model. Therefore not only in the implementation of more tactical and operational APS systems, the quality of data input is determining the quality of the results.

Demand Planning of Styrene Plastics

20

Boris Reuter

The purpose of Demand Planning is to reduce uncertainty about what will be sold to the customer in the future. Improving forecast accuracy leads to economic benefits such as cost cutting by reducing safety stocks and increasing sales by avoiding stock out situations. The case presented describes a Demand Planning implementation using SAP SCM at an international company in the process industries.

The case study is structured as follows: first, we start with a description of the supply chain, then introduce the architecture of the planning system used. Subsequently, we focus on model building with the module Demand Planning of SAP's Advanced Planner and Optimizer (SAP APO DP) as a part of SAP's cross-industries solution SAP SCM. The process of the Demand Planning of styrene plastics shows the different tasks, responsibilities and dependencies. Finally, we finish with some concluding remarks about the benefits and lessons learned.

20.1 Description of the Supply Chain

This case study is about a project at one of the world's leading chemical companies. Here we focus on the Demand Planning of styrene plastics in the European plastics division.

Styrene plastics are all-purpose plastics and can be found in a multitude of different consumer products such as CD-DVD cases, packaging, computer chassis, monitors or printers. The main sectors for the products are electronics communication, consumer electronics and computer, packaging and film, medical technology etc.

B. Reuter (✉)
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Willy-Brandt-Platz 5, 68161 Mannheim, Germany
e-mail: boris.reuter@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_20,

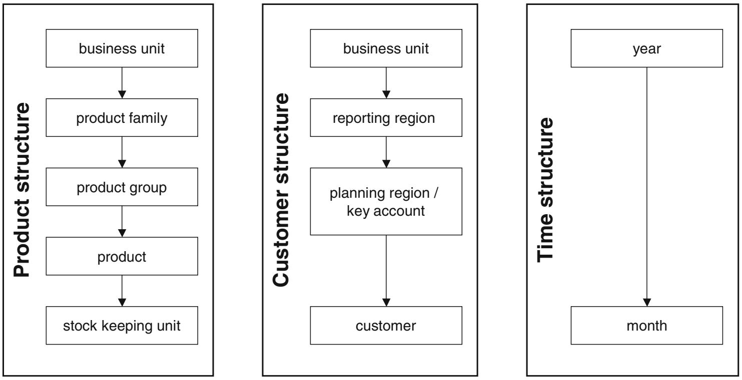


Fig. 20.1 Product, customer and time structures

The main raw material to produce styrene plastics is monostyrene, which originates from crude oil. The polymerization of monostyrene leads to "high impact" or "general purpose" polystyrenes—so-called product families—depending on whether further additives such as rubber are used. The assortment is made up of approximately 500 products, from commodities to specialities, including colored or fire-resistant granulates. The products are wrapped in different packaging leading to a total of 1,500 stock keeping units. From the logistic point of view the products can be combined into approximately 50 product groups (see Fig. 20.1).

The price is an important marketing instrument because a large amount of the quantities sold is made with commodity products. Furthermore, only a few large competitors are in the same market. Thus, changes in the quantities of one market player have noticeable effects on all others—a typical oligopoly situation. Because of the direct dependency on the rising price of crude oil on the one hand and the selling in consumer product markets with decreasing prices and quantities on the other hand, the margin has been under pressure. The sales activities are organized regionally. This means that one or more countries are combined to form planning regions, e.g. Germany, Switzerland and Austria are in the same planning region, while Portugal and Spain are in another one. A key account structure, which is made up of international business partners with a large portion of the sales volume, exists in parallel.

Further characteristics of the supply chain type can be taken from Table 20.1

Increasing the market share is at the expense of competitors and easily leads to price reductions and thus to decreasing margins. Because of the market situation, the economic benefits can only be obtained by decreasing costs. Precise forecasts are needed to achieve adequate inventories and balanced utilization rates throughout the supply chain. The main aims of this project have been to increase forecast accuracy and responsiveness by the effective use of all information in the system, and to secure the market share and gain a higher profitability in the organization.

Table 20.1 Typology for the styrene plastics supply chain

Functional attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Number and type of products procured	Few, standard (raw materials, packaging) Multitude (additives)
Sourcing type	Double/multiple
Supplier lead time and reliability	Short, reliable
Materials life cycle	Long
Organization of the production process	Flow line
Repetition of operations	Batch
Changeover characteristics	Weak sequence dep. setup times and costs
Bottlenecks in production	Known, shifting
Working time flexibility	Low, but high machine throughput flex.
Distribution structure	One stage, regionally organized
Pattern of delivery	Dynamic
Availability of future demands	Forecasted (3–24 months)
Demand curve	Almost stationary
Product's life cycle	Several years
Number of product types	Many
Degree of customization	Blending and packaging
Bill of materials (BOM)	Convergent (blending)/divergent (packaging)
Portion of service operations	Tangible goods
Structural attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Network structure	Mixture
Degree of globalization	International
Location of decoupling point(s)	Make-to-stock/make-to-order
Major constraints	Capacities of flow lines
Legal position	Intra-organizational
Balance of power	Customers, but oligopoly
Direction of coordination	Mixture
Type of information exchanged	Forecasts, orders and contracts

20.2 The Architecture of the Planning System

The demand planning of styrene plastics is embedded in a more complex planning architecture (see Fig. 20.2), which is implemented using SAP APO (see Sect. 18.5). This process consists of the following:

- Demand planning using SAP APO Demand Planning,
- Midterm production planning using SAP APO Supply Network Planning (SNP),
- Short-term production planning using SAP APO Production Planning and Detailed Scheduling (PP/DS), and additional optimization functionality of an IBM ILOG Cartridge,

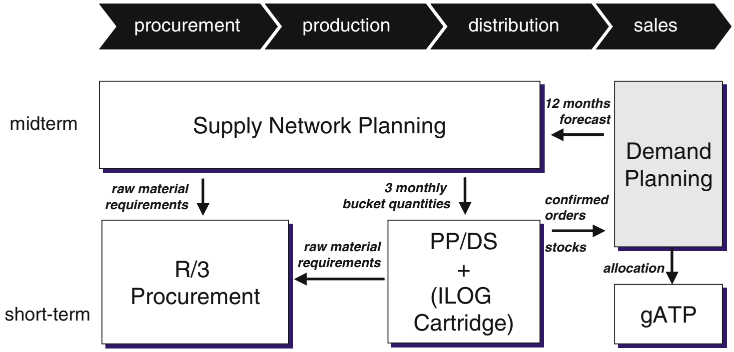


Fig. 20.2 The architecture of the planning system

- Demand fulfilment using SAP APO global Available-To-Promise (global ATP) and
- Procurement Planning using SAP R/3.

In the Demand Planning (DP) module, planned sales quantities—demands—are collected from customers (e.g. collaborative forecasting), forecasted by experienced planners or calculated by statistical models. The demand planning process consists of several dependent planning steps with different time horizons and aggregation levels.

The demands are the basis for midterm planning in SNP, where resource constraints and material availabilities in each time bucket are taken into consideration. Here, the planning horizon is 12 months with monthly time buckets.

PP/DS supports lot-sizing and the scheduling of production amounts per time bucket coming from SNP. Due to specific requirements in the process industries, an optimization extension with IBM ILOG Cartridge Technology has been implemented to improve the lot-sizing of PP/DS in the first 3 months of the planning horizon.

Demand fulfilment leads to promised delivery quantities that can be shipped to dedicated key accounts or regions. Global ATP supports checking allocated product quantities and the availability of materials, using search procedures or multilevel checks (see Chap. 9).

Procurement planning is done in the transactional system SAP R/3 based on the material requirements from planned orders.

20.3 Model Building with SAP APO Demand Planning

Modeling with SAP APO Demand Planning takes place in two different design areas (see Fig. 20.3):

- Historical data are provided by SAP's Business Warehouse.
- The planning environment is based on the *live*Cache (see Sect. 18.5).

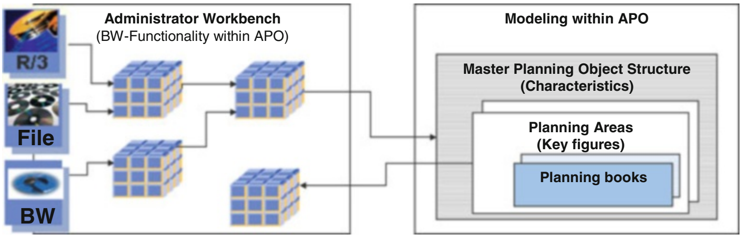


Fig. 20.3 The two design areas of the Demand Planning

The first step applies a typical data warehouse structure and uses the functionality of SAP's Business Warehouse (SAP BW). Thus, it supports the Extraction-Transformation-Loading (ETL) process to get data from different data sources, and cleanse and enrich them for further use. The data sources can be different transactional systems, e.g. R/3 systems of various affiliates, other data warehouses, data bases or even flat files. The structure of a data warehouse allows reporting large data sets along different dimensions on different aggregation levels (month or year, stock keeping unit or product family, customer or region, etc.). Also, selection of data and summations along hierarchies are performed very efficiently (see e.g. Berry and Linoff 1997 and Reuter 2004).

20.3.1 InfoProviders, Characteristics and Key Figures

The data model of a data warehouse is often represented by a "star scheme" as shown in Fig. 20.4, where the data values are stored in one "fact table" containing all data sets.

Each data set is identified by a unique key, which is a combination of characteristics, and consists of several key figures. The characteristics (see Fig. 20.4: customer C, product P, time T) are grouped in dimensions and might have several hierarchies (e.g. day, week, month, year; or see Fig. 20.1). The characteristic combinations span a multidimensional data space—the so-called InfoProvider (see Sect. 7.1).

The key figures are the quantities assigned to a dedicated characteristic combination such as actual sales, open orders, sales budget or forecast quantity (see Fig. 20.4). Key figures can be retrieved for every selection of one or more characteristics. For example, actual sales values can be displayed for one or more products for each region or each customer.

The interactive way to analyze the data is called online analytical processing (OLAP); it has the following functionalities:

- Slice and dice: get a subset of data, e.g. show the sales history of the region "Germany,"
- Drill down: get more detailed information from one hierarchy or dimension, e.g. show the sales history of all customers in the selected region

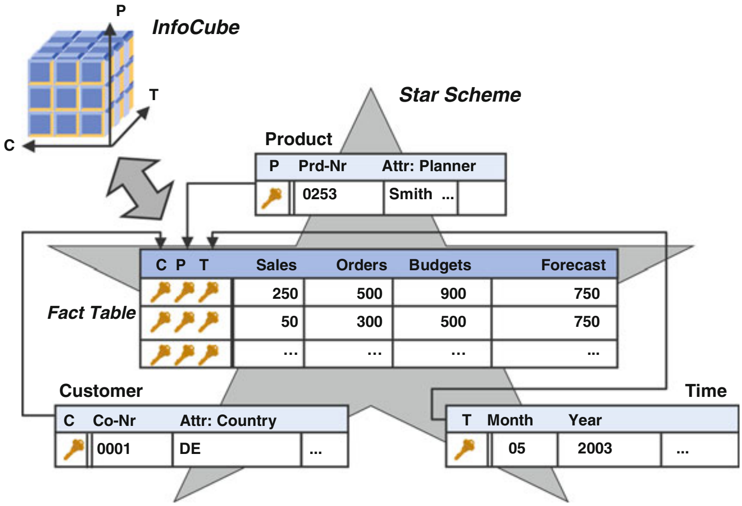


Fig. 20.4 InfoCube and star scheme

- Rotate: change the granularity of two characteristics, e.g. from showing the sales history of all products of the region "Germany" to showing to which region product "X" is sold.

Due to these functionalities, this structure is very appropriate for flexible Demand Planning purposes.

While a data warehouse supports reporting—retrieving data—the input of new planning data is done in the second design step. SAP provides several planning environments for Demand Planning outside the transactional system:

- Quantity-based plans: SAP APO Demand Planning
- Cost-, revenue- or quantity-based plans: SAP BPC.
- Combined quantity and value based approach: Sales and operations planning powered by SAP HANA

In this case study, the focus is on SAP APO Demand Planning.

The process starts based on the structures of historical data that describe the sales history. Usually, Demand Planning is done on quantities of several materials sold to several customers in dedicated periods. Long-term planning is performed at a more aggregate level, while short-term planning is performed at a more detailed level. First, the granularity of planning is defined by choosing aggregation levels of the characteristics. For example, Demand Planning of stock keeping units for each customer on a weekly basis is on a very detailed level and increases the number of data sets very quickly in contrast to a planning granularity of product groups, regions and months. Because of the vital impact on performance and workload the trade-off between detailed and aggregated data has to be investigated very carefully.

20.3.2 Master Planning Object Structure

Each characteristic to be planned on (e.g. region, customer, product group, product, business unit), needs to be included into the set of characteristics the so-called Master Planning Object Structure. Others, which are only for reporting or selection purposes, can be put into hierarchies or (navigation) attributes. In Fig. 20.4 the "planner" is an attribute of the characteristic "product". If the granularity-level of the characteristics is defined, a first estimate of the number of characteristics combinations can be done.

20.3.3 Planning Areas

As mentioned above, the key figures contain the quantities of a characteristic combination. The structure of SAP APO's Demand Planning allows for the creation of several "bundles" of key figures—the so-called Planning Areas—that can be assigned to one Master Planning Object Structure. Reasons for multiple Planning Areas can be different time granularities in different planning scenarios or avoiding data locking in simultaneous planning activities on the same characteristic combinations. SAP APO Demand Planning distinguishes three types of key figures:

- Persistent key figures: actual data with the origin of the data warehouse that should not be changed
- Planning key figures: open key figures to enter or manipulate data by the planner (data is saved to the liveCache)
- Temporarily created key figures: key figures that are used for intermediate calculations and are not saved.

Each key figure has its own aggregation rule. Thus, the selection of more than one characteristic combination displays the aggregation of the quantities of the key figure. For example, if the aggregation rule of actual sales is "adding up," then all the total sales quantities of all customers and all products in the selected region are displayed. From the planning point of view, the disaggregation rules are more important. If the planner enters a quantity for a key figure on an aggregate level, e.g. a region containing several customers, the disaggregation rule describes how the quantity is distributed to the different customers of the region. The most important rules are:

- Equally distributed: the quantity is distributed equally by the number of selected characteristic combinations.
- Pro rata: the distribution ratio is calculated by the portion of the key figure for a certain characteristic combination relative to the total of the key figure.
- Based on a key figure: the distribution ratio for the modified key figure is calculated by the portion of another reference key figure for a certain characteristic combination relative to the total of the reference key figure.

Figure 20.5 shows the aggregation of the forecast quantities (FCST) of three customers with 200, 400 and 600 units in Region 1 added up to 1,200 units. The

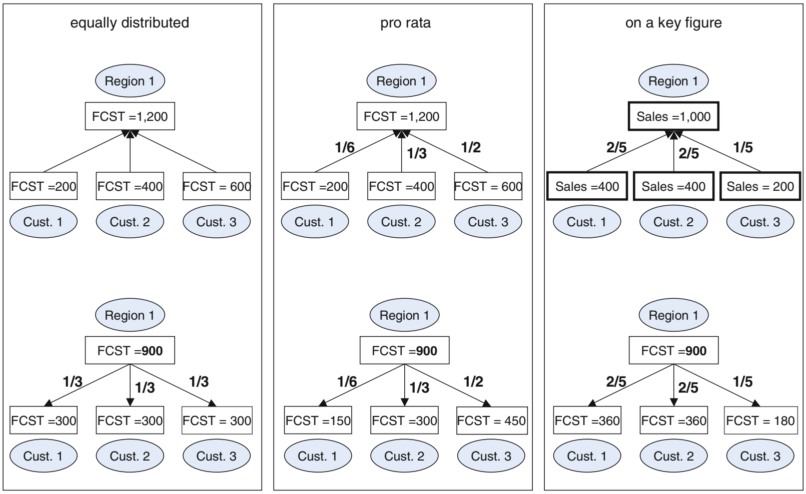


Fig. 20.5 Disaggregation rules

equally based disaggregation of 900 units of forecast planned on the region level leads to 300 units for each customer. The pro rata rule uses the current portions, e.g. $200/1,200 = 1/6$, to assign $1/6 \cdot 900 = 150$ units to Customer 1. In case of the disaggregation on another key figure, e.g. sales, the portions are taken from the sales quantities to Customer 1, divided by the total sales of Region 1 ($400/1,000 = 2/5$) and lead to a forecast assignment of $2/5 \cdot 900 = 360$ units to Customer 1. The example shows that the choice of the disaggregation rule has a large impact on the planning results.

20.3.4 Planning Books and Data Views

The access to the key figures is managed by planning books and their data views. Here data like actual sales or forecasts can be shown, checked and changed. They are the "planning front-end" to the planner. The planning book is a container providing the planning functionality, e.g. forecasting, the subset of characteristics of the Master Planning Object Structure shown to the planner for selection, a subset of key figures of the planning area and the temporarily created key figures. Based on these objects, a data view additionally defines the time horizons of past and future and the layout and format of the key figures (sequence of key figures, background color, number of decimals, etc.). Additional functionalities help the planner to create the forecast or to understand the data. The functionality (e.g. locking or highlighting data cells, calculating key figures, generating alerts) can be implemented with a programming language—the so-called macro-builder. Publishing a planning book in a web-based scenario supports collaborative demand planning (see Chap. 14).

20.3.5 Forecast Methods

SAP APO Demand Planning provides univariate and multivariate forecast methods and the combination of the two. They can be configured in a forecast profile. Here the type of model (e.g. constant, trend; see also Chap. 7) and the forecast methods (e.g. moving average, exponential smoothing, Winters' method, multiple-linear-regression) are also specified as the parameters of the method, the basis of historical data and the number of periods to be estimated (see Chaps. 7 and 29). As further topics, promotions planning and life-cycle models are provided to estimate singular or non-stationary effects of a time series.

The created demand forecast has to be released to production planning either to Supply Network Planning for finite capacity planning—as in our case—or directly to SAP R/3 for infinite capacity planning.

20.4 The Demand Planning Process of the Styrene Plastics Division

The goals of the Demand Planning in the Styrene Plastics Division are:

- Influence of the market behavior
- Using of sales departments' knowledge of customers' ordering behavior
- Coordination of decentralized regional sales departments
- Ability to react quickly to short-term market fluctuations
- Creation of a midrange demand plan in order to calculate a production and procurement plan.

To achieve these goals, input from marketing department, sales department and logistics department is needed. The marketing department adjusts market quantities and influences prices directly or indirectly. The sales department is responsible for customer relationships and the "recording" of demands and placing the orders. Sales and logistics negotiate sales budgets to support "management by objectives." The logistics department is responsible for the consolidation of the sales and marketing plans, the short-term adjustments and the creation of one single demand plan from the various plans.

The following plans are created:

- Sales budget
- Rolling business forecast
- Marketing plan
- Sales plan
- Short-term adjustments.

Referring to the structure of Chap. 7 (p. 125) only the sales plan is supported by a statistical forecasting method. The sales budget is the result of a negotiation process; the marketing plan is created in the marketing department and entered manually; the rolling business forecast is also entered manually and based on the experience of the planner. Starting from statistical forecasting, the sales plan is revised and can

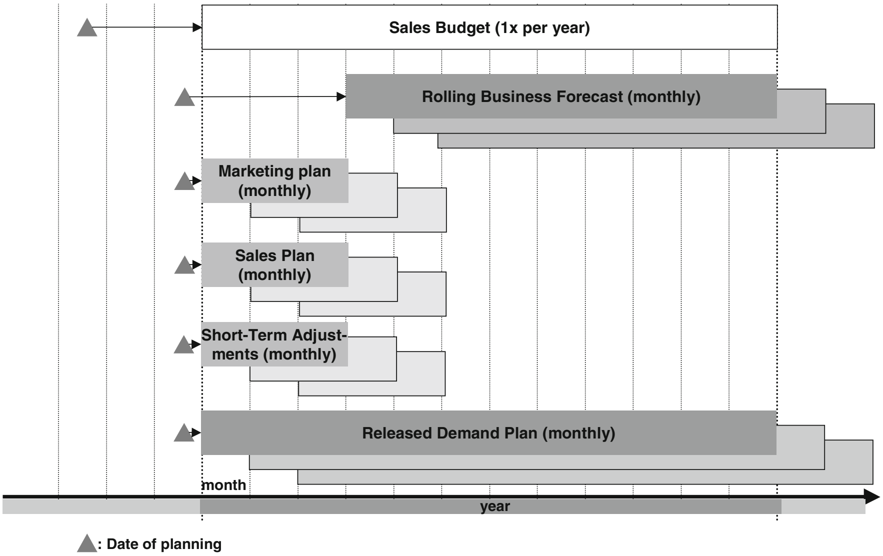


Fig. 20.6 Overview of the different demand plans

be modified (revised judgmental forecast). From the different plans, one consensus-based demand plan is calculated.

The monthly planning cycle consists of the following steps:

1. The sales plan is statistically forecasted and revised by the regional sales departments. The plan contains demands for each stock keeping unit and customer and determines the portions of each characteristic combination.
2. Marketing decides on the total quantities that should be sold to the market, neither to decrease the price by shipping too much nor to loose market share by selling too little.
3. The total of the sales plan quantities has to be adjusted to reach the total marketing quantity without changing the portions of the sales plan.
4. While the first three steps are related to months one through three, the aggregate rolling business forecast is made up for in months four through 12.
5. To release demands for 12 months to SNP (see Fig. 20.2), the first 3 months from the adjusted sales plan (step three) are combined with months four through 12 of the rolling business forecast.
6. Demands from the released demand plan are assigned to delivery locations for an interval of 12 months.
7. Short-term adjustments can be done prior to the release to SNP.

An overview of the existing demand plans is shown in Fig. 20.2. A more detailed description of the different plans is presented in Fig. 20.6.

20.4.1 Sales Budget

The sales budget is not a subject of the monthly planning cycle. The aim of the sales budgeting process is to negotiate the expected yearly quantities sold by a region or to a key account. The definition of the sales budget of the following calendar year takes place once a year in October and remains valid for 12 months. The result agreed upon is yearly quantities at the product group and region level. The negotiating partners are the logistics department of the business unit and the responsible regional managers of the sales department. The plan helps to keep track of the achievement of sales objectives and thus to shift priorities. It is also used to guide the promised product quantities—allocations—along the sales budgets. A special feature is an automated disaggregation procedure on the time structure that distributes the yearly quantity of the sales budget on monthly quantities. The distribution is based on the sales history of the previous year. This is done by the disaggregation rule of the sales budget based on the key figure "sales history." Thus, seasonal effects are taken into account.

20.4.2 Rolling Business Forecast

In accordance to the midterm plans of the business unit, the logistics department enters the aggregate business forecast of the business unit manually. The definition or update of the business forecast for the next 12 months is performed each month in the so-called rolling business forecast. The result is a highly aggregated plan for the complete business unit on a monthly basis. The plan is needed to support 12 months production planning with SAP APO SNP. As the figures are highly aggregated on the product and customer structures, they have to be disaggregated for planning purposes. The sales budget is used as a reference key figure for the disaggregation.

20.4.3 Marketing Plan

The aim of the marketing plan is to influence prices in the oligopoly market by short-term adjustments of the expected sales quantities for the different product families. The plan is made up for 3 months on a monthly basis. Because of the global impact of the quantities sold to the market, a differentiation on regions or key accounts is not useful. The marketing department is responsible for the creation of a marketing plan. The quantities are used later in the adjustment process (see Short-term adjustments and plan consolidation).

20.4.4 Sales Plan

The sales plan is the central object of forecast collection and input of the sales department. It contains the forecast quantities for the next 3 months on a monthly basis for each stock keeping unit and each customer. The planning complexity is reduced by an ABC-classification of customers and stock keeping units; thus, only the most important items and customers are planned manually, all others are forecasted automatically. The forecast process can be classified as a revised judgmental forecast (see Sect. 7.3). The sales planner is supported by the historical sales quantities of the last 2 years as well as by forecasts calculated with a simple moving average method, whereby more than 6 months of historical sales quantities are averaged. Because of the absence of more complex regular patterns, the calculated forecast gives an impression of the expected quantities. The variations in the historical time series, e.g. reduced sales caused by vacation, are easily identified by the planner in a year-to-year comparison for each month and do not justify a more complex statistical model. Due to handling constraints, minimum delivery quantities have been taken into account for each combination of stock keeping unit and customer. Minimum quantities are automatically identified. If customer orders are already placed in a period, the forecasted quantities have to be at least as high as the ordered quantities, or else they are also identified.

20.4.5 Short-Term Adjustments and Plan Consolidation

Before the release of the demands to the finite capacity planning, various plans are consolidated and short-term adjustments are made.

One of the most important adjustments is matching the marketing plan with the sales plan. Here, the structure of the forecasted demand portions of the sales plan is combined with the quantities of the marketing plan. Consequently, the total quantity shipped to the market should not lead to an unwanted behavior, e.g. a decreasing price or loss of market share. Thus, quantities might change, but not portions. The calculation uses the disaggregation rule "based on a key figure," where the reference key figure is the sales plan.

Another important adjustment is the adding of the delivery location. As shown above the forecast is made on stock keeping units and customers, whereas the sourcing location is missing. In the case of multiple production sites, customer demands could be produced at and shipped from different sites. Subject to transportation and production costs, the choice of the assigned location has an impact on the cost structure. Of course, transfers between production sites are possible, but they cause transportation costs. Thus, the assignment of demands depends on the product (single production site or multiple production sites) and customer site. If the planning region of the customer could be supplied from multiple locations, the ZIP-Code of the customer is used for assignment to the location. Those rules are also used for a first allocation within global ATP checks.

In between a planning cycle, demand figures may change. An instant reaction is supported by a direct communication process with the logistics department and a separate key figure for short-term adjustments to allow for the monitoring of changes.

After the adding of the location to the demand data, the release to Supply Network Planning is performed and production planning can be started.

20.5 Results and Lessons Learned

The above demand planning application has been used since the beginning of 2002. The planning process and the functionalities are highly accepted. Currently, there are about 70 users in different European countries working with this system.

The planners not only use the Demand Planning application, but also profit from the reporting functionality of the Business Warehouse. SAP's Business Explorer (BEx), a Microsoft Excel front-end on the Business Warehouse, helps in analyzing forecast accuracy, printing formatted reports, checking master data and supporting online analytical processing.

Forecast accuracy is measured in different ways:

- Sales Budget fulfilment: The cumulated sales and the planned cumulated sales budget are compared on a monthly basis for each product group and region. If the sales go beyond the budget, the sales data are highlighted.
- Forecast development: Based on the historical sales data for each product group the mean value and the standard deviation sigma are calculated. Then the forecast of a product group is plotted in a graph with lines for the mean value and the mean value plus or minus one, two and three times sigma. If there is a demand forecast exceeding the one-sigma, two-sigma or three-sigma borders, a traffic-light function highlights the forecast and creates alerts of different severity.
- Sales—sales plan—marketing plan comparison: Because of the adjustments before the final release, the original forecast quantities can differ from the adjusted quantities. Thus, the actual sales are compared with the original sales plan and with the quantities after the marketing adjustments.

The following benefits have helped to stabilize the revenues of the Styrene Plastics Division in spite of the weak economic situation in Europe:

- Reduction of the planning cycle time, which led to a higher availability of the planners and to higher responsiveness
- Reduction of communication efforts by using a common data base with dedicated responsibilities for the different plans
- Increased forecast accuracy, through revised judgmental forecast and plausibility checks
- Better control of the decentralized sales regions by tracking the sales budget.

The lessons learned from the project are the following points:

- There is a vital impact of master data quality on the project efforts. The two main drivers are methods to identify master data inconsistencies, e.g. reports, and activities to repair them.
- The simplicity of building planning processes encourages a project team to create complex structures bearing the risk of increasing planning cycle times.

References

Berry, M., & Linoff, G. (1997). *Data mining techniques: For marketing, sales, and customer support*. New York: Wiley.

Reuter, B. (2004). *Datenanalyse und szenarioorientierte Kapazitätsplanung von Lagern*. Berlin: Logos-Verl.

Food and Beverages

21

Michael Wagner and Herbert Meyr

Everyone knows the situation: You go shopping in your favorite supermarket and all the items on your list are available, except for one. Therefore, you have to drive to the next store and hope that you can get the product there.

Situations like that decrease customer satisfaction quite noticeably and affect both retailer and producer. That is why customer service has become the main objective of consumer goods supply chains. However, too often higher customer service is accompanied by higher investments in inventory. State-of-the-art Advanced Planning Systems are basic tools for achieving both conflicting management goals, high customer service *and* low stock levels.

This chapter provides some insights into the implementation of Oracle's *Value Chain Planning* software (see Chap. 18 and Oracle 2014) for the food and beverages division of a large European consumer goods company. The aim of the project was to build the infrastructure for more flexible, accurate and faster planning processes.

After introducing the most important attributes of the supply chain in Sect. 21.1.1, the planning architecture for the company's German food branch is described (Sect. 21.1.2). Furthermore, model-building with the Oracle module *Strategic Network Optimization* is specified (Sects. 21.3 and 21.4). This model served as a template for the whole division and therefore had to integrate requirements of other product lines of the company, too.

M. Wagner
Paul Hartmann AG, Process Excellence Management, Information Technology,
Paul-Hartmann-Str. 12, 89522 Heidenheim, Germany
e-mail: michael.wagner@hartmann.info

H. Meyr (✉)
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__21,

21.1 Case Description

After introducing the supply chain itself a description of the architecture of the planning system will follow.

21.1.1 The Supply Chain

The supply chain under consideration consists of production plants, a distribution network and some key suppliers. Each of the three production sites produces up to 70 different products, but only a few products can be made in all three plants.

Procurement. The material procured for food production can be divided into two classes. The first type of materials are the raw materials and ingredients which the food is prepared from. They are usually bought on the free market and therefore the ordering decision noticeably depends on the current market price. Packaging and labeling material on the other hand is usually single or double sourced. For those items annual basic agreements are made with the suppliers. Therefore, the ordering decision neither causes additional costs nor depends on the order size or the price.

Production. The production process consists of three consecutive stages: pre-blending, blending and packaging. The first one is physically separated from the others and only available at plant 3 (see Fig. 21.1). From plant 3 all plants are supplied with pre-blend just-in-time. The pre-blend process comprises a complex production network consisting of batch processes. As more than one product is based on the same pre-blend, the number of pre-blend types is less than the number of end products.

If the production equipment has to be switched from one product to another, significant sequence-dependent changeover costs and times occur on the first and second stage. In each production plant more than five blenders/ packers (dedicated to a specific range of products) operate in parallel. A fixed 1:1 relationship usually holds between blenders and packers, but it is also possible that one blender feeds two packers (simultaneously or alternatively). As the pre-blending stage supplies the blenders just-in-time, there are only small buffers for storage of 1 day's demand at the most. Between stages two and three there are no buffers, as there are fixed pipes which connect both stages (Fig. 21.2). While most products are produced once per week, a few are set up every second week (cyclic schedule). Therefore, the reorder lead-time for the distribution centers equals 1 to 2 weeks, depending on the product.

The regular working time in the plants is based on a three shift pattern (24 h) on 5 days per week. This regular time can be extended by one to three shifts overtime on Saturdays, resulting in additional costs for higher wages.

Distribution. After packaging, the products are transported to the distribution center (DC) next to each production site. Those items which are not available at

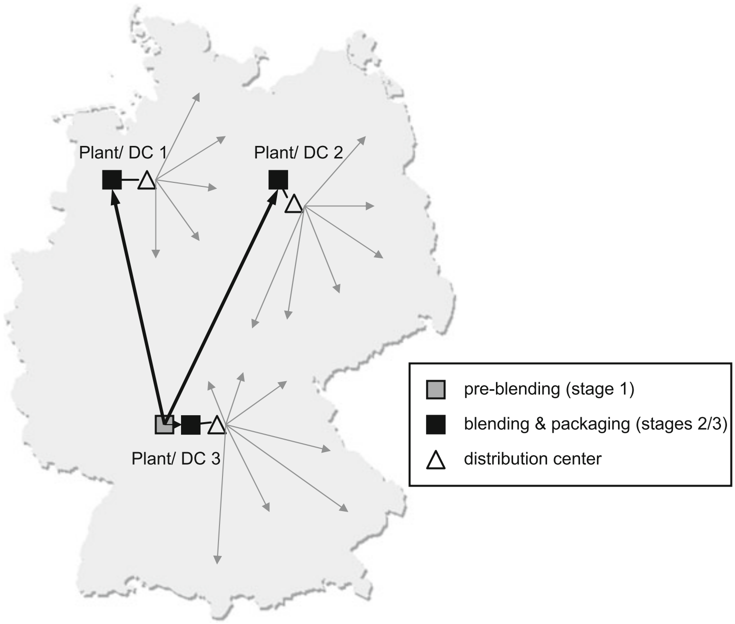


Fig. 21.1 Supply chain structure

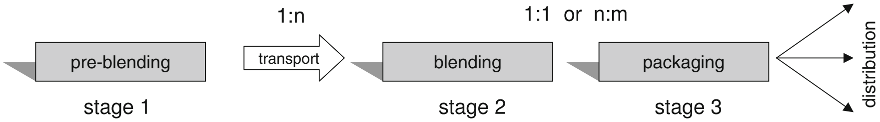


Fig. 21.2 The production processes

the local factory are supplied by one of the other two plants. Each customer is served from the next DC either directly or via cross docking in 1 to 2 days (three-stage distribution system). Therefore, each DC has the whole assortment of products available. Only if stock-outs are impending, emergency transports between the DCs are initiated to balance the stocks.

Sales. Most products are made to stock and only a few items are made according to customer orders. These make-to-order products are supplied exclusively for one customer under his own brand name. The customer service level is determined by matching orders and available stock at the DC daily. The "customer" ordering the product is usually not the consumer, but mostly a retailer (chain) which operates the retail outlets. Even though the sales for some products are quite constant over time, most of the products are influenced by seasonality and promotional activities. Storage of finished products is limited in time due to shelf-life restrictions.

Table 21.1 Typology for the food and beverages supply chain

Functional attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Number and type of products procured	Few, standard (raw materials) and specific (packaging materials)
Sourcing type	Multiple (raw materials) single/double (packaging materials)
Supplier lead time and reliability	Short, reliable
Materials' life cycle	Long
Organization of the production process	Flow line
Repetition of operations	Batch production
Changeover characteristics	High, seq. dep. setup times & costs
Bottlenecks in production	Known, almost stationary
Working time flexibility	Low, partially additional costs
Distribution structure	Three stages
Pattern of delivery	Dynamic
Deployment of transportation means	Unlimited, routes (3rd stage)
Availability of future demands	Forecasted
Demand curve	Seasonal
Products' life cycle	Several years
Number of product types	Few
Degree of customization	Standard products
Bill of materials (BOM)	Convergent (blending)/divergent (packaging)
Portion of service operations	Tangible goods
Structural attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Network structure	Mixture
Degree of globalization	Europe
Location of decoupling point(s)	Deliver-to-order
Major constraints	Capacity of flow lines
Legal position	Intra-organizational
Balance of power	Customers (retailers)
Direction of coordination	Mixture
Type of information exchanged	Forecasts and orders

This type of supply chain has already been introduced in Chap. 3. The food and beverages case considered here is additionally summarized in Table 21.1.

21.1.2 The Architecture of the Planning System

The architecture template had to take into account the specific requirements of different production processes in the whole food and beverages division. Furthermore, the existing planning systems and the IT-landscape needed to be integrated into the new architecture. Also, obsolete spreadsheet solutions which had been developed

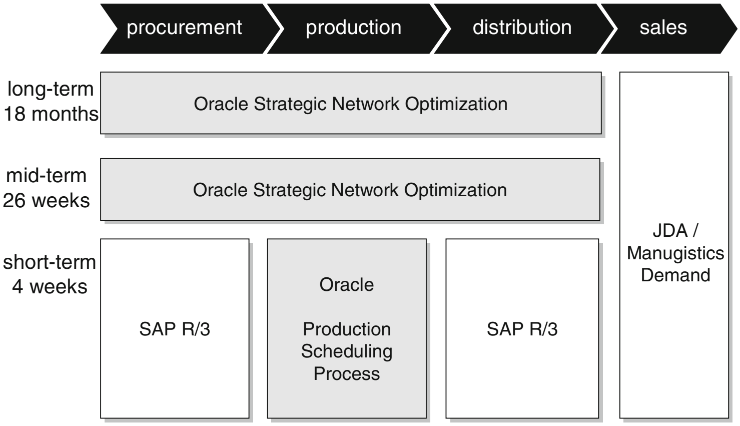


Fig. 21.3 The architecture of the planning system

by the planners only for their specific purposes should be replaced by the Advanced Planning System of Oracle.

For the project it was decided to focus on the following planning processes (for a description of general planning tasks in the consumer goods industry see also Chap. 4):

- Long-term production and distribution planning
- Mid-term master planning (production and distribution)
- Short-term production scheduling.

For demand planning and short-term distribution planning third-party systems already existed before implementing Oracle's *Value Chain Planning*. As these modules have tight connections to Oracle's new supply chain planning modules, they needed to be integrated accordingly (see Fig. 21.3). Procurement processes were only integrated if they had been identified as potential bottlenecks.

Long-Term Production and Distribution Planning. Long-term planning tasks in the food and beverages business comprise a time horizon between 1 and 5 years. In this range strategic decisions on the product program to be offered, the opening or closing of production lines or plants, and the distribution network are made. But in case of the company described here, the long-term production and distribution planning is restricted to 18 months, as in this time horizon production lines can be built up or moved from one site to another. Furthermore, changes in the shift-pattern have to be coordinated with the works committee and therefore need to be initiated months in advance.

This planning task is based on monthly time buckets and aggregated products and resources. The *Strategic Network Optimization* module is utilized to simulate different scenarios. The software calculates a capacity-constrained, optimized flow of goods and the respective costs for the 18 months horizon. Therefore, the planning process consists of the following steps, iteratively executed:

1. evaluate the status quo,
2. change the network structure manually, e.g. close a line, allow three instead of two shifts etc. and
3. evaluate the new model.

Mid-Term Master Planning (Production and Distribution). The Master Planning module integrates all decisions on materials and capacities concerning the whole network of plants and DCs. Therefore, the connecting material flows between the different locations need to be planned on this level. The more detailed Production Scheduling module considers only local resources and assumes the inflow to and the outflow from the site as being given.

The Master Planning decisions taken in this case study are:

- Weekly transportation quantities from production sites to DCs and between the DCs
- Weekly material requirements (i.e. packaging material) which have to be ordered from suppliers
- Necessary overtime on the production lines
- Assignment of products to production lines per time bucket
- Weekly inventory levels in DCs.

As the number of product types is relatively small in this application, the products and resources do not have to be aggregated. The time horizon of half a year is divided in 26 weekly time buckets. *Strategic Network Optimization* was selected as the premier solution for this task because it provides easy to use graphical modeling capabilities and a powerful optimization engine (CPLEX; see IBM ILOG CPLEX Optimizer 2014). The model has tight data integration to the short-term Production Scheduling module via the Oracle middleware and an Oracle database which holds all relevant planning data.

The objective of the Master Planning model is to minimize all costs which are influenced by the decisions described above. Therefore, transportation costs, production costs, costs for overtime and storage costs have been considered.

Short-term Production Scheduling. The production scheduling task is implemented using Oracle's *Production Scheduling Process* module. It covers both the lot-sizing and the scheduling task and therefore integrates the modules Production Planning and Scheduling (see Chap. 5). Production Scheduling only has to plan stages two and three of production as the first stage is decoupled by transport and therefore can be planned independently by an additional scheduling model.

The objective is to create a cost-optimized schedule for the production facilities of a single factory. Inventory holding costs, setup costs and penalty costs for not meeting the desired minimum inventory levels form the objective function.

The model covers a planning horizon of 4 weeks rolled forward once a week. However, the plan may even be revised daily on an event-driven basis. These events are caused by machine breakdowns or impending stock-outs. As some materials and pre-blend have to be ordered 2 days in advance, the frozen horizon only covers the next 2 days. The "demand" (requirements) which drives the scheduling model is calculated considering

- Updated daily forecasts
- Actual and planned shipments to all DCs
- Safety stocks which have to be held at the DCs
- Actual inventory levels at the DCs, in transit to the DCs and at the plant
- A "sourcing-matrix" which states the quota to be sourced from a specific plant (calculated from the results of Master Planning; see Sect. 21.4).

21.2 Aim of the Project

The aim of the project was to automate the planning processes by providing a decision support system

- Which is able to make planning proposals on its own
- And can be used to interactively simulate several planning alternatives
- Thus enabling the planner to select the best one with respect to supply chain costs and constraints.

Expected results were an increased supply chain visibility, reduced inventories and supply chain costs and shorter planning cycles.

21.3 Model Building in Oracle's Strategic Network Optimization

Models built in Strategic Network Optimization do not use any mathematical notation. A production and distribution system is modeled graphically (e.g. by means of drop down menus) and interactively within the system. A Strategic Network Optimization model consists of the following basic elements (see e.g. Günther et al. 1998, Kolisch 1998 and Oracle 2010):

- Time periods
- Commodities
- Nodes
- Arcs.

Their most important properties will now be introduced.

21.3.1 Time Periods

An optimization model considers a certain planning horizon that may be subdivided into several time buckets. Since the model structure has to be the same in all periods, it has to be graphically defined only once. This structure is then copied for each period to be considered and the period-specific data (e.g. demand varying over time) have to be filled in each copy. In an optimization run all periods are considered simultaneously. Thereby, each period is linked with the preceding one by the stock that is held at the beginning of the period (of course being equal to the stock at the end of the previous period).

21.3.2 Commodities

Two different kinds of "commodities" may occur. First, commodities denote distinct types of *(physical) goods* like raw materials, work-in-process or final products—no matter in which stage of production they are. In this case study the various kinds of pre-blend and packaged goods are examples of such goods. Secondly, commodities represent the *time* spent in production, transport or storage processes. For example, the commodities *regular blending time* or *blending overtime* may be used to distinguish between the cheaper and the more expensive variant of the blending process.

21.3.3 Nodes

"Nodes" represent the processes themselves, e.g. all activities supplying, storing, consuming, transforming or simply controlling any type of commodity. Therefore, nodes model the critical components and constraints of a production and distribution system, but not the material flow within the system. Different kinds of nodes have been launched to represent different types of activities. Generally, nodes can have several input and several output commodities. Nodes without either input or output commodities are available as well. However, nodes of the same kind share common input and output characteristics.

A few kinds of nodes—later on used in this case study—shall illustrate the function and dominant role of nodes. For sake of clarity only the main attributes of each kind of nodes are presented:

Supply node: A *supply node* supplies a single commodity (usually of the physical goods type) and therefore does not have any input commodities. Upper and lower bounds of the amount to be supplied can be specified as given data. Also unit costs for supplying the commodity can be particularized in order to consider total costs of supply. The result of an optimization run is the amount of the commodity actually (and optimally) to be supplied.

Machine node: A *machine node* has a quite similar function, but is intended to supply the commodity *machine (or personnel) time*. Therefore, the capacity and unit costs of a machine have to be specified. The optimal run length of a machine (of both regular time and overtime, depending on the type and costs of the commodity supplied) results.

Process node: A *process node* transfers input commodities (goods and/or time) into output commodities and therefore may have several input and output commodities. This transformation is done with respect to fixed rates of input and output. For example, two units of intermediate product, one tub and 2 seconds machine time are combined in a packaging process to obtain one unit of a final product.

Batch node: *Batch nodes* restrict the flow of a commodity. A batch node can e.g. be used to specify a *minimum run length* of a process or a *minimum lot-size*—depending on the type of commodity considered. Note, by this a binary decision is implied: either nothing or more than the minimum lot-size have to be produced. As Chaps. 8 and 30 show, a model containing batch nodes is quite hard to solve because the underlying optimization problem has changed from a simple LP to a more complex combinatorial MIP. The user should therefore utilize a batch node only if it is absolutely indispensable to represent reality correctly. Other types of integer/binary decisions like *batch sizes* (predefined amounts of commodities with only integer multiples being allowed) or *setup times* can be modeled by a batch node, too.

StorageCoverLocal (SCL) node: The *StorageCoverLocal node* calculates the desired stock level of a commodity (physical good) at the end of the time period considered. This calculation is due to the inventory balance equation:

$$\begin{aligned}&\textit{stock at the end of the current period} =\\ &= \textit{stock at the end of the previous period} + \textit{inflow} - \textit{demand}.\end{aligned}$$

Thereby, the *demand* (e.g. market demand for a final product) is not computed within the model but has to be pre-specified. *Inflow* and *stock levels* (except for beginning inventory) are results of an optimization run. The inflow is an input commodity of the SCL node whose amount is usually further restricted by another node, e.g. a process node representing some production process.

The resulting amount of stock is influenced by three types of (increasing) "target" stock levels: the minimum, safety, and maximum stock level. While minimum and maximum stock levels usually are hard constraints that must not be violated, the safety stock level is a soft constraint which will be punished by penalty costs if fallen short of. These stock levels have to be specified by the number of periods of future demand, they are expected to cover. Each stock keeping unit—independent of the stock level—is priced with actual per unit holding costs.

Monitor node: A *monitor node* takes different types of commodities as input and limits the total number of (stock keeping) units consigned. This is useful for modeling the storage capacity of a warehouse where stocks of distinct products share a common inventory space. For example, the total stock held in several SCL nodes can jointly be controlled by a single monitor node.

21.3.4 Arcs

Arcs connect nodes, thereby carrying exactly one commodity, each. Therefore, arcs represent the material or time flows within a production and distribution network. The amount of the commodity to be carried is a decision variable. It can be restricted by predefined upper and lower bounds (e.g. minimum or maximum transport capacities if the commodity denotes deliverable goods). Again, the unit cost of the commodity can be specified.

For aesthetic purposes and sake of clarity a further kind of nodes, a *working node*, has been introduced in Strategic Network Optimization. It bundles arcs connecting two bipartite sets of nodes, but carrying the same commodity. So an $n : m$ relation of nodes is replaced by an $n : 1 : m$ relation, thus reducing the number of arcs significantly.

After analyzing the decision situation (see Sect. 8.1), the elements of the Strategic Network Optimization model have to be defined and the necessary data (e.g. resource capacities, production rates, costs) have to be filled in. This may either be done graphically and interactively or via import files. A trial solution run has to be started, checking whether predefined solver parameters are set adequately or refinements have to be made.

These may especially be necessary if a MIP model has been defined, for example by use of some batch nodes. In the most lucky case such a refinement just requires some changes in the parameters of the solver heuristics that Strategic Network Optimization provides for MIP problems. In the worst case a redefinition of the optimization model is necessary, possibly inducing serious modifications in the design of the planning module (see Chap. 4).

21.4 Implementing the Master Planning Model

21.4.1 Model Structure

In the following section the elements of the mid-term Strategic Network Optimization model and the solution approaches actually used in this project are described. The model covers the food supply chain from some important external suppliers to the final distribution centers. Master Planning is usually done every Thursday starting with the following week over a rolling horizon of 26 weeks. Four different groups of commodities are considered: raw/packaging material, intermediates, finished products and time. All nodes and arcs utilized in the model are described in the following subsections. A graphical overview of the node structure is given in Fig. 21.4.

Procurement

Procurement processes are implemented in Master Planning only if the supply of material is restricted in some manner. This applies to the internal supply of pre-blend from plant 3 and to some critical suppliers of packaging material whose weekly production (or supply) capacities are known. As already mentioned, the production processes of pre-blending are not explicitly considered in the Master Planning model, but their capacities are restricted and therefore have to be modeled as material bottlenecks.

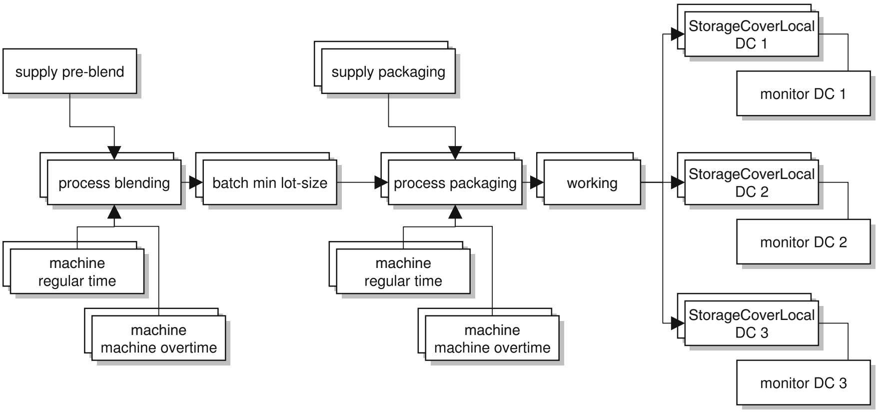


Fig. 21.4 Overview of the Strategic Network Optimization model

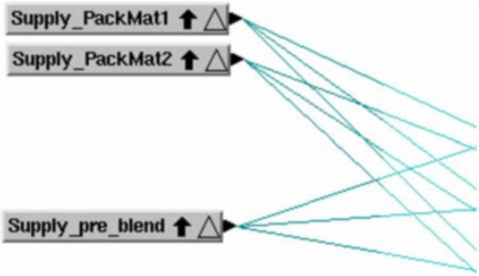


Fig. 21.5 Example of procurement processes in the Strategic Network Optimization model

Table 21.2 Supply node data fields

Data field	Case specific input
Max	Maximum material supply (of pre-blend or packaging materials)
Costs	Linear costs per unit procured

In Strategic Network Optimization the internal and external suppliers are represented as supply nodes. For each material and supplier a respective supply node is needed (only a small section of the procurement part is shown in Fig. 21.5).

The fields of the node are filled with the data described in Table 21.2. The costs in the supply node are required only if a specific material is double-sourced or the prices are changing over time. Costs have to be filled in for all materials since the objective function calculates the whole procurement costs in this case.

The supply nodes are connected with process nodes representing the blending stage. If transportation costs for the transports to the plants occur (esp. for pre-blend from plant 3 to plants 1 and 2), these are modeled as a linear cost rate penalizing the flow on the arc.

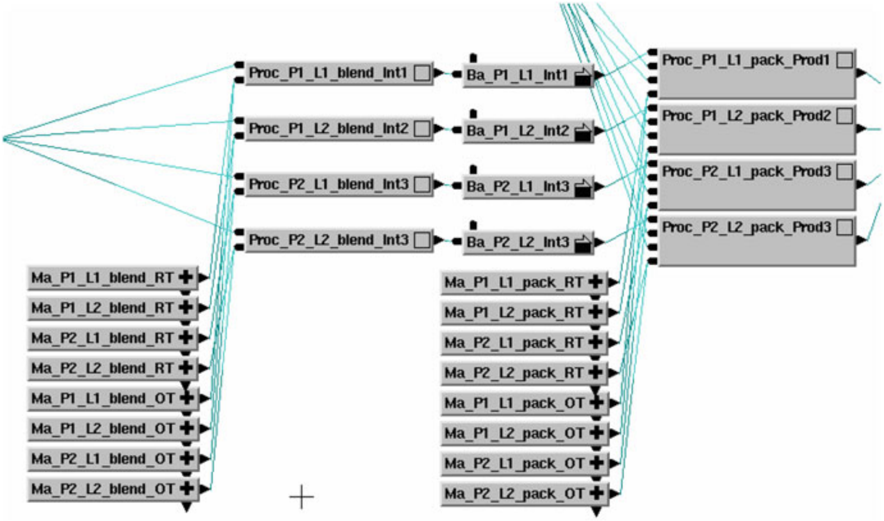


Fig. 21.6 Example of production processes in the Strategic Network Optimization model

Production

Since both production stages, blending *and* packaging, are potential bottlenecks, they cannot be considered as a single planning unit. Furthermore, the production model has to guarantee minimum lot-sizes on the production lines. For each production line and product a single process node is needed (see also Fig. 21.6). The blending process node combines the commodities pre-blend and (regular and over-) time for producing the intermediates. Therefore, the input rates are modeled as follows:

- Pre-blend: quantity (in tons) needed for production of one ton intermediate product
- Time: capacity (in hours) needed for production of one ton intermediate product.

Arcs connect the blending process nodes with the batch nodes which ensure that either nothing or more than the minimum lot-size is produced per week. This is the only kind of node in the model which induces integer variables (more precise: semi-continuous variables). This additional complexity (for further information see Sect. 8.2.2 and Chap. 30) has to be balanced carefully against the higher accuracy achievable by considering the minimum lot-sizes. The field “min-run-length” is filled with the minimum lot-size (in tons) which is given by technical restrictions of the machines. The arc (intermediate product) leaving the batch node is directly connected to the packaging process node. Variable production costs (excluding costs for material supply and personnel taken into account otherwise) are modeled as a cost rate on the arc. Input rates of these process nodes are set according to:

- Intermediate product: quantity (in tons) required for one ton of finished products
- Packaging material: quantity (in units) needed for one ton of finished products

Table 21.3 Capacity model data fields

	Data field	Case specific input
Machine RT	Max	Regular maximum capacity (in hours) available for production on a respective blending or packaging machine
Machine OT	Max	Maximum overtime capacity (in hours) available for production on a respective blending or packaging machine
Arc	Costs	Linear personnel costs per hour

- Time: capacity (in hours) needed for the production of one ton of finished products.

Both types of process nodes (blending and packaging) consume capacity (time) which is supplied by *machine nodes*. For each process node two machine nodes are required: one provides regular capacity (RT) and the other overtime capacity (OT). Both machine nodes are connected with the process node. Table 21.3 shows the field entries which have to be made in machine nodes and arcs. The maximum capacity is calculated by reducing the total capacity (e.g. 5 days × 24 h per day = 120 h) per week by an efficiency factor. This value is retrieved from historical data by considering the following components: start-up/shut-down time, changeover time, maintenance and repair time.

Distribution and Sales

Each production site is able to serve all three DCs. Therefore the necessary transports from packaging to warehousing are modeled by arcs connecting the packaging process node with the SCL node. As in some cases an n:m relationship between production lines and DCs exists, a working node merges the flows from different production lines producing the same product (see e.g. lines 1 and 2 of plant 2 in Fig. 21.7). This also enables quick access to the overall production quantity of a specific plant/product combination. The transportation arcs carry linear transportation costs which are calculated from price lists of the third-party carriers.

The SCL node stays abreast of inventory tracking and demand fulfillment. Limits on inventory levels are modeled as *stock covers* (number of periods of future demand covered by stock-on-hand), as it is common practice in the consumer goods industry. Here, all stock limits (min, safety and max) were modeled as soft constraints (with penalties) in order to ensure feasibility of the optimization model which could be endangered if the forecasted demand in the first week is much higher than stock-on-hand plus available production capacity. The minimum stock (min cover), the model has to guarantee, is calculated by summing the following components:

- Lot-sizing stock (cycle stock): As most products are produced each week, the lot-size equals approximately the demand of 1 week. Therefore, the mean lot-sizing stock is half of the weekly demand.
- Transit stock: The delivery lead-time from the plant to the DC is about 1 day. As the stock for this transport is not considered on the arc, the minimum stock in the DC has to be increased by this amount.

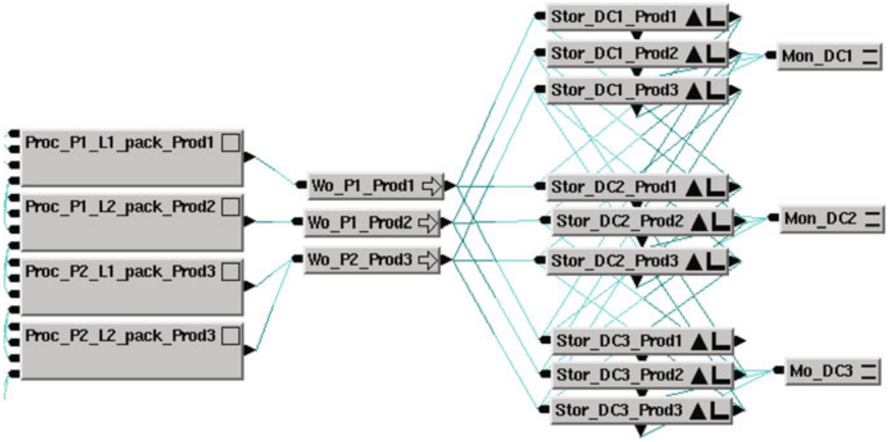


Fig. 21.7 Example of distribution and sales processes in the Strategic Network Optimization model

Table 21.4 StorageCoverLocal node data fields

Data field	Case specific input
Min cover	Minimum stock cover for lot-sizing, transport and quarantine
Safety cover	Additionally buffering against demand uncertainty
Max cover	Maximum stock cover: this bound ought to avoid large inventory build-ups which could result in obsolescence
Under cost	Cost for falling below the minimum stock level (penalty!)
Safety cost	Cost for falling below the safety stock level (penalty!)
Over cost	Cost for exceeding the maximum stock level (penalty!)
Inject	Beginning inventory position of the next week (first planning bucket)
Cost	Inventory holding costs calculated mainly from interest on capital employed
Demand	Forecasted demand of each week

- Quarantine stock: All products have to be kept at the plant for 24 h. This quarantine time is added to the minimum stock cover at the DC.

Since violation of minimum stocks is punished by very high penalty costs (under costs), the safety cover is only penalized by a lower unit cost (safety cost). The safety cover is calculated by adding the min cover and some further cover buffering against demand uncertainty. Table 21.4 summarizes the SCL node options. All SCL nodes for one product are connected to each other to enable emergency shipments between DCs. These transports should be avoided as they lead to additional administrative effort. Therefore, these shipments are only performed in the short run if stock-outs impend. The respective cost fields of the arcs are filled with penalties and not with real transportation cost rates.

Monitor nodes are connected to all SCL nodes of one DC to constrain the maximum inventory level.

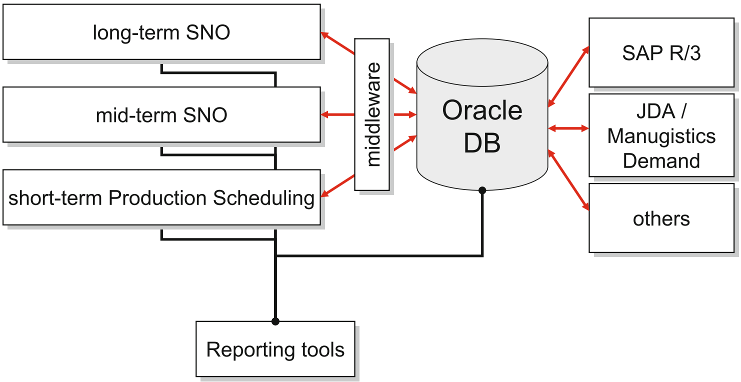


Fig. 21.8 Data flows for integration

21.4.2 Solution Approaches

An optimal solution can be calculated if minimum lot-sizes are not taken into account. Therefore, the model can be solved using one of the LP procedures offered by the optimization engine (*primal and dual simplex, barrier*) of Strategic Network Optimization. The optimal solution is retrieved in a few seconds or minutes.

However, if the batch nodes are taken into consideration, solution time increases up to several hours. For this kind of integer variables (min run length) special purpose heuristics guide the solution process. Feasible solutions can be computed (without an optimality proof).

21.4.3 Data Flows

All supply chain planning modules of this case study are connected to a common database (Oracle). This database stores all static and dynamic data required for planning. The planning software itself does not provide database connectivity and therefore needs to be integrated. This is enabled by an Oracle middleware solution (see Fig. 21.8) which retrieves data from the Oracle database and converts it to flat files which are accessible for the planning tools.

Strategic Network Optimization is able to generate the model from a flat file describing each node and arc. Therefore the Strategic Network Optimization model is created from scratch once per week. This automatic procedure bases on the data file generated by the middleware component. In addition, an update of dynamic data is possible upon request of the planner. In this case the following data flows are necessary:

- Update of forecasts from Demand Planning (SCL node)
- Calculation of beginning inventory positions for the first planning bucket (SCL node)

- Import of planned production quantities from Production Scheduling within the fixed horizon (arc between packaging process node and working node).

Input to the database is gathered from the planning output of further Oracle modules and from the ERP system SAP R/3 (see SAP 2014), the demand planning solution of JDA (formerly Manugistics NetWORKS Demand; see JDA Software Group Inc. 2014), and some others. Reporting capabilities are necessary for two reasons: First of all the planner needs transparency of data available and all planning results. Therefore, the Strategic Network Optimization reporting capabilities are used to get overviews in tabular form. They can be customized and permit simple calculations on data available in nodes and arcs (e.g. calculation of seasonal stock from minimum stock and planned stock level). Further high-end reporting tools are also required, because the overall success of the project is measured by some core key performance indicators (KPIs). Every participant of the crew needs up-to-date information on these figures. The KPIs are based on planning *and* actual data which is only available in the database. Therefore, standard database reporting tools are used to build customized reports for this purpose.

21.5 Results and Lessons Learned

The Strategic Network Optimization model described above and the Production Scheduling model have gone “live” some years ago. To identify major mistakes in the implementation, both the new APS and the old planning system ran in parallel for just a few weeks.

Thus the question on benefits can now be answered with several years’ experience of practical use. The most important improvements measured are:

- *Reduced planning time:* The planning time needed to create the weekly master plan was reduced to less than 30 % of the time required before the implementation of the APS. About 95 % of the decisions proposed by the planning system are put into practice without changes. This shows the reliability of the planning model and enables the planner to examine what-if analysis to evaluate process changes.
- *Reduced inventory levels:* Without affecting customer service, it was possible to avoid buffers which were used to protect against planning inaccuracy and uncertainty. This also attributed to a new way of controlling inventories which is based on the inventory analysis methodology introduced in Chap. 2.
- *Reduced overtime:* The bottleneck production lines can be identified very early. Therefore, production can be shifted to alternative sites, if necessary.
- *Less emergency transports between DCs:* More accurate planning balances production and transports in advance.

The software template described so far has also been used for fast implementation of Oracle’s Value Chain Planning in other food-divisions of the company. This was possible because the template is based on intensive, collaborative analysis of several food and beverages supply chains covering the company’s whole food-branch.

References

Günther, H.-O., Blömer, F., & Grunow, M. (1998). Moderne Softwaretools für das Supply Chain Management. *Zeitschrift für wirtschaftlichen Fabrikbetrieb, 93*(7–8), 330–333.

IBM ILOG CPLEX Optimizer (2014). Homepage. http://www-03.ibm.com/software/products/de/ibmilogcpleoptistud/. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

JDA Software Group Inc. (2014). Homepage. http://www.jda.com. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Kolisch, R. (1998). Linx. *OR Spectrum, 20*(1), 1–4.

Oracle (2010). *Oracle strategic network optimization, implementation guide*. Denver. http://docs.oracle.com/cd/B53825_08/current/acrobat/121snoig.pdf. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Oracle (2014). Homepage. http://www.oracle.com. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

SAP (2014). Homepage. http://www.sap.com. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Scheduling of Synthetic Granulate

22

Marco Richter and Volker Stockrahm

This case study deals with a project which has been finished in its first version in the process industry in 2000 with a quite early release of APO PP/DS and which has been further improved by new releases of SAP APO with their additional functions and the integration of more parts of the supply chain. It was the first APO PP/DS project that managed to keep up with the difficult scheduling requirements in the field of the chemical and process industries.

This case study is structured in the following sections: First, the general production process of the synthetic granulate in the featured plant is presented. This chapter focuses on the special planning problems which occurred in this example. Subsequently, the modeling of the production process in APO PP/DS is described in detail, and some more information about modeling production processes in APO PP/DS are provided in addition to the general information given in Chap. 10 as well as a short view to the planning process. At the end of this case study the results of this APO implementation are estimated briefly as they could be measured today and the lessons learned are presented.

22.1 Case Description

The production process dealt with in this case study is the production of synthetic granulate. In technical terms it is a four step hybrid-flow-shop production process. The granulate is widely used in many different industries, especially in the automobile and pharmaceutical industries. About 3,000 different products make up the full product spectrum which grows and changes rapidly.

M. Richter (✉) • V. Stockrahm
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Mergenthalerallee 3–5, 65760 Eschborn, Germany
e-mail: marco.richter@de.ey.com; volker.stockrahm@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_22,

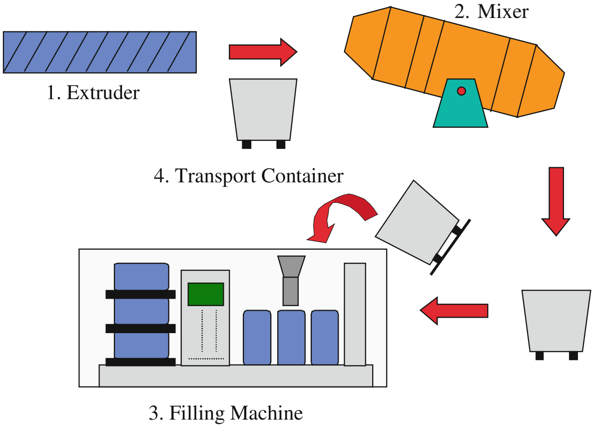


Fig. 22.1 Production process

The basic principle of the process (see Fig. 22.1) is melting the undyed granulate in extruders, adding color substances and perhaps other additives and extruding the colored granulate again. Depending on the product type, a mixer is used afterwards to create homogenous batches. If the granulate is shipped in bags, an automatic bag filling machine may be used. Otherwise the filling of the granulate in different types of containers is done directly at the extruders or mixer. Depending on the production sequence, transport containers may be needed during a part of the production process. At the end of the production process some more days are needed for the necessary quality checks.

The selection of resources for the production process depends on the product type. For the extrusion process several individual extruders can be used. These resources differ with respect to speed, types of color that can be added and types of undyed granulate that can be processed. The actual usage of the individual extruder depends on the product type and the lot-size of the production order. Generally speaking, for each product there are several extruders with different priorities that can be used for the extrusion process. As there is a high variety of products with very different chemical and physical characteristics, the scheduling of orders on the extruders is very critical. Depending on the sequence of the production orders, setup times for cleaning the extruders vary between nearly no setup time and up to 5 h.

Products with special quality requirements by the customer have to be mixed afterwards to create batches with homogeneous characteristics. For this part of the production process several mixers with different capacities are available. The selection of the mixer is lot-size dependent. Also the setup times on the mixers depend on the sequence of production orders, but the scheduling is less critical, as the setup times are shorter and the mixer is usually not a bottleneck. Granulates which are shipped in bags can be packed in two different ways. The first alternative is packing directly at the extruder or mixer which requires no additional resources. This procedure is chosen for production orders with small lot-sizes. Large production orders are packed with a special automatic filling machine which has to be planned separately. The setup times are sequence dependent as well, but less problematic than setup times on extruders. A further resource group, the transport containers, is needed, if a product needs the mixer or the filling machine or both of them. As the automatic filling in bags does not take place directly at the extruder, the transport containers are used to transport the loose granulate from extruder to mixer and further on to the filling machine. Since the number of available transport containers is limited, they must be considered as a relevant resource. The last resource group is the personnel required to operate the machines. Several different qualification groups can be distinguished, all of them have to be considered for production planning. If several workers are not present, use of certain machines might not be possible and production must be rescheduled.

22.2 Objectives

As mentioned before, the sequencing of production orders is the critical task in the planning process to avoid setup times and costs. An ideal sequence of production orders regarding the setup times would be a sequence starting with a very bright color (e.g. yellow) and ending with a very dark color like brown or black. This sequence leads to no setup times between the orders (as there is no cleaning necessary when changing from bright do dark) and in a long setup/cleaning activity at the end of this “campaign”. This setup optimization task and the fact that many different resource combinations for the products must be considered makes it hard for the production planner to generate feasible and economical plans in a short period of time. Especially the setup problems usually have been solved by building large standardized campaigns of similar products. Moreover, the plans once generated could not be changed easily when machines broke down or special short-term orders had to be fulfilled. This situation has been tackled by allowing buffer times in the production schedule. If this buffer time was not needed, the production capacities were not exploited to their maximum. So there has been the clear demand for an intelligent production planning and scheduling solution. This and as the integration with SAP R/3 should be as seamless as possible led to the decision to implement SAP’s *Advanced Planner and Optimizer (APO)*.

22.3 Modeling the Production Process in APO PP/DS

Within this section of the case study not only the actual modeling of the production process in APO is described, but also some general principles of modeling processes in APO for production planning and scheduling in addition to the general description in Chap. 10. When this project was introduced for the first time, APO release 2.0 was the most current release. Although we are talking about mySAP SCM release 7.0 today, the basic principles of modeling supply chains in APO are still the same. Also the presented case has already undergone some release changes but still works in the original configuration and model. Of course, not all options of modeling with APO can be presented here.

22.3.1 General

In Chap. 10, the groups of data needed for planning have been defined. Especially the necessary master data will be explained in this chapter.

To use the PP/DS module of APO for planning and scheduling in industry, basically the following groups of master data must be maintained in the system:

- Locations
- Products or parts
- Resources
- Production Process Models (PPMs)
- Setup matrices
- Supply chain models.

Additionally, transactional data (e.g. sales orders, planned orders, inventories and setup states of resources) will be needed for planning. As the APO is using a standard R/3 basis system to maintain the system functionality, it uses a relational database of its own to maintain master and transactional data. Therefore, data are not handed over using flat ASCII files which are read by the system on start unlike most other advanced planning systems. Considering this, some information about filling the system with data will be provided:

Usually, a special interface provided by SAP will be used to connect the APO system to an R/3 system (APO Core Interface, a part of the R/3 PlugIn). This interface generates the master data by an initial upload and communicates the transactional data as soon as they are changed by one of the systems. This guarantees the fastest and most recent data transmission. Nevertheless, other interfaces to non-R/3-systems may be used as well.

22.3.2 Locations

The *location* is the first step, when creating a model. As APO is an integrated supply chain planning tool, it is important that all the subsequent data can be assigned to individual locations. Although for the *supply network planning* there are several kinds of locations (supplier, production plant, distribution center, customer, transportation zone, MRP area, transportation service provider and terminal), for the PP/DS only the production plants are relevant. This makes up one location—a production plant—for this production process. This data object corresponds with the organizational R/3 data object "plant" and is transferred using the standard Core Interface.

22.3.3 Products

For every product which is to be planned in APO (final product or raw material) a set of *product master data* has to be generated. The APO philosophy for the selection of the "relevant" products suggests that only critical materials should be planned in APO. So, one will usually plan the final products and some of their critical components in the APO system. Thus, only a portion of the materials contained in the complete bill of materials (BOM) is transferred to APO. In this particular case, the final products—the colored granulate—and the undyed granulate are planned in APO, although the BOMs in R/3 contain many additional components like some additives. But these are no critical components and are not planned in APO. The complete BOM is exploded in R/3 and the additional components are generated as secondary demands, when a generated or changed order is retransmitted to the ERP system.

A lot of the settings and product properties are not relevant for PP/DS planning and are not presented here. The important values for PP/DS are

- Basic unit of measurement
- Alternative unit of measurement
- Lot-size calculation
- Planning method
- Procurement method.

The *units of measurement* are taken over automatically from the R/3 system, depending on the product. It is usually "unit" or "kg" for this production process. Regarding the *lot-size calculation* APO offers the following options: fixed lot-size, lot for lot with a maximum/minimum lot-size and lot-for-lot without maximum/minimum lot-size. For the lot-for-lot calculation a rounding value can be defined. In our case, all the products use lot-for-lot with maximum/minimum lot-size. All these individual values are taken from the R/3 system.

The *planning method* describes how APO will react, when a demand is transferred. If the planning method is "automatic planning", the system checks the availability and—if the check is negative—creates a planned order or a purchase proposal (depending on the procurement method). If "manual planning with check" is selected, the system checks the availability and creates an alert in the *Alert Monitor*, if the check is negative. But it creates no orders of any kind. The third alternative "manual planning without check" always assumes that there is enough material to fulfill the demand. The *procurement method* determines, what APO will do if a demand cannot be fulfilled using stored materials. The procurement method offers the settings "in-house production", "external procurement" or "in-house production or external procurement". The last option is "direct procurement from other plants".

When "in-house production" is selected, the system creates a planned order for the product, considering resource capacity availability and material availability simultaneously. When "external procurement" is selected, the system creates a purchase proposal. In case of "in-house production or external procurement" the

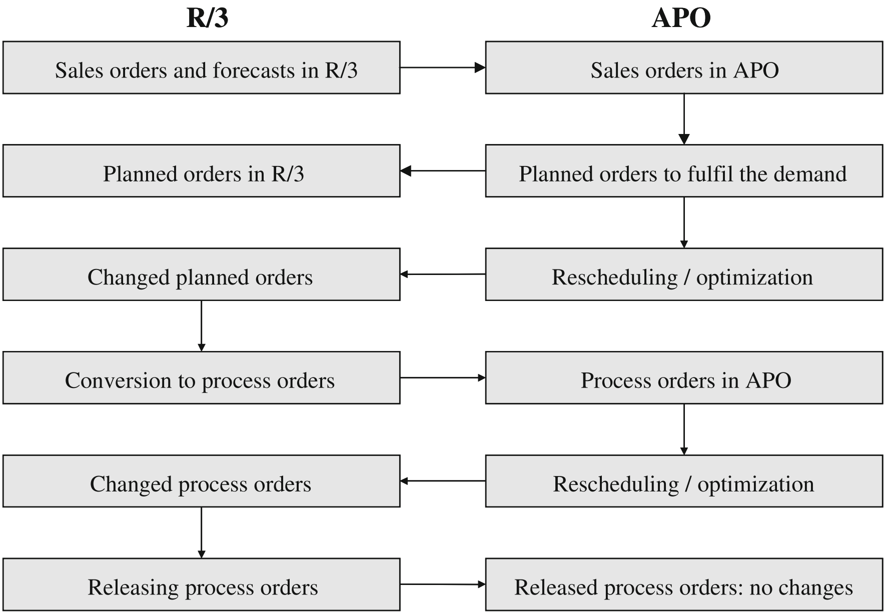


Fig. 22.2 Planning process using APO and R/3

cheaper alternative is selected, so costs for production and external procurement have to be maintained.

The planning method "automatic planning" and the procurement method "in-house production" have been selected for colored granulates (the final products) in the first version of this case. So, automatically planned orders were created and sent back to R/3 immediately, if a sales order cannot be fulfilled using stored materials or work-in-process. The undyed granulate status was set to "manual planning with check". So, if there was not enough material for production, a warning in the Alert Monitor has been created. The reason for this was that the undyed granulate production which takes place in another plant of the same company was not yet integrated in the PP/DS planning process. As soon as this integration was completed, it was possible to check the availability of the corresponding undyed granulate and create a planned order for it immediately in the other plant together with a transportation order to the plant, where the colored granulate is produced. As soon as this second plant was integrated into SAP APO a common planning process was established using a APO PP/DS planning heuristic working with finite capacities ("finite MRP") to substitute the conventional MRP run in R/3. The automatic planning functionality proved to cause too many changes in the production schedule. Figure 22.2 shows the actual planning process and communication between APO and the ERP system.

22.3.4 Resources

APO uses several different types of *resources* for different planning requirements. For PP/DS *single* or *multi-activity resources* are used. Planning on these resources is not based on periods. They use a continuous time stream, and orders are scheduled using seconds as time units.

Single-activity resources always have the capacity of 1 without any unit of measurement. They represent a machine that can only process one order at the same time. Multi-activity resources are used to model either groups of identical machines which lead to a capacity of more than 1 without a dimension or single machines which can process more than one order at the same time and every order requires a certain amount of capacity. For example, an oven can have a capacity of $10\,\mathrm{m}^3$, and every order processed in the oven at the same time requires some volume of the oven. Several orders can be processed in the oven at the same time as long as the sum of their individual capacity requirements does not exceed $10\,\mathrm{m}^3$.

Not only different capacity types can be distinguished in APO, also the *usage* of a resource is indicated. The resource types “production”, “transportation”, “storage” and “handling” are possible, but only the production resource is relevant for PP/DS.

Capacities can be defined in multiple variants in APO. In this way one can model different capacities for e.g. different shifts or reduced capacities for breakdown times. Besides the amount of capacity there is the possibility to indicate, when the capacity of a resource can be used. While the *factory calendar* describes on which days the resource can be used or not because of e.g. weekends, holidays etc., the *resource calendar* describes the working times for the working days. So, for the working days, the start time and end time of resource availability are specified. Additionally the resource usage can be defined to allow buffer times or reserve capacity for some reasons. This resource usage is measured in percent. Further settings concerning properties of resources can allow some overlap of orders without creating an alert. For each resource a flag can be set whether the actual capacity load should be considered during scheduling (“*finite planning*”) while another flag indicates whether the resource is a *bottleneck*. If the bottleneck flag is set, the system schedules an order first on the bottleneck resource and then the other activities of this order on the other (non-bottleneck) resources. To model sequence dependent setup times, a *setup matrix* must be created and assigned to the resources where these setup times occur. The setup times automatically reduce the resources’ capacity.

The setup times and costs are the only relevant factors to build lots on the resource and activity level as it is done in PP/DS. When using the optimizing algorithms to reschedule an initial plan, activities are planned on the resources in an order which creates the fewest losses by setup times and costs while concerning lateness, production costs and makespan simultaneously.

The classic lot-sizing which regards the trade-off between setup, transportation and storage costs has to be done in the mid-term planning, using the *Supply Network Planning*.

Table 22.1 Modeling the resources

Name	Type	Start	End	Usage (%)	Matrix	Bottleneck	Finite	Capacity	Unit
PERS_1	Multi	00:00:00	24:00:00	90			X	0–2	
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
PERS_N	Multi	00:00:00	24:00:00	90			X	0–12	
FILLING	Single	00:00:00	24:00:00	90	SHORT		X	1	
MIXER_1	Single	00:00:00	24:00:00	90	SHORT		X	1	
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
MIXER_M	Single	00:00:00	24:00:00	90	SHORT		X	1	
EXTRUDER_1	Single	00:00:00	24:00:00	90	LONG	X	X	1	
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
EXTRUDER_O	Single	00:00:00	24:00:00	90	LONG	X	X	1	
QUALITY	Single	06:00:00	16:00:00	100				1	
TRANSPORT	Multi	00:00:00	24:00:00	90			X	30–40	

For the granulate production process, the following resources have been created in the APO system:

- A single-activity resource for each extruder
- Three multi-activity resources for the three personnel groups
- One single-activity resource for the filling machine
- One single-activity resource for each mixer
- One multi-activity resource for the transport containers.

The extruders have been marked as bottleneck resources. So the system first schedules the extruders, as there is the biggest planning problem. All the resources, except the quality testing, are available for 24 h on work days, the quality testing department works for 10 h. Although the quality testing is in fact just a dummy resource—there is no finite planning—the exact working times are necessary to model that the quality testing takes 3 days. Quality testing always starts at the beginning of a shift (6 a.m.) and ends always at the end of a shift (4 p.m.). The use of a dummy resource is necessary in APO, as waiting times without a resource cannot be modeled. If a resource shows a variable capacity, an additional capacity can be defined for each shift to represent the actual number of available workers or transport containers. If no specific capacity is given for a shift, the standard capacity for that resource will be used.

The following Table 22.1 shows the individual resource properties, i.e. the detailed definition of the resources. In fact there are some more fields which can be used in APO, but only the essential ones are described here.

For the synthetic granulate process two setup matrices (SHORT and LONG) have been defined. They both contain the same setup keys, but different setup times for the individual product combination. The matrix with the longer setup times is assigned to the extruders, the one with the shorter setup times to the mixers and the filling machine. The matrix with the shorter entries can be regarded as a copy of the first matrix with all entries divided by a constant factor. The huge number of products can be reduced for the setup matrices as a product in different shipment containers is represented by individual product numbers. The actual setup matrices contain about 2,000,000 entries each. The generation of the setup matrices could not be handled manually, so a special ABAP/4 program in APO generates the setup times, using physical and chemical characteristics of the products (a non-standard functionality).

22.3.5 Production Process Models

The *Production Process Model (PPM)* is the most essential element of an APO model. As presented in Chap. 10, it represents both the routing and the BOMs. So, here it is determined which resources are used for what time and which components enter or leave the production process. This is indicated at activity level. So the production step, when a component is needed or ready, is described precisely. Also the temporal relations between single production steps are defined. APO is the first APS which actually uses the complete PPM concept, while most other systems work with separated routings and BOMs.

According to Chap. 10, a PPM is a hierarchical structure of elements which together form the production process. The elements of a PPM are:

- *Operations* which describe a group of production steps which take place on the same resource without interruption by other production orders
- *Activities* as the single steps of an operation, e.g. setup, production, wait, tear down
- *Activity relationships* which determine the sequence of the activities and their relative position in time
- *Modes* which describe the resource or the alternative resources an activity can use and their duration
- *Capacity requirements* for the primary and secondary resources of each mode
- *Logical components* which serve as containers for groups of physical products (inputs or outputs) and are attached to activities
- *Physical components* which describe the groups of real products represented by the logical components
- The list of products which can be produced using this PPM (which may be all or just a part of the output components) and the lot-size ranges for which the PPM is valid.

As mentioned at the beginning in the description of the production process, many different routings through the process exist depending on the product. Here is presented the "maximum" PPM for a product which uses the extruder, the mixer, the filling machine, the transport containers and several personnel resources. First, the general modeling possibilities and principles for the elements of a PPM are presented, immediately after each element. A practical example is given by showing how the synthetic granulate process was modeled in this step.

For every production step which takes place on another resource an *operation* is defined, as long as this resource is not only needed as a *secondary resource*, parallel to the primary resource (e.g. a worker who is needed to operate the machine). If sequence dependent setup times shall be used, the *setup key* which identifies the manufactured product in the setup matrix is specified in the operation. As there

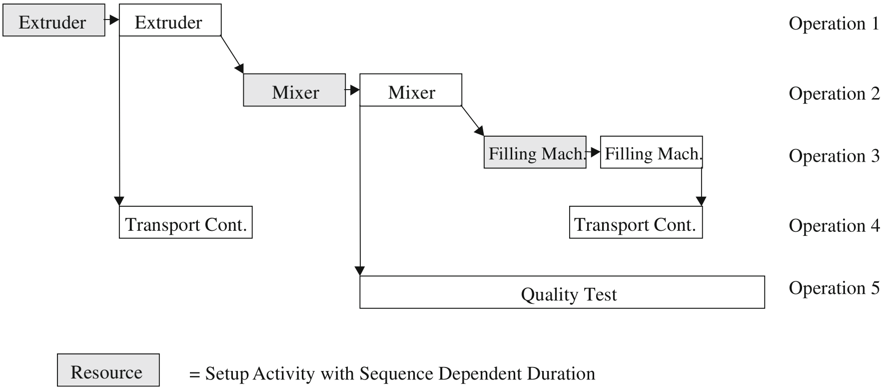


Fig. 22.3 PPM structure of the production process

Table 22.2 Modeling the operations

Operation key	Description	Setup key	Location
0010	Extruder	SETUP_KEY	GRANULATE_PLANT
0030	Mixer	SETUP_KEY	GRANULATE_PLANT
0050	Filling machine	SETUP_KEY	GRANULATE_PLANT
0070	Transport container		
0090	Quality test		

can only be one setup activity per operation the setup key is not specified in the setup activity. Regarding the granulate production process, there is a maximum of five operations. The transport containers cannot be modeled as secondary resources for reasons to be explained later. Therefore they require an operation of its own. The naming of the location is necessary because the location is needed to identify the setup key. Using a graphical representation, the PPM structure is described in Fig. 22.3.

The complete list of operations for this example is shown in Table 22.2.

Every operation possesses at least one *activity*, usually the production activity. In many cases more than one activity will be defined in one operation, to model a single production step. The standard types of activities are "setup", "production", "wait" and "tear down" which all can be used only once in one operation. The activities are marked by an "S", "P", "W" or "T" accordingly. Only the setup activity can have a sequence dependent duration which says the duration is looked up in the setup matrix. If this feature is to be used, the flag for sequence dependent setup must be set. This flag makes it impossible to enter a duration for the setup activity later on in the modes. Another field in every activity determines the percentage of scrap which occurs during this activity. This scrap percentage is used to determine the order size which is necessary to produce the quantity ordered. All of the first three operations in this example have the same activity structure (see Table 22.3).

Table 22.3 Modeling the activities

Activity key	Description	Type	Sequ. dep. setup flag
0010	Cleaning	S	X
0020	Producing	P	

Table 22.4 Transport activities

Activity key	Description	Type	Sequ. dep. setup flag
0070	Container start	P	
0080	Container end	W	

Table 22.5 Quality test activity

Activity key	Description	Type	Sequ. dep. setup flag
0090	Quality test	P	

The transport container and quality test operations do not require a setup activity. So the quality test operation has only one activity type “production”, the transport operation has two activity types: “production” and “wait”. These activities represent the start and the end of the container usage. APO always lays a so-called cover chain around the activities which belong to the same operation. This guarantees that no activity of other production orders which are also processed on this particular resource is scheduled in between these activities.

The activities for the transport and the quality test operations can be described as shown in Tables 22.4 and 22.5.

Every activity must have at least one *relationship* to another activity. APO does not automatically connect the orders and activities in the way they are numbered or sorted in the tables. This provides a high amount of flexibility in modeling production processes. There are several types of activity relationships already introduced in Chap. 10 which are also used by APO: end-start, start-start, end-end and start-end. For every relation between activities a minimum and maximum time difference can be maintained. The *resource connection flag* at each activity relationship can be used to force APO to use the same primary resource, even if the activities belong to different operations. If the activities belong to the same operation, APO uses the same primary resource anyway, as there is not much sense in doing the setup on one machine and the production on another. The *material flow flag* must be set for every activity relationship which represents an actual flow of material. APO uses this path from input activity to output activity to calculate the total percentage of scrap which occurs during the whole production process.

Generally speaking, all the activities in this example which belong to extruder, mixer or filling machine have simply been connected with end-start relationships and no minimum or maximum time constraints. So they are processed one after the other, and the material can be stored for an infinite time. In fact the system will not let the waiting times between the activities of one operation become too long, as the order would consume transport container capacity while waiting. This would lead to a longer makespan, as other orders have to wait for the containers. This way the optimizer keeps the gaps short and no maximum time constraint is required. Activity relationships are shown in Table 22.6.

Table 22.6 Activity relationship

From	To	Type	Resource flag	Min. deviation	Max. deviation
Produce extr.	Setup mixer	end-start		0	0

The activities of the transport container operation have been connected to the other activities in a slightly different way. The "container start" activity has a start-start relationship to the activity "produce with extruder" with a minimum and maximum deviation of zero. So, the containers are occupied once production begins. The "container end" activity has an "end-end" relationship also with no time deviation allowed with the last production activity (mixer or filling machine). The quality test activity has simply been connected to the last production activity as well.

Every activity must have one or more *modes*. A mode represents an alternative primary resource and may also contain one or more secondary resources which are used simultaneously. Every mode can be given a *priority* from A (first selection) to Z (only manually selectable). This priority influences the resource selection during incremental scheduling and optimization. Actually, the priorities represent penalty costs. If no priorities are used, the system always tries to use the fastest machine first. The mode also contains the information about the activity duration—depending on the resource the mode represents. Selecting the mode with the fastest machine therefore leads to the shortest activity duration. So, in APO the production speed and power of a resource can differ, dependent on the PPM which uses the resource. The resource speed is not maintained with the resource, but with the actual product/resource combination. The activity duration in the mode can be defined with a *fixed* and a *variable* part which grows with the order size. If the activity is a sequence dependent setup activity, the activity duration is taken from the matrix, and the fields in the mode are ignored.

For every mode there are the *capacity requirements* of the resources defined in a separate table. Here also the names of the secondary resources for the specific mode are given. A secondary resource is always covered as long as the primary resource with the same start and end times. The primary resource which is also given in the mode definition is always the so-called *calendar resource*. This says that the times of availability of this resource affect the availability of all the secondary resources in this mode. As mentioned in Sect. 22.3.4 an activity on a single activity resource always has the capacity requirement of 1. On multi-activity resources, capacity requirements other than 1 will occur and have to be defined here. Like the activity duration the resource consumption can be defined using a *fixed* and a *variable* part. In the Tables 22.7 and 22.8 an example is given for the modeling of modes and capacity requirements.

As the last part of the PPM the *components* (inputs and outputs) are maintained. The entries are made for the activity, where the input or output occurs. It is defined whether the material enters or leaves the production process at the begin of the activity, at the end of the activity or continuously. Continuous input and output

Table 22.7 Modes

Activity	Mode	Resource	Dur. fixed	Dur. variable	Break	In shift	Priority
Produce extr.	1	Extruder 1	0	1.5 h			A
Produce extr.	2	Extruder 5	0	2.75 h	X		C

Table 22.8 Capacity requirements

Activity	Mode	Resource	Cap. req. fixed	Cap. req. variable	Calendar
Produce extr.	1	Extruder 1	1	0	X
Produce extr.	1	Worker	0.5	0	

was introduced in the model when in a second step the production of undyed granulate started to be planned with APO as well. Contrary to the production of dyed granulate, which is a batch production process, the production of undyed granulate is a rather continuous production.

22.3.6 Supply Chain Model

Finally all the elements described above must be added to a *model*. A model allows actual planning with the system. Without creating a model the locations, products, resources and production process models cannot be used yet. Using the model philosophy one can create completely separated planning environments in the same system with the data in the same storage device (*live*Cache). Every model can have several *planning versions*. This says that several copies of the transaction data of the model are used to simulate different scenarios and to answer what-if questions. Only one planning version—the active version—is relevant for transferring the planning results back to the connected OLTP system and for receiving new planning data.

22.4 Planning Process

The planning process and the tools involved in this process are presented briefly in this section. The integration with other tools within APO and R/3 is described as well.

The demands used for the production planning and scheduling process are derived from R/3 sales orders (short term) and from APO Demand Planning (long term). At this company there is meanwhile also a tool for the mid term planning (master planning) in use, the APO Supply Network Planning. This tool is on the one hand used to perform a rough cut production capacity check in a horizon of the next 12 months across several business units and all production stages to provide a feedback to the demand planning (the sales people). On the other hand the production amounts created by the Supply Network Planning are passed on to the PP/DS modules (where available) or directly to the R/3 system.

The integration between the mid term planning (SNP) and the short term production planning (PP/DS) is important to perform a consistent hierarchical planning process. As the PP/DS plans only a rather short period of time (in this case 3 months) seasonal changes in the demand structure cannot be taken into account. The PP/DS would not trigger enough production in time respecting the limited resource capacity as the actual future demand is still outside its horizon. The SNP must provide this information to the PP/DS by handing over its own planned production and procurement amounts. In the short term production planning tool changes to this mid term plan by additional sales orders or more detailed resource availability information are made and the production schedule is planned in greater detail as the PP/DS uses more detailed master and transactional data.

In a nightly cycle the PP/DS production planning heuristic performs a planning run which is quite similar to the traditional MRP but which also takes resource and material availability into account simultaneously. The result of this planning run is a production schedule which is already feasible but not yet optimized.

After this production planning run the PP/DS optimizer is used each night to create an optimized production schedule in respect to setup times, machinery costs, delays and total lead time. For the optimization part the standard PP/DS optimizer based on a genetic algorithm is used. This optimized production plan is transferred automatically to the connected R/3 system.

In their daily work the planners use the graphical planning board to check the suggested production plan. Changes which may be necessary are performed using drag and drop functionality in a Gantt chart. Another important tool is the alert monitor which visualizes exceptions in the planning schedule and allows the planners to react directly. All changes which are made to the production schedule are transferred back to the R/3 system online without any delay. The execution of the production plan is still performed in the R/3 system e.g. the release and confirmation of process orders, as these are no planning tasks.

22.5 Results and Lessons Learned

The implementation of APO PP/DS proved to be very successful. As the APO detailed scheduling solution has now been in active use for more than 3 years in the first edition which covers only the dyed granulate production it can be stated that expectations are fully met.

Results show that the quality of the generated plans is as good as that of the plans created by experts. The difference between the plans created manually and those created by APO is the speed and the flexibility in planning: previously, it took several planners more than 1 day to create a production plan which was fixed for several weeks. Now, APO plans the same number of orders in an optimizer run which takes approximately 1 h. The frozen horizon could be reduced from about 1 week to 1 or 2 days. Only one of the planners is involved in the detailed production scheduling using the graphical planning board and the genetic algorithm optimizer, which runs every night. Two other planners can now concentrate on manufacturing execution and other important aspects of their daily work.

A new plan can be created with APO immediately. This is especially important in a critical situation, such as a machine breaking down. The integration with the R/3 system is seamless: no additional steps are necessary to transfer planning results and new orders between the systems.

The quality of the created plans can be measured in terms of production time consumed for a certain number of orders. In this case, the production plan generated by APO usually has a makespan less than the manually created plan. This results mainly from the excessive reserved buffer times which are no longer needed.

A very important factor is the acceptance by the user. This new planning tool has been fully accepted by the production planners who see that they have a powerful system to help them in their daily routine work and make the production more flexible and profitable.

22.5.1 Lessons Learned

Several lessons were learned in this project. One of the most important is that master data quality has to improve significantly in the connected R/3 system. As the R/3 is not only used to perform ERP functionality as before but also has to serve as master data source for an APS the quality of data must be improved. An APS reacts much more sensitive to master data inconsistencies than an ERP system because these master data are used for a very detailed planning process. Master data which are created and maintained for ERP functions will not be good enough.

Furthermore the integration of the planners in the project proved to be crucial. As they have all the knowledge which is necessary to create a good production schedule they must be part of the project from the beginning to ensure success. An APS project can never be brought to life without the planners who are supposed to work with that tool afterwards.

Another big issue is the integration aspect between APS and ERP. Although in this case a very good standard interface has been used, developed by the same software manufacturer of both the APS and the ERP, there was a lot of effort in testing until a smooth integration process could be guaranteed. Without this standard interface much more work, money and time would have been invested in this interface.

22.5.2 Outlook: Further APO Implementations Within this Company

The successful completion of the first APO project has led to further APO implementations at the company. Three more production plants are currently using PP/DS. With the help of experiences gained in the first PP/DS project, these projects were running smoothly and in schedule. In addition to these PP/DS implementations, the Supply Network Planning (SNP) module has been chosen to provide mid-term production planning across all three business units. This supply chain planning process has been in active use since the end of 2002. On the demand planning side, two of the three business units are using the APO Demand Planning module to provide the SNP module with the necessary demand forecast and support the sales people with detailed forecasts. Considering the short term sales and distribution side, the Global Available to Promise module (gATP) will complete the advanced planning functionalities of APO within this company in one of the business units.

Computer Assembly

23

Christoph Kilger

The computer industry is a typical example of a *material constrained* supply chain. The main bottleneck of demand fulfilment is the availability of the electronic components, e.g. disk drives, processors, memory etc. This case study is based on an actual APS implementation project at a large international computer manufacturer. Four modules of the APS system by i2 Technologies, which has been acquired by JDA in 2010 (see Chap. 16 and Sect. 18.2), are implemented, supporting the demand planning process, the mid-term supply planning process, the short-term supply planning process and the order promising process. The following case study describes in detail

- The computer assembly supply chain, the product structure and the assembly process (Sect. 23.1)
- The scope and objectives of the APS implementation project (Sect. 23.2)
- The planning processes being supported by the APS system, i.e. demand planning, operational planning, order planning, order promising and the integration of the applied i2 planning modules with the existing SAP R/3 system (Sect. 23.3)
- Results and lessons learned from the APS implementation (Sect. 23.4).

23.1 Description of the Computer Assembly Case

23.1.1 Computer Industry Supply Chain

The typical supply chain in the computer industry consists of five main stages: suppliers, computer manufacturers, logistic service providers, deployment partners and customers. Figure 23.1 depicts the complete computer industry supply chain.

C. Kilger (✉)
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8, 66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: christoph.kilger@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_23, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2015

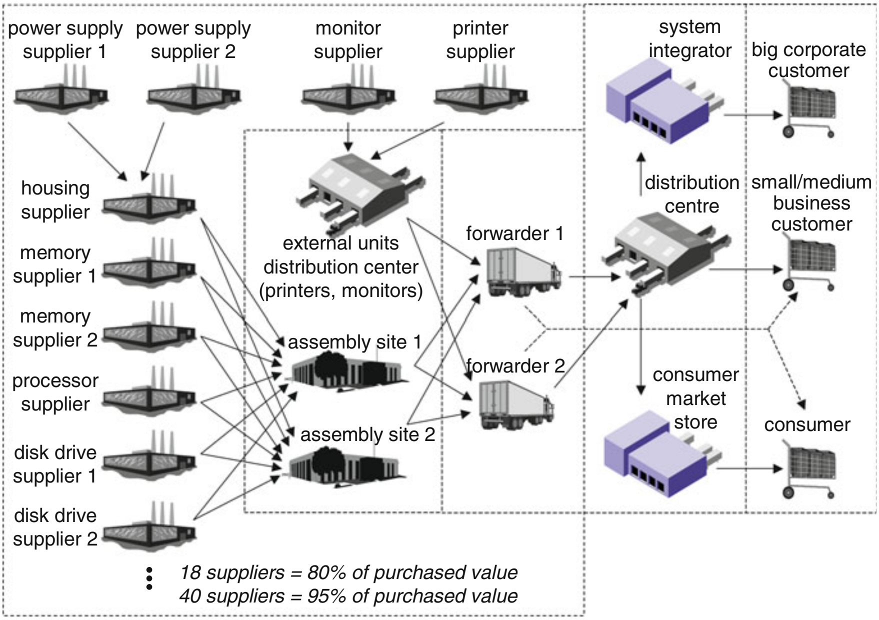


Fig. 23.1 Overview of the computer industry supply chain

The suppliers supply electronic and mechanical components for the system board and computer assembly, external units like printers and monitors, accessories like keyboard and mouse, software, manuals etc. In many cases there are multiple sources for one type of components like disk drives and memory (disk drives supplied by one supplier may be substituted by disk drives from an alternate supplier if these are qualified for the corresponding configuration). The computer industry is a material intensive industry. In general approximately 15–20 suppliers constitute 80 % of the procured value, 30–40 suppliers represent 95 % of the procured value. Some suppliers provide simple assembly services. In the supply chain shown in Fig. 23.1 the housing supplier receives power supplies from two alternate sources and assembles the power supplies into the housings before shipping the housings to the computer assembly site.

The computer manufacturing process itself consists of two main parts: the assembly of the system board and the assembly of the system unit. There are three options to organize this part of the supply chain:

1. System board assembly and system unit assembly are done in the same assembly site.
2. System board assembly and system unit assembly are done in separate assembly sites, but belong to the same legal entity.
3. System board assembly and system unit assembly are done in separate assembly sites and belong to different legal entities.

In this case study we assume option 1, as depicted in Fig. 23.1. Typically, the computer manufacturer runs a separate distribution center for external units like printers and monitors that are procured from external suppliers.

The transport between assembly sites and the deployment partners is executed by logistic service providers. There are three kinds of deployment partners: logistics service providers (forwarders) running a distribution center, system integrators and consumer market stores. In most cases products are shipped by a forwarder from the assembly site and from the distribution center for external units like printers and monitors directly to a distribution center, where the separate line items of a customer order are merged. From there, complete customer orders are shipped.

There are three cases for the shipment of customer orders, depending on the type of customer:

- Orders by small and medium business customers are shipped directly from the distribution center to the customer's site.
- Big corporate customers like banks and insurance companies typically place orders with a volume of up to several thousand PCs (e.g. in order to equip all offices in a specific region). These big orders are often executed by a system integrator, who takes over responsibility for the procurement and the installation of the computing devices (PCs, servers, monitors, printers, networks, modems etc.).
- For the consumer market, department stores and consumer market stores place big orders (in the range of 10,000–20,000 units) that are shipped to their distribution centers and are distributed from there to the individual outlets.

As indicated by the dashed arrows in Fig. 23.1 additional direct distribution paths from the computer manufacturer to the consumer market and to small and medium businesses will be established, supported by e-business strategies.

23.1.2 Product Structure

The product portfolio contains consumer PCs, professional PCs, servers and notebooks. Within these product families, two types of products can be distinguished. *Fixed configurations* have an individual material code that can be referred to in customer orders. Normally, fixed configurations are made to order. However, in order to offer very low lead-times to the market (for example 2 days) a make-to-stock policy can be applied. This requires a very good understanding of future demand of these market segments, i.e. a high forecast accuracy.

Open configurations can be freely configured by the customer (configure-to-order). An open configuration is identified by the *base unit*, specifying the housing and the system board. The customer can then choose from a selection of processors, disk drives, network, video and sound controllers and can define the size of the main memory. During the configuration process specific configuration rules have to be fulfilled. Examples of hard configuration constraints are "the number of controller cards may not exceed the number of extension slots of the system board" and "the selected processor type must be compliant with the system board". An example of a

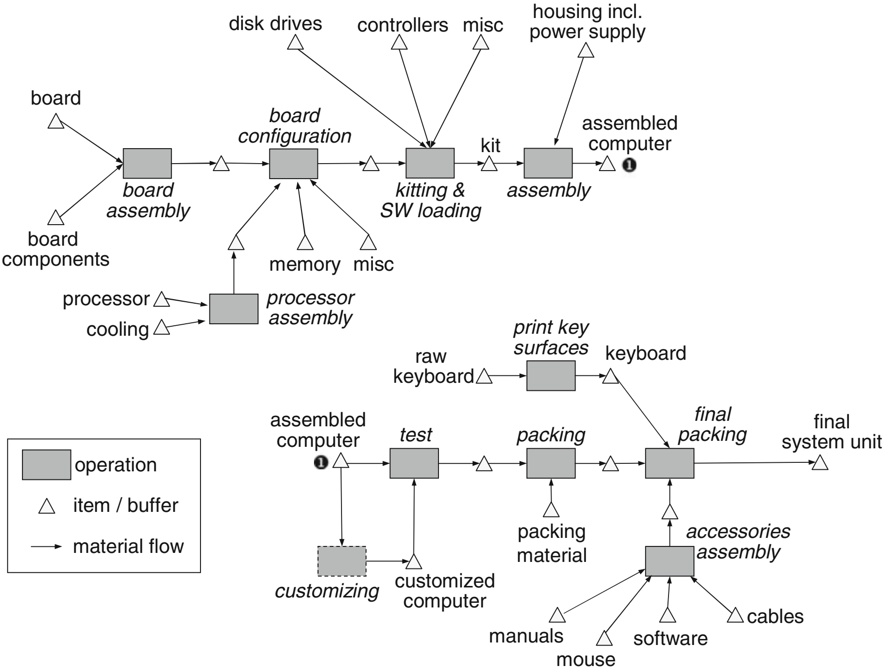


Fig. 23.2 Detailed computer assembly supply chain

soft constraint is "the number of selected CD-ROM drives should not exceed one". Only the base unit and the components have individual material codes. The complete configuration is either identified by the material code of the base unit (this requires a hard pegging of production orders to the customer order) or a new material code is generated as final step of the configuration process.

23.1.3 Computer Assembly Process

The computer assembly process is divided into two main parts (as shown in Fig. 23.2):

- The assembly operations
- The testing and packing operations.

The first step is the assembly of the system board. Boards are assembled in batches of 100–1,000 pieces. The board assembly lead-time for one batch is roughly half a day. There are approximately 20 different system boards for PCs and another 20 for servers. The system boards for notebooks are procured.

The second step is the configuration of the board. In this step, the processor assembly—consisting of the processor and the cooling—and the memory are put onto the board.

The third step is the kitting and the loading of the disk drive with the selected software. The kitting operation collects all selected components—disk drives, controller cards for network, video and sound etc.—into a box that is called the kit. The kit, the housing and the power supply—which are not part of the kit—are used in the fourth step, the actual assembly of the computer.

If the customer has special requests—e.g. specific controller cards that have to be assembled into the computer—a separate customization step follows the computer assembly operation. After that, the computer is tested and packed. In the final packing operation the keyboard and accessories as mouse, manuals, software, cables etc. are added.

The complete lead-time is 24–48 h. The most time consuming operations are the software loading and the test operations. There are two production types: small batches (usually below 200 PCs) are assembled in a job shop, large batches (above 200 PCs) are assembled in a flow shop. Please note that kitting takes place only for the job shop production type. In the flow shop, the material for the complete batch is provided along the production line.

Table 23.1 summarizes the classification of the computer industry according to the supply chain typology introduced in Chap. 3.

23.2 Scope and Objectives

The target of the APS implementation project described in this case study is to improve the business performance of the computer manufacturer. For this purpose the business performance is measured by three key performance indicators (see Chaps. 2 and 15):

- The forecast accuracy shall be improved from 50 to 80 %.
- The delivery on time shall be improved from < 80 to > 90 %.
- The inventory turns shall be improved from 9.3 to 20.

The following planning processes are in the scope of the project and shall be supported by the APS by i2 Technologies:

- *Demand planning*, consisting of unit planning and component planning
- *Operational planning* (mid-term supply planning), consisting of the Weekly SCM Workflow (forecast netting, master planning, allocation planning) and the SAP MRP run
- *Order planning* (short-term supply planning), consisting of the Daily SCM Workflow (forecast netting, master planning and allocation planning) and demand supply matching
- *Order promising*.

The following modules of i2 were implemented:

- Demand Planner (DP)[1] including PRO (Product Relationship Object, a module of demand management to support the component planning process) supporting the demand planning processes

---

[1] Now JDA Demand.

Table 23.1 Supply chain typology for the computer industry

Functional attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Number and type of products procured	Many, standard and specific
Sourcing type	Multiple sourcing
Supplier lead time and reliability	Long, unreliable
Materials' life cycle	Short
Organization of the production process	Flow shop and cellular
Repetition of operations	Larger/smaller batches
Bottlenecks in production	Low importance
Working time flexibility	High
Distribution structure	Two and three stages
Pattern of delivery	Dynamic
Deployment of transportation means	Individual links
Availability of future demand	Forecasts and orders
Shape of demand	Weakly, seasonal
Products life cycle	Several months
Number of product types	Few/many
Degree of customization	Standard/customized
Products' structure	Convergent
Portion of service operations	Tangible goods
Structural attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Network structure	Mixture
Degree of globalization	Several countries
Location of decoupling point(s)	Assemble-/configure-to-order
Major constraints	Material
Legal position	Inter- and intra-organizational
Balance of power	Suppliers and customers
Direction of coordination	Mixture
Type of information exchanged	Orders

- Factory Planner (FP) supporting the demand supply matching process
- Supply Chain Planner (SCP)[2] supporting the master planning process
- Demand Fulfillment (DF)[3] supporting the forecast netting, the allocation planning and the order promising processes
- RhythmLink (RL)
- Active Data Warehouse (ADW)
- Optimization Interface (ROI)
- Collaboration Planner (RCP).

---

[2] Now JDA Enterprise Supply Planner, module Supply Planning.

[3] Now JDA Order Promiser.

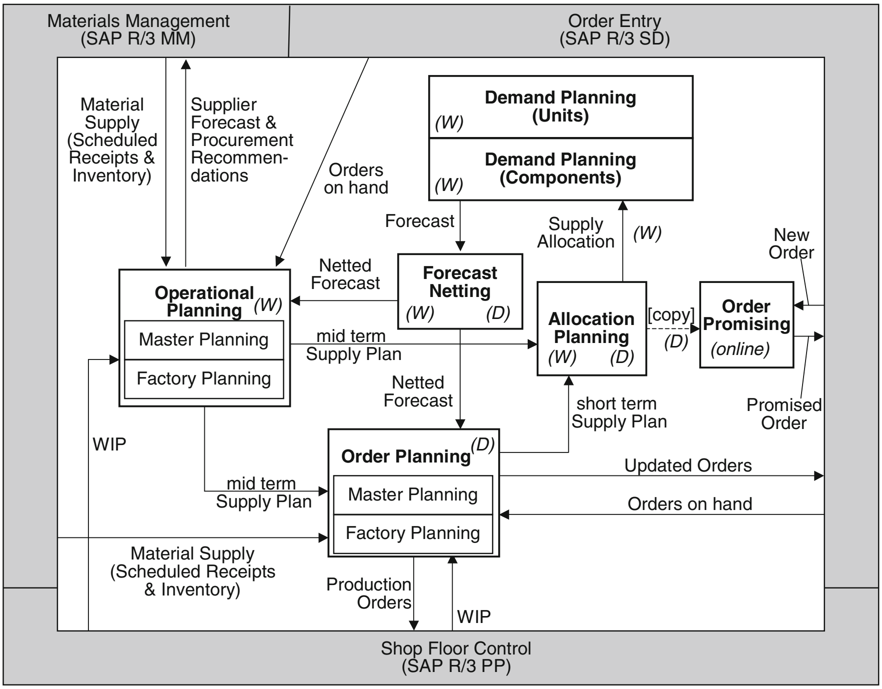


Fig. 23.3 Computer assembly planning processes

The i2 modules are integrated with the existing SAP R/3 system, i.e. MM Materials Management, SD Sales and Distribution and PP Production Planning. Figure 23.3 summarizes the supported processes and the data flows between them.

All implementations and process designs were set productive by July 2001. The project started in 1999, the total implementation time was scheduled for 18 months, including a 2 months phase in which the APS implementation project had been defined and the APS software was selected.

23.3 Planning Processes in Detail

23.3.1 Demand Planning

The demand planning process is running weekly. It determines the forecast on unit level (i.e. finished goods) and on component level. The implementation was structured into three steps. Step 1 covered unit planning for a subset of all products, i.e. planning of complete computer systems (units), Step 2 extended unit planning to all products and Step 3 supports component planning.

The goal of the implementation of i2 Demand Planner is a more accurate forecast: the forecast accuracy shall be improved from 65 to 75 %.

Table 23.2 Structure of the geographic and product hierarchies

Level	Geographic hierarchy	Product hierarchy[a]
1	All_Geo (1)	All_Prod (1)
2	Area (6)	Prod_Segment (4+10)
3	Region (> 40)	Prod_Group (10+20)
4		Prod_Family (20+50)
5		Model_Line (40+100)
6		Sub_Model_Line (80+200)
7		SKU (200+400)

[a] The number of instances on that level are given in parentheses. The product hierarchy includes the instances used for the unit planning process and those used for the component planning process, denoted as $(a+b)$, where a is the number of units on that level and b is the number of components

The following technical "enablers" of i2 Demand Planner help to improve forecast accuracy:

1. i2 DP provides a common database to maintain all input and output data of the demand planning process.
2. i2 DP supports a collaborative planning process, where all departments participating in the demand planning process find their own planning results and are supported in the integration of the various plans to one collaborative demand plan.
3. All needed data like shipments and orders are maintained within i2 DP and can be used within the planning process.[4]
4. All groups participating in the demand planning process can define their own views on the data.
5. Forecast accuracy is measured based on the i2 DP database, using a well defined uniform method that has been defined within the project.

Unit Planning

Table 23.2 shows the levels of the geographic and the product hierarchies used in the demand planning process. The numbers given in parentheses specify the number of instances on that level.

All_Geo is the root of the geographic hierarchy. The area level represents geographically defined areas in the world, e.g. Europe, Middle East and Africa (EMEA); America; Asia Pacific. The regional level represents sales regions within an area, e.g. Germany, France and the UK are regions within the EMEA area.

All_Prod is the *root* of the product hierarchy. The *product segment* level divides the product hierarchy into sub-hierarchies for PCs, servers, notebooks and the planned components (see next subsection). On the *product group* level each sub-hierarchy is split into multiple product groups, e.g. the PC sub-hierarchy is split into

---

[4] In fact, because of the integration of all actual data and the daily update of the actuals, i2 DP is also used as a management reporting tool.

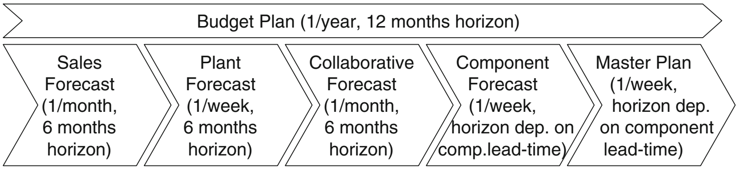


Fig. 23.4 Planning processes supported by i2 Demand Planner

consumer PCs and professional PCs, and the server sub-hierarchy into small servers and large servers. The next level is the *product family* that groups products which are in the same performance class (low-end consumer PCs vs. high-end consumer PCs). The *model line* groups PCs and servers by the type of the housing. The *sub model line* groups PCs and servers within one model line by the type of the system board. The *SKU* level is normally not planned for units (refer to the next section about component planning for explanation why the SKU level is in the product hierarchy).

The time dimension is structured into Year, Quarter, Month and Week. The weekly level is not used for the unit planning, but for the component planning. The time horizon starts 2 years before the start of the current fiscal year and covers 12 months into the future. Thus, it is possible to maintain 2 years of historic data in the i2 DP database. This provides a good basis to setup stochastic forecasting methods including seasonal patterns. However, 2 years of historic data are currently not available. The average product life cycle is about 5 months. Thus, a large manual effort is required to define the historic substitution rules that are used to map historic data of products that have reached their end of life to living products.

The following data rows have been defined and are maintained in the i2 DP database:

- *Actual data*: Three types of actual data are maintained: Shipments (quantities related to shipment date), orders (quantities related to customer requested date) and confirmed open orders (quantities related to confirmed date).
- *Budget plan*: The budget plan is updated yearly and is valid for the current fiscal year.
- *Sales forecast*: The sales forecast is created monthly and covers 6 months. The database contains four separate rows for the sales forecast, representing the current planning round and the last three planning rounds.
- *Plant forecast*: The plant forecast is created weekly by the planners in the production sites. The database contains four separate rows for the plant forecast, representing the current planning round and the last three planning rounds.
- *Collaborative forecast*: The collaborative forecast is determined monthly by a collaborative process in which sales, product management, procurement and the production sites participate.

There is a yearly, monthly and weekly planning cycle as shown in Fig. 23.4. Once per year, the budget plan is created, covering the next fiscal year (12 months horizon). Every month, the sales planners update the sales forecast. For that purpose,

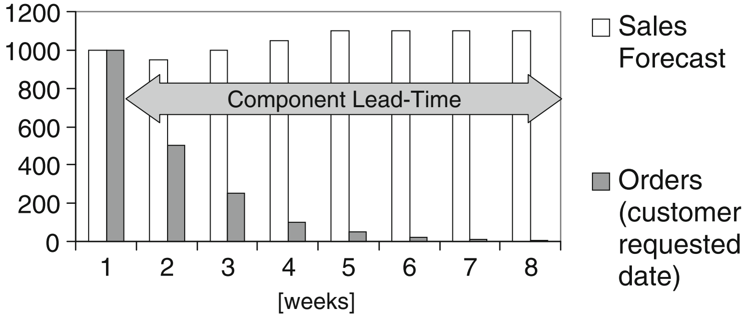


Fig. 23.5 Order lead-time vs. component lead-time

i2 DP has been installed in all regional sales offices (approximately 50). In the second step, the sales forecast is reviewed by the planners in the plants; the result of this step is the plant forecast. In a final step, a collaborative forecast is created based on the sales and the plant forecast. All three types of forecast cover 6 months. The collaborative forecast is adjusted every week by the planners in the plants, resulting in a weekly plant forecast. The weekly plant forecast is the basis for the weekly component planning, that is described in the next subsection.

Component Planning

The business environment of this computer manufacturer was selected to be build-to-order and configure-to-order for the main part of the business. As the consequence of this decoupling point decision the main purpose of the monthly and weekly forecasting processes is the creation of an accurate forecast on component level (Fig. 23.5). The focus of the component planning process is therefore to generate a supplier forecast for all dependent components derived from the unit forecasts. Out of the approximately 2,000 components, 600 components are considered during component planning (A-parts). The planned components belong to the material groups processors, memory, disk drives, controllers, housing and power supply.

An important aspect of component planning in the computer industry is the specification of particular components by large customers. For example, a large customer makes a contract (forecast) of 5,000 PCs which are configured to meet the IT-requirements of that customer and shall be delivered over 5 weeks (1,000 PCs a week). In this case, a component forecast can automatically be derived from the collaborative forecast by exploding the bill of materials of the particular configuration. The other standard case is that a PC is configured during order entry—in this case the sales forecast does not specify a particular configuration.

In order to meet these two requirements—fixed specification of components (build-to-order) vs. online configuration of components at order entry (configure-to-order)—the following procedure is applied to derive a component forecast from the collaborative forecast:

1. The collaborative forecast has to be split into (1) forecast related to fixed configurations and (2) forecast related to open configurations (that are still to be configured).
2. For forecasting fixed configurations, the bill of materials of the fixed configuration is being exploded.
3. For forecasting open configurations, the following steps are followed:
   (a) So-called mappings are defined that map some planned instances on finished goods level (e.g. a model line) onto planned components (e.g. disk drives, processors etc.). A mapping is established between a planned item A on finished goods level and all components C that can be configured into products of type A.
   (b) The distribution of the forecast on some planned item A on finished goods level over all components related to A by some mapping is defined by attach-rates (i.e. distribution factors). The actual planning process is to determine these attach-rate factors.
4. The total component forecast of a component is derived by adding the forecast from Step 2 and Step 3.

This component planning procedure is supported by i2 PRO (Product Relationship Object).

23.3.2 Operational Planning

Operational Planning consists of the Weekly SCM Workflow and a consecutive MRP run in SAP not described in detail here.

Weekly SCM Workflow

The Weekly SCM Workflow consists of forecast netting, master planning and allocation planning and serves two purposes:

1. It calculates the total supply and capacity needed to fulfill the demand within the planning horizon and forms the basis for negotiations with suppliers and purchasing decisions.
2. It constrains the demand based on the feasible supply and serves as a medium to communicate deviations of forecast and availability.

The demand planning process generates the forecasts for all products and components. This forecast is updated weekly and is netted against the actual orders received (forecast netting process, see Fig. 23.3). In the short-term the forecast for certain products or customers could already be realized in the form of actual orders. Therefore the remaining forecast has to be determined by a netting of actual orders against their forecast to keep a constant demand signal for the master planning process. The forecast is netted on the given level from the demand planning process, i.e. on end item level for fixed configurations and on component level for open configurations. The master planning process receives the netted forecast and actual orders and creates a fulfilment plan for the demand (actual orders and netted forecast). The fulfilment plan is then allocated to the customers according to the received customer orders and their netted forecast values.[5] This total number can now easily be compared to the original forecast.

The Weekly SCM Workflow is executed twice per week. In a first run the updated forecast plan from the demand planning process is taken and a fulfilment plan is generated publishing reports with defined problems in the supply chain. After the first run the exception handling starts and modifications are made to supply and demand data to solve the problems. During the Weekly SCM Workflow, the planners take the following actions:

- Decisions about sourcing options (sourcing from multiple suppliers, sourcing from multiple plants, use of alternate parts)
- Generation of supply requirements based on the netted forecast, including safety stock management decisions
- Generation of a constrained demand plan on forecasted item level based on the netted forecast and the actual customer orders on hand
- Generation of production requirements for make-to-stock forecast
- Decisions about forecast shifts from one product to another due to supply constraints.

The modifications have to be finished before the second run starts. The second run then finalizes the planning cycle with updated results from the exception handling. After a final review the plan is accepted and released.[6]

On the one hand side the master plan defines the minimum purchasing volume that is to be ordered during the next weeks based on the constraints, i.e. demand, material supply and capacity. The capacity model that is applied to master planning is quite simple, as it is based on the number of computers that can be assembled per day. On the other hand side, the weekly master plan is the basis for order promising. Thus, the master plan captures the maximum order volume that can be promised during the next weeks.

The master planning process is implemented based on i2 Supply Chain Planner. Forecast netting and allocation planning are supported by i2 Demand Fulfillment. Only planned components, planned configurations on end item level and finished goods for which orders exist are represented in the master planning process.[7]

23.3.3 Order Planning

The Order Planning consists of Daily SCM Workflow and the Demand Supply Matching Process.

---

[5] Refer to Chap. 9 for a detailed description of the allocation planning process.

[6] Refer to Chap. 8 for more information on the master planning process in general.

[7] Purchasing decisions for non-planned components (B- and C-parts) are taken in the SAP MRP run.

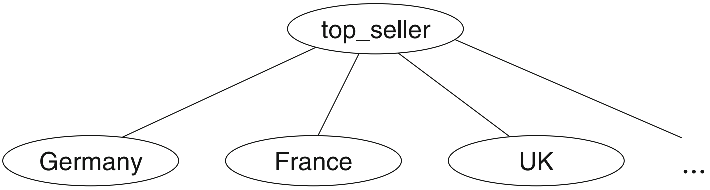


Fig. 23.6 Customer hierarchy used for allocation planning

Daily SCM Workflow

The purpose of the Daily SCM Workflow is to generate latest ATP (Available To Promise)[8] information for online order promising. It represents actual and future availability of supply and capacity that can be used to accept new customer orders. The promises should be given based on the availability of the planned components and guarantee high delivery on time. The daily planning run ensures an up to date ATP picture, reacts on changes in base data (e.g. BOMs) and handles exceptions that could not be foreseen in the Weekly SCM Workflow following pre-defined business rules. The process runs in batch mode without user interaction.

The Daily SCM Workflow—similar to the Weekly SCM Workflow—generates a fulfilment plan based on the released forecast figures from the weekly planning cycle. In the allocation planning process the fulfilment plan is allocated to the customer hierarchy (see also Chap. 9). The customer hierarchy is a sub-hierarchy of the geographic hierarchy used in the demand planning process. Currently, the customer hierarchy contains the root top_seller and one node for each sales region (Fig. 23.6). The allocation planning processes allocates the ATP to the nodes of the customer hierarchy, according to the following rules:

- The quantities planned in the master plan for pre-defined fixed configurations are allocated to the sales regions according to the sales forecast. The following table shows an example for one selected week (using the allocation rule *per committed*, refer to Chap. 9):

	Total	Germany	France	UK
Sales forecast	10,000	5,000	3,000	2,000
Master plan	8,000			
Allocations	8,000	4,000	2,400	1,600

- The quantities planned in the master plan for open configurations are allocated on component level at the root of the customer hierarchy (top_seller).

The allocations are called *allocated ATP (AATP)*. The ATP and the allocations are provided to the order promising process and are given as feedback to the demand

---

[8] Refer to Chap. 9 for more information on ATP in general.

planning process (Fig. 23.3). Thus, the demand planners have the overview over the ATP quantities that are allocated to them compared to what they have forecasted. This information can be used to direct demand according to the ATP situation, e.g. by suggesting alternate products to the customers driven by availability.

Demand Supply Matching

In addition to the Daily SCM Workflow there is a more detailed planning process on factory level that runs daily (see Fig. 23.3). This process is called the *Demand Supply Matching Process (DSM)*. The DSM process plans the production and material assignment of all customer orders and the net forecast for build-to-stock products based on the complete bill of materials as being maintained by SAP. Thus, DSM checks the demand and supply situation for all parts—whereas Master Planning only checks parts that are planned by the demand planning process as described above (A-parts).

The DSM process is executed twice per day by a group of planners, representing purchasing, order management and production. These planners review the current demand and supply situation, check options to resolve late order problems, try to improve the supply situation by moving-in scheduled receipts in coordination with the suppliers, and simulate the impact of moving-in of orders. Execution is not triggered directly by the DSM process. To close the loop to execution which is triggered by SAP a part of the late orders is transferred to SAP with a new due date. The new due date generates a new manufacturing order to a later date in SAP. The demand supply matching process is implemented based on i2 Factory Planner.

23.3.4 Order Promising

The orders enter the system through the order entry process and are promised by the order promising process. To promise a new customer order the order starts searching for allocated ATP in the dimensions time, seller and product (refer to Chap. 9). Several consumption rules define how a new order can find ATP. The promising policies assigned to the orders define if the order is promised e.g. as a whole or in several partial deliveries. Again, one must distinguish between fixed configurations and open configurations:

- Let us assume an order is received from a customer in France for x units of fixed configuration f with a request date for week w. The order promising process checks the quantity for the fixed configuration f that is allocated to France in week w; let us call this a. If the ordered quantity x is less than the allocated quantity a the order receives a due date in week w. If this is not the case, i.e. $x > a$, then additional ATP is searched in the preceding weeks—even if ATP is available in week w at other nodes of the customer hierarchy, e.g. Germany and the UK. This consumption rule ensures that quantities that have been planned by some region are reserved for orders coming from customers of that region.
- Orders for open configurations are quoted based on the ATP for components. The order promising process searches the best ATP for each of the components

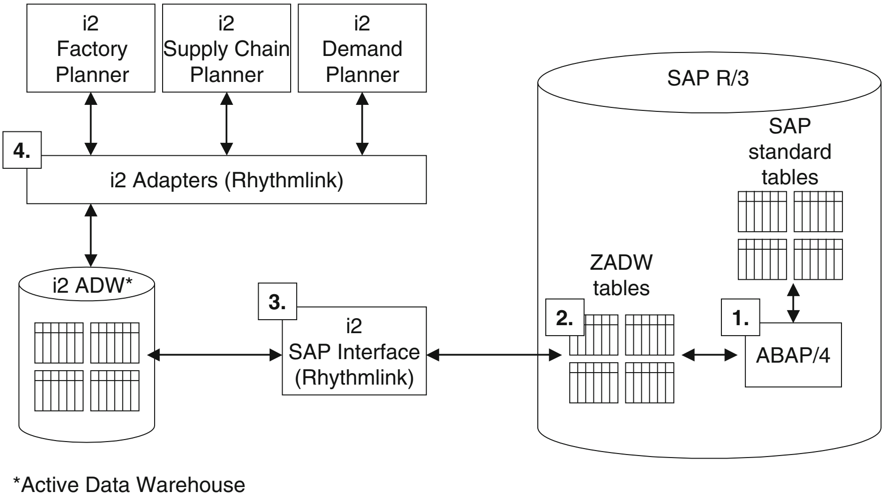


Fig. 23.7 Integration of the i2 planning modules with SAP R/3

required for the order. The latest ATP plus the configuration's lead-time is assigned as due date to the complete order.

23.3.5 Integration of i2 with SAP R/3

The i2 planning engines—Supply Chain Planner, Demand Fulfillment, Factory Planner and Demand Planner—closely interact with the SAP R/3 system, particularly with the SAP modules MM Materials Management, PP Production Planning and SD Sales and Distribution. In this case the SAP R/3 release 4.6c was installed.

Figure 23.3 shows the interfaces between the SAP system and the i2 modules. There are two classes of interfaces. The first class contains all interfaces except the order entry interface. These interfaces exchange static and dynamic data in a batch mode. The second class consists of the order entry interface. This interface transfers a new order from SAP SD to i2 Demand Fulfillment and gives the order quote back to SAP SD. The order entry interface is an online interface.

Batch Interfaces

Figure 23.7 shows the architecture used for the interfaces operating in batch mode. In the following we describe the data flow from SAP to i2. The data flow back is implemented in the same way. We use the interface between SAP and the supply planning processes as example to illustrate the ideas.

1. The supply planning processes represents only planned materials, i.e. those materials that are also used in the demand planning process. Furthermore, all orders and the forecast are imported, as well as WIP quantities, scheduled

receipts, inventory etc. The selection, filtering and aggregation of the SAP data according to the data requirements of the supply planning processes are executed by a collection of ABAP/4 functions. These functions have been developed specifically for the project.

Please note that the filter and aggregation functions applied represent the actual business logic on which the design of the supply planning processes is based. Thus, using a pre-defined standard interface between SAP and some APS Master Planning Module would constrain the design of the process and the interface—potentially preventing that a best-in class master planning process is achieved.

2. The ABAP/4 functions write the filtered and aggregated data for the supply planning processes in user-defined tables in the SAP database. These tables—called ZADW tables—have the same data scheme as the tables that exist in the i2 Active Data Warehouse (ADW).
3. The content of the ZADW tables is transferred into the tables of the ADW, using the i2 standard SAP interface. This interface is based on the middleware module i2 RhythmLink. RhythmLink has a specific module—the SAP-Listener—that is responsible for the technical data transfer between SAP and RhythmLink. Data streams are opened by RhythmLink copy maps that transfer the data from SAP directly into the corresponding ADW table.
4. After the complete data arrived in the ADW the standard i2 adapters are used to provide the data for the i2 planning engines e.g. the Supply Chain Planner engine that is running the master planning process. The i2 adapters are standard software components that are shipped with each i2 module. The adapters provide all required interfaces between the i2 module and the ADW (in both directions).

Order Entry Interface

The order entry interface is an online interface. When an order is received by the order entry system SAP SD, the order is transferred to i2 Demand Fulfillment to be quoted. The quoted order is then sent back to SAP SD.

Technically, the order entry interface is based on the Optimization Interface (ROI). This interface consists of a collection of predefined ABAP/4 functions that have to be plugged into the order entry transaction as an user exit. The Optimization Interface then transfers the order to i2 Demand Fulfillment via API string and receives the quote the same way. The quote information is written into the SAP order, and the transaction is closed. An order can be quoted in milliseconds (below 100 ms per order, more than 10 orders per second can be quoted). Given that currently 800 orders per hour have to be quoted in peak load situations, the i2 Demand Fulfillment architecture scales well with an increasing number of orders—supporting even aggressive business growth strategies. The online order promising solution is used in combination with i2's High Availability architecture that is based on the TIBCO message bus system (Tibco 2014). This architecture supports 24 × 7 (24 h a day, 7 days a week) order quoting even in case of server or network failures. This architecture consists of one primary and several secondary order promising

Table 23.3 Improvements of KPIs due to the APS implementation

KPI	1999	2002	Target
Forecast accuracy	50 %	70 %	80 %
Delivery on time	$<$ 80 %	$\approx$ 90 %	$>$ 90 %
Inventory turns	9,3	14,1	20
End-to-end order lead time	10–22 days	6–12 days	–

servers that replicate all transactions on the primary server. So in case of a crash of the primary server a secondary can take over seamlessly.

23.4 Results and Lessons Learned

The APS implementation resulted in major improvements of the planning and logistics processes and helped to improve major KPIs. Table 23.3 lists the improvement of logistical KPIs from 1999 to 2002 and the target value. The improvement of the customer service level and the delivery reliability resulted in additional revenue. Better forecast accuracy helped to reduce the inventory levels and by that reduced the direct material costs by approx. 0.3–2 %. Through better planning support the inbound logistics costs and the process costs in purchasing and planning departments could be decreased.

In addition to these business improvements the following "Lessons Learned" can be summarized from the project work:

- The batch interfaces between i2 and SAP R/3 were easier to implement and to manage than expected. For example the adaption of the interface programs from SAP R/3 3.0 f to 4.6 c was accomplished within 6 weeks without support by external consultants.
- The online integration between i2 Demand Fulfillment and SAP R/3 SD turned out to be rather difficult to implement and stabilize. Especially the consideration of the SD order types and the specific customizing of SD was a source of many issues.
- The learning curve of planners and other employees working with the APS took more time and effort than expected. The use of an exception-based APS and its planning algorithms compared to the use of a transactional system like SAP R/3 required additional training and management of change activities.
- However, after these management of change activities the APS implementation lead to a better integration and synchronization of the planning and execution processes.
- The benefits from the implementation could only be realized through a clear assignment of each major KPI to one responsible manager who leads the monitoring, reporting and improvement activities related to this KPI. Based on this a continuous improvement process was established that is driven by the KPI-managers (see also Kilger and Brockmann 2002).

References

Kilger, C. & Brockmann, K. (2002). Supply Chain Detectives in der High Tech Industrie. In W. Dangelmaier, A. Emmrich, & D. Kaschula (Eds.), *Modelle im E-Business* (pp. 139–154). Paderborn: Fraunhofer-Anwendungszentrum für Logistikorientierte Betriebswirtschaft und Heinz-Nixdorf-Institut.

Tibco (2014). www.tibco.com. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Oil Industry

24

Mario Roitsch and Herbert Meyr

The oil market is a worldwide market. Due to an increasing demand of the fast growing countries like China and India, the oil market has been changing to a strong emerging market. Due to these effects the prices of raw material and finished goods have extremely increased and are strongly volatile. Faced with very complex production techniques and high investment costs for enlarging production capacities a European company needs a very high level of flexibility as well as integration in planning and scheduling in its supply chain to survive in the world market.

This case study from an oil industry's downstream business is structured as following. Section 24.1 describes the oil industry supply chain itself and its classification according to the supply chain typology of Chap. 3. The next section draws a picture of an "ideal" planning system meeting all these challenges. Derived from there the company's realization of the advanced planning, optimization and scheduling systems will be described. Afterward Sect. 24.4 provides the implemented solution, its modules as well as their interaction. The Sect. 24.5 is focused on the description of the APS introduction projects "Supply & Demand Manager" and "Product Supply Scheduling". Finally, the overall benefits are presented and an outlook on future activities is given.

M. Roitsch (✉)
OMV Refining und Marketing GmbH, Business Analysis & Economics, Trabrennstraße 6–8, 1020 Wien, Austria
e-mail: mario.roitsch@omv.com

H. Meyr
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_24,

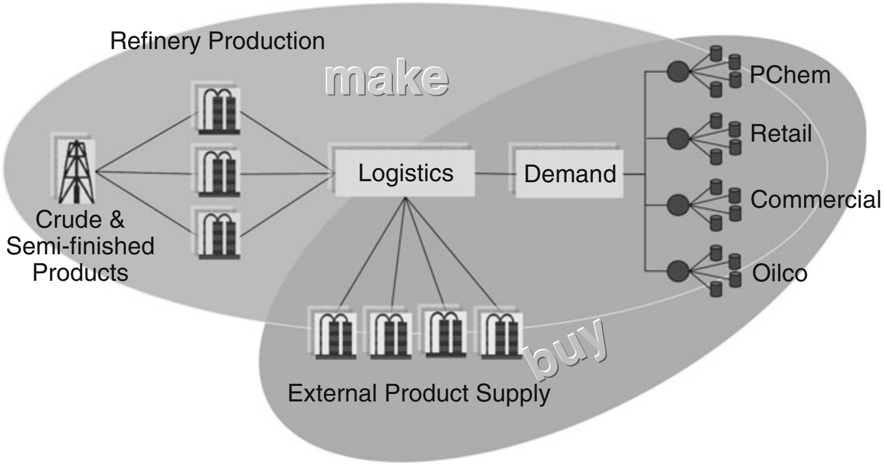


Fig. 24.1 Supply chain structure

24.1 Supply Chain Description and Typology

The described company acts in the oil industry's downstream business—Refining (production) and Marketing (sales)—in 11 countries of Middle and Eastern Europe and is facing a lot of big challenges in its supply chain (see Fig. 24.1).

At first, one of the essential specifics of this oil industry's supply chain is the long lead time for the supply of crude oil. The crude oil is purchased from all over the world and has to be transported via ship. Due to the fact that the refineries we look at in this case are not situated at sea, the crude oil has to be pumped to the refineries via pipeline. So the total procedure of crude oil procurement takes between 2 and 8 weeks. Further it exists a great variety of crude oil grades, which are differentiated in their composition, yields and characteristics. In addition, the prices for raw materials (crude and semi-finished products) are very volatile. The right selection of crude oil is directly connected to the second main supply chain characteristic, the co-production. Dependent on the sort of crude oil, the refineries produce different quota of products like gasoline, diesel, heating oil, kerosene, liquid gas, as well as bitumen or petrochemical products like ethylene and propylene. This technical production process of distillation, conversion and treatment is very restrictive and complex.

Furthermore, the existing refinery capacities are nearly fixed and their extension is only possible with long lead times and very high investment costs. Alternatively, the purchase of finished products from competitors is possible. The distribution of the finished products to the customer is divided into primary logistics—the transport from the refinery to the tank farms via tank car (railroad), ship or pipeline—and secondary logistics—the transport from a tank farm/refinery to the customer via truck (road transport).

Table 24.1 Typology for the oil industry's downstream supply chain

Functional attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Number and type of products procured	Few (200 crude oil sorts possible), standard (20 crude oil sorts used)
Sourcing type	Multiple (of crude)
Supplier lead time and reliability	Long, unreliable
Materials' life cycle	Long
Organization of the production process	Co-production (distillation, conversion, treatment)
Repetition of operations	Batch production
Bottlenecks in production	Known
Working time flexibility	Low, none (alternative production)
Distribution structure	2 and 3 stages, regionally org.
Pattern of delivery	Cyclic and dynamic
Deployment of transportation means	Standard routes and individual links
Availability of future demands	Forecasts and contracts
Demand curve	Seasonal
Products' life cycle	Years
Number of product types	Few
Degree of customization	Standard products
Bill of materials (BOM)	Split (divergent)
Structural attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Network structure	Mixture
Degree of globalization	Procurement: global sales: several (European) countries
Location of decoupling point(s)	Deliver-to-order
Major constraints	Co-production and lead times
Legal position	Intra- and inter-organizational
Balance of power	Customers, but oligopoly market
Direction of coordination	Central coordination
Type of information exchanged	Orders and contracts

The market demand and the customer behavior for these different (co-) products are very heterogeneous. Since the products are commodity products, a high price competition is the result. The present, here assumed, market model is an oligopoly, whereby in a market with a refinery the position usually is a market leadership, where a local price setting is possible. The prices for the purchase of crude oil as well as of finished products cannot be influenced because they are strongly driven by the market and their environment. The stock exchange for crude oil and finished products—Rotterdam for Europe—sets the price base, which is the reference price or subscription charge in a company's price calculation.

Table 24.1 summarizes the attributes of the oil industry's supply chain according to the typology of Chap. 3.

24.2 Requirements for Planning

On the base of these supply chain characteristics the main challenges for a planning, optimization and scheduling system are as following. Due to the long lead times for the refinery's crude oil supply, the decision of crude oil purchase, e.g., which kind of crude oil sort in which quantity, at what purchase price and at what time—which is the most important financial decision—is the major focus. Therefore high forecast accuracy for a future customer demand per single product is fundamental.

After this decision about the crude oil supply the degrees of freedom for changes are limited, e.g., the ordered crude oil transported by ship cannot be switched or sold easily, at most with financial losses.

Furthermore, a planning system should cover the production specifics, i.e., the processing of the crude oil sorts with their different yields and their possible production procedures (distillation, conversion, treatment), with an optimization and a simulation over the different single plants and their interaction in a refinery. In addition to technical possibilities and their dependencies, the plant capacities and the existing storage capacities for raw material and finished products have to be considered. With respect to the available transport and storage capacities an optimal transportation path through the distribution network to the point of sale has to be found. Additionally, the fact that alternative finished product supply is available has to be taken into consideration. A further aspect is the safety against price risks of the inventories. A price risk exists, if there is a difference between planned inventories of crude oil and inventories of finished products. These price risks have to be secured on the market and these hedging costs or working capital costs have to be taken in the planning system as an element of costs. Thus, the overall objective is maximizing revenues minus all variable supply chain costs within the minimum sales requirements and the maximum sales opportunities of the different markets.

24.3 Description of the (Ideal) Planning System

For all decisions mentioned in Sect. 24.2 an integrated planning system, which generates solutions in an optimal way on various questions concerning the whole supply chain at different points in time, is required.

Figure 24.2 describes the entire planning system architecture. In this section, every single planning module of the developed planning system will be described. The corresponding software modules are then added in Sect. 24.4.

Every planning cycle starts with the *Supply & Demand Planning* (S&DP). The base for these forecasting processes are estimations from the market analysis department. This department is delivering expectations on market demands per country, on demanded product qualities and especially on expected price levels (quotations) for crude oil and finished products. Based on this information, planned sales numbers for the individual sales markets will be collected from every sales channel, e.g., estimated sales quantities and sales prices per region for diesel.

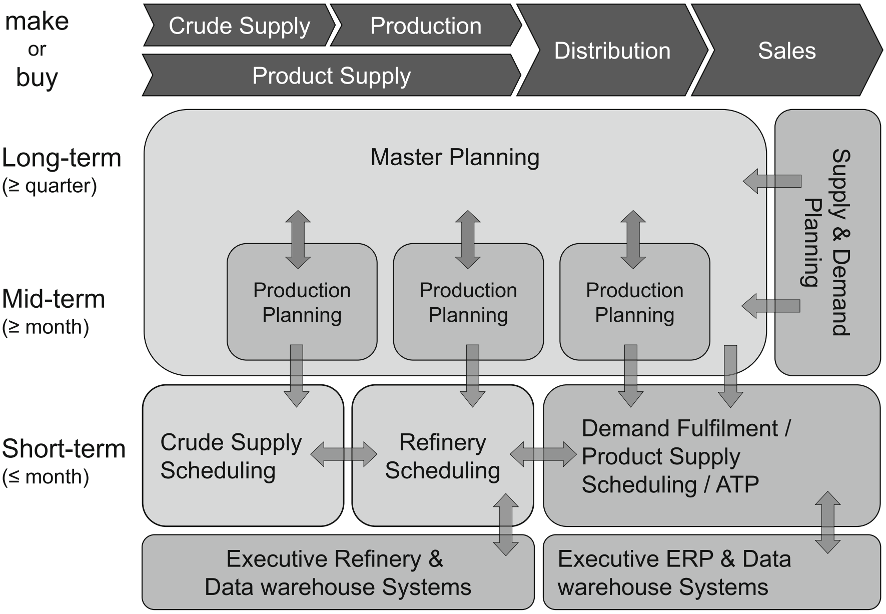


Fig. 24.2 Architecture of the planning system

Parallel to this the evaluation of quantities, available on external supply sources, and their corresponding prices (purchase costs) for different crude oil sorts, semi-finished products and finished products takes place, e.g., the available quantities and the purchase costs of the finished product diesel at an external refinery. To leave freedom for optimization the potential sales quantities as well as the available purchase quantities are planned as minimal and maximal bounds on sales/purchase. Additionally, availabilities of finished products on external sources (as input for a "make-or-buy" decision) and their purchasing costs have to be estimated.

All this market information, together with information on production (e.g., currently available inventories of crude oil and finished products; capacities and variable costs of the refineries' plants), as well as information on distribution (like possible transportation paths and their different costs, depot throughput costs and additional fees for customs) are input data to the integrated *Master Planning (MP)*. This Master Planning, also called the "global optimization model", strictly follows the objective of maximizing the total supply chain profit with respect to supply, production and storage capacities, the technical limitations of the alternative production processes as well as the potential distribution and sales channels to the customers.

The decisions on production in the own refineries (make) or purchase of finished products from external refineries (buy), as well as the decision on the supply sources, which the customer will be delivered from (either directly or via tank farms), are the essential components. In Master Planning decisions are made for the whole supply

Table 24.2 Planning cycles of the downstream supply chain

Cycle	Planning horizon	Bucket lengths	Re-planning frequency
(a)	36 months	Quarters/years	Once a year
(b1)	12 months	Quarters	Once a year
(b2)	6 months	Quarters	Once a year
(c1)	3 months	Months	Monthly
(c2)	12 weeks	Weeks	Weekly

chain network, i.e., three refineries, 80 supply sources (tank farms), and markets in 11 countries with 100 regions.

Thereby the optimization model has to fulfill two targets. Firstly to reach a stable optimization solution, i.e., in order to be usable for the following production scheduling, the MP of the whole supply chain has to be unaffected by small changes in the frame conditions, and secondly to handle the complexity of the supply chain model. Therefore an iterative information exchange between the global optimization model and further, more detailed, local *Production Planning* models (one model per refinery) takes place.

That way the results of the (rough, aggregate) global optimization model can be simulated and tested concerning their probable real-world effects by the more precise, local optimization models. If the local models reveal problems caused by the directives and inaccuracies of the global model, this knowledge is again put into the global optimization model (e.g., by modifying its input data or by adding additional constraints). This hierarchical, iterative process has to be run through until a feasible overall optimization result is generated.

The Master Planning model is the core of the oil company's planning system. It is used several times for different planning purposes. Table 24.2 gives an overview of the different planning levels and planning cycles applied. Before coming back to the short-term planning modules of Fig. 24.2, these different planning cycles need to be explained in more detail.

Fundamentally, the planning process as a standard process is based on an exactly fixed schedule for all planning cycles. Additional planning cycles can be triggered separately by the so-called "deviation management". The entire planning process starts with the strategic prospect into the future with the budget planning or the investment planning cycle (Table 24.2-a). This planning cycle drives decisions on very cost-intensive refinery investments or extensions as well as decisions on strategic contracts concerning raw material, semi-finished procurement or the purchase of finished products. Mostly in the middle of a year, long-term forecasts on market development of sales quantities per product, on demanded future product qualities, on crude oil prices and on product quotations are made. These forecasts for the next 3 years and the strategic company targets form the basis for the (in this case long-term) S&DP. The global Master Planning model delivers the results for six periods—quarterly for the following year and yearly units for the next 2 years.

At the end of the year, a recalculation of this budget planning takes place, i.e., the quarterly recalculation of the following year (Table 24.2-b1). Based on this recalculation strategic decisions for the next year are approved or adaptations are made, if necessary. This planning cycle is part of the "preview planning". It is the operative framework for the next year as well as the prerequisite for the decision on further agreements and contracts. This planning cycle will be repeated before the middle of the year for each of the last two quarters of the running year (Table 24.2-b2). This way the achievement of the budget targets can be assessed and necessary adaptations for the second half of the year become visible.

The highest level of detail for S&DP and MP is reached in the short-term monthly planning (Table 24.2-c1). Here, the next quarter of the year is optimized in a monthly revolving planning in order to synchronize the operational processes of the supply chain as a whole. Further on, there is also a weekly revolving Production Planning cycle (Table 24.2-c2), which takes decisions on the short-term crude oil supply for the next 12 weeks. For this, only a simplified global optimization model (without markets) is used.

After the results of the monthly Master Planning have been visualized, checked and agreed on, they are sent to the decentralized planning departments, responsible for the short-term Crude (oil) Supply Scheduling, Refinery Scheduling as well as Product Supply Scheduling (see Fig. 24.2).

In *Crude Supply Scheduling* (CSS) the optimized monthly quantities per crude oil sort to be purchased are split into daily quantities of the following month and the sequence of the influx to the refinery (the so-called "batch") is optimized. The output of CSS is the exact point of time when a crude oil sort has to enter the pipeline from the ship and how it has to be pumped to a respective refinery in the best possible way.

This process of crude oil pumping is also the first part of the *Refinery Scheduling* (RS). The results of the monthly MP (e.g., which crude oil sort in which quantity, the semi-finished product quantities, production quantities per product, transportation quantities between refineries and inventories at the end of a month) are used as directives for RS. These quantities are disaggregated, i.e., they are split in weeks and days. Within these temporal boundaries a short-term production and refinery optimization takes place. RS generates a detailed production plan with plant input, plant throughput and production routes. These data are put into the different refinery execution and monitoring systems and are then the basis for the daily operation of the refinery plants.

The results of the monthly MP are also communicated to and agreed with the sales channels and sales markets. In the *Demand Fulfillment and Product Supply Scheduling* (PSS) the allocation of quotas to the different levels of the sales hierarchy takes place. At this stage, the aggregated sales quantities of the MP (per product, supply source and sales channel of a regional market) are broken down to more detailed sales quotas (also called "allocated ATP"; see Sect. 9.4.4). They only differ from the original (non aggregated) forecasts of the S&DP if the capacities of the MP and Production Planning models have been too tight. There are two essential tasks of this planning module, first the hierarchical disaggregation of the sales channel quantities to the customer groups and customers (as part of the so-called "sales channel management"), and second their disaggregation from a monthly to a daily basis. Both planning modules PSS as well as S&DP will be referred to in Sect. 24.5.

After finishing the PSS planning (at the end of a month) the resulting plan for the coming month is handed over to the *Executive ERP Systems & Data Warehouse Systems* (like SAP R/3 and the delivery system TAS) in form of "purchase contracts". They are used for a daily availability check (on-line) per single order via the available to promise (ATP) function.

24.4 Modeling and Implementation of APS

For the implementation of the planning concept of Sect. 24.3 within a real-world planning system a variety of commercial software modules is needed (see Fig. 24.3). Their detailed description is the focus of this section.

To put the S&DP into practice the SAP module SAP APO DP (see Chap. 18) has been selected. Hereby it is unconventional for an APO DP usage that not only the demand but also sales prices are estimated and aggregated over three stages of the customer hierarchy. Additionally, availabilities, purchase prices and logistics cost rates of the crude oil supply have to be estimated.

Thereby an open (for the next 3 years) planning horizon in SAP APO DP was created for sales and supply. So, whenever needed, the MP has the chance to take the latest available data (for demand & supply) into its optimization models. Normally, the MP receives and freezes the data according to the planning process time schedule of Table 24.2 and stores them in the Business Warehouse (BW) of the SAP APO. The Business Explorer (BEx) serves as the interface to extract these frozen data from the BW and to convert them to the input format necessary for MP. Since the optimizer in the MP cannot (and should not—see Chaps. 4 and 8) decide on the allocation of every single customer, an aggregation over customers and customer groups per sales channel takes place. Hereby, for the demand side, the sales quantities are summed over all minimum and maximum bounds on sales, respectively, per region. Additionally, the weighted average sales price per region is calculated and used as input to the MP. On the supply side, however, the minimum and maximum purchase quantities available from external supply sources are directly (i.e., without any calculation) put into the MP model.

As optimizer for the MP the in this industry widespread non linear programming modules (solver) of AspenTech (see Chap. 18) have been chosen, because these software modules are able to model and simulate the technically complex production processes of a refinery at best. For the global MP decisions the software module XPIMS of AspenTech has been chosen, since there an optimization for the various markets, with the different refineries and their corresponding plants, as well as the representation of several discrete time periods is possible (global optimization model: multi-plant and multi-period). In addition, for the Production Planning of a refinery AspenTech's software module PPIMS is used. It permits the more detailed

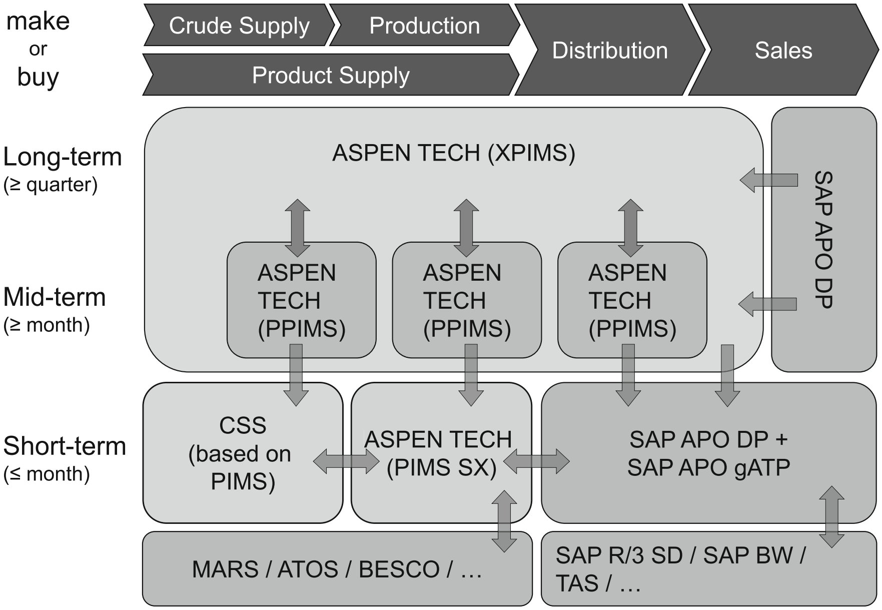


Fig. 24.3 APS modules and their integration

optimization and simulation of the production processes of a single refinery with its affiliated plants for several time periods (local optimization model: single-plant and multi-period). Due to the fact that these software modules are not running on a common database, data are iteratively exchanged between X- and PPIMS via spreadsheets. The MP solution, achieved in the iterative cycle between the global and the local LP models, will be handed over to the short-term software modules: the Crude Scheduling System (CSS) for raw material scheduling, AspenTech's PIMS-SX for scheduling the different refineries and a separate allocation planning sphere within SAP's APO DP and SAP's APO gATP for demand fulfillment and PSS.

The CSS is an in-company developed module, which bases on the non linear algorithm of PIMS and helps to model the time dimension more flexibly. Thus it is possible to optimize the daily batch sequence of crude oil sorts arriving at the refineries.

Likewise PIMS-SX optimizes the detailed refinery schedule within a month. Hereby, the daily sales patterns of finished products should be met for each refinery. These sales patterns are determined by PSS and are handed over via BW from the separate planning sphere of SAP APO. This is done at every month's end to give a preview of the following month, as well as weekly for unexpected, shorter-term production adjustments.

In the PSS adaptation of SAP APO DP, on the one hand monthly quotas are created on the lowest level of the customer hierarchy ("Allocation Planning'') and, on the other hand, information about the daily consumption of these quotas is provided. The latter is helpful for the "Quota Management", which checks the quota availability for incoming customer orders on-line (gATP) or—if the customer order is already fulfilled—triggers the request for quota changes (see Sect. 24.5). From a technical point of view, at first the monthly sales channel allocations of XPIMS and PPIMS as well as S&DP time-series information about customer demand, which is held in the forecasting sphere of SAP APO DP, are consolidated via SAP APO BW and written in a separate demand fulfillment sphere of SAP APO. In this sphere the sales departments are allowed to refine their aggregate quotas down to the lowest level of the hierarchy—the customer. After this allocation planning the sales quotas are available for every product, supply source, sales channel, region, profit center and customer. Via transaction the customer quota will be available for the SD module of SAP R/3 (on-line interface), which acts as the execution system. An operational test of availability (test whether there is enough quota to fulfill a certain customer request) takes place between the SAP modules R/3 SD and APO gATP as well as between the distribution systems TAS and TASC.

24.5 Modules in Detail

The implementation of the S&DP, PSS planning and ATP logic in SAP APO took place in two large APS projects, which will in the following be presented in detail. Thereby, the time period of carry out extended over 4 years.

24.5.1 Introduction of the Supply & Demand Manager

The first project, the "Introduction of the Supply & Demand Manager (S&DM)", was motivated by the following objectives:

- Introduction of a standardized and integrated planning system in all countries for the S&DP, including the features:
  - Automated collection of all relevant MP data, uniform for all countries and sales channels
  - Creation of a harmonized data base for all planning data
- Simultaneous forecasting of quantities and prices/costs (concerning customer demand, external purchasing and crude oil supply)
- Enabling process transparency & -monitoring (alerting)
- Increase of forecast accuracy by introduction of an APS-based Demand Planning module
- Higher transparency of the MP results by implementing a web-based front end reporting.

Thus an APS module was looked for, simultaneously supporting both the existing MP solution and the above mentioned aims. After an extensive blueprinting and a following proof of concept SAP APO was chosen as the software module for putting the S&DP processes into practice.

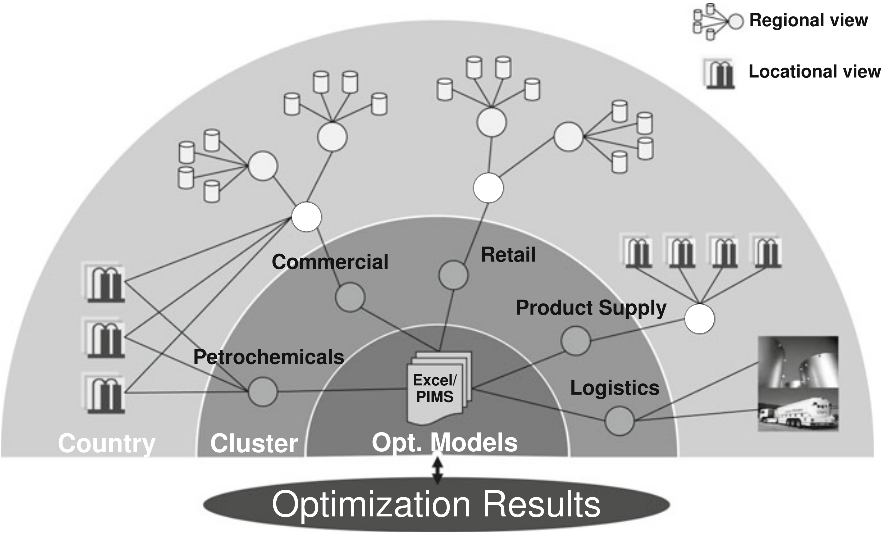


Fig. 24.4 Supply & Demand Planning structure in detail

For this newly defined planning process different challenges had to be coped with. One of the essential changes facing the existing process was the introduction of a common planning preview being long enough to cover every planning cycle of Table 24.2. It had to offer a single view into the future and to guide the persons responsible for S&DP to put their forecasts into the same planning file. Formerly the strategic planning, like budget or investment planning, was fully separated (likewise in the ideas of those responsible for planning) from the preview or monthly planning. Thus forecasts were only available on Excel spreadsheets with different levels of detail.

In order to sufficiently represent the existing business model, six forecast dimensions as well as nine related attributes had to be introduced and stored. In the following examples (see Fig. 24.4) we will concentrate on the three dimensions

- *Sales channel*, comprising product (groups) like gasoline, diesel, heating and aviation fuel, which are assigned to business units like "Retail" (responsible for filling stations) or "Commercial" (responsible for heating, aviation, etc.)
- *Geography*, comprising customer (groups), regions, countries and clusters (e.g., a set of countries)
- *Time* (e.g., days, months).

The planning process of the S&DM usually starts with forecasting the future (basic) prices of crude oil (Brent), the finished products' quotations or reference quotations for local markets as well as the exchange rates for the relevant countries. For markets, which are not directly following the global prices, a local finished product price scenario and local purchase prices (prices which the company could buy for from external refineries) have to be estimated. All this information is put

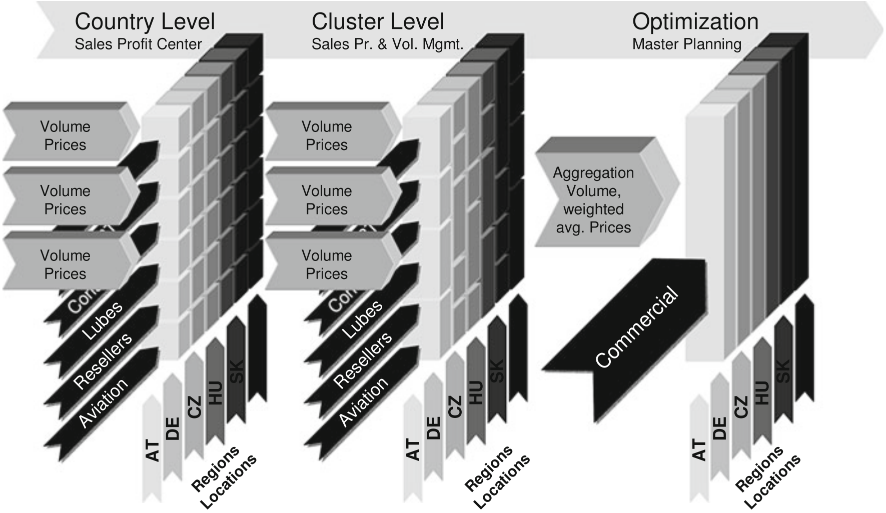


Fig. 24.5 Hierarchical aggregation in Supply & Demand Planning, e.g., Commercial's business unit

into a spreadsheet first, there worked up and then uploaded into the SAP APO. Based on these basic price estimations further individual forecasts have to be made, e.g., on minimum and maximum sales quantities per product and region, as well as on regional sales prices (either as a differential on the reference quotation or as absolute sales prices).

The forecasting takes place hierarchically over a maximum of three hierarchy levels (customer, country and cluster level). These different levels represent different levels of accountability in the organization, which are responsible for consolidation and approval of these data per sales channel. For example, a key account manager of the business unit Commercial (heating, aviation fuel etc.) is responsible for all customers (heating retailers, airlines and airports etc.) in her/his regional area (level 1), a country manager for all the key account managers in her/his country (level 2) and a cluster manager again for all countries in her/his cluster (level 3).

Forecasts are made on the lowest, e.g., most detailed, level but are visible on or can be copied to the next higher level, too. For planning purposes (e.g., as input for the Master Planning or to increase the forecast accuracy), however, they need to be aggregated. Therefore, a summed volume and weighted average price per level of aggregation and intersection of forecasting dimensions/combination of attributes can be computed (see Fig. 24.5). Only by handing over data to the non linear optimization models (freezing of data) detailed information will get lost for the moment. For a later disaggregation of the MP results, however, this information (or even an updated version) will still be available.

The entire forecasting and aggregation process from the upload of quotation and exchange rates up to the handing over to the MP—and the following announcement of the MP results—is supported via alerting and mailing. Thus, permanent visibility of the planning progress is ensured.

In order to provide the MP with the latest prices, it is sufficient to update the quotations just before handing over the data to the MP. In this case, all (detailed and aggregate) forecasts which base on a price differential are floating with this new quotation and a new and up-to-date total sales price will again be calculated.

The next step in the planning process is to freeze all information (safety lock of all data in the BW) and to simultaneously create all input tables (demand tables, supply tables, local tables) for MP. After the already described iterations between the global optimization model and the local optimization models the confirmed results are uploaded via transaction and stored in the SAP APO BW. Additionally, an alert is created to inform all users on the availability of these MP results. The results are published in two different ways, a planning file and a web-based front end reporting tool. The web reporting is able to customize the planning results to every user's needs and to present them graphically as well as in tables.

24.5.2 Implementation of the Product Supply Scheduling

The second project, the "Implementation of the Product Supply Scheduling", had the following objectives:

- Introduction of a standardized and integrated Allocation Planning and Quota Management system in all countries to close the gap between MP and the operational fulfillment of the customer demand, including the features
  - Hierarchical disaggregation of the MP results as part of the Allocation Planning
  - Possibility to provide sales & supply patterns for all quotas
  - On-line interface for monthly quota check between SAP APO and SAP R/3 SD
- Calculation and estimation on the progress of quota consumption during the month for all responsibility levels (refinery production, depot supply & management, sales, purchase) and aggregation levels
- On-line volume (quota) availability check by creating a customer sales order
- Handling of quota changes via cockpit
- Monitoring, alerting and web-based presentation of unexpected deviations in quota consumption
- Setting up a performance management to measure the planning quality, the scheduling efficiency (sales pattern accuracy) and Quota Management efficiency for all responsibility levels.

This project builds on the results of the preceding S&DP and MP and continues the monthly, integrated forecasting and optimization process for the customer-oriented demand fulfillment part of the supply chain. As already mentioned, the PSS process is divided into two process steps, the Allocation Planning and the Quota Management.

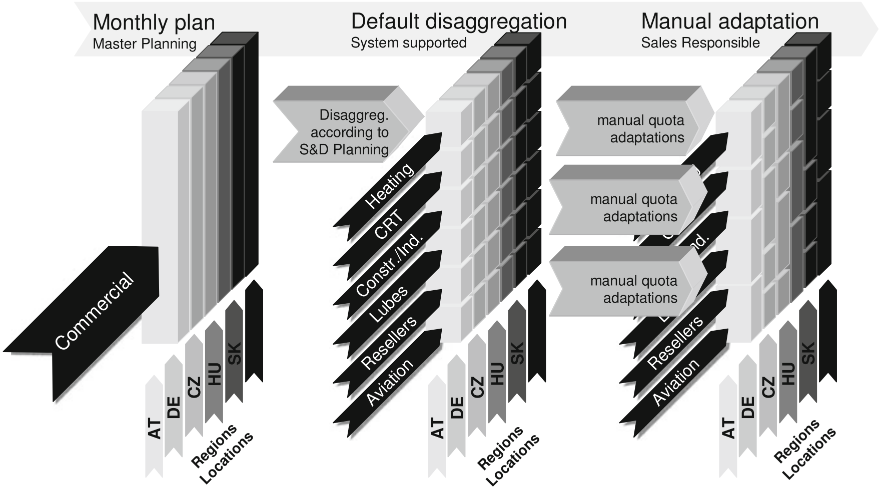


Fig. 24.6 Hierarchical disaggregation in Product Supply Scheduling, e.g., Commercial's business unit

The MP optimization results, which are stored in the SAP APO BW, are the starting point for the *Allocation Planning* (AP). They are uploaded into a separate planning sphere for both AP and the later Quota Management. Since the MP results are only available in an aggregate form, e.g., over all customers of a business unit, it is up to AP to disaggregate them again according to the different dimensions of the forecasting hierarchy (see Fig. 24.6). This is a crucial task if the scarce capacities of MP led to (aggregate) shortages of the original (detailed) forecasts (see Sect. 9.4.4). AP supports this allocation by providing rules for the automatic disaggregation along intersections of the sales channel/geography dimensions and along the time dimension.

To create this separate sphere the structure of the optimization result has to be extended for the missing attribute combinations, e.g., from business units/clusters to products/customers. Next the allocation of the available quantity per product/customer along the sales channel/geography dimensions takes place as following: at first the minimally demanded quantity (i.e., the detailed minimum sales quantity estimated in S&DP, the so-called "contract quantity") will be replenished on the lowest level of the hierarchy. Thereafter the residuary quantity, which is the quantity the optimization model has determined between the aggregate minimum and maximum boundaries of MP, will be allocated to the customer with the highest sales price. The quantity on that customer is replenished until its maximum is reached (i.e., the detailed maximum sales quantity forecast in S&DP). After that the customer with the second highest price gets the quantity up to its maximum and this sequence goes further until all MP quantities are allocated. In the case of abridgment below the minimum, the rule will be applied in an analog way: customers with the highest prices receive their quantities at first. In the following process step this system supported allocation of the total MP quantities will be handed over to the people responsible for sales as a proposal. Then the proposed monthly allocation will be approved or, if necessary, adapted manually in the planning file at first over business units and afterward in a business unit for their products and customers.

Additionally, along the time dimension a disaggregation of the monthly MP quantities into daily sales quantities is necessary. The default rule is to spread the monthly quantity equally on all working days of that month, which leads to a "regular" sales pattern for every working day. Supportively the user can chose between three interactive rules in addition to a manual adaptation, the allocation according to the pattern of the last month, the allocation according to the month of the previous year and the allocation according to the average distribution of the last 12 months. The necessary information about the time series is also uploaded from the S&DP section of SAP APO.

The planned sales pattern are finally summed over all sales channels in order to check whether the depots are able to supply these quantities on time, i.e., whether the daily production of the refineries and the inventories in the tank farms are sufficient to fulfill these daily delivery demands. If logistics approves the sales pattern, the monthly quotas will be released. Therewith the quotas, including their corresponding transfer price formula, are directly available for the on-line ATP-check.

After the release of the AP quotas, the second process step of the Product Supply Scheduling—the *Quota Management*—starts. The usual ATP-check for incoming customer orders (see Chaps. 4 and 9) takes place via an on-line connection from the SAP R/3 SD system to the SAP APO gATP system. The monitoring of the quotas happens in the SAP APO itself as well as in the related web-based front end reporting. There the daily actual quota consumption will be compared with the planned consumption. If deviations outside the predefined limits (adjustable on every intersection of dimensions) occur, an alert will be triggered and a "traffic light" in the front end reporting will be switched to the yellow or red light. There are two potential reactions to a deviation. First the adjustment of the sales pattern for the remaining time period (e.g., if the sales pattern forecast/daily allocation was bad; then the monthly quota stays unchanged) and second an adaptation of the monthly quota via the quota cockpit (e.g., if the monthly sales forecast was bad or if a refinery cannot deliver as promised). During such a quota change the necessity for a supply chain update will be checked (e.g., the quota cockpit shows the user all possibly affected volume streams, like storage replenishment, and asks for confirmation or update).

24.6 Results and Lessons Learned

For all projects a detailed business case with a net present value calculation on the entire supply chain was employed in advance. The resulting, here represented, benefits evidently indicate a two-digit million Euro amount. For the monitoring of these benefits a continuous recalculation took place and has confirmed the assumed benefits. Simultaneously, a performance management system was established along the new APS-supported processes.

Summarizing, all these benefits lead to a stable and durable enhancement of the margin contribution along the complete downstream supply chain and a competitive advantage of the company in the relevant market. At the same time especially the high grade of flexibility and integration of the available planning, optimization, scheduling and management systems contributes to a higher forecast accuracy and efficient deviation management with:

- Smaller raw material costs through an enhanced crude oil selection to fulfill the market demand
- Reduction of production costs through a decrease of variable production costs
- Reduction on working capital costs in inventories of crude oil and finished products
- Enforced utilization of margin upgrade potentials through increased transparency
- Persistent realization of the MP (optimization) results through quota formation and quota management, as well as its coordination over different responsibility levels
- Transparency and as a result acceptance of decisions.

Future main emphases will be identified and pursued further in the field of demand forecasting, short-term optimization, scheduling and management of the supply chain under the criteria of revenue management.

SCM in a Pharmaceutical Company

25

Tanguy Caillet

Competitive advantage in the pharmaceutical industry is driven by first class research and development and by optimised supply chain operations. Harmonised SCM processes, systems and organisations will lead to reduced inventories, increased capacity utilization, reduced order lead time, less obsolescences and lower IT system maintenance costs. Critical decisions can be made faster resulting in an improved customer service level. Based on common, standardised data, error rates are reduced and most importantly, full FDA CFR 21 part 11 and GMP compliance can be guaranteed and sustained.

The case study described in this chapter is based on a project in a European pharmaceutical company, that initiated to implement best practice supply chain operations for five European manufacturing plants and the European logistics organization (active ingredients supply, distribution centers, affiliate customers and third party manufacturers). The project scope includes SCM planning processes, supporting the production planning and detailed scheduling within the pharmaceutical plants as well as the network planning across the company's supply chain to optimally match supply and demand. The planning processes are implemented based on SAP R/3 4.6C and APO 3.1. The case study focuses on the implementation of the APS components SAP APO PP/DS to model the production planning and detailed scheduling in the manufacturing plants, and SAP APO SNP to model the supply network planning of the supply chain. The main results and benefits of the project will be highlighted as well as the major hurdles encountered in the implementation of the SAP APO PP/DS and SNP solution.

T. Caillet (✉)
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8,
66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: tanguy.caillet@de.ey.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__25,

25.1 Case Description

25.1.1 Topology of the Pharmaceuticals Supply Chain

The supply chain consists basically of three main levels: chemical plants, pharmaceutical plants and marketing affiliates.

The *chemical plants* deliver the active ingredient (AI). The production of the AI within the chemical plants has not been tackled within the project as the manufacturing process differs significantly from the one of the pharmaceutical plants. The chemical plants, either part of the same company or third party suppliers, are treated as suppliers. Material requirements are planned by the Supply Network Planning module for the entire planning horizon (24 months).

The five *pharmaceutical plants*, spread over Europe, manufacture a wide range of product types. Solids (coated and uncoated tablets, capsules), liquids and creams, biotech medicaments, medical devices, consumer and OTC ("over the counter") products, sterile products and patches. All manufacturing processes consist of two main steps, formulation and packaging. The output of the formulation step is bulk material (unpacked tablets, liquids, etc.). The bulk material is packed in the packaging step into different put-ups (e.g. blister sizes, country specific packaging). As an order of magnitude, 50 active ingredients are formulated into 500 bulk materials, those are packed into 10,000 finished products.[1]

The *marketing affiliates* represent the biggest customer group in terms of volume. Other customer types, e.g. tender business, small countries, wholesalers, government agencies, non-governmental agencies complete the demand picture. All customers forecast their future demand. Depending on the customer type, these forecast figures are converted into sales orders according to Service Level Agreements (SLA) within a certain horizon (on average 9–12 weeks). Demand assigned to one plant can also result from a dependent requirement of another plant. For example a bulk material is produced in one plant, but packed by a second plant.

The supply and demand flows are handled by a *sourcing company*. The sourcing company, headquartered in a tax-optimised country, owns the valuable products. The ownership of finished products is transferred immediately upon the quality release to the sourcing company. The active ingredient, as the most valuable part of the product, is always owned by the sourcing company. Thus, the plant acts as a contractor for the sourcing company, transforming the active ingredient into finished products, only invoicing the manufacturing fee.

Distribution centers and warehouses are mainly located close to the plants. In most cases, products are directly shipped from the DCs and warehouses to the customers. In other distribution scenarios finished goods are shipped from one manufacturing plant to another plant due to regulatory reasons and are then delivered to the customer. The distribution itself is not considered as critical, as the value of the finished goods is rather high compared to physical volume and transportation

---

[1] In the remainder of this chapter the shortform "plant" is used to denote pharmaceutical plants.

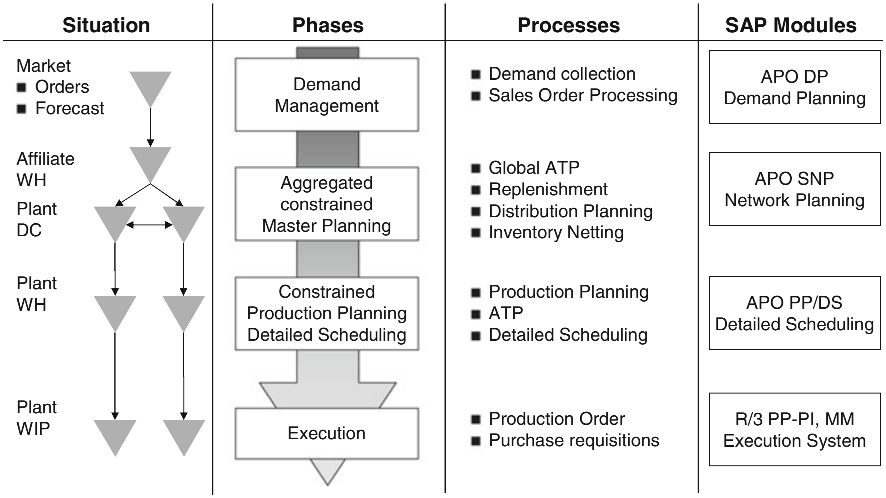


Fig. 25.1 Supply chain, systems and processes

costs. From a master planning perspective the distribution and transportation lead times have to be considered.

Figure 25.1 gives a high level overview of the pharmaceutical supply chain, including processes and IT systems. Table 25.1 summarises the supply chain typology of the pharmaceuticals supply chain.

25.1.2 The As-Is Situation

At the start of the project, a very heterogeneous environment, grown over the last decades, was in place. The following list highlights some key aspects of the company's as-is situation:

- Four SAP R/3 systems (two running R/3 PP, two running R/3 PP-PI), one BPCS system,[2] one R/2 system were used. Data integration between the systems was low, data structures not harmonised. The same product existed with several material numbers in different systems. Information sharing as well as synergies out of a common system were not achievable.
- No central supply chain network planning system was available, resulting in basically no central visibility of the supply chain constraints and problems.
- Production Planning and Detailed Scheduling of the manufacturing processes were performed in various stand-alone systems and spreadsheets, interfaced with

---

[2] Business Planning and Control System, an ERP-system sold by Systems Software Associates (SSA).

Table 25.1 Typology for the pharmaceuticals supply chain

Functional attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Number and type of products procured	Few (Active Ingredients, AI) specific (Packaging Materials)
Sourcing type	Single (Active Ingredients) multiple (Packaging Materials)
Supplier lead time and reliability	Long, based on forecast (AI) short, reliable (Packaging Materials)
Materials' life cycle	Long
Organization of the production process	Two steps (formulation & packaging)
Repetition of operations	Batch production
Changeover characteristics	Sequence dep. setup times & costs
Bottlenecks in production	Known, almost stationary
Working time flexibility	Frequently used, additional shifts
Distribution structure	Two stages
Pattern of delivery	Cyclic with specific country demand Dynamic with standard export demand
Deployment of transportation means	Unlimited compared to Cost of products & stock-outs
Availability of future demands	Forecasted
Demand curve	Seasonal for medications linked to winter illnesses for example static for others
Products' life cycle	Several years
Number of product types	Several (solids, creams, liquids, steriles, patches, biotechs, medical devices)
Degree of customization	Standard products (country specific)
Bill of materials	Divergent in formulation step divergent in packaging step
Portion of service operations	Tangible goods
Structural attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Network structure	Divergent
Degree of globalization	Europe
Location of decoupling point(s)	Assemble-to-order (country specific) deliver-to-order (standard export)
Major constraints	Capacity of formulation lines manpower in packaging lines
Legal position	Intra-organizational
Balance of power	Customers
Direction of coordination	Mixture
Type of information exchanged	Forecasts and orders

local ERP systems. This resulted in massive manual planning effort and sub optimal capacity utilization.

- There was no central statistical forecasting system in the as-is environment.
- KPI measurements were not consistently defined and did not support common targets.

- The business processes were rather complex, without uniquely defined responsibilities for core planning tasks like Materials Planning, Detailed Scheduling and Master Planning.

25.2 Objectives of Project

The objectives of the project were the creation of

1. a *to-be supply chain vision* with a clear objective to implement best practice processes enabling the future growth of the company
2. a *to-be system landscape* supporting the to-be supply chain vision and following a global strategy.

25.2.1 The To-Be Vision

To achieve the targeted goals of harmonised processes, systems, data and organizational units, the heterogeneous as-is environment was reengineered, and a streamlined and integrated to-be environment had to be designed. In the to-be environment the six ERP systems are integrated into one central SAP R/3 system. Based on the central ERP system for the entire company one central APS will be setup, representing the entire supply chain. The list below summarises the major features of the to-be environment:

- Changing the entire organization from local, function-oriented thinking to a common European company, sharing the same targets and commitment in true collaboration between the business functions and the supporting IT function
- Building of an European team to support that challenging vision on both, IT and business side
- Basing the project funding on expected benefits, proven by a business case performed before the implementation started
- Buy-in of all involved stakeholders right from the beginning to propagate the new vision and to support its implementation
- Setup a collaborative forecasting
- Visibility of the demand and the supply through the complete network of the supply chain based on one global, constrained master plan
- One common detailed scheduling system used by all plants, customised to support local specificities and process inherent constraints
- Installation of a common European reporting and controlling process, supported by common key performance indicators (KPIs)
- Integration of suppliers into the master planning processes
- Implementation of VMI processes for the major affiliates and customers
- Transportation planning and vehicle scheduling done by the third party logistics providers.

The to-be process map shown in Fig. 25.2 illustrates the vision set at the start of the project.

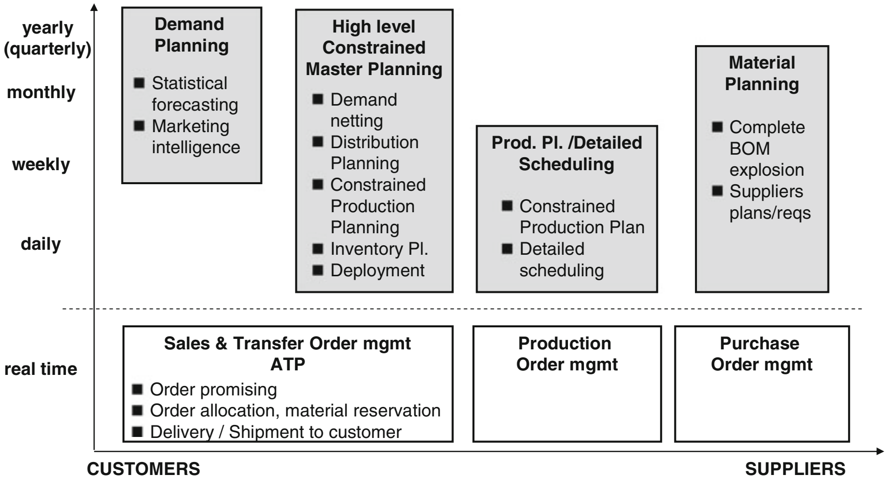


Fig. 25.2 Simplified process map

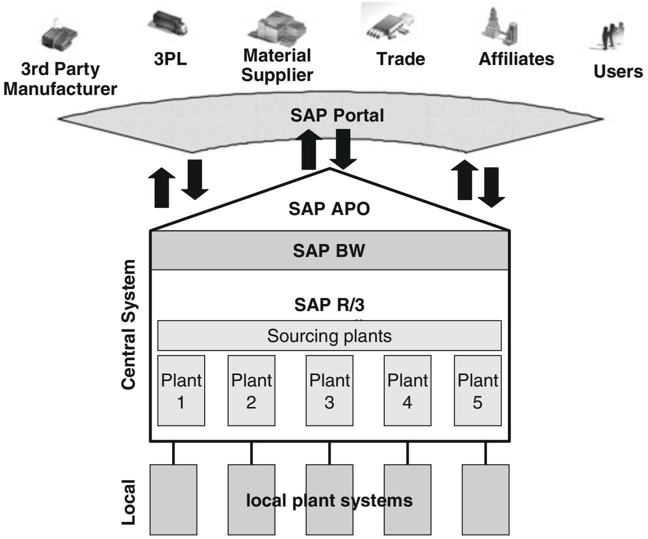


Fig. 25.3 Simplified system landscape

25.2.2 The To-Be Landscape Implemented

Figure 25.3 visualises the new IT system landscape supporting the to-be vision of the project. The IT system landscape is based on SAP R/3 4.6C, SAP APO 3.1, the standard core interface (CIF) to integrate R/3 and APO, SAP Business Warehouse (BW) and SAP Enterprise Portals (EP).

The central SAP R/3 system covers functionalities provided by the following modules: Production Planning/Process Industry (PP-PI), Materials Management (MM), Sales & Distribution (SD), Quality Management (QM, for batch management, quality inspection lots only), Controlling (CO, for product costing and budget planning), Warehouse Management (WM). After all relevant functionalities were migrated from the old (local) ERP systems of the plants to the new central ERP system, the remaining local non-ERP systems had to be interfaced to the central environment. These are mostly execution control systems, laboratory information management systems (LIMS), material handling systems (MHS) and warehouse management systems (WH).

The central R/3 system provides the integration basis for the APO system. From APO, the modules Demand Planning (DP), Supply Network Planning (SNP) and Production Planning/Detailed Scheduling (PP/DS) are used. The process coverage of the APO modules is shown in Fig. 25.1. SAP BW is the foundation of a common reporting and performance measurement system. SAP EP is used to integrate customers into the demand planning process and to enable customers to access sales orders and delivery confirmations.

25.3 Planning Processes

The planning processes introduced in Fig. 25.2 were mapped to the following ERP and APS modules:

Demand Planning	SAP APO DP
Master Planning	SAP APO SNP
Detailed Scheduling	SAP APO PP/DS
Materials Requirements Planning	SAP R/3 MRP
Production Order Management	SAP R/3 PP-PI
Inventory Management	SAP R/3 IM-WM
Procurement Direct Materials	SAP R/3 MM
Master Data Management	SAP R/3 MM
Supply Chain Controlling	SAP R/3 CO and SAP BW

The implementation of SAP APO PP/DS and SAP APO SNP, being the main enablers of the supply chain benefits envisioned in the initial phase of the project, are described in the next two sections.

25.3.1 Production Planning and Detailed Scheduling: APO PP/DS

The Planning Model. As mentioned before, the product range of the company is very heterogeneous, including solids, liquids & creams, steriles, patches, biotech and medical devices. This variety requires APO PP/DS to support a broad range of constraints and planning scenarios:

- Finite capacity of manufacturing resources
- Availability of labor force
- Prohibition to operate defined resources in parallel
- Priorities for a production or procurement alternative
- Availability of critical components
- Maximum holding time of products before next processing step
- Minimum waiting time between manufacturing steps
- Various lot-sizing rules.

The production plan is generated automatically by APO PP/DS. Based on the production plan a sequenced schedule is computed. This requires the optimization of the following parameters:

- Reduction of machine set-ups by producing products of equal set-up groups in a sequence
- Production sequence ordered by increasing compound concentrations to avoid intermediate cleanings
- Production sequence grouped by product and ordered by increasing order quantity, such that in case of quantity deviations of the packed bulk batch, the yield is on the biggest order (the relative deviation will be the smallest for the biggest order)
- In case of bulk material with an intermediate storage in a holding tank, the holding tank has to be emptied as soon as possible, requiring to group products consuming the same bulk material together.

In Fig. 25.4 an example is given for the creation of a sequenced schedule. The production planning run creates, changes or deletes unfixed planned orders. The planning run is executed bottom-up starting with the finished goods demand. The finished goods demand is covered by corresponding planned orders. The planning run creates dependant demand for components and the half finished goods bulk, which are covered either by planned orders or by purchase requisitions.

The resulting production plan considers all material and capacity constraints and tries to keep the due dates, but the sequence of the orders is not good. The optimization of the sequence is done interactively by the planner as not all parameters for an optimal sequence can be considered by the system automatically. To obtain an optimal sequence, the planner selects orders for a certain time period on one or multiple resources in the detailed scheduling planning board (DSPB) of PP/DS and calls the PP/DS optimiser. Using the genetic algorithm provided by the system, set-up times and delay costs are optimised as visualised in Fig. 25.4. The resulting sequenced plan respects due dates and avoids unnecessary set-ups.

The PP/DS optimiser does not take all of the mentioned sequence parameters into account. Therefore, the planner has to further improve the plan manually. The first option is to manually select a group of orders (e.g. a sequence of orders of the same set-up group) and improve their sequence using a sorting heuristic of APO (e.g. by order quantity or compound concentration). As a second option the planner may improve the sequence by manually moving orders and operations in the Gantt chart.

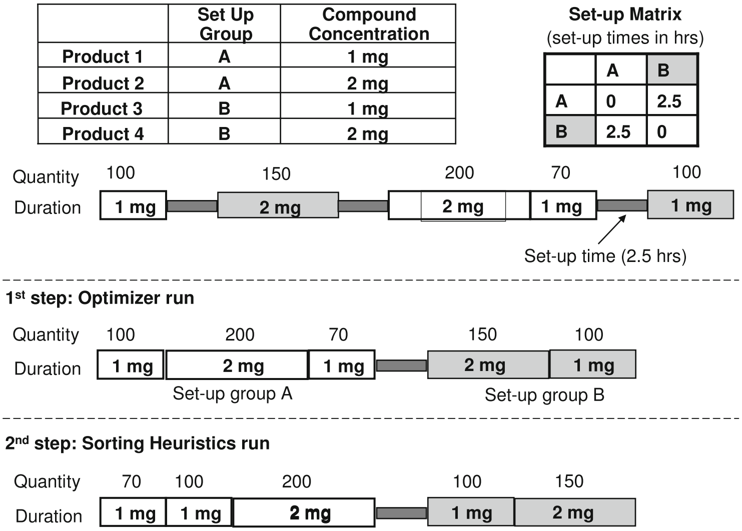


Fig. 25.4 Overview of sequence optimization

Sequence optimization is performed usually weekly for a planning time horizon of 5–9 weeks (4 weeks is the frozen horizon).

Process Integration. The production planning and detailed scheduling process transforms demand into feasible production proposals and feeds back information about the actual production execution into the planning processes. Out of the master plan generated by the Supply Network Planning module (SNP) planned orders (fixed and unfixed ones) are created to be further processed by PP/DS. As a first step in the overall planning cycle (see Fig. 25.5), the SNP planned orders are manually converted into PP/DS planned orders by the planner. Compared to the bucketised SNP orders the PP/DS orders are time continuous, i.e. they have a precise start and end time.[3] The PP/DS production orders are planned with respect to critical materials only that may constrain the plan. Uncritical materials not constraining the plan are planned by the MRP process in R/3, based on the PP/DS production plan.

Close to the execution date, the sequence of planned orders is fixed. Within a horizon of usually 2 weeks, the PP/DS planner triggers the conversion of planned orders into process orders. While the PP/DS planner may still change some attributes of created and released process orders (e.g. limited changes of quantities and adjustment of the plan to the actual production progress), the planning object “process order” is within the responsibility of SAP R/3 as only there GMP relevant tasks can be performed (e.g. allocation of batches, keeping track of the process order life cycle, QA approval). The PP/DS planner can easily identify the status of

---

[3] The SNP orders are planned based on weekly time buckets.

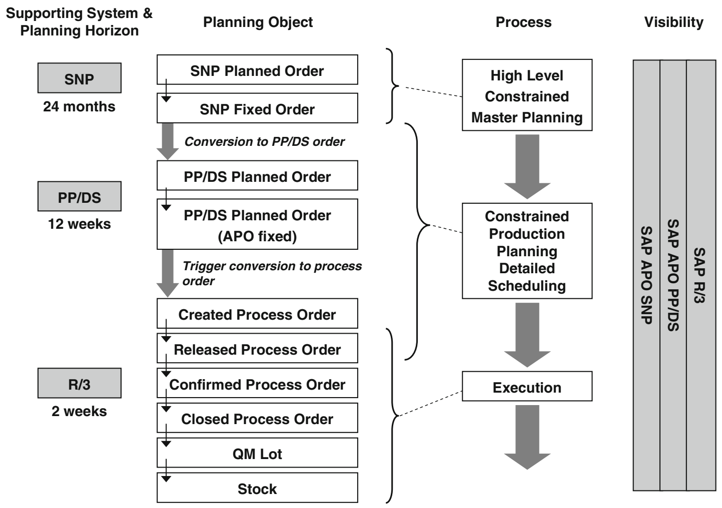


Fig. 25.5 Planning object lifecycle

the execution progress within the PP/DS planning board by a graphical code (shapes and colors), reducing the coordination effort with the shop floor significantly.

Set-Up of the Master Data Model. As the effort spent on master data for the implementation exceeded 60 % of the total project volume, this topic will be discussed in more detail. All relevant master data (see also list below) is mostly already existing in SAP R/3:

- R/3 material master data (= products in APO)
- R/3 resources & capacities (= resources in APO)
- R/3 recipes and bill of materials linked by production versions (= production process models/PPMs in APO)
- Existing in APO only: Set-up matrixes indicating the duration and cost of a transition of one set-up group to another (from one product to another).

For the integration of master data from SAP R/3 to APO PP/DS the standard core interface (CIF) was used.

A commonly underestimated effort though is hidden in the fact that the R/3 master data is usually set-up in a way to support execution processes, but do not take planning aspects into account. Prior to this project master data was existing in various systems like SAP R/3, SAP R/2 and BPCS, and planning was performed in stand alone systems with proprietary master data and complex interfaces. The re-usability of this master data for the APO implementation was low. Efforts had to be spent for redefining all MRP parameters to support the technical integration aspects of R/3 with APO and to support the new planning processes. The material master data of R/3 had to be completed with MRP and APO parameters, conflicts with established MRP processes had to be resolved. The R/3 resources define the basis for all capacity planning in APO. Resources had to be adjusted or newly defined in R/3 in order to create the resource models in APO correctly. For example, it must be defined whether a resource can be used by APO PP/DS and SNP or not, whether multiple operations can be executed in parallel or not, and whether resources are alternates. The standard core interface between R/3 and APO was extended by additional fields and additional rules and default values for data objects used by APO.

Probably the most complex master data element in APO is the production process model (PPM). The PPM combines R/3 information from the production recipes, the bill of materials and the production versions. As the name “PPM” is already indicating, the PPM models the production process. Information like on which resources a production is to be executed, what are the relationships and time dependencies between operations, how much time does an operation need to run, which set-ups are to be performed, etc. are defined in the PPM. The PPMs in APO are generated mainly based on standard R/3 data objects like recipe, bill of materials and production version. Due to the GMP compliance, recipes, bill of materials and production versions in R/3 are critical elements; any change to the objects requires an approval from quality assurance. In the project, basically all recipes had to be restructured and additional information was added to support the planning processes in APO:

- Phases and operations in the R/3 recipes had to be split into individual production steps that require an individual visualisation in APO.
- Dummy phases or dummy resources were added to model specific constraints in APO.
- Recipes were split into APO-relevant and non-relevant phases.
- Sequence dependant set-up informations (the set-up groups) were added to recipes.
- Additional production versions were created to support time dependent changes in the recipe.

In addition to the changes required, the general quality of the existing master data required rework, too. Interdisciplinary skills were needed in the project team to cope with all impacts that an R/3 master data change may have.

A significant set of R/3 master data was made available already at the beginning of the APO modeling phase. This helped to assess the quality of the existing master data for all relevant production processes. However, the improvement of the data quality took longer than expected and consumed more effort than originally planned.

25.3.2 Master Planning: APO SNP

The SAP APO SNP solution was designed to take full advantage of the standard functionalities of the tool, and to prepare the company for the future steps in the evolution of their supply chain. The list below is a summary of the main requirements that were to be implemented:

- Master Planning performed by APO SNP on a 24-months horizon
- Global network representing the complete flow of materials from affiliates to distribution centers, the pharmaceutical and the chemical plants
- Integration of critical suppliers, for direct purchasing as well as third party manufacturers with monitoring of their available capacity
- Utilisation of the Vendor Managed Inventory scenario with 20 affiliates
- Weekly release of the forecast from Demand Planning to SNP
- Demand constrained by the supply plan based on the global SNP optimiser run
- Monitoring of the supply network with generation of alerts depending of the planning situation
- Deployment of the available supply at the plants and at distribution centers to the VMI customers
- Transport Load Building to propose an optimised loading of the different transportation modes (truck, air cargo, sea container, parcel) for the VMI customers only.

SNP Planning Process. The SNP planning process is based on a weekly planning run of the SNP optimiser for the complete supply chain except the third party manufacturers.[4] Based on the weekly release of the forecast from the Demand Planning module at the VMI customers and at the shipping distribution center for non-VMI customers, the optimiser is planning the network while respecting the following constraints:

- Production constraints at the plants
- Due dates of the demand
- Safety stock levels at the VMI customers
- Availability of the critical components like active ingredients from the chemical plants
- Fixed lot size of the formulation batches
- Distribution and transportation lead times.

By including the VMI customers in the optimiser run, master planning became more stable. VMI customers may use their safety stocks to prevent shortages. This increases the flexibility for optimizing the plan. Stability of the master plan also helped the plants to stabilize their production plan. Non-VMI customers usually create more demand fluctuations than VMI customers. Those could be better served due to the additional flexibility gained by the VMI customers' safety stocks and the stable demand signal from the VMI customers. As a result, the delivery on time was improved and inventories could be significantly reduced.

After a planning run of the SNP optimiser (usually performed over the weekend), the master planners look at the alerts generated by SNP and will solve the issues

---

[4] Third party manufacturers were excluded from the SNP optimization run due to technical reasons of the SAP APO 3.1 release.

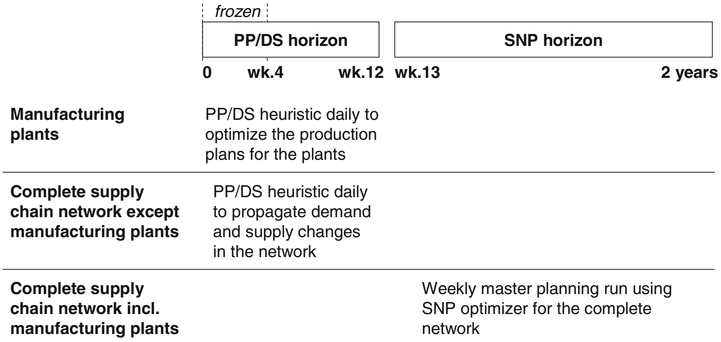


Fig. 25.6 Planning horizons of PP/DS and SNP

during the week. For the issues involving production capacity, the master planners will need to decide on the shift pattern to use for the given weekly bucket in order to tune the available capacity. For a constrained capacity planning on a mid to long term horizon, a weekly planning frequency is sufficient.

For the near term horizon, the planning system must be able to react quickly to demand and supply changes: supply information is changed daily based on the production plan, sales orders are changed online (whereas the forecast is released only once per week by APO DP). To propagate short term demand and supply changes through the complete supply chain, a further planning run was designed to optimize the complete supply chain network except for the plants. This planning run operates in the PP/DS planning horizon and is based on the PP/DS heuristics (see Fig. 25.6). However, note that this short term planning run is executed by the master planners as it covers the complete network except the plants. The demand (forecast and sales orders) and supply information is propagated daily through the complete network using the planning heuristics of PP/DS. The main result of this planning run are production requirements from the distribution centers to the plants. By that, the production planner gained additional visibility, as the orders received from the distribution centers were not anymore aggregated to weekly buckets, but represented individually in the plan. This visibility was a major business requirement, as many production orders are customer specific orders (e.g. country specific packaging).

The supply generated by production orders within the frozen PP/DS horizon (week 0 to 4) is deployed by the master planner to the distribution centers and to the VMI customers using the deployment heuristic of SNP. The deployment heuristic generates confirmed stock transfers. Based on these stock transfers the master planner creates the VMI sales orders for each VMI customer by running the Transport Load Building module of SNP. This module aggregates for a given transportation lane (a DC to a VMI customer) all the products to be shipped at a certain date, and optimises the load of the trucks or containers based on their weight, volume and forms of transportation. The generated VMI sales orders are transfered to R/3 SD and are sent to the VMI customers as confirmation of the future replenishment deliveries through the SAP Enterprise Portal (see Fig. 25.3).

Set-Up of the Master Data Model. The data model for APO SNP was based on the PP/DS data model. By that, corrected data for materials, resources and PPMs of the plants was provided to the SNP project. For the remaining master data at the distribution centers level, we had to rely on data maintained in the central R/3 system transfered by the standard CIF interface from R/3 to APO. However, two important types of master data could not be transferred from R/3 to APO using CIF, these are the SNP PPMs and the transportation lanes.

The SNP PPMs are normally generated from the PP/DS PPMs by a standard program within APO. One useful feature of this program is to take into account the different modes of PP/DS PPMs: Operations in a PP/DS PPM may be run on alternate resources, called *modes*. The PP/DS planning algorithms consider the availability of alternate resources in order to optimize the production plan. Unfortunately, the planning algorithms of SNP cannot consider PPMs containing alternate resources for the same operation. Therefore, based on the given standard program in APO, an "enhanced" conversion program was written that

1. splits a PP/DS PPM with alternate resources into multiple SNP PPMs, and
2. creates the SNP PPMs in such a way that the structure of the PP/DS PPMs are kept and the users see the same structures in both modules, PP/DS and SNP.

The second type of master data that could not be transferred from R/3 via standard CIF are the transportation lanes. Transportation lanes are the backbone of the SNP solution, as they represent the connections in the supply network. SAP provides a standard tool for mass creation of transportation lanes. This tool had two weaknesses preventing its use in the project:

- With the tool, transportation lanes for two locations can easily be created for *all* products. In this project we needed *product-specific* transportation lanes, that cannot be created easily using that tool.
- Transportation times are computed by the tool based on the distance between the start and end locations. Here, a more complex transportation time computation was needed, depending on the forms of transportation, internal lead time of the third party logistics provider, etc.

In order to overcome the weaknesses of the SAP standard tool, a project specific toolset for the creation of transportation lanes was designed and implemented. A *flow database* was setup containing all flows in the network from finished goods at VMI locations to the active ingredient stock at the chemical plants. This database proved to be a very useful tool to gather knowledge about product flows forming the network that is usually scattered across many people in the organization. The flow database was then interfaced with R/3 to store for each flow the product code and the sending and receiving location in R/3. Based on these fields, R/3 complements this data with the means of transportation and the transportation lead time generated by the standard route determination logic of the R/3 SD module. Finally, for one sending location and one receiving location, the product codes and their respective means of transportation and transportation lead times are aggregated to form a transportation lane that is uploaded to APO SNP through the standard BAPI.

25.4 Results and Lessons Learned

25.4.1 Achieved Results

The main benefits envisioned in the business case prior to the APS implementation were achieved. These are in detail:

- The visibility and problem solving capabilities of the entire organization improved by the use of a common data basis and a common visualisation tool, allowing better and faster decisions.
- System based finite capacity scheduling and fast simulation capabilities improved the plan stability and resource utilization significantly.
- Collaborative demand planning with the customers allows for a proactive stabilisation of the demand as changes in the demand by the customer are compared with a constrained demand from the previous master planning run and exceptions are generated.
- The master planning run enables the company to better foresee the future capacity issues and plan accordingly future investments.
- By reducing the order to cash cycle, as well as pushing for more collaboration with the affiliates through a VMI process, the inventory levels were reduced.
- The collaborative concept and the reduction of supply chain steps have increased the overall reliability of the processes. The reduced time to market has lessened the risk of obsolescences which is an important driver to improve the cash flow of a pharmaceutical company.
- By consolidating the system landscape, the IT maintenance costs were reduced significantly.
- Standardization of the master data enables the visibility and interchangeability of information faster across the supply chain.
- The overall administrative workload for tasks performed previously manually or based on wrong information was reduced significantly.
- Seven local organisations grew together into one European organization.

25.4.2 Lessons Learned

Without organizational changes and business process reengineering, the risk of implementing the as-is situation within a new tool is real. The to-be vision needs to be propagated by the upper management towards the different organisations of the company to reduce their resistance to change. This has proven mainly true wherever boundaries between the organisations had to be broken down. The KPI measurements should follow the new processes and be revised accordingly. Keeping previous KPIs will not facilitate change as the old way of working is imposed. The planning processes have to be seen and defined in an integrated way. Demand planning—master planning—production planning—materials requirements planning have to be integrated technically and from an organizational point of view.

VMI processes based on Collaborative Planning, Forecasting, and Replenishment (CPFR) could only partly be realised. The marketing affiliates, although part of the same company, were granted control of the replenishment demand towards the plants. They were accepting the result of the replenishment planning run and/or changing the result according to their needs, allowing manual override of the VMI concept. Therefore, contingencies have to be built up in form of inventory to cover uncertain changes in the affiliate's requirements, annihilating the benefits of the VMI process. The success in the implementation of a VMI scenario is not determined by the technical integration of different systems, but strikingly driven by the relationship of the partners and their ability to rely on one another.

A global master planning run as foreseen and supplied by SAP APO SNP will be implemented gradually only. The change management efforts from the function oriented supply chain organization to a single and integrated European supply chain is estimated as a project risk due to the expected resistance within the organisations. Reactivity of the supply chain will only increase once the master planning can be executed in one integrated step. Resistance to a central master planning in planning and production departments of the plants has to be anticipated and avoided by an involvement of all users, right from the beginning.

Availability and consistency of R/3 Master Data is crucial for succeeding an APO implementation, more than 60 % of the APO PP/DS and SNP implementation time had to be spent actually on R/3 master data definition and revision. Double maintenance of data in different systems (R/3 and APO), especially in a validated environment is not acceptable. Enhancements had to be foreseen to minimize the maintenance effort and the risk of discrepancies.

Integrated Campaign Planning, Scheduling and Order Confirmation in the Specialty Chemicals Industry

26

Baptiste Lebreton

The purpose of this chapter is to document the implementation of an integrated order allocation/production planning design using OMP Plus. After a description of the case and the challenges, we will describe the architecture of the planning system, putting emphasis on the interaction between OMP Plus and SAP ERP. Finally, we will describe the order confirmation and production planning workflow and highlight the benefits of the project.

26.1 Case Description

The company is one of the world's biggest manufacturers of films used in the manufacturing of safety laminated glass. Safety laminated glass is used in the Automotive, Architectural as well as in the Photovoltaic industry. Next to strengthening glass, the film also improves sound insulation and/or provides color to the window. The films are adhesives sold in rolls, these need to be stored refrigerated. The company also produces intermediate products, i.e. the resins and plasticizers required for the extrusion of films. The company operates plants in North America, Europe and Asia for both intermediates and films manufacturing (see Lebreton et al. 2010).

26.1.1 Procurement

The company purchases bulk chemical commodities globally using long-term contracts. These provide price stability in exchange of a minimum order volume. Nevertheless, due to the volatility of the oil and gas markets, prices can be index-based. Most of the other raw materials are purchased locally by the plants.

B. Lebreton (✉)
Eastman Chemical Corporation, Operations Research Group, 200 South Wilcox Drive, Kingsport 37660 TN, USA
e-mail: blebreton@eastman.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__26, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2015

26.1.2 Production

The company's production chain consists of three stages: intermediates manufacturing, film extrusion and finishing operations. Intermediates are manufactured on four sites worldwide, each plant producing generic materials as well as specialty materials that can be single-sourced. Film extrusion takes place in four plants worldwide, each of them operating between one or several extrusion lines. Each extrusion line has specific capabilities in terms of products or widths that can be processed. Films, like intermediates, are produced in campaigns. The films can be cut to an alternative width or be interleaved during finishing operations. Interleaving consists of unwinding the rolled film and inserting an interlayer that will allow for unrefrigerated storage.

The bill of material is divergent. The company purchases less than ten key raw materials and produces a dozen of intermediate materials which are used to extrude more than 100 different film formulations (film types). To minimize cutting losses at the customer, the company sells rolls of film in cm width increments. Hence, in a year, the company will sell and/or store up to 10,000 different finished goods combinations.

26.1.3 Distribution and Sales

The rolls are dispatched to a global network of distribution centers, located in the vicinity of key customers. Each distribution center has its own product offering, depending on what the customers frequently order. In case an SKU would not be available, the company might send another SKU instead. The company has a standard product offering which indicates what sizes are make-to-stock and which ones are make-to-order. Customers should expect longer lead times for make-to-order SKUs and can decide to either wait or order a make-to-stock SKU. Due to the wide number of finished goods combinations, the forecast accuracy at SKU level is low, making forecasts at this level impractical. The fact that customers have multiple suppliers of film does contribute to the randomness of demand. A summary of the supply chain attributes is provided in Table 26.1.

26.2 Objectives of the Project

A production planner/scheduler has thousands of order lines to manage in parallel. Hence, manual planning has never been an option. Prior to the introduction of the OMP planning suite, it was also clear that SAP MRP and the PP module (i.e. planning tables) did not provide enough functionality to handle the business' requirements in terms of visibility, flexibility and user-friendliness.

A drastic reduction of working capital could only be achieved with an improved way of dynamically tying supply with demand, taking into account the business rules. Hence, the objectives of the projects were:

Table 26.1 Functional supply chain attributes—films

Functional attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Number and type of products procured	Few raw materials (commodities)
Sourcing type	Multiple suppliers
Supplier lead time and reliability	Short, high reliability
Materials' life cycle	Long
Organization of the production process	Continuous
Repetition of operations	Batch production
Changeover characteristics	Sequence dependent
Bottlenecks in production	Known
Distribution structure	Two stages
Pattern of delivery	Weekly to monthly
Deployment of transportation means	Individual links
Loading restrictions	Full-truck load, less than truckload depending on destination
Availability of future demand	Forecasted
Shape of demand	Constant, lows in August/December
Products life cycle	Several years
Number of product types	More than 50
Degree of customization	High
Products' structure	Divergent
Bill of materials	Divergent
Structural attributes	
Attributes	Contents
Network structure	General
Degree of globalization	Worldwide
Location of decoupling point(s)	Make to stock/make to order
Major constraints	Manufacturing capacity
Legal position	Intra-organizational
Balance of power	Customers
Direction of coordination	Mixture
Type of information exchanged	Forecasts and orders

- Transfer the manually created allocation plan (including business rules) to a planning software, thus creating real-time transparency on available supply world-wide
- Assess/simulate the impact of scheduling changes on inventory replenishments & order fulfillment
- Better coordinate resin/sheet production to minimize inventories of raw materials, resin and sheets
- Provide a planning application allowing users to make decisions rapidly and reflect them immediately in SAP R/3, taking into account customer service policies and Master Planning's targets (commonly named S&OP targets).

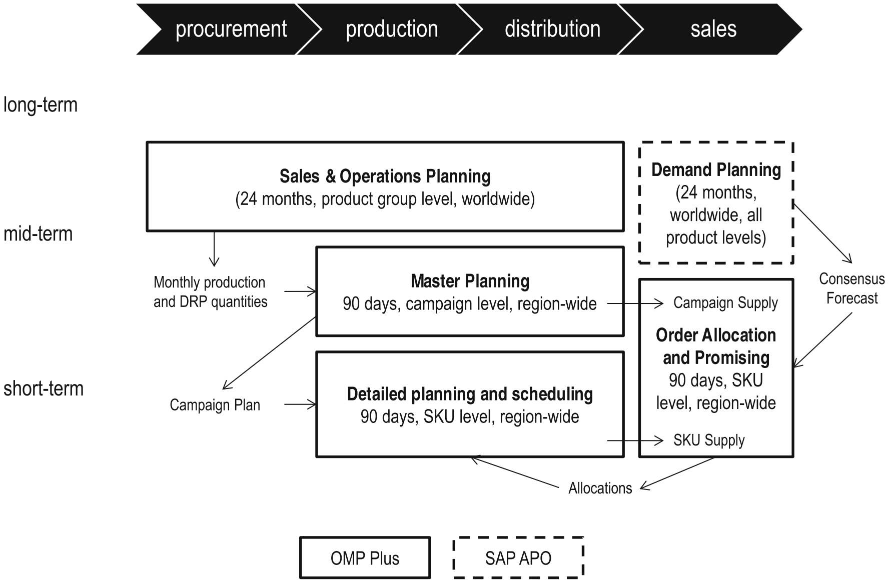


Fig. 26.1 Architecture of the planning system

26.3 Architecture of the Planning System

The OMP Planning suite takes over the production and distribution planning tasks and is connected with SAP ERP for the transactional data as well as SAP APO Demand Planning for the forecast. The Sales and Operations Planning (S&OP) module has been introduced as a stand-alone application back in 2006, together with SAP's APO Demand Planning Module. Until 2010, the campaign planning, detailed scheduling and available to promise (ATP) were performed using SAP ERP (MM and SD modules). By November 2010, the business went live with OMP Plus which provides an integrated solution to manage campaigns, run the daily scheduling and confirm orders.

The S&OP module, which runs the planning for 24 months, provides monthly production quantities for each production asset and distribution quantities between plants and distribution centers (see Fig. 26.1). As mentioned earlier, the supply chain is global so in-transit inventory is extremely critical and needs to be taken into account.

Every month, the OMP Plus module imports the target monthly production quantities and works as follows:

1. Split monthly production quantities into a daily campaign plan for the next 90 days, by machine.
2. Assess all order allocations previously performed since the supply has been modified.

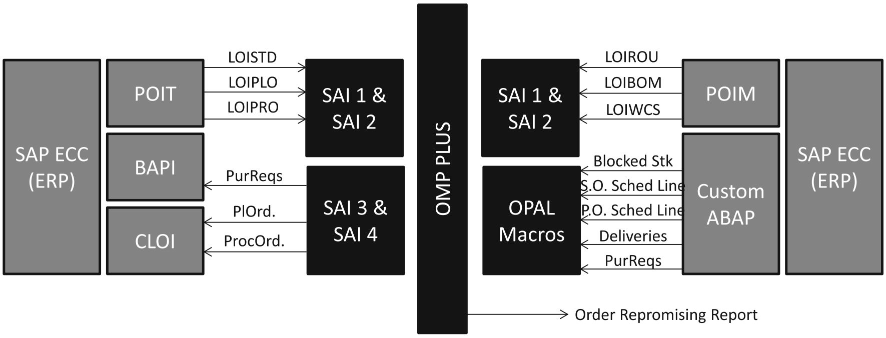


Fig. 26.2 SAP/OMP interfaces

3. Adjust planning or adjust the order allocations.
4. Send the updated order allocations to the customer service group so that the orders can be re-promised if needed.

On a daily basis, new orders are coming in and steps 2 to 4 are repeated. We will go in more detail about the process in the next section.

OMP Plus imports SAP's transactional data using two standard interfaces: POIM for master data and POIT for transactional data. The data is exported several times per day using standardized messages called iDocs:

- LOISTD: stock requirements list (POIT) including all supply and demand elements
- LOIPLO: planned orders (POIT) containing the details of the un(con)firmed supply elements
- LOIPRO: process orders (POIT) containing the details of the (con)firmed supply elements (manufacturing orders)
- LOIROU: routings/recipes (POIM) including operations, sequences and production rates
- LOIBOM: bill of materials (POIM)
- LOIWCS: work centers (POIM), i.e. machines and resources.

The centerpiece of OMP Plus is its ability to tie up supply and demand using allocation cycles. Both supply and demand elements in SAP are dynamic, e.g. a forecast becomes a sales order and then a delivery. On the supply side, a planned order becomes a process order and is finally posted to inventory. Thus, an MRP element will change its type and unique identifier (ID) during the MRP life cycle. In each step of the life cycle, it is critical to track the identifier because it is tied up to the allocation. Such information was not available in the standard SAP interface and had to be made available by means of flat files using custom ABAP code. The import of SAP data takes place within OMP's SAI 1 (fetching of iDocs and flat files) and SAI 2 modules (updating the OMP Plus model), as depicted in Fig. 26.2. Custom macros written in OPAL (OMP's scripting language) were developed to import the flat files.

The planning results consist of an order allocation and supply elements (planned orders and process orders) that are sent to SAP's standard interface called CLOI (Class Logistics Optimization Interface). For intercompany replenishments, Purchase Requisitions are created using BAPIs because CLOI tables do not cover this functionality. OMP's SAI 3 module prepares the input data for CLOI tables while SAI 4 fills in the CLOI tables and sends back the reference of the newly created MRP elements.

OMP Plus' order allocation also indicates when an order can be shipped. After each allocation cycle and once the supply elements have been created in SAP, the production planner sends an allocation report to the customer service representatives (CSRs) in a spreadsheet format indicating what action needs to be undertaken for each order item. Potential actions can be:

- Do nothing, order can be shipped on time (or earlier) with the SKUs requested
- Re-promise for a later date with the initially requested SKUs
- Substitute requested SKU A with SKU B to meet the customer requested date.

In theory, the reallocation could be translated automatically in SAP. However, from a service standpoint, the supply chain department prefers to double check with customers whether the changes (re-promising or substitution) are acceptable before reflecting the order change in SAP.

26.4 Integrated Order Confirmation and Supply Planning with OMP Plus

The ability to perform order allocations in an interactive manner (and batch mode) was a main driver for choosing OMP Plus against other APS alternatives such as APO's gATP. As Meyr (2009) points out, grouping orders helps improve the allocation's cost effectiveness as it gives more freedom to combine demand with supply elements (see Chap. 9 for more details on ATP). In the following, we will explain how the order allocation works and how it is used to trigger the supply plan.

26.4.1 Supply vs. Demand Elements

OMP Plus' core functionality consists of matching supply with demand elements. Both are downloaded from SAP ERP using the logic described previously. Table 26.2 lists all MRP element types retrieved and used within the allocation cycles. A certainty factor is assigned to the MRP element type. Demand elements with the highest certainty will be allocated first. Demand and supply elements with the lowest ranking might be excluded from the allocation cycles or be treated in the last possible cycle. The rationale behind is that you do not want to miss an order on the books because supply was allocated to a "less certain" demand (forecast or safety stock).

Table 26.2 MRP elements by descending order of certainty

Demand elements in scope	Supply elements in scope
Delivery	Stock on hand
Dependent requirement of process order	In transit inventory
Sales orders	Purchase orders
Stock transfer orders	Process order
Quote	Firmed planned order
Dependent requirement of planned order	Purchase requisition
Transfer reservation (reqt of purchase req)	Planned order
Forecast	
Safety stock	

Within a plant, a Process Order is a supply but also triggers internal demand for components. This internal demand is taken into account when allocating orders to a supply that might require a planned order to execute the allocation.

26.4.2 Definition and Weighting of the Allocation Cost Matrix

The allocation cycles can be expressed as a transportation planning problem (TPP). Given S the set of supply MRP elements and D the set of demand elements, the objective is to minimize the allocation costs (26.1) subject to three constraints.

$$minimize \sum_{\substack{s \in S \\ d \in D}} cost_{s,d} \cdot Alloc_{s,d} \tag{26.1}$$

Constraint (26.2) ensures that the previous allocation is taken over before allocating new orders.

$$alloc_{s,d}^{ini} = Alloc_{s,d} \qquad \forall s \in S, d \in D \text{ where } alloc_{s,d}^{ini} \text{ exists} \tag{26.2}$$

Constraint (26.3) states that the whole demand needs to be supplied while constraint (26.4) guarantees that supply is not over-allocated.

$$\sum_{s \in S} Alloc_{s,d} = demand_d \qquad \forall d \in D \tag{26.3}$$

$$\sum_{d \in D} Alloc_{s,d} \leq supply_s \qquad \forall s \in S \tag{26.4}$$

Additional logic has been built in to take into account the fact that supply elements might change between allocation cycles. For instance, a fully allocated supply of 10 might be reduced to 8, leading to a shortage of 2. Equation (26.2)

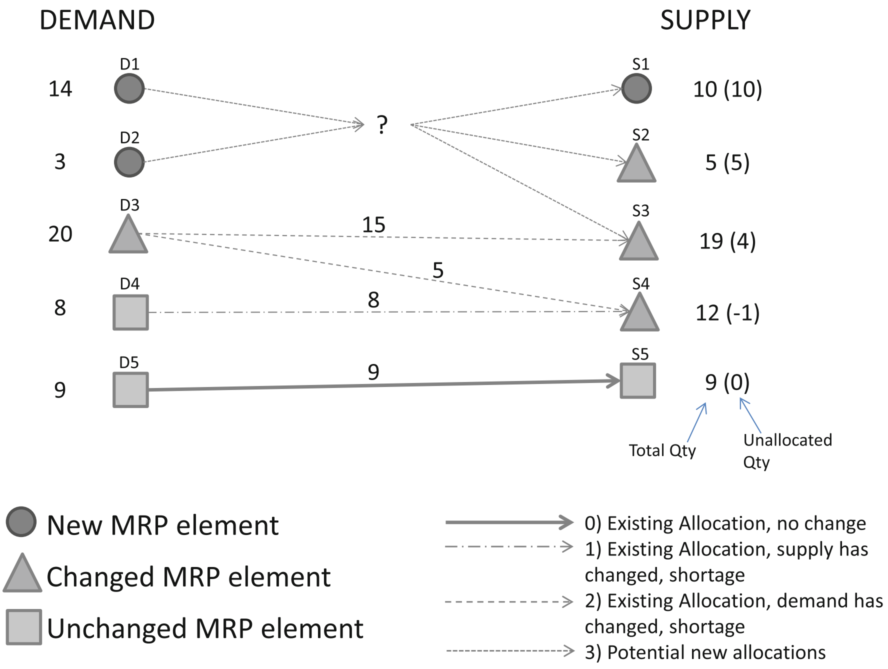


Fig. 26.3 Order allocation with dynamic MRP elements

needs to be relaxed for the problem to be solvable. Furthermore, the allocation of the matrix takes place in several cycles, by descending certainty.

Figure 26.3 provides a graphical overview of the allocation logic. After the incremental download, the MRP elements are updated. OMP Plus differentiates between new, changed and unchanged orders.

In the case above, the allocation D5 and S5 remains unchanged. Elements D3 and D4 were fully allocated to S3 and S4 previously, however, supply element S4 now only allows 12 instead of 13 units to allocate. As a result, there is a shortage of 1 unit. The previously confirmed allocation will be treated in priority because orders were promised against this allocation. D4 will be treated before D3 in the allocation because D4 has not been altered while D3 has been changed between the two SAP downloads (change in quantity or customer requested date). New demand elements D1 and D2 can be assigned to supply elements S1 to S3 because these have unallocated quantities.

An accurate definition of the cost matrix is crucial for the automation of allocation cycles. Planners will trust the allocation "optimizer" provided it delivers explainable results. The allocation should therefore reflect what a scheduler might do in practice using common sense and standard business rules.

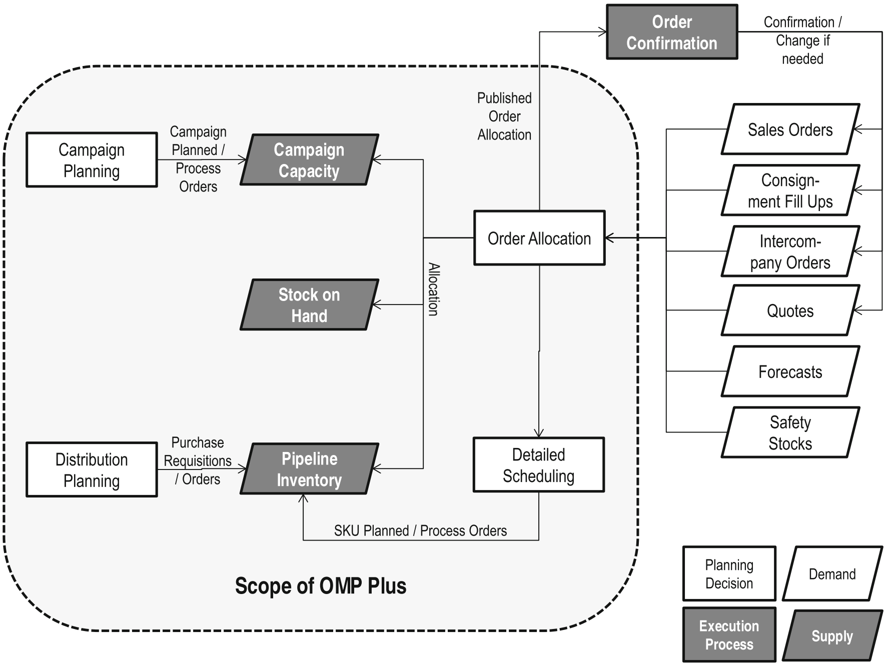


Fig. 26.4 Order confirmation cycle with OMP Plus

The cost matrix is built using different characteristics such as:

- Due date of supply and demand elements (hence, will the allocation induce a delay?)
- Certainty of the order (if a demand element has high certainty, e.g. Delivery, and a due date in a very near future (tomorrow), you want to allocate stock on hand against it)
- Material specifications (among others: product dimensions, minimum lot size, packaging, product origin...).

Planners and schedulers maintain cost matrix tables in OMP Plus which define the compatibility between the material specifications of the supply and demand elements.

26.4.3 Creation of Supply for Pegging Purposes

Figure 26.4 provides a summary of the complete order confirmation and production planning cycle. Orders are entered in SAP throughout the day. SAP's Available to Promise logic at Sales Order entry is set up in such a way that the order always confirms at the end of the total replenishment lead time. The total replenishment lead time reflects the service commitment of the product offering (next day to 10 days). At this moment, the sales order has been created in SAP but has not been through the OMP allocation cycle. The Sales Order is thus flagged in such a way that the transport planner knows that he/she needs to wait prior to create the Delivery Note. A Delivery Note can only be created once the Sales Order has been "confirmed by OMP".

Once the SAP MRP elements are exported to OMP, the planner gets a notification that new data is available for allocation. The automatic allocation is triggered once the planner acknowledges the new data and its import. The demand can be allocated to stock on hand, to pipeline inventory (in-transit) as well as to campaign capacity.

The allocation might require the creation of supply elements in SAP ERP (Planned Orders, Process Orders, Purchase Requisitions). These supply elements are created after order allocation using a functionality called "Publishing".

Once the publishing is done, an Excel report is sent to the customer service team with the status of each order item. An action might be required and would be highlighted in the report. The most frequent actions imply either substituting an SKU by another or changing the material availability date. If the order confirmation is acceptable for the customer, the customer service representative will then flag the order as being "confirmed by OMP". Every subsequent change to the order will set the "confirmed" flag back to zero.

The allocation only creates Planned Orders. Another step linked to the order confirmation cycle is the detailed scheduling, i.e. the finite scheduling of the supply elements. On a daily basis, the planner/scheduler transforms the Planned Orders into Process Orders. Since the available capacity is an integral part of the allocation cycles, the Process Orders seldom face capacity issues.

26.5 Results and Lessons Learned

The roll out of the OMP Plus suite has brought drastic improvements for scheduling and re-promising. As of now, planners and customer service representatives have a full visibility on order pegging and capacity loading. Every change in the production schedule can be assessed real time on its impact on customers, despite thousands of active order lines at a given moment of time.

Thanks to the business rules, expressed in the form of a cost allocation matrix, more than 95 % of the order lines are allocated automatically by OMP Plus and do not require any manual intervention from the planner. Nevertheless, we observed that allocation rules may strongly vary between supply planners and world regions. Business rules needed to be adjusted regionally to match local preferences or priorities but could build on a standardized data structure. The application has been rolled out worldwide by a team of two during the past two years. Interestingly, the main efforts were put in tweaking the local allocation rules and getting the planners to feel comfortable with the application.

Due to the increase in automation, the quality of MRP data had to be improved, next to the ability of the planner to deal with advanced planning tools and concepts. Any flaw in master data has to be spotted by the planner and solved accordingly because no supply can be sent to SAP otherwise. Before the implementation of OMP Plus, master data errors were tackled “outside the system”.

The main challenge for the project was and remains the management of the payload between SAP and OMP. On a daily basis, more than 50,000 stock requirement lists are exported from SAP to OMP, next to the related master data. Exporting such an amount of data takes time and planners have to work around this constraint. Thanks to an intensive collaboration with OMP, solutions were found to split the data download into smaller subsets that can be updated fast, hence providing almost real time data to the planner.

References

Lebreton, B. G., Van Wassenhove, L. N., & Bloemen, R. R. (2010). Worldwide sourcing planning at Solutia’s glass interlayer products division. *International Journal of Production Research, 48*(3), 801–819.

Meyr, H. (2009). Customer segmentation, allocation planning and order promising in make-to-stock production. *OR Spectrum, 31*(1), 229–256.

Event-Based Planning for Standard Polymer Products

27

Matthias Lautenschläger

In a highly dynamic market environment, naturally the planning situation may change very rapidly by variation of demand and available supply quantities or by sales and procurement price fluctuations. Furthermore, the dynamics of changes may fluctuate over time with intervals of stable conditions followed by more dynamic intervals. Timely consideration of these changes requires frequent updates of plans. A high reactivity nonetheless can be reached with fixed planning cycles only at the very high cost of frequent planning.

An event-based synchronization of demand and supply can ensure the necessary increase of planning quality and limit planning expenses to the necessary minimum. Events are triggered as soon as significant deviations from planning target or deterioration of input data quality are monitored. Thus planning cycles are not started as long as the current plan fulfills all criteria.

This study describes the planning scenario of a chemical industry company which has implemented its mid and short term planning activities in an event-controlled integrated planning system. Decisions regarding demand and master planning are closely linked to production planning and detailed scheduling as well as to sales order confirmation. Priorities upon use of bottleneck resources or limited input material supply are considered throughout all planning levels. Such prioritizations finally determine quotas limiting the confirmations of customer requirements (see Chap. 9).

The case study breaks down into the following parts. First, the planning environment and current market situation of the company are outlined. The solution method of event-based planning is presented next. In the following section, the planning process and its elements are described in more detail. Emphasis is put on the methods of coordination within the planning process and the used planning methods. Benefits of the implementation and major findings gained during project realization are outlined in the last section.

M. Lautenschläger (✉)
Capgemini Deutschland GmbH, Potsdamer Platz 5, 10785 Berlin, Germany
e-mail: Matthias.Lautenschlaeger@capgemini.com

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__27,

27.1 Case Description

The chemical company produces a few standard polymer products which are manufactured in different versions. The product is made of crude oil in several refinement stages. It is used in numerous applications for the production of packaging, films, enclosures of electrical appliances, and components for entertainment electronics or household goods. The polymer is manufactured as granulate and then injection-molded or extruded by the customer in the final product. The chemical company produces for the European market at several locations. The various sites preferentially supply selected European countries. In addition, depending on the supply situation, allocation of countries to production sites is also handled dynamically.

The limitation to a few product versions is a response to the development of the market in the direction of a commodity market with standardized products that are produced at high volumes. The individualization of the products, e.g. by dyeing with pigments is increasingly carried out by the final consumer. The flexibility of being able to produce different products has therefore shifted to the final consumer.

The chemical company is facing a highly competitive environment. While it retains an important position in the overall market, its market share is comparable with that of the top competitors. From the customer's viewpoint, polymer manufacturers are easily replaced. The product price is highly dependent on the price trends of crude oil, and other raw materials. The demand is likewise highly sensitive to price revisions. Hence, pricing is an essential marketing instrument of the company. Differentiating features with regard to quality and delivery reliability do not exist as they are taken for granted by the market.

As a rule, price changes of crude oil have an impact on subsequent raw material costs at a very short notice. These cost changes can, however, be passed on to the customer only with a certain time lag. This can result in the shrinking of the obtainable profit margin and in extreme cases even become negative. A possible reaction to this situation is the deliberate reduction of quantities put onto the market. With this measure, quantities which need to be marketed at a negative margin are kept under control without giving up major market shares at the same time.

Falling sales prices subject raw materials and finished product stocks to a very high valuation risk. Stocks produced with highly priced raw materials sold in phases of low sales prices clearly reduce the available profit margin.

To achieve high profitability, it becomes necessary to pay consistent attention to low production costs and to combine this with efficient responsiveness to market prices. Therefore, it is necessary on the one hand to plan resources efficiently, and on the other hand to forecast market changes as well as possible, and to incorporate them into planning with little delay. The entire supply chain should be coordinated with the highest possible degree of integration. Not only individual components such as allocating production quantities to different production sites must be carried out but also be combined with other planning steps such as defining production sequences and planned output as well as the distribution of production quantities to the different markets. Planning must be linked closely to the various business functions, such as procurement, demand and production planning which must be coordinated with little time lags.

These requirements can be met by a system which demonstrates both a high degree of integration and a rapid response to changes in the planning conditions.

27.2 Solution Concept

At project begin, demand and master planning were realized as harmonized processes implemented in a unified system base. This solution was based on the module Demand Planning (DP) of SAP SCM and is being used for the demand planning of all markets and products of the business unit in question (see Chap. 7). This allows achieving a high level of transparency on the requirements of all markets and keeps good track of any changes from sales forecasts. The forecasts and their manual reviews are undertaken at fixed dates. The planning cycle is completed once a month and provides the required input data for subsequent master planning (see Chap. 8). A response to unusual market changes with subsequent adjusted master planning is made only effective to the next planning cycle.

So far this planning platform has ensured consistent planning with only minor data errors. However, in view of the high degree of change in sales, the reactivity of the planning system was not high enough and resulted in lost sales and excessive inventories of finished goods, depending on the current demand situation.

This initial solution concept has now being expanded towards increased reactivity. The fixed planning cycles have been discontinued so that now planning can be undertaken at any point of time, i.e. event-based. This imposes two conditions: on the one hand, there must be a continuous data supply and updating; on the other hand, deviations from the plan must be continuously monitored. Monitoring is essential since it determines the need to start the following planning cycle. By including the inventory days of supply and production capabilities, changes to both the sales market and the supply side of the supply chain can be monitored.

As soon as predefined thresholds are exceeded, a separate demand or master planning or, in the case of major deviations, total replanning of sales and the production network is triggered. Typically, the planning frequency is higher than it is for planning in fixed planning cycles since demand planning can be carried out separately from master planning and no complete replanning is required in every case. At times of fewer changes or deviations, the planning frequency may be reduced.

Closely connected with planning is the implementation of plan-based decisions. A system-supported implementation of current planning results is necessary, in particular with frequent and non-synchronized changes. This is done by integrating the availability check at the time of order entry (see Chap. 9) with the results of detailed production planning. For this purpose, planned production quantities are returned to demand planning, and considering actual sales forecasts, a quota allocation of available stocks and planned receipt quantities of final products

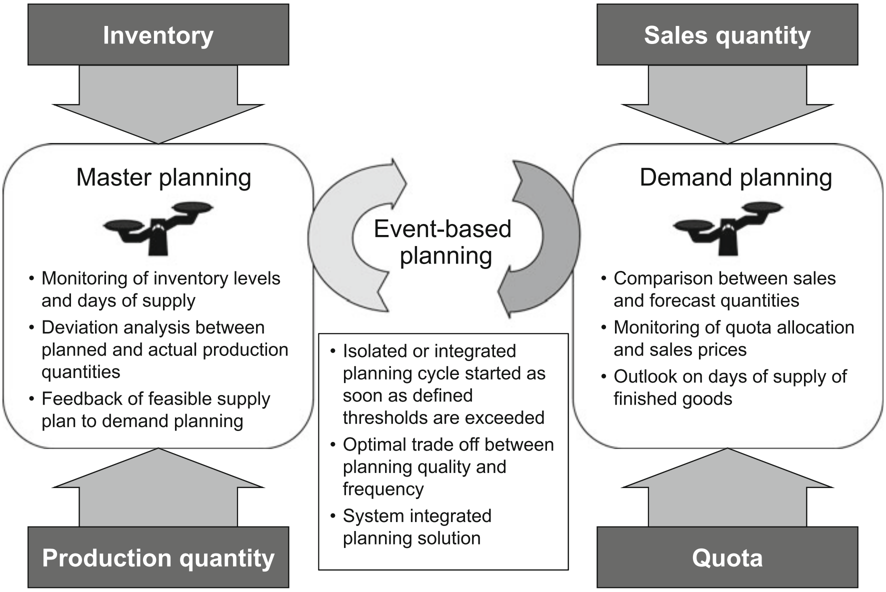


Fig. 27.1 Event-based planning in demand planning and master planning

for the various markets is undertaken. When orders are entered, final product availability is confirmed only if the quota for the market to which the customer is assigned is not yet exhausted. Consumed quotas are employed to monitor market conduct and may result in triggering a new planning round whenever a quota is used up. The decision is taken in due consideration of the current supply strategy so that a deliberately generated scarcity of the supply and the resulting early exhaustion of available quotas does not trigger new planning.

Figure 27.1 shows the two planning areas of demand planning and master planning. A new planning is triggered when the data to which the units are linked display clear deviations from expected values. In the event of major deviations between these indicators, the system issues alerts for the planner. Depending on the degree of discrepancy, replanning is initiated only within the area or a new coordination of both areas is launched.

When monitoring demand planning processes, the following performance indicators are used:

- Deviations of customer orders from the forecast
- Deviation of selling prices from plan prices
- Consumption of quotas through customer orders.

These performance indicators basically deal with the question whether the demand deviates from the plan. In the case of larger deviations, new planning is made initially within the demand planning process. Thus, e.g. the plan for a region can be overruled if the customer quota shows an excessively high degree of consumption. If the stocks of that product are still sufficiently high, matching the quota could be sufficient without having to trigger a new production planning.

The monitoring of the master planning involves the following performance indicators:

- Inventory days of supply of final products
- Finished production quantities to planned production quantities
- Resource utilization.

If the inventory days of supply fall below the specified target value, it will be necessary to modify the production quantities or dates. With smaller deviations, manual corrections on selected products may be sufficient, but with larger deviations new planning for all products or production plants will become necessary.

Thresholds on the performance indicators in demand and master planning have been defined along with aligned measures. Measures state whether separate planning of an individual unit is sufficient or whether the replanning of the entire supply chain planning is definitely required. In this way, a balance between demand and master planning is created.

27.3 Planning Process

The planning process not only covers activities for demand and master planning, it also aligns short term planning decisions to the master plan. Short term production planning, management of sales order quotas and its integration into the sales order availability check are the subsequent planning steps.

Figure 27.2 shows the planning levels in detail. The various elements are described more closely in the following sections.

27.3.1 Demand Planning

The determination of future sales quantities starts out from the historical sales figures which are used as a basis for a statistical forecast (see Chap. 29). The customer orders are initially stored in a central SAP Business Information Warehouse (BW) and the sales figures consolidated there are then transferred to the BW which is integrated into Demand Planning (DP). Sales figures are updated daily in the DP and the statistical forecast is also carried out daily.

A monthly rolling sales quantity plan (business forecast) for the business unit is defined with respect to the sales goals for the current year. A consolidation is carried out between logistics, production management considering production capabilities, product marketing, and regional sales management. The business forecast is the framework for required production capabilities and the achievable sales quantities in the different markets.

The sales quantity plan is created in a detailed way for the next 3 months with an extension for the months 4 through 6. This plan is created at the product group

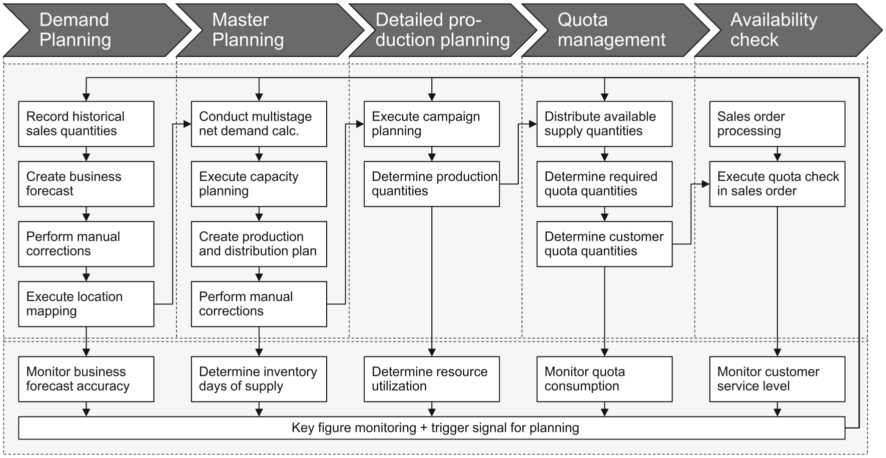


Fig. 27.2 Detailed flowchart of event-based planning

and sales region level. The sales quantities may be refined manually to correct the figures of individual products or countries.

The regions are preferentially supplied by certain production sites. Thus, the next step is location mapping which assigns by region which production site is to supply a given demand. It is still possible to deviate from this allocation during master planning; however, the additional shipping costs are weighed against the overall goals pursued by planning.

As a last planning step, the external sales quantities are reviewed a last time and are released by sales planning to master planning.

The sales quantities are monitored in the quota management. The actual sales quantities are compared to the defined quotas. In case of significant deviations, quotas may be updated or in case of major deviations a trigger for the update of the sales quantity plan may be given.

27.3.2 Master Planning

Master planning is carried out with the help of SAP SCM module Supply Network Planning (SNP). The goal of this planning step is the definition of a production and distribution plan which covers all external demand while considering relevant production and distribution constraints.

For this purpose, various planning tables for manual adjustments as well as the SAP (standard) optimizer for automatic planning runs are used. Planning is done for the next 6 months using a detailed monthly breakdown. Accordingly, monthly buckets are used to define the monthly quantities to be produced, procured and redistributed.

First, all demand types, receipts and stocks are consolidated in the net demand calculation. For this purpose, a SNP planning table is used in which total demand, both unfulfilled customer orders and the consolidated gross forecasts carried over from demand planning, is shown. In addition, currently available raw material quantities as well as redistributions within the production network and redistributions to other company departments are shown. Already at this level, the planner can enter requirements for the automatic master planning run, e.g. by correcting available raw material quantities. This step may be repeated several times after the first results of the automatic planning run are available.

The automatic planning run performs several steps simultaneously. Thus, the calculation of dependent demand, the capacity planning as well as the drafting of a production and distribution plan in a single planning run is made, invisibly to the planner.

The planning run uses a cost-oriented mathematical optimization method (SAP Standard) which aims at minimizing all decision-relevant costs. The planning run is controlled by modifying the cost parameters and by weighting partial goals. For example, the storage costs at the various stages of the distribution network are quoted for every product. Warehousing can be controlled through the different cost rates at the various locations so that e.g. at a high warehousing cost at the production site and at a low cost at the distribution site, stocks are redirected to the distribution warehouse. By weighting partial goals it becomes possible to set priorities so that e.g. warehousing costs can be put into a relationship to the costs for late delivery.

The optimization run of the automatic master planning takes into account the following costs whereby the overall goal is to minimize total costs:

- Production costs
- Storage costs
- Transportation costs
- Costs for violation of the safety stock level
- Non-delivery costs
- Late delivery costs.

The costs are set as a function of the site (e.g. site-specific transportation costs) and of product (e.g. non-delivery costs) and/or as a function of both the product and the site (e.g. production costs, location specific storage costs).

Next to these goals, the optimization run is also controlled by further input values. These take into account on the one hand the constraints to be respected, such as discontinuations, and capacity profiles but also planning decisions already made such as fixed production quantities or minimum resource utilizations. Other production and procurement relevant limitations are minimum batch sizes for the production of a product and maximum purchasing quantities.

The plan, created by the automatic planning run, is a proposal to the planner which can be revised in the SNP planning table. Thus, he can e.g. increase the production quantity of one product at the expense of another if the prioritization of products by production costs has been insufficient. The monthly production and distribution quantities then become the requirements of master planning which must be incorporated into the subsequent detailed production planning. In each case only the current month and the next 2 months are supplied since this is the limit of detailed production planning.

27.3.3 Detailed Production Planning

The detailed production planning is performed using an independent optimization solution using IBM ILOG CPLEX Optimizer integrated into the SAP system. The PP/DS module installed in the SAP standard cannot be used for these tasks since there are special requirements not covered by the standard:

- In many areas the resource output rate is variable and is a planning result.
- The outputs of several production stages must be coordinated with each other in such a way that no intermediate stocks are generated.
- During product changes, set-up times apply while production continues so that the resulting product is, however, outside the specifications; plus there are further specific requirements.

The master data in SAP SCM provide that a resource is working at a fixed output rate but different (constant) output rates can be defined. Planning procedures do not allow the definition of continuous values for the output rate. Accordingly, the planner is unable to easily and efficiently set the individual resource output rate for each order.

In the production process, several stages are directly linked to each other so that no storage of intermediate product is possible. An aggravating factor for planning is that the resource output rate on the different production stages can change and that these changes need to be reflected into the output rates of adjacent stages. In the module PP/DS of SAP this is only partially supported by the automatic planning procedure.

In detail, the production process must meet various requirements which can be modeled in the SAP standard in part. Thus, e.g. a resource can only be used for production or it is performing a changeover activity, both cannot be modeled in the SAP standard at the same time. The raw material consumption arising during a changeover is, however, not negligible and must also be considered; one reason being material flow must not be interrupted on intermediate production stages.

To be able to overcome the above-mentioned limitations of the standard, a specific optimization solution which includes a separate user interface was created to allow easy modifications of output rates.

Detailed production planning and scheduling determines the daily production quantity for products on the resources of the sites based on the monthly requirements. Planning is performed for the current month as well as the next 2 months.

The main goals of detailed production planning are:

- The monthly input quantities computed by SNP must be met as accurately as possible.
- The target inventory days of supply of the products is to be met as accurately as possible.
- Changeover times are to be minimized.

Detailed production planning must solve the following essential tasks and respect several constraints:

- A resource can be used only to manufacture one product at the same time, within 1 day there may be at most one changeover, i.e. at most two products can be manufactured per day.
- The preferred production sites should be respected when products are manufactured by multi-sourcing.
- For each resource, an optimal output rate is specified which should be reached if possible; the output may vary between a minimum and a maximum.
- Only a previously defined limited number of product changes and output rate changes are allowed per day, production site and group of resources. Sometimes such changes are allowed only on certain days.
- During a product changeover a very specific changeover time applies per resource, product outside the specifications is produced, and raw materials are, however, consumed.
- Continuous production on all production stages, no resource standstill (except in the case of discontinuations).
- No stocks between production stages, only at the level of raw materials and finished products.
- After a discontinuation, a resource must be started up at a predefined pattern, only certain products are permitted for the first order.
- Raw materials are available only in a limited quantity.
- Production campaigns have a predefined minimum length.
- The products are produced preferably on certain resources, however, changes to another resource are allowed.
- Fixed orders must be taken into account and cannot be modified.
- A certain portion of waste and products outside specifications can be returned to production as raw material.

The optimization task is solved using a multistage mixed-integer optimization model. The model is decomposed into separate parts and solved in consecutive steps. The first step is an allocation of orders to resources and determination of the sequence of orders on the resources. The second step is the definition of order sizes as well as output rates of resources and definition of changeovers.

A checker is available to ensure that manually corrected plans observe all the constraints of the planning task. This is an especially adjusted optimization model which loads a predetermined planning situation and records all violations of constraints in a log file. From this log file, the planner can see both, the detailed figures of partial goals and the degree of non-compliance by soft constraints and possible violations of hard constraints. Figure 27.3 shows the architecture of the detailed production planning solution.

Detailed production planning is started by the planner in the APO after master planning has been completed. Next, the optimization user interface is loaded in the planner's workstation. From this interface, similar to the graphical planning table in SAP SCM, he can control the entire planning process. He can look at the existing

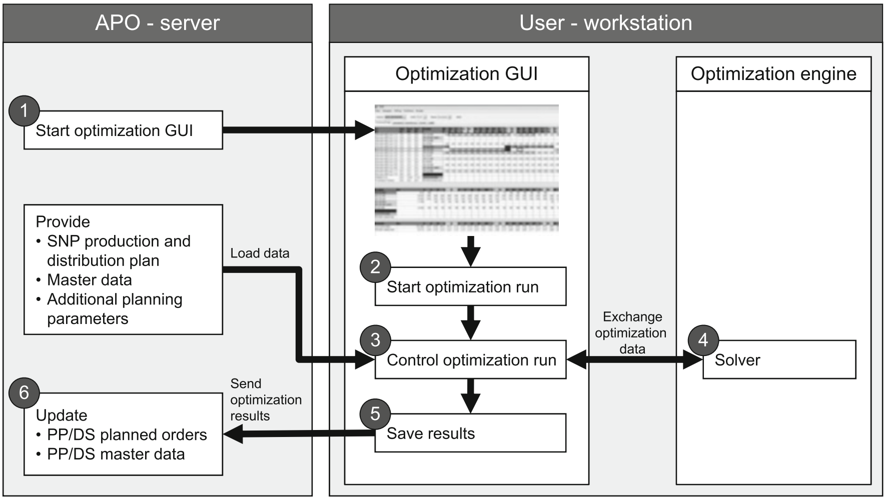


Fig. 27.3 Architecture of detailed production planning solution

order situation, modify the constraints for optimization, trigger an optimization and manually correct optimization results.

After the start of the optimization, all relevant data is loaded from the APO. This includes the input data from the SNP for the monthly production quantities as well as the master data, e.g. the recipes and routings. In addition, settings not available in the SAP standard such as minimum and maximum output rates of resources are transferred. The data is then processed and transformed into the data model of the solver. The various subsequent optimization steps are executed and results exchanged between the solver and the optimization GUI.

After optimization is completed, the planner can verify the results on the interface and if necessary, adjust them manually. Possible changes are adjusting the output rate of resources, the production length of a campaign or defining on which resource a product is to be produced. When the planner is satisfied with the result, he stores it and starts the return transfer to the APO. In the APO, the necessary changes to the master data are automatically carried out to permit new output rates on a resource. Thereafter, planned orders are generated.

Production planning and scheduling is completely modeled with SAP standard objects so that it can be processed further in the subsequent SAP standard process. The generation of process orders for production is then again made entirely in the SAP standard.

27.3.4 Quota Management and Availability Check

Production quantities defined in detailed production planning are used to generate the quotas which must be available to satisfy customer demand per product and region. For this purpose, the production quantities are returned to demand planning. The demands of the regions, and the available stocks and the production quantities are then shown by product. These are compared to the planned sales quantities. If the available quantities are adequate, the quotas can be allocated as required by the demand. Otherwise, the quota planner reduces the amount of the quota to available quantities in regions which cannot be fully supplied (see Fig. 9.5).

Quotas are communicated to sales management, which may accept, increase or decrease them. The desired quotas as defined by the sales management are taken into account by the quota planner. He will then reallocate the quotas accordingly. As an option, sales management may define additional customer specific quotas within a region.

When a customer order file is created, an availability check is always triggered in order to check whether the product for the customer order is available. This is done by checking existing stocks but also planned receipts. In addition, the order quantities are checked first against the quota of the region to which the customer is allocated and second against the customer specific quota if one has been defined.

With every confirmed customer order, the available quota is reduced by the order quantity. A customer order cannot be confirmed without a free quota; this implies that the total of all customer orders within a region may not exceed the quota quantity or available quantities.

The consumption of the quota is monitored by the quota planner continuously and its consumption may lead to a redefinition of the regional quota. This update is communicated to the sales management and afterwards the described coordination takes place. In case of significant deviations, it may be necessary to update the sales quantities in the demand planning. The quotas will then be redefined based on these new sales quantities.

If the available quota is exhausted; the customer order can no longer be confirmed. Where special priorities exist, the customer order can be confirmed after an increase of the quota. When there are no priorities, the customer order is declined and then transferred to backlog processing.

27.3.5 Key Figure Monitoring

New planning of individual parts or throughout the entire planning solution is triggered whenever there are major deviations between the expectations of future and actual development. For this purpose, various key figures are monitored, see Sect. 27.2. The monitoring is done in parallel to the planning steps in demand or production planning.

Key figures are evaluated in a daily review cycle. The signal for a new planning event is given if the threshold of the key figure deviation is exceeded.

The planning does not start automatically. The responsible supply chain planner evaluates the situation and decides upon the start of the planning. While the main basis for the decision should be the planning signal, he may delay the planning for some days or increase the scope of the planning, e.g. start demand planning in all regions, not only in the region where the planning signal was triggered.

27.4 Results and Lessons Learned

With the above-described process, the company was able to substantially increase its responsiveness to changes in the market and in production.

The key factors here are close integration and the coordination of partial processes, and the standardization of processes. The labor-intensive coordination and data transfers could be avoided and planning results are obtained in a short time, and new planning results implemented with little efforts. Moreover, significant influence comes from a well adapted planning process and from an extensive coverage of functional requirements.

By recognizing the need for new planning event, the necessary corrections can be directly triggered without having to accept a long delay up to the following scheduled planning round. Now a completely new planning solution can be obtained within a couple of days. An isolated update of i.e. the network and the detailed production plan can be derived within less than one working day. The efforts to create a new planning solution are significantly lower.

Main benefits were achieved by improvement of the following key performance indicators.

- Significant increase of on time deliveries
- Reduced number of days of supply of finished goods
- Reduction of production costs.

Lost sales in case of increased customer demand were reduced significantly. Excess stock of finished products is avoided completely as the production quantities are synchronized very closely to the market demand. Improved coordination of the production sites increased reactivity to short term demand variations.

The implementation of the planning solution helped the company to improve the organization of the planning department. The benefits were achieved through stable and coordinated processes of planning and execution.

Part V

Conclusions and Outlook

Conclusions and Outlook

28

Hartmut Stadtler, Christoph Kilger, and Herbert Meyr

28.1 Summary of Advanced Planning

The preceding chapters have shown the different steps of implementing an APS, starting with the analysis of a given supply chain, its redesign and subsequently modeling the supply chain from long-term to short-term decision and planning levels. The integration of all planning tasks relating to the fulfillment of customer demand will result in a superior enterprise wide and supply chain wide planning. Thereby, an APS will not only yield improvements on the three crucial factors of competitiveness, namely costs, quality, and time, but it will also allow for

- Making processes and the state of the supply chain more transparent
- Improving flexibility of the supply chain
- Revealing system constraints
- Managing the three buffer types—inventory, capacity, and time—more effectively
- Providing advanced optimization techniques to solve complex decision problems
- Computing what-if scenarios, simulating the impact of decisions in the supply chain.

H. Stadtler
Institute for Logistics and Transport, University of Hamburg, Von-Melle-Park 5, 20146 Hamburg, Germany
e-mail: hartmut.stadtler@uni-hamburg.de

C. Kilger (✉)
Ernst & Young GmbH, Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Heinrich-Böcking-Straße 6–8, 66121 Saarbrücken, Germany
e-mail: christoph.kilger@de.ey.com

H. Meyr
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__28, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2015

Widely available information from all over the supply chain enables the supply chain components to anticipate the demand picture at all stages of the chain, to plan the supply accordingly, to identify and resolve constraints, and to manage the buffers in the supply chain such that service level, costs, and working capital are optimized to meet the business goals. The order fulfillment processes in the supply chain become more transparent, efficient, and effective. Companies and supply chains are able to provide customers with accurate information about the order status and with alerts in the case that an unexpected event causes the delayed delivery of an order. However, before this happens a decision maker can find and check based on an APS alternative ways to fulfill the customer's order, either by a shipment from another warehouse or another production site or by offering products that might be substituted for the product originally requested. Additionally, transparent processes will reduce waste along the supply chain, because waste, e.g. resulting from excess inventories or resources with low utilization rates, will be recognized quickly and measures for its improvement may be introduced. More importantly, due to its optimization capabilities, an APS will keep waste to a minimum, right from the beginning.

With markets and customer expectations changing quickly, supply chains not only have to respond but to anticipate new trends. In some cases, this may be achieved by integrating key customers or key suppliers in the supply chain models represented by the APS. On the other hand, *flexibility* comes into play, which can be discussed along two dimensions: One is to be able to cope with changes in actual demand given the current inventory position, equipment and personnel, the other is to be able to adapt to changing markets over time (sometimes called agility, see Pfohl and Mayer 1999). An APS supports both dimensions. As an example, the ATP module can show ways of using existing inventories in the most effective manner. Also, Production Planning and Scheduling allows for the re-optimization of a new mix of orders quickly. Flexibility is further enhanced by an APS, due to a significant reduction of the frozen (firmed) horizon (as an example see Chap. 22). Midterm Master Planning should not only coordinate the decentralized decision units, but also plan for a reasonable degree of flexibility over time. Finally, APS-based ATP supports more flexible rules for allocating supply to demand and to schedule the fulfillment of customer orders.

In order to improve competitiveness, the *revelation of system constraints* is a crucial part of a continuous improvement process (see also Goldratt 1999). System constraints may be detected at different levels of the planning hierarchy. For example, midterm Master Planning will not only provide an optimal solution for a given situation, it also shows which constraints are binding, i.e. preventing a higher level of our objectives. Looking for ways to lift the system's constraints, e.g. by a more flexible employment of the workforce, will further improve competitiveness. This will give rise to defining several scenarios from which to choose. Compared with former times, defining a scenario and getting an answer is now a matter of hours, not weeks. Therefore, management and planning staff can work together more closely and effectively than before.

28.2 Further Developments of APS

Some of the above statements may still be regarded as visions. But as our case studies have shown, there are already implementations of APS in industry that are showing impressive improvements. In order to extend these success stories to a wider range of companies and supply chains, five main topics have to be addressed carefully:

- Improving modeling and solution capabilities of APS
- Ensure that the required master and transactional data is available and consistent
- Linking APS to controlling
- Extending the applicability of APS to polycentric supply chains
- Integrate APS with the automation layer of technical processes (SCADA, Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition).

28.2.1 Modeling and Solution Capabilities of APS

Although APS are around for several years, additional features are expected to be introduced in the near future. However, the standard architecture of modules most probably will remain stable. Experiences with some modules have shown that some restrictions still may exist in modeling a given (production) process adequately. Given that supply chains have to adapt to new market trends quickly, modeling should be easy to learn and fast to implement. Likewise, one should expect a similar modeling language for all modules provided by an APS vendor (unfortunately this is not always the case).

Furthermore, we experienced that not all models generated have been solvable within reasonable time limits or have not shown a satisfactory solution quality. However, minor changes in the model have improved solvability significantly. Hence, enhanced modeling capabilities and more robust solution procedures solving large problem instances are still looked for.

28.2.2 Quality of Master and Transactional Data

Models and plans are only of value if they have an impact on a supply chain's decision making and operations. This obvious statement is often ignored in practice. First of all, master and transactional data must be of high quality and reflect reality at a level of detail that is matching the intended scope and results from planning. If the level of detail is too low, the plan will not reflect the right decisions a human planner might have taken, aware of all details and based on experience. If the level of detail is too high, the model will become very complex, it might take too long to solve planning problems based on the model, and the quality of the data on which the model is based will be lower: The more details a model comprises, the higher the probability that some data element is not accurate or even wrong.

Secondly, if reality is changing faster than the total time required for data extraction, transformation and provision to create the model, the planning process and optimization time, and the approval and communication of the resulting planning decisions, the quality of the decisions will deteriorate. In this case, acceptance of the planning results and the planning system will suffer, and decision makers will use alternative tools for generating solutions like spreadsheets, where they have better control of the data and the cycle time between data collection and planning results. However, using spreadsheets usually incurs severe drawbacks like lack of data security and consistency as well as an inferior solution quality.

Along with the increasing digitalization of the world and the improving bandwidth, pervasiveness, and semantics of communication networks, we enter an age of ubiquitous information availability. This includes the space of inter- and intra-company communication networks and the space of individual communication devices, connecting planners, decision makers, production supervisors, buyers, transport personnel, managers, sales representatives, etc. every time and everywhere with other persons and systems being involved in the supply chain. This allows for new solutions to feed latest information from the actual execution processes to the planning system, updating the model and allowing for instant plan updates. Some APS vendors like SAP and E2open plan to setup APS-based cloud solutions, enabling a seamless and fast integration of all people and systems in the supply chain. User interfaces will be derived from social media systems (being the most prevalent data entry systems globally) and will support distributed entry of data and collaboration at the planning tasks at hand, e.g. Sales & Operations Planning (see Sect. 8.4).

28.2.3 Linking APS to Controlling

Today, management is more inclined to make use of tools from (the) controlling (department), like budgets or the balanced scorecard, than to rely on APS. Hence, greater emphasis should be placed on *linking APS modules with controlling*, either by linking decision models to key performance indicators or—even better—to incorporate APS into the tool set of controlling.

A good example for the tight integration of controlling processes and supply chain planning are the yearly budgeting process and the demand and master planning processes (sales & operations planning process). Both create an anticipated picture of future customer demand. The former to determine the required financial means to run the business and to allocate budgets to cost centers. The latter to prepare the supply chain for delivering the future demand, to detect limiting constraints, to set a foundation for order promising (ATP). Budgeting is normally done yearly, sales & operations planning monthly or even weekly.

Although both process areas—budgeting and S&OP—might use the same demand plan, this is not always desired. There might be scenarios where not all details of the operational S&OP plan shall be shared with public, whereas the financial budget plan must be made public, at least in an aggregated format for listed corporations. In any case, the operational plan for supply chain purposes and the public plan for budgeting purposes should be aligned as close as possible and the deviation between the two plans should be made explicit, managed and carefully tracked.

A second example of the tight integration of controlling and APS concerns performance management. As described in the previous section APS integrate a large amount of master data and transactional data from customer processes, production processes, transportation, warehousing, procurement, etc. Thus, APS are a perfect source for data that might be used to calculate performance metrics like process times, process costs, inventory, service levels. These operational metrics are of high relevance to setup controlling tools like a Balanced Scorecard. A Balanced Scorecard includes further metrics from finance, customer, other processes, and learning and people perspective. Thus, it creates a 360° view of the performance of a company, that might help in a supply chain context to derive decisions.

28.2.4 Extending APS to Polycentric Supply Chains

So far, APS are best suited for supply chains with centralized control, i.e. mainly for intra-organizational supply chains. Although information exchange, in principle, is no problem for APS implemented in an inter-organizational supply chain, the willingness to operate on the basis of "open books" (e.g. regarding costs and available capacities) cannot always be assumed. Although collaborative planning (Chap. 14) has been introduced, the knowledge of how to adapt plans generated in different planning domains is still in its infancy.

One industry sector is currently leading the development of inter-organizational supply chain management: the electronics industry, mainly large volume consumer electronics OEMs, contract manufacturers, and the corresponding components suppliers:

- OEMs like Apple, Samsung, Microsoft, and Hewlett-Packard, own the brand and the product design and are responsible for marketing and distributing the finished goods via electronics retailers or their own outlet stores.
- Contract manufacturers or specialized assembly plants of the OEMs act as integrators for the component supply chains, synchronizing the demand for assembly, the component supply, and the schedule for the introduction of new product revisions.
- The component suppliers integrate closely into the assembly and distribution stages of the supply chain, synchronizing their own component assembly with the assembly schedule of the contract manufacturer or OEM assembly plants.

In the electronics industry sector demand and supply are changing fast, due to the dynamics in the network (many active players being highly interconnected) and the rapid innovation rate and new product introduction. To balance demand and supply, APS and the corresponding planning processes must extend across legal entities, represent customer demand, inventories and supply capabilities of all sites in the network, and come up with an inter-organizational demand and supply plan.

Typical features in the electronics supply chain planning processes are daily demand commits, feasible production, procurement and transportation plans (rough cut), and optimized air vs. sea transportation. These regular demand and supply updates incorporate the complete electronics supply chain including retailers, OEMs, contract manufacturers, components suppliers and logistics service providers (Karevaska and Kilger 2013).

Great efforts are currently undertaken by APS vendors to match planning issues facing industry sectors with the capabilities of an APS, e.g. inter-organizational planning approaches as discussed above for the electronics industry sector, the issue of safety stocks in a multi-level supply chain, and the issue of incorporating lot-sizing (rules) at different (hierarchical) planning levels. An additional strategy toward a better fit is to devise specific APS modules focusing on the specific needs of certain industry sectors. A further trend addresses the combination of decentralized control on the detailed level with centralized control on a more aggregated level of the supply chain. As Daganzo (2003) shows, decentralized control in a supply chain may lead to a good solution close to the optimum, if certain rules are defined and observed by supply chain partners. These rules might for instance level production quantities at one process, ensuring certain bounds for the consumed and produced quantities upstream and downstream in the supply chain, respectively. Many of these rules have been developed in the context of Lean Manufacturing (see Womack and Jones 2003 for an overview). Some APS vendors like SAP for instance started initiatives to extend their SCM suites (including the APS).

28.2.5 Integration of APS with the Automation Layer of Technical Processes

Under the umbrellas of large research initiatives like Internet of Things in the U.S. and Industrie 4.0 in Germany the technical platforms for production, transportation, warehousing, and distribution processes are changing fundamentally. The essence of this change are enhanced capabilities of technical equipment, parts, assemblies, finished goods, transport units, etc. to connect to the Internet and to form integrated networks that can be controlled by software layers like automation software, manufacturing execution systems, transactional systems like ERP systems, and APS.

In some industry sectors, that require fast reaction to demand and supply changes, fast product change overs, and low cost of goods sold like the fresh milk industry, new scenarios of integrating APS with the automation layer of technical processes are emerging. Consider a fresh milk production facility, consisting of the raw milk storage, multiple filling and packaging lines, and the cold store buffering the finished goods before they are picked up by retailers for distribution. A typical fresh milk production site is responsible for 30–80 SKUs (different packaging sizes and styles, different raw milk qualities, different fat grades, lactose free vs. regular, different brands and labels). This portfolio has to be produced every day. Stock-outs lead to loss in sales for the milk producer and for the retailers, as consumers will change to another supermarket if fresh milk is not available. Therefore, the filling and packaging lines usually have a higher capacity than required to fulfill the total demand of a day. The constraining factor is the cold store, that can hold only a limited volume of SKUs (running a cold store is energy-intensive and therefore produces high costs). As a consequence, if the filling and packaging lines are producing at full speed, the cold store will be completely filled after a couple of hours.

By integrating the automation layer of the machines in the filling and packaging lines with the APS of the production site, the speed and the product mix of the lines can be directly controlled by the APS, synchronizing the distribution and replenishment plan of the retailers with the production plan and the production execution.

As the Internet of Things and Industrie 4.0 initiatives are driven forward, we expect further scenarios to emerge where the automation layer of technical processes will be directly integrated with an APS. This integration will plug the technical equipment of manufacturing, transportation, warehousing, and distribution directly into a supply chain planning layer, allowing for immediate transformation of supply plans into execution.

28.3 Management of Change Aspects

In order to use APS effectively, managers and employees must have *special training*, enabling them to interpret solutions, recognize interactions with other parts of the supply chain, set up scenarios and react to alerts appropriately. In addition to project management, the mastery of change management and the basics of computer science, consultants now must have knowledge and experience in generating adequate models of the supply chain for the different modules of an APS. These models, neither being too detailed nor too rough, have to support decision making and must be solvable with reasonable computational efforts. Inadequate models may even deteriorate the position of the supply chain instead of improving it.

Introducing an APS is not just adding another software package to those already existing in a company. On the contrary, it will replace many individual software solutions formerly “owned” by individual employees. Also, some types of decisions, which formerly required several employees, like creating a detailed schedule for the shop floor, will now be made (almost) automatically. Consequently, some of the employees will have to change to other positions, which may result in some resistance to change. On the other hand, optimization capabilities of APS will yield better plans than before with the additional option of checking alternatives interactively, thus giving those involved a greater satisfaction.

Last but not least, one should bear in mind that introducing an APS changes the way an organization or supply chain works. The definition of processes fulfilling the needs of different market segments will have to be reflected within the organizational structure. For legally separated firms or profit centers within a single firm covering only a portion of a given process, an effective reward system has to be installed in order to achieve the best solution for a supply chain as a whole and not get trapped in isolated sub-optima (see e.g. Fleischmann 1999).

Recent reports on APS implementation projects have shown that the above recommendations should be taken seriously. Some APS users may have observed a discrepancy between their expectations, the vendors' promises and the capabilities of consultants as well as the APS software. In order that all parties involved get a realistic view, prototyping seems to be a good choice. Also, great visions should not be approached in one step, instead a stepwise introduction of SCM ideas and software support seems more appropriate.

28.4 Scope of Supply Chain Management

In recent years, several empirical studies have been conducted aiming at the revelation of key success factors for an effective, superior supply chain. As one may expect, a great number of factors have been proposed and tested. Two noteworthy factors, which have been found to be significant, are "*… structural elements such as having an integrated information system, and behavioral relationship building elements such as trust and commitment …* " (Jayaram et al. 2004). These findings are in accordance with our recommendations throughout this book.

There are different ways to set up supply chains, each capable of achieving specific strategic and operational goals of the company. Redesign of organizations and processes builds on strategic objectives as well as on enabling information technology. Performance Management has to ensure transparency in operational control information, but also provides tools and methods to lead all employees to achieving the strategic goals. Innovative information technology—like APS—provide new ways of working, accelerating the business, and thus creating sources of strategic impact ("Business drives IT & IT drives Business"). Change management is the binding and bonding element in making the business transformation sustainable, by addressing skills and capabilities, but also behavior and the value system of the people.

With regard to future developments of SCM as a whole, one can expect that it will not only concentrate on the order fulfillment process alone, but will incorporate neighboring processes like product life cycle management, automation of technical processes, and financial management.

References

Daganzo, C. F. (2003). *A theory of supply chains. Lecture Notes in Economics and Mathematical Systems* (Vol. 526). Berlin/London: Springer.

Fleischmann, B. (1999). Kooperation von Herstellern in der Konsumgüterdistribution. In E. Engelhard & E. Sinz (Eds.), *Kooperation im Wettbewerb. Neue Formen und Gestaltungskonzepte im Zeichen der Gobalisierung und Informationstechnologie* (pp. 68–196). Wiesbaden: Gabler.

Goldratt, E. (1999). *Theory of constraints*. Croton-on-Hudson: North River Press.

Jayaram, J., Kannan, V., & Tan, K. (2004). Influence of initiators on supply chain value creation. *International Journal of Production Research, 42*, 4377–4399.

Karevaska, S. & Kilger, C. (2013). An approach for mastering the evolutionary and revolutionary development of the electronics industry sector. In T. Wimmer & S. Hucke (Eds.), *Inspiration, Ideas, Innovation, 30. Deutscher Logistik Kongress* (pp. 51–75). Berlin: DVV Media Group.

Pfohl, H.-C. & Mayer, S. (1999). Wettbewerbsvorteile durch exzellentes Logistikmanagement. *Logistik Management, 1*(4), 275–281.

Womack, J. P. & Jones, D. T. (2003). *Lean thinking* (1st ed.). New York: Free Press.

Part VI

Supplement

Forecast Methods

29

Herbert Meyr

In Chap. 29 we will show how demand planning can be done when seasonality and trend are given. For a comprehensive introduction to forecasting in general the reader is referred to Hanke and Wichern (2009) or Makridakis et al. (1998).

29.1 Forecasting for Seasonality and Trend

This section introduces *Winters' method* which is appropriate for multiplicative seasonal models (see Chap. 7). In Sect. 29.2 the parameters of Winters' method are initialized. This incorporates the introduction of *linear regression*, too. A working example illustrates the explanations.

29.1.1 Working Example

Figure 29.1 shows the sales volume of a supplementary product of a large German shoe retailer. The data are aggregated over the whole sales region and comprise a time horizon of 4 weeks. In our working example we use the first 3 weeks (days −20, …, 0) as input and — starting with day 1 — try to estimate day by day the sales of the fourth week.

Two observations are striking when analyzing the data:

- There seems to be a common sales pattern with weekly repetition. Saturdays usually show the highest, Sundays the lowest sales volume of a week. So weekly seasonality can be assumed with a cycle length of $T = 7$ days.

H. Meyr (✉)
Department of Supply Chain Management (580C), University of Hohenheim, 70593 Stuttgart, Germany
e-mail: H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7_29,

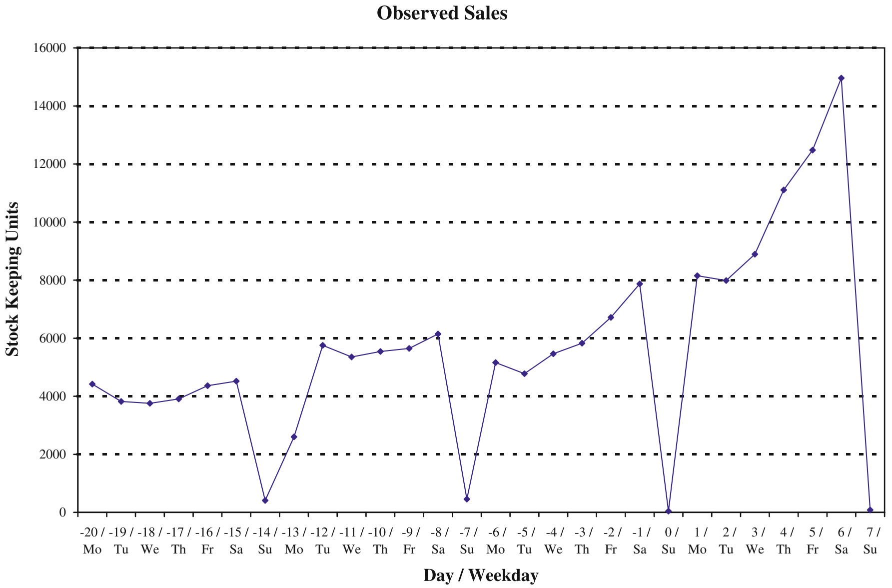


Fig. 29.1 Sales volume of a supplementary product of a German shoe retailer

- Sales per week appear to be continuously increasing. This is obvious when all 4 weeks are considered. But even within the first 3 weeks a (weaker) trend of growing sales is visible.

Since the amplitude of seasonality is increasing, too, a seasonal multiplicative forecast model seems justified. All subsequent explanations will be demonstrated by use of this working example.

29.1.2 Modeling Seasonality and Trend

As already shown in Sect. 7.4 a multiplicative seasonal model is characterized by the parameters a and b describing the trend and the seasonal coefficients c_t modeling the seasonality of period t. Figure 29.2 makes clear that the trend is expressed by the linear function $a + b \cdot t$ with t denoting periods of time (e.g., days in our working example).

A sales volume x_t observed in period t is modeled by

$$x_t = (a + b \cdot t) \cdot c_t + u_t \tag{29.1}$$

with the seasonal coefficients c_t in- or decreasing the trend. Please note, if all seasonal coefficients are equal to 1, seasonality disappears and the model reduces to a simple trend model (see, e.g., Silver et al. 1998, p. 93). The erratic noise u_t makes things difficult. Because of the randomness that is represented by u_t the other

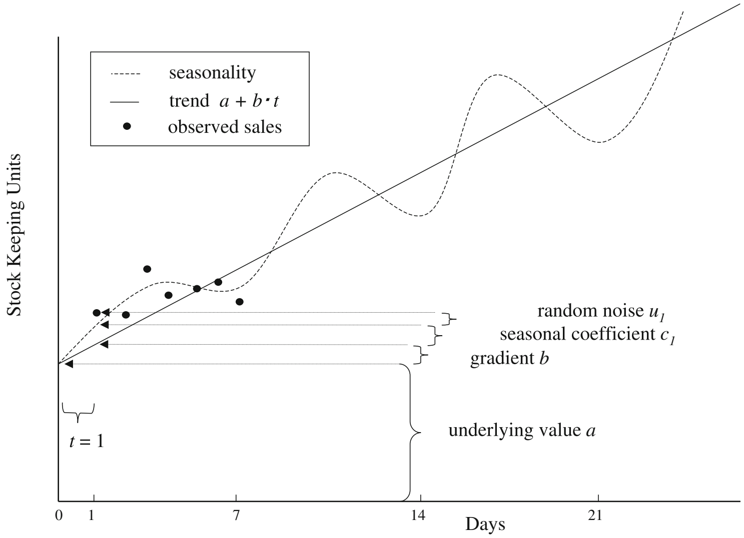


Fig. 29.2 Modeling seasonality and trend

parameters cannot be measured exactly, but have to be predicted. In the following the superscript ^ is used to distinguish between an observation (no superscript) that has been measured and its forecast being estimated without this knowledge.

Let $\hat{a}_t, \hat{b}_t$ and $\hat{c}_{t-T+1}, \ldots, \hat{c}_t$ denote the forecasts of $a.$, $b.$ and the seasonal coefficients $c.$ that are valid in period t. Then (29.1) can be engaged to estimate the sales volume $\hat{x}^t_{t+s}$ of all subsequent periods $t + s$ $(s = 1, 2, \ldots)$. For example, the sales volume of the next seasonal cycle is predicted in period t by

$$\hat{x}^t_{t+s} = (\hat{a}_t + \hat{b}_t \cdot s) \cdot \hat{c}_{t+s-T} \quad (s = 1, \ldots, T). \tag{29.2}$$

The method of Winters described in the next subsection iteratively computes the sales estimation of only the subsequent period $t + 1$. For this reason we can use the simpler notation $\hat{x}_{t+1}$ instead of $\hat{x}^t_{t+1}$.

29.1.3 Winters' Method

The method of Winters (1960) basically builds on (29.2) and the principle of exponential smoothing which has been introduced in Chap. 7. Since sales are predicted indirectly via $\hat{a}.$, $\hat{b}.$ and $\hat{c}.$ in (29.2), these three types of parameters have to be estimated by means of exponential smoothing instead of the sales volume itself (as it has been done by (7.5) for models without trend and seasonality). Remember the generic principle of exponential smoothing:

$$\text{new forecast} = sc \cdot \text{latest observation} + (1 - sc) \cdot \text{last forecast}. \tag{29.3}$$

Table 29.1 Exponential smoothing applied in Winters' method

New forecast	Smoothing constant sc	Latest observation	Last forecast
$\hat{a}_{t+1}$	α	$x_{t+1}/\hat{c}_{t+1-T}$	$\hat{a}_t + \hat{b}_t \cdot 1$
$\hat{b}_{t+1}$	β	$\hat{a}_{t+1} - \hat{a}_t$	$\hat{b}_t$
$\hat{c}_{t+1}$	γ	$x_{t+1}/\hat{a}_{t+1}$	$\hat{c}_{t+1-T}$

Table 29.2 Forecasting the fourth week using Winters' method

t	Weekday	x_t	$\hat{x}_t$	$\hat{a}_t$	$\hat{b}_t$	$\hat{c}_t$
−6	Monday		Initialization			1.245693
−5	Tuesday					1.115265
−4	Wednesday					1.088853
−3	Thursday					1.135378
−2	Friday					1.178552
−1	Saturday					1.229739
0	Sunday			5,849.0	123.3	0.006520
1	Monday	8,152	**7,440**	**6,429.8**	**489.3**	**1.2523...**
2	Tuesday	7,986	**7,717**	7,112.3	643.9	1.1175...
3	Wednesday	8,891	8,445	8,083.6	905.8	1.0922...
4	Thursday	11,107	10,206	9,624.0	1,413.5	1.1410...
5	Friday	12,478	13,008	10,677.6	1,125.5	1.1756...
6	Saturday	14,960	14,515	12,092.8	1,357.3	1.2319...
7	Sunday	81	88	12,628.5	700.0	0.0065...

The *new forecast* of the current period estimating the subsequent period(s) can be calculated by smoothing the *latest observation*, i.e., the observation in the current period and the *last forecast* that has been made to predict the current period's observation. The smoothing constant $sc \in (0; 1)$ determines the weight the new observation has. The higher the smoothing constant the more importance is given to the latest observation. Table 29.1 summarizes how Winters applies exponential smoothing in period $t+1$ to estimate the parameters $\hat{a}_{t+1}$, $\hat{b}_{t+1}$ and $\hat{c}_{t+1}$ determining the sales forecast $\hat{x}_{t+2}$ of the subsequent period (29.2).

These three types of equations become clear when looking at our working example. We start our computation at the end of day $t = 0$. Table 29.2 further illustrates this proceeding:

1. **Initialization**:

   In order to get things work initial values $\hat{a}_0$, $\hat{b}_0$ and $\hat{c}_{-6}, \ldots, \hat{c}_0$ (seasonal coefficients for each weekday) have to be given. As examples Sects. 29.2.2 (for $\hat{c}_.$) and 29.2.3 (for $\hat{a}_0$, $\hat{b}_0$) show how these values can be computed from the sales observations of the first 3 weeks (day $-20, \ldots, 0$). For the moment we will accept in blank the values $\hat{a}_0 = 5,849.0$, $\hat{b}_0 = 123.3$ and $\hat{c}_{-6} = 1.245693$ that are used in Table 29.2.[1]

2. **Estimating the sales volume of period** $t + 1$:

   Applying (29.2) we can estimate the sales volume $\hat{x}_1$ of period 1:

$$\hat{x}_1 = (\hat{a}_0 + \hat{b}_0 \cdot 1) \cdot \hat{c}_{-6} = (5,849.0 + 123.3) \cdot 1.245693 = 7,440$$

   The linear trend $(\hat{a}_0 + \hat{b}_0 \cdot 1)$ does not consider any seasonal influences and will therefore be called "*deseasonalized*". Since sales on Mondays are (estimated to be) about 25 % higher than average weekly sales ($c_{-6} = 1.245693$), the trend has to be increased accordingly. Please note that at the end of day 0 sales of day 2 (Tuesday) could roughly be estimated to amount to $(\hat{a}_0 + \hat{b}_0 \cdot 2) \cdot \hat{c}_{-5} = 6,798$. However, a more accurate forecast of $\hat{x}_2$ can be given at the end of day 1 because the sales observation x_1 of day 1 offers further information.

3. **Observation in period** $t + 1$:

   In day 1 sales x_1 of 8,152 stock keeping units (SKU) are observed.

4. **Using the latest observation to update trend and seasonal coefficients:**

   The latest observation x_1 improves the forecast of the trend and Monday's seasonal coefficient. So the smoothing constants $\alpha = 0.8$, $\beta = 0.8$ and $\gamma = 0.3$ are applied to the three exponential smoothing equations defined in Table 29.1:

   (a) The underlying value $\hat{a}_{.}$ of the trend is updated as follows:

$$\hat{a}_1 = \alpha \frac{x_1}{\hat{c}_{-6}} + (1 - \alpha)(\hat{a}_0 + \hat{b}_0) = 0.8 \cdot \frac{8,152}{1.245693} + 0.2 \cdot 5,972.3 = 6,429.8$$

   Thereby, the "deseasonalized" sales volume $\frac{x_1}{\hat{c}_{-6}}$ of day 1 serves as a new observation for the underlying value, while $(\hat{a}_0 + \hat{b}_0 \cdot 1)$ was the forecast of the deseasonalized sales of day 1 which has been obtained in period 0 (29.1).

   (b) Using $\hat{a}_1$, the new gradient $\hat{b}_1$ can be calculated:

$$\hat{b}_1 = \beta(\hat{a}_1 - \hat{a}_0) + (1 - \beta)\hat{b}_0 = 0.8(6,429.8 - 5,849) + 0.2 \cdot 123.3 = 489.3$$

   Between day 0 and day 1 the underlying value $a_{.}$ has been increased from $\hat{a}_0$ to $\hat{a}_1$. Since $\hat{a}_1$ is based on the latest sales observation x_1, this is interpreted as the "new observation" of the gradient $b_{.}$ which again has to be exponentially smoothed.

   (c) The same procedure is applied to the seasonal coefficient $\hat{c}_1$:

---

[1] Note that the initial seasonal coefficients $\hat{c}_{-6}, \ldots, \hat{c}_0$ are printed with two additional digits in order to indicate that high precision floating point arithmetic — commonly used in APS, programming languages, and spreadsheets — is applied throughout the working example.

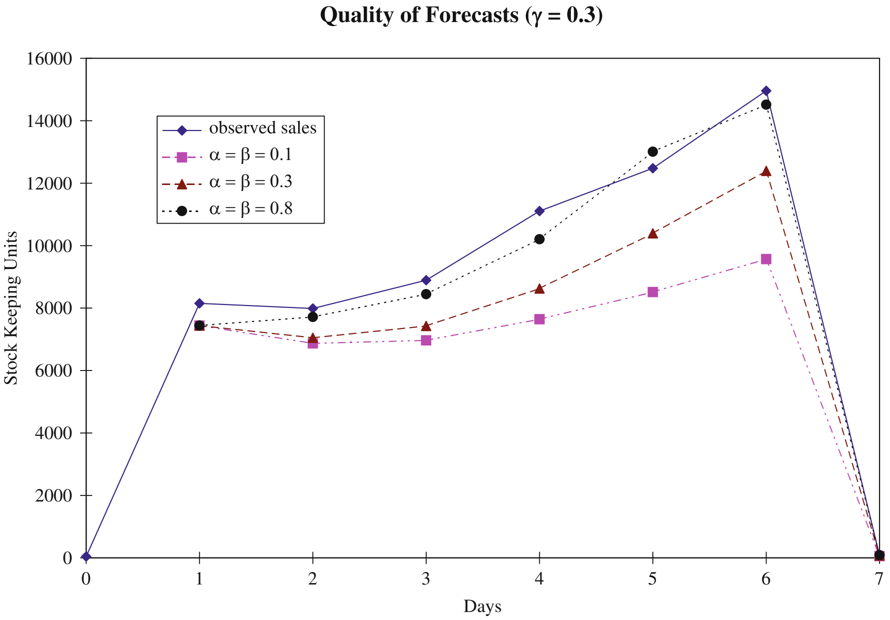


Fig. 29.3 Variation of the smoothing constants α and β

$$\hat{c}_1 = \gamma \frac{x_1}{\hat{a}_1} + (1-\gamma)\hat{c}_{-6} = 0.3\frac{8,152}{6,429.8} + 0.7 \cdot 1.245693 = 1.2523$$

$\hat{c}_{-6}$ was the last forecast of the Monday's seasonal coefficient. The new observation of the seasonal influence of a Monday, however, is achieved by dividing the observed sales volume x_1 (including seasonal influences) by $\hat{a}_1$ (deseasonalized).

5. **Stepping forward in time:**

   Now we can go one day ahead (increasing t by 1) and repeat the steps (2) to (5). At the end of day 1 the sales volume $\hat{x}_2$ of day 2 is estimated by

$$\hat{x}_2 = (\hat{a}_1 + \hat{b}_1 \cdot 1) \cdot \hat{c}_{-5} = (6,429.8 + 489.3 \cdot 1) \cdot 1.115265 = 7,717$$

   and so on...

Table 29.2 shows the results of Winters' method when applied to the days 2–7.

Figure 29.3 illustrates the consequences of a variation of the smoothing constants α and β of the trend. Generally, smoothing constants out of the intervals $\alpha \in [0.02; 0.51]$, $\beta \in [0.005; 0.176]$ and $\gamma \in [0.05; 0.5]$ are recommended (see Silver et al. 1998, p. 108). In our working example, however, $\alpha = \beta = 0.8$ perform best, i.e., the few latest observations get a very high weight and smoothing is only weak. Thus, the forecast is able to react quickly to the progressively rising sales of the fourth week.

29.2 Initialization of Trend and Seasonal Coefficients

Until now we have not shown how the trend and seasonal coefficients can be initialized using the information that is given by the sales volume of the first 3 weeks. The next subsection demonstrates how the data basis can be improved if additional information is considered. Sections 29.2.2 and 29.2.3 finally present the initialization of the seasonal coefficients $\hat{c}_.$ and the trend parameters $\hat{a}_.$ and $\hat{b}$.

29.2.1 Consideration of Further Information

When looking at the data of the first 3 weeks (see Fig. 29.1) two phenomena seem to be contradictory to the assumption of a linear trend with seasonality:

1. Sales on Monday -13 are unexpectedly low. In weeks 1 and 3 sales on Mondays are clearly higher than sales on Tuesdays.
2. While the trend of weekly increasing sales is obvious, sales on Sunday 0 are much lower than sales on the respective Sundays of the first 2 weeks (days -14 and -7).

We want to know whether these inconsistencies are purely random or due to an identifiable actuator and get the following information:

1. In some parts of Germany Monday -13 was a holiday. Therefore, 58 % of the stores of the shoe retailer were closed this day.
2. Usually, shoe stores have to be closed on Sundays in Germany. Some few cities, however, granted a special authorization for sale. Starting with the third week $93\frac{1}{3}$ % of these cities do not grant such an authorization any more.

We can now improve our data basis by exploiting this information about special influences in our further investigations. Therefore, the sales volume of day -13 is increased by 138.1 % ($x_{-13} = 2,600 \cdot \frac{100}{100-58} = 6,190.4761$) and sales on Sundays -14 (410 SKU) and -7 (457 SKU) are decreased by $93\frac{1}{3}$ % so that $x_{-14} = 27.\bar{3}$ and $x_{-7} = 30.4\bar{6}$. In the next two subsections original sales are replaced by these corrected sales.

29.2.2 Determination of Seasonal Coefficients by the Ratio-to-Moving Averages Decomposition

The ratio-to-moving averages decomposition (see, e.g., Makridakis et al. 1998, p. 109) is used as an example to determine the initial seasonal coefficients of Winters' method. In Sect. 29.1.3 we already applied the equation:

$$\text{observed sales in } t = (\text{deseasonalized sales in } t) \cdot (\text{seasonal coefficient of } t).$$

In other words, if we want to isolate seasonal coefficients, we have to compute

Table 29.3 Ratio-to-moving averages decomposition

Week	Day	Weekday	(Corr.) x_t	Moving aver. (ma_t)	$o^{week}_{weekday}(t) = \frac{x_t}{ma_t}$
1	−20	Monday	4,419		
1	−19	Tuesday	3,821		
1	−18	Wednesday	3,754		
1	−17	Thursday	3,910	**3,544.6**	1.1031
1	−16	Friday	4,363	**3,797.7**	1.1489
1	−15	Saturday	4,518	4,074.0	1.1090
1	−14	Sunday	$(27.33\bar{3})$	4,302.3	0.0064
2	−13	Monday	(6,190.4761)	4,535.1	1.3650
2	−12	Tuesday	5,755	4,719.0	1.2195
2	−11	Wednesday	5,352	4,951.1	1.0810
2	−10	Thursday	5,540	**4,951.6**	1.1188
2	−9	Friday	5,650	4,804.1	1.1761
2	−8	Saturday	6,143	4,664.6	1.3169
2	−7	Sunday	$(30.46\bar{6})$	4,680.6	0.0065
3	−6	Monday	5,158	4,721.8	1.0924
3	−5	Tuesday	4,779	4,873.8	0.9806
3	−4	Wednesday	5,464	5,120.8	1.0670
3	−3	Thursday	5,828	**5,122.4**	1.1377
3	−2	Friday	6,714		
3	−1	Saturday	7,872		
3	0	Sunday	42		

$$\text{seasonal coefficient of period } t = \frac{\text{observed sales in } t}{\text{deseasonalized sales in } t} \tag{29.4}$$

where the *deseasonalized sale in period* t is a sales volume that does not contain any seasonal influences. But how to determine such a value?

Considering our working example, the sales volume of a full week is apparently not influenced by daily sales peaks. So the most intuitive way to obtain sales data without seasonal influences is to compute daily sales averaged over a full week. This leads to average daily sales $\frac{4{,}419+\ldots+27.\bar{3}}{7} = 3,544.6, 4,951.6$ and $5,122.4$ SKU for the weeks 1–3 (see Table 29.3). Thereby, the Thursday is settled in the middle of each week.

But we can employ the same procedure for each other time period of 7 days, e.g., day −19, …, −13, and assign the average daily sales 3,797.7 to the medium Friday −16. By doing so we compute moving averages over a full seasonal cycle of 7 days for each day −17, …, −3 which represent deseasonalized daily sales volumes. Table 29.3 illustrates the whole procedure.

In a next step we apply (29.4), thus setting the observed sales x_t in *ratio to* the deseasonalized *moving averages* (remember the name of the algorithm). The result are multiple observations of seasonal coefficients $o^{week}_{weekday}(t)$ for each day of the week (three for a Thursday and two for each other weekday) which still contain the random noise u_t.

Table 29.4 Reducing randomness of seasonal coefficients

Week	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Suday	$\sum$
1				**1.1031**	1.1489	1.1090	0.0064	
2	1.3650	1.2195	1.0810	**1.1188**	1.1761	1.3169	0.0065	
3	1.0924	0.9806	1.0670	**1.1377**				o^{total}:
$o^{aver}_{weekday}$	1.2287	1.1000	1.0740	**1.1199**	1.1625	1.2130	0.0064	**6.9045**
$\hat{c}_{\cdot}$	1.2457	1.1153	1.0889	1.1354	1.1786	1.2297	0.0065	7.00

In order to reduce this randomness, now we compute the average seasonal coefficients $o^{aver}_{weekday}$ of each weekday (Table 29.4). For example, for the Thursday we get

$$o^{aver}_{Thursday} = \frac{o^{week\,1}_{Thursday}(-17) + o^{week\,2}_{Thursday}(-10) + o^{week\,3}_{Thursday}(-3)}{number\ of\ weeks} =$$

$$= \frac{1.1031 + 1.1188 + 1.1377}{3} = 1.1199$$

If a pure trend without any seasonal influence is given, one would expect all seasonal coefficients to equal 1 (see Sect. 29.1.2), thus summing up to 7 for a weekly seasonal cycle. As we can see in Table 29.4, the sum of our average seasonal coefficients $o^{total} = \sum_{day=Monday}^{Sunday} o^{aver}_{day} = 6.9045$ falls short of 7. To reflect the trend correctly, we have to normalize our $o^{aver}_{\cdot}$ by multiplying them with the constant $7/o^{total}$. The resulting final seasonal coefficients for *Monday* … *Sunday* are already known as $\hat{c}_{-6}, \ldots, \hat{c}_0$ from Table 29.2.

29.2.3 Determining the Trend by Linear Regression

Finally it will be shown how the trend parameters a and b can be determined. When "deseasonalizing" the observed sales by dividing through c_t one can see from (29.5) that the trend $a + b \cdot t$, distorted by some random noise $\frac{u_t}{c_t}$, results:

$$d_t = \frac{x_t}{c_t} = \frac{(a + b \cdot t) \cdot c_t + u_t}{c_t} = a + b \cdot t + \frac{u_t}{c_t}. \tag{29.5}$$

The parameters a and b can be estimated by means of *linear regression* (see Wood and Fildes 1976, p. 76). As Fig. 29.4 shows, appropriate estimators $\hat{a}$ and $\hat{b}$ are computed by minimizing the (squared) vertical distances between the deseasonalized sales $d_t = \frac{x_t}{\hat{c}_t}$ and the trend line $\hat{a} + \hat{b} \cdot t$. This useful way of eliminating the random noise is also applied in causal forecasts and has already been introduced in Sect. 7.4.2.

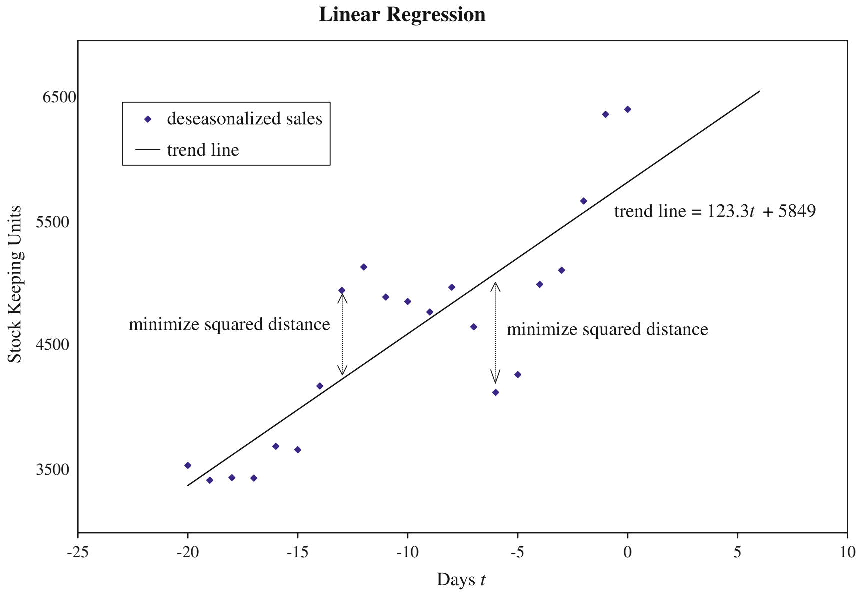


Fig. 29.4 Visualization of linear regression

Table 29.5 and Eqs. (29.6) and (29.7) illustrate how the trend parameters $\hat{a}_0$ and $\hat{b}_0$ have been calculated by linear regression to initialize Winters' method in Sect. 29.1.3:

$$\hat{b}_0 = \frac{\sum_t (t-\bar{t})(d_t - \bar{d})}{\sum_t (t-\bar{t})^2} = \frac{94,943}{770} = 123.3 \tag{29.6}$$

$$\hat{a}_0 = \bar{d} - \hat{b}_0 \cdot \bar{t} = 4,616 - 123.3 \cdot (-10) = 5,849 \tag{29.7}$$

Here $\bar{t} = \frac{1}{21} \cdot \sum_t t = \frac{-210}{21} = -10$ and $\bar{d} = \frac{1}{21} \cdot \sum_t d_t = \frac{96{,}936}{21} = 4,616$ represent the average values of t and d_t over the first weeks of our working example.

Please note that similar deseasonalized sales have been obtained by the moving averages computation in the last subsection. These could also be used to estimate $\hat{a}$ and $\hat{b}$ by linear regression. In this case, however, only 15 instead of 21 observations of deseasonalized sales would have been available, thus preparing a noticeably smaller sample to overcome randomness.

Table 29.5 Calculation of linear regression

Week	Day	(Corr.) x_t	$\hat{c}_t$	$d_t = \frac{x_t}{\hat{c}_t}$	$(t - \bar{t})^2$	$(t - \bar{t})(d_t - \bar{d}_t)$
1	−20	4,419	1.2457	3,547	100	10,686
1	−19	3,821	1.1153	3,426	81	10,709
1	−18	3,754	1.0889	3,448	64	9,347
1	−17	3,910	1.1354	3,444	49	8,206
1	−16	4,363	1.1786	3,702	36	5,484
1	−15	4,518	1.2297	3,674	25	4,710
1	−14	$(27.333\bar{3})$	0.0065	4,192	16	1,695
2	−13	(6,190.4761)	1.2457	4,970	9	−1060
2	−12	5,755	1.1153	5,160	4	−1088
2	−11	5,352	1.0889	4,915	1	−299
2	−10	5,540	1.1354	4,879	0	0
2	−9	5,650	1.1786	4,794	1	178
2	−8	6,143	1.2297	4,995	4	759
2	−7	$(30.466\bar{6})$	0.0065	4,673	9	170
3	−6	5,158	1.2457	4,141	16	−1,901
3	−5	4,779	1.1153	4,285	25	−1,655
3	−4	5,464	1.0889	5,018	36	2,413
3	−3	5,828	1.1354	5,133	49	3,620
3	−2	6,714	1.1786	5,697	64	8,646
3	−1	7,872	1.2297	6,401	81	16,068
3	0	42	0.0065	6,442	100	18,256
$\sum$	−210			96,936	770	94,943

References

Hanke, J., & Wichern, D. (2009). *Business forecasting* (9th ed.). New Jersey: Pearson/Prentice Hall.

Makridakis, S. G., Wheelwright, S., & Hyndman, R. (1998). *Forecasting: Methods and applications* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Silver, E., Pyke, D., & Peterson, R. (1998). *Inventory management and production planning and scheduling* (3rd ed.). New York: Wiley.

Winters, P. (1960). Forecasting sales by exponentially weighted moving averages. *Management Science*, *6*(3), 324–342.

Wood, D., & Fildes, R. (1976). *Forecasting for business: Methods and applications*. London: Longman.

Linear and Mixed Integer Programming

30

Hartmut Stadtler

Linear Programming (LP) is one of the most famous optimization techniques introduced independently by Kantarowitsch in 1939 and by Dantzig in 1949 (Krekó 1973). LP is applicable in decision situations where quantities (variables) can take any real values only restricted by linear (in-) equalities, e.g. for representing capacity constraints. Still, LP has turned out to be very useful for many companies so far. LP is used in APS e.g. in Master Planning as well as in Distribution and Transport Planning. Very powerful solution algorithms have been developed (named solvers), solving LP models with thousands of variables and constraints within a few minutes on a personal computer.

In case some decisions can only be expressed by integer values, e.g. the number of additional shifts for a given week, LP usually will not provide a feasible solution. Similarly, logical implications might be modeled by binary variables. As an example consider the decision whether to setup a flow line for a certain product or not: A value of “0” will be attributed to a decision “no” and a value of “1” to “yes”. Still, the corresponding model may be described by linear (in-) equalities. In case the model solely consists of integer variables, it is called a pure *Integer Programming* (IP) model. If the model contains both real and integer variables a *Mixed Integer Programming* (MIP) model is given.

Thus, both LP and MIP comprise special model types and associated solution algorithms. Numerous articles and textbooks have been written on LP and MIP (e.g. Martin 1999; Winston 2004; Wolsey 1998) representing a high level of knowledge which cannot be reviewed here. In order to give an understanding of LP and MIP, only the basic ideas will be provided in the following by means of an example.

First, an LP model is presented and solved graphically (Sect. 30.1). This model is then converted into an IP model and solved by Branch and Bound (Sect. 30.2),

---

H. Stadtler (✉)
Institute for Logistics and Transport, University of Hamburg, Von-Melle-Park 5, 20146 Hamburg, Germany
e-mail: hartmut.stadtler@uni-hamburg.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__30,

where for each submodel a LP model is solved graphically. Finally, a few remarks and recommendations regarding the effective use of LP and MIP complements this chapter (Sect. 30.3).

30.1 Linear Programming

A hypothetical production planning problem is considered here, where two products A and B can be produced within the next month. The associated production amounts are represented by (real) variables x_1 and x_2 measured in ten tons. Both products have to pass through the same production process. The available capacity is 20 days (on a two shift basis). The production of ten tons, or one unit, of product A lasts 5 days, while the respective coefficient for product B is 4 days. This situation is represented by inequality (30.2).
LP model:

$$\text{Max!} \quad 19x_1 + 16x_2 \tag{30.1}$$

subject to

$$(1) \quad 5x_1 + 4x_2 \leq 20 \tag{30.2}$$

$$(2) \quad -x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 5 \tag{30.3}$$

$$(3) \quad 2x_1 + 5x_2 \geq 10 \tag{30.4}$$

$$(\text{NNC}) \quad x_1 \geq 0,\ x_2 \geq 0 \tag{30.5}$$

Inequality (30.3) represents the demand constraints, stating that only sales of product B are limited. However, we might increase sales if we also offer product A: For every two units of product A we can extend sales of product B by one unit (the reason may be that one has to offer a complete product range to some customer groups in order to sell product B). Although we aim at maximizing our revenue (30.1), we also want to make sure that a contribution margin of at least $10,000 is reached within the next month (30.4). Note, the dimension “one thousand” is scaled down to “one” for the contribution margin constraint. Obviously, one cannot produce negative amounts which is reflected by the non-negativity constraints (NNC, see (30.5)).

This small LP model can be solved algebraically by the Simplex algorithm (or one of its variants, see Martin 1999). However, we will resort to a graphical representation (Fig. 30.1). Variables x_1 and x_2 depict the two dimensions. Inequalities restrict the combination of feasible values of variables. The limits of the corresponding set of feasible solutions are illustrated by a line (see Fig. 30.1). Whether the set of feasible solutions lies below or above a line is depicted by three adjacent strokes being part of the set of feasible solutions.

The intersection of all the (in-) equalities of a model defines the set of feasible solutions (shaded area in Fig. 30.1). For a given objective function

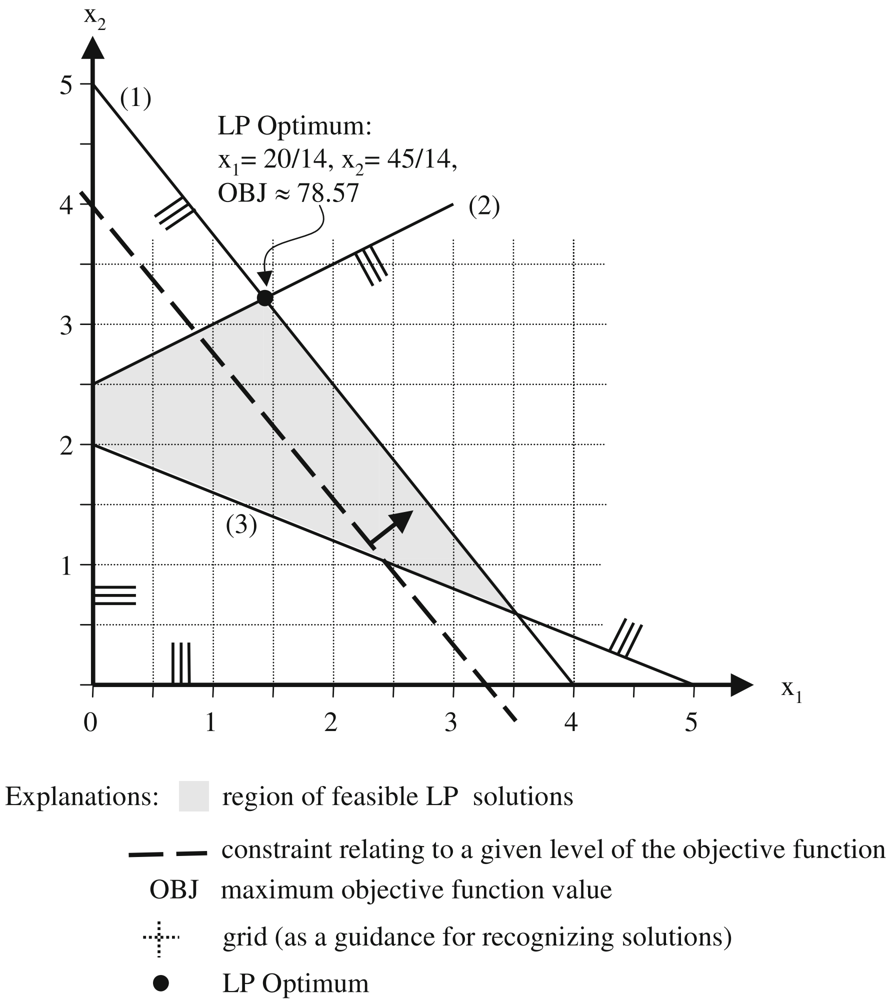


Fig. 30.1 Graphical representation of an LP model

value the objective function itself is an equation (see dashed line in Fig. 30.1, corresponding to a value of 76 [$000]). Since we do not know the optimal value of the objective function we can try out several objective function values. An arrow shows the direction in which the objective function value can be increased. Actually, we can move the dashed line further to the right. The maximum is reached once it cannot be moved any further without leaving the set of feasible solutions. This is the case for $x_1 = 20/14$ and $x_2 = 45/14$ resulting in a revenue of 78.57 [$000]. The optimal solution has been reached at the intersection of inequalities (1) and (2). It can be shown that it suffices to look for an optimal solution only at the intersections

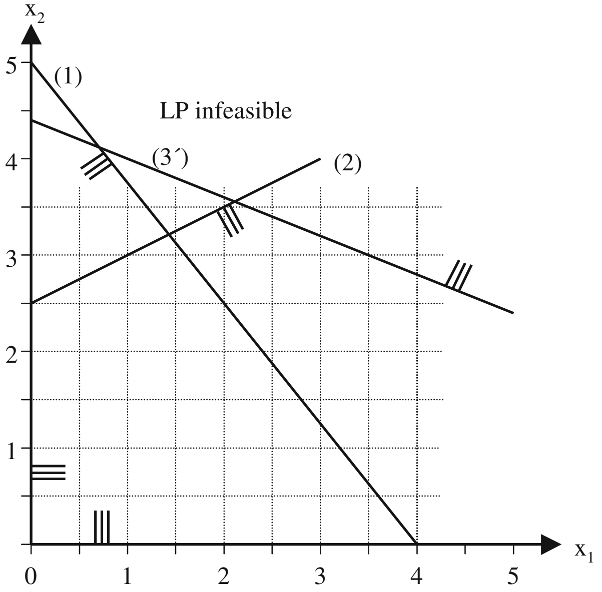


Fig. 30.2 An infeasible LP model

of (in-) equalities limiting the set of feasible solutions or, graphically speaking, at the "corners" of the shaded area.

The Simplex algorithm (and its variants) carries out the search for an optimal solution in two phases, namely

- Creating an initial feasible solution
- Finding an optimal solution.

In our example a first feasible solution may be $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = 2$ with a revenue of $2 \cdot 16 = 32$ [\$000]. Now, the second phase is started, probably generating an improved second solution, e.g. $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = 2.5$ with a revenue of 40 [\$000]. In the next iteration variable x_1 will be introduced, resulting in the optimal LP solution.

However, an initial feasible solution may not always exist. As an example, assume that a minimum contribution margin of 22 [\$000] is required (see inequality (3') in Fig. 30.2). The set of feasible solutions is empty and thus no feasible solution exists.

Now consider the situation where there is no production constraint [i.e. eliminating inequality (1)], resulting in an unrestricted shaded area (Fig. 30.3) and an unbounded objective function value. This case will also be detected in the first phase. Actually, an unbounded solution indicates that the model or the data have not been created correctly.

We would like to point out that an LP solution does not only provide optimal values for the decision variables. It also shows the *dual values* associated with the (in-) equalities of an LP model. As an example consider the production capacity (30.2). If we were able to increase the number of working days from 20 to 21, the optimal objective function value would rise from 1100/14 to 1154/14.

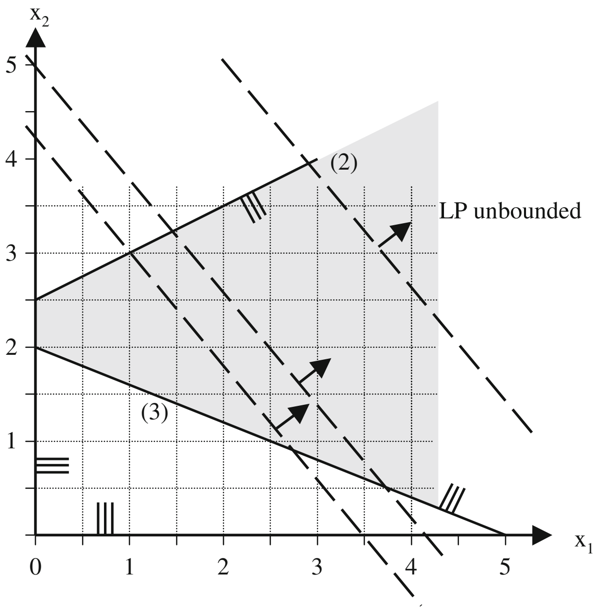


Fig. 30.3 An unbounded LP model

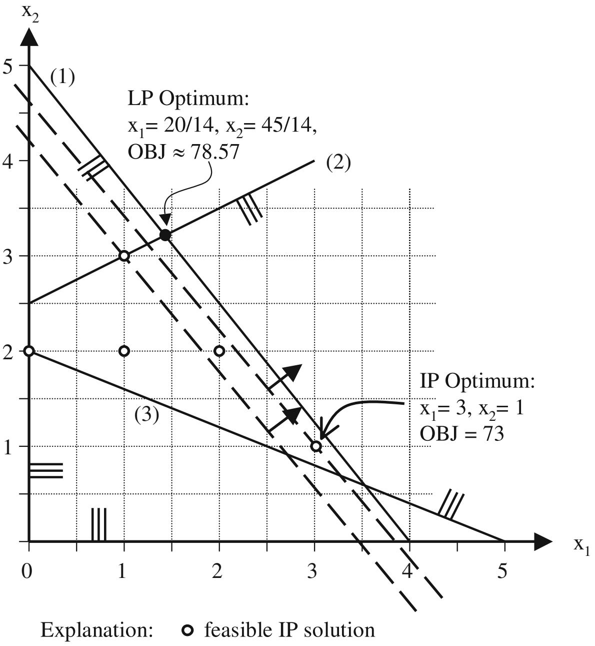
Thus an additional capacity unit has a dual value of 3.86 [$000]. Management now may look for options to extend capacity which are worth further revenues of 3.86 [$000] per working day. Note that only inequalities which are binding in the optimal solution may have a positive dual value. Although dual values have to be interpreted with caution, they are a fruitful source for finding ways to improve the current decision situation.

As has already been stated at the beginning of this chapter, very powerful solution algorithms and respective standard software exist for solving LP and MIP models (e.g. IBM ILOG CPLEX Optimizer 2014 and FICO Xpress Optimization Suite 2014). However, users of an APS do not have to deal with these solvers directly. Instead, special modeling features have been selected within APS modules for building correct models. Still, care should be taken regarding the numbers entering the model. If possible, appropriate scaling should be introduced first, such that the coefficients of variables are in the range from 0.01 to 100 to avoid numerical problems.

30.2 Pure Integer and Mixed Integer Programming

Now let us assume that a product can only be produced in integer multiples of ten [tons], since this is the size of a tub which has to be filled completely for producing either product A or B. Then the above model (30.1)–(30.4) has to be complemented by the additional constraints

Fig. 30.4 A graphical representation of an IP model



$$x_1 \in \mathrm{N}_0\,, \quad x_2 \in \mathrm{N}_0 \tag{30.6}$$

The set of feasible solutions reduces drastically (see the five integer solutions in Fig. 30.4). Still, in practice the number of solutions to consider before an integer solution has been proven to be optimal may be enormous.

As can be seen from Fig. 30.4 a straightforward idea, namely rounding the optimal LP solution to the next feasible integer values ($x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = 3$ with a revenue of 67 [\$000]), does not result in an optimal integer solution (which is $x_1 = 3$, $x_2 = 1$ and with a revenue of 73 [\$000]).

Anyway, an intelligent rounding heuristic might be appropriate for some applications. Hence, some APS incorporate rounding heuristics which usually require much less computational efforts than Branch and Bound which is explained next.

Four building blocks have to be considered describing a *Branch and Bound* algorithm, namely

- Relaxation
- Separation rules
- Search strategy
- Fathoming rules.

The two building blocks *separation rules* and *search strategy* relate to "branch" while *relaxation* and *fathoming rules* concern "bound". These building blocks will now be explained by solving our example.

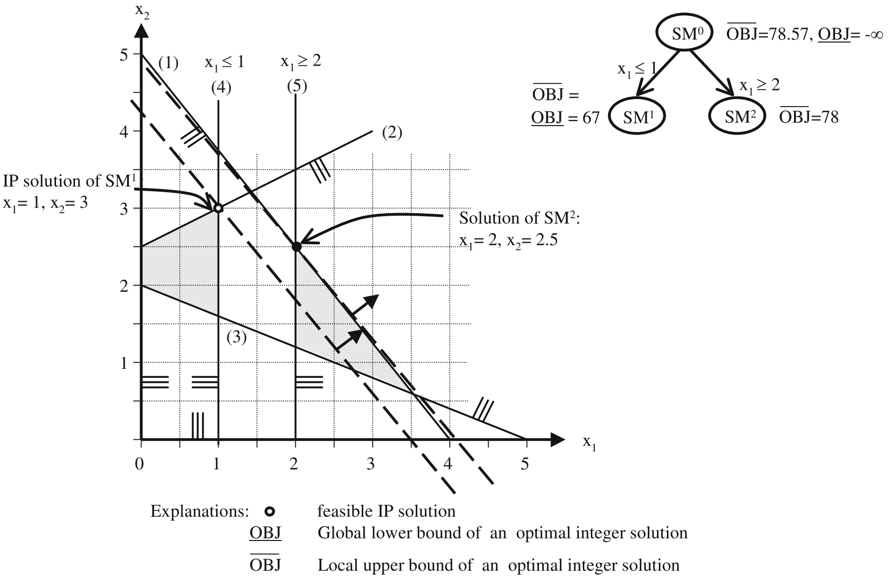


Fig. 30.5 A graphical representation of the first and second submodel

Although solving the associated LP model directly usually does not yield an optimal integer solution, we can conclude that the set of feasible integer solutions is a subset of the set of feasible LP solutions. So, if we were able to cut off some parts of the non-integer solution space, then we would finally arrive at an integer solution.

Consequently, we first *relax* the integer requirements (30.6) in favor of the non-negativity constraints (30.5). The resultant model is called an *LP relaxation*. If we solve an LP relaxation of a maximization problem, the optimal objective function will be an *upper bound* for all integer solutions contained in the associated set of feasible (integer) solutions. Hence, if the solution of an LP relaxation fulfills the integer requirements (30.6), it will be an optimal integer solution for this (sub-) model.

Next, submodels are created by introducing additional constraints, such that a portion of the real-valued non-integer solution space is eliminated (see Fig. 30.5). Here, the constraint $x_1 \leq 1$ is added resulting in submodel SM^1, while constraint $x_1 \geq 2$ yields submodel SM^2. Now, we have to solve two submodels with a reduced set of feasible solutions. Note that the union of the set of feasible *integer* solutions of both submodels matches the initial set of feasible integer solutions, i.e. no integer solution is lost by *separation*.

Submodel SM^1 results in a first *integer* solution ($x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = 3$ with a revenue of 67 [$000] representing the local upper bound of SM^1). Subsequently, we will only be interested in solutions with a revenue of more than 67 [$000]. Thus, we set the global lower bound to 67 [$000] ($\underline{\text{OBJ}} = 67$). The term "global" is used in order to refer to our original IP model. Since submodel SM^1 has resulted in an *integer*

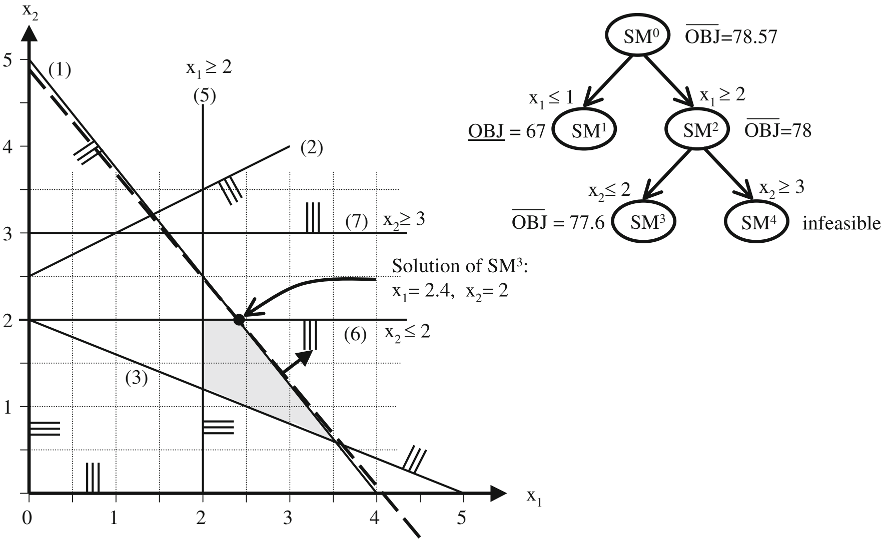


Fig. 30.6 A graphical representation of the third and fourth submodel

solution (and cannot yield a better solution) it will be discarded from our list of open submodels, i.e. it is *fathomed*.

The second submodel has a local upper bound of 78 [$000] which is clearly better than our current global lower bound, but its solution is non-integer valued ($x_2 = 2.5$).

The search for an optimal solution can be represented by a *search tree* (see right hand side of Fig. 30.5). Each node corresponds to an LP (sub-)model.

Now an unfathomed submodel has to be chosen for further investigations. However, only submodel SM^2 is unfathomed here. Subsequently, one has to decide on the non-integer-valued variable to branch on. These two choices make up the *search strategy* and may have a great impact on the number of submodels to solve and hence the computational effort.

The only variable which is non-integer valued in the optimal solution for submodel SM^2 is x_2. Two new submodels are created, submodel SM^3 with the additional constraint $x_2 \leq 2$ and submodel SM^4 with the additional constraint $x_2 \geq 3$. Note that all additional constraints that have been generated on the path from the origin (SM^0) to a given submodel in the search tree have to be taken into account (here $x_1 \geq 2$).

Since, there *is no feasible (real valued) solution* for submodel SM^4 (see Fig. 30.6) it may be *fathomed*. For submodel SM^3 a non-integer valued solution with an upper bound of 77.6 [$000] is calculated. Since this local upper bound exceeds the global lower bound (i.e. the best objective function value known) submodel SM^3 must not be fathomed.

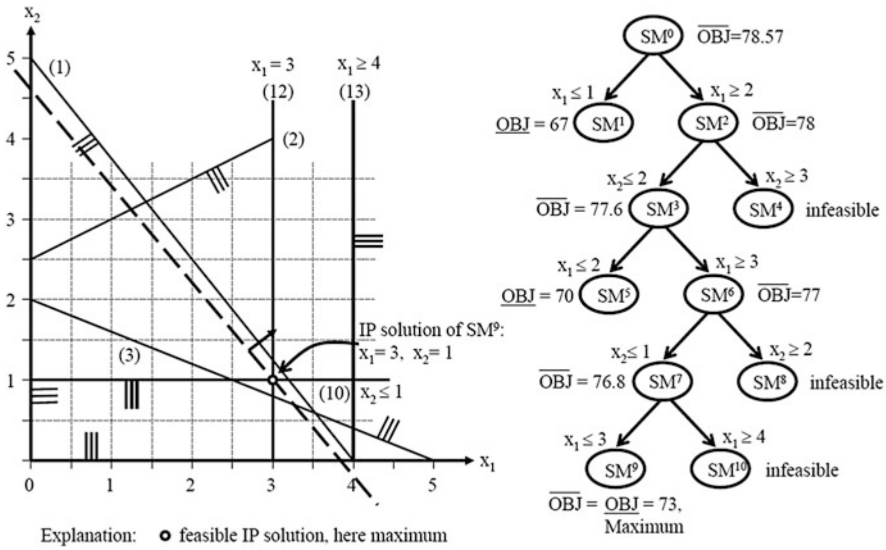


Fig. 30.7 A graphical representation of the optimal integer solution and the complete search tree

It now takes three further separations until we reach submodel SM^9 (Fig. 30.7), where the LP relaxation yields an integer solution with an objective function value of 73 [$000].

Usually, there will be some unfathomed submodels which have been generated in the course of the search. An unfathomed submodel has to be selected for a further separation until all submodels are fathomed. Then the best feasible integer solution found will be the optimal one for the initial IP model.

In our example, the search ends once it has been found out that submodel SM^{10} has no feasible solution. Now we have proven that the solution to submodel SM^9 is optimal.

Finally, we would like to add that the Branch and Bound scheme is almost the same for MIP models. As an example consider that only x_2 has to take integer values. Then we would start separating on variable x_2 (i.e. $x_2 \leq 3$ and $x_2 \geq 4$). Only constraint $x_2 \leq 3$ results in a feasible solution for the LP relaxation. Since it is also feasible with respect to the mixed integer constraints it is the optimal solution, too.

30.3 Remarks and Recommendations

Although the examples presented are rather simple, they have illustrated the differences in solving an LP model and a MIP model. Generating an optimal solution for an LP model requires “some” Simplex iterations leading from one “corner” of the feasible solution space to the next and finally to the optimal one. However, solving a MIP model by Branch and Bound incurs solving an LP (sub-)

model for each node of the search tree—and there may be several thousand nodes to explore until an optimal solution has been proven.

One way to reduce the number of submodels to investigate is to *truncate the search effort*. For example, the user may either set a certain time limit for the search or indicate that the search has to be stopped once the k-th feasible integer solution has been found. However, the problem with truncation is that one does not know in advance at which point in time a feasible or good solution will be found.

Another option to limit the computational effort of Branch and Bound is to specify in advance that the search for an improved solution should be stopped, once we are sure that there is no feasible integer solution which is at least $\delta\%$ better than our current best solution. This allows us to calculate an aspiration level in the course of Branch and Bound, simply by multiplying the objective function value of the current best solution by $(1 + \delta\%)$. The question whether there exists a feasible integer solution with an objective function value no less than the aspiration level is known from the maximum upper bound of *all* unfathomed submodels. If the maximum is less than our aspiration level the search is stopped.

In our example (see the search tree in Fig. 30.7) we now assume $\delta = 10$. Having generated the first integer solution ($\underline{\text{OBJ}} = 67$) the aspiration level is 73.7 [\$000]. Since the maximum of the upper bounds of unfathomed submodels is 78 [\$000] (submodel 2) the search will continue. Having reached the second integer solution with an objective function value of 70 [\$000], an aspiration level of 77 [\$000] is calculated. In this example the search stops once the maximum upper bound of all unfathomed submodels falls below 77 [\$000] which is true after having generating submodel 8.

The number of submodels to solve largely depends on the relative difference between the objective function value of the LP relaxation and the optimal integer solution, named *integrality gap*. For our example the integrality gap is rather modest (e.g. $(78.57 - 73)/73 = 0.076$ or 7.6 %). The smaller the integrality gap is, the greater is the chance to fathom submodels and thus to keep the search tree small. Today much effort is invested in deriving additional *valid inequalities (cuts)* to yield small integrality gaps for each submodel generated within Branch and Bound (see Wolsey 1998; Pochet and Wolsey 2006).

A further option applied by advanced MIP solvers to reduce the search effort is *preprocessing*. Here one investigates the interactions of the model's constraints in order to restrict or even fix the values of some integer variables before starting Branch and Bound. For our example, one might conclude that the set of feasible integer values for x_1 will be restricted to $\{0,1,2,3\}$ and to $\{1, 2, 3\}$ for x_2.

We would like to add that the logic of Constraint Programming (see Lustig and Puget 2001; Milano and Wallace 2010), previously considered as an alternative to MIP solvers, now is (partly) integrated into most recent MIP solvers. A survey of the latest LP software is provided by Fourer (2013). As a last resort to keep CPU times low more powerful hardware may be used. For example several submodels generated in the course of Branch and Bound now can be solved effectively in parallel by multiprocessor computers.

A frequently asked question is: “Will our Master Planning model be solvable within reasonable CPU-times?” Before answering this question one has to differentiate whether the Master Planning model is to be solved by an LP or a MIP solver or a simple heuristic.

As already stated, purely linear models are much easier to solve than MIP models. Actually, solution capabilities of state-of-the-art LP solvers should be sufficient for solving almost all reasonable real world applications. However, if elapsed time plays a role a few experiments at an early stage of a project should clarify matters: The idea is to generate an LP model with only a subset J^r of all products J and/or with a reduced number of time periods T^r compared with T periods in the final model ($T^r << T$), but representing the same model structure, i.e. containing all types of constraints of the final model. Assuming that the reduced model requires a CPU-time CPU^r, a rule-of-thumb for calculating the CPU-time (CPU) of the final model is:

$$CPU \sim \left(\frac{T}{T^r} \cdot \frac{|J|}{|J^r|}\right)^3 \cdot CPU^r \tag{30.7}$$

This rule-of-thumb is derived from the observation that the computational time required for solving an LP by a Simplex method tends to be roughly proportional to the cube of the number of explicit constraints, so that doubling this number may multiply the computational time by a factor of approximately 8 (Hillier and Liebermann 2010, p. 138).

For MIP models an optimal solution usually cannot be expected within reasonable CPU times. Hence, the search for an optimal solution is truncated (see above). Also, remember that always a (relaxed) LP model has to be solved before the search for a MIP solution starts. In any case the CPU time limit must be sufficient for at least generating a first feasible MIP solution.

Again, preliminary experiments with the MIP model can provide valuable insights. One approach is to start with relaxing all integer requirements, resulting in a purely linear model. If this model is solved easily, then the most important integer requirements can be introduced and the associated computational effort observed. Then further variables may be declared integer until a good compromise between the solution effort, solution quality and model adequacy is reached.

A second related approach is to specify a complete MIP model including all desired integer requirements but to relax some integer requirements for variables in later periods in the planning horizon, where e.g. only a rough capacity check suffices.

A third approach supported by some software vendors is to use time or stage oriented decomposition. If this option is chosen, the overall model is partitioned into smaller submodels (automatically) which are then solved successively (e.g. a MIP model covering 13 periods is partitioned into four MIP models with four periods each, while there is one overlapping period). In the end the user will get a complete solution for the original decision problem.

In any case the user should use integer or binary variables carefully—a MIP model incorporating (only) 100 integer variables may already turn out to require excessive computational efforts.

References

FICO Xpress Optimization Suite. (2014). Homepage, http://www.fico.com/en/products/fico-xpress-optimization-suite/. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Fourer, R. (2013). Linear programming. *OR/MS Today*, *40*, 40–53.

Hillier, F., & Liebermann, G. (2010). *Introduction to operations research* (9th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill.

IBM ILOG CPLEX Optimizer. (2014). Homepage, http://www-03.ibm.com/software/products/de/ibmilogcpleoptistud/. Visited on Feb. 28, 2014.

Krekó, B. (1973). *Lehrbuch der Linearen Optimierung* (6th ed.). Berlin: Deutscher Verlag d. Wiss..

Lustig, I., & Puget, J.-F. (2001). Program does not equal program: constraint programming and its relationship to mathematical programming. *INFORMS Journal on Computing*, *31*, 29–53.

Martin, R. (1999). *Large scale linear and integer optimization: A unified approach*. Boston: Kluwer Academic.

Milano, M., & Wallace, M. (2010). Integrating operations research in constraint programming. *Annals of Operations Research*, *175*, 37–76.

Pochet, Y., & Wolsey, L. (2006). *Production planning by mixed integer programming* (1st ed.). New York: Springer.

Winston, W. (2004). *Operations research: Applications and algorithms* (4th ed.). Belmont, CA: Thomson/Brook/Cole.

Wolsey, L. (1998). *Integer programming*. New York: Wiley.

Genetic Algorithms

31

Robert Klein and Oliver Faust

31.1 General Idea

Many optimization problems of the type arising in scheduling and routing (see Chaps. 10 and 12) are of combinatorial nature, i.e. solutions are obtained by combining and sequencing solution elements. When solving such problems to optimality, the number of solutions to be examined exponentially grows with the problem size. For example, for n solution elements $n!$ different sequences exist.

Since the 1990s, *genetic algorithms* (GA) have become increasingly popular as a means for solving such optimization problems heuristically, i.e. for determining near-optimal solutions within reasonable time. One of the main reasons for this popularity is the relative ease of programming at least a simple genetic algorithm. Furthermore, many researchers have observed empirically that already basic versions of GA will give very acceptable results without excessively fine-tuning them for the problem on hand. Finally, since GA work on a representation (coding) of a problem (see Sect. 31.2), it is possible to adapt existing procedures to modified problem versions quite easily or to write one general computer program for solving many different problems. GA were initially developed by Holland and his associates at the University of Michigan and the first systematic but rather technical treatment was published in Holland (1975). Reeves (1997) and Reeves (2010) provide a detailed overview on the topic. For comprehensive descriptions from a practical point of view, we refer to Goldberg (1989), Haupt and Haupt (2004), Michalewicz (1999) and Reeves and Rowe (2003).

According to the biological evolution, GA work with *populations* of *individuals* which represent feasible solutions for the problem considered. The populations are constructed iteratively through a number of *generations*. Following the idea

---

R. Klein • O. Faust (✉)
University of Augsburg, Universitätsstraße 16, 86159 Augsburg, Germany
e-mail: robert.klein@wiwi.uni-augsburg.de; oliver.faust@wiwi.uni-augsburg.de

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7__31,

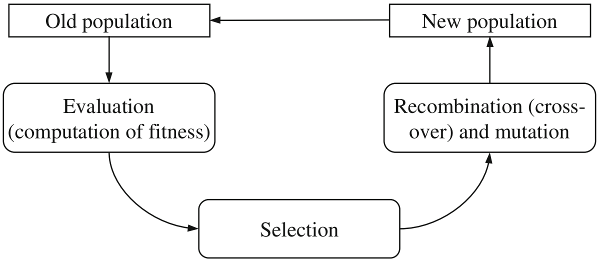


Fig. 31.1 Template for a single iteration of a genetic algorithm

Table 31.1 Data of an example problem

j	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
d_j	5	4	7	8	3	2	6	4
rd_j	0	2	4	16	18	28	25	28
dd_j	17	10	13	28	22	31	36	36
c_j	3	2	5	3	4	1	3	4

of Darwinism ("survival of the fittest"), each individual of the current generation "contributes" to the subsequent one according to its quality which is measured by a *fitness value*. This is achieved by *selecting* individuals randomly with the probability of choosing a certain individual depending on its fitness value (see Sect. 31.3). In order to obtain the next generation from the individuals selected, two basic operations exist (see Sect. 31.4). Using a *crossover*, the features of two (parent) individuals are *recombined* to one or more new (child) ones. By *mutation*, some features of an individual are modified randomly. A template for a single iteration of a genetic algorithm is depicted in Fig. 31.1. Usually, GA are executed until a prespecified stopping criterion is fulfilled, e.g. a certain number of generations has been evaluated or a time limit is reached.

Recently, hybrid approaches have been developed which incorporate *local search algorithms* (LSA) in GA in order to leverage problem-specific knowledge (see Sect. 31.5). The local search part of these so-called *memetic algorithms* (MA) is typically executed after recombination.

In the following, we discuss the different aspects of GA in more detail. To ease presentation, the following *production scheduling problem* is considered. A number n of jobs has to be processed on a single machine (with simultaneous execution being impossible). Each job $j = 1, \ldots, n$ has a fixed processing time (duration) of d_j periods and preemption is not allowed. Furthermore, job j cannot be started before its release date rd_j and should be terminated until a due date dd_j. In case it is finished later than dd_j, a penalty cost c_j for each time unit of tardiness arises. Hence, the problem consists of finding a schedule, i.e. a starting time s_j for each job, such that the total tardiness costs are minimized. The data of an example with $n = 8$ jobs are given in Table 31.1.

31.2 Populations and Individuals

As stated before, a population consists of a set of individuals. Each individual is *represented* by a vector (*string*) of fixed length in which the corresponding solution is coded by assigning specific values to the vector elements (*string positions*). In order to obtain the solution associated with an individual, the respective string has to be *decoded*. Both the dimension (length) of the string as well as the domains (sets of feasible values) of the string positions depend on which representation is chosen for coding the solution.

In our example, a solution can be represented by a sequence S of jobs. That is, the string consists of n positions and each position can take one of the values $1, \ldots, n$ (with all positions having different values). For decoding the string, we proceed as follows. The jobs are considered in accordance to the sequence S. The job j in turn is started at the smallest possible point in time $s_j \geq rd_j$ at which its execution does not overlap with a job already scheduled. After having scheduled all jobs, the total tardiness costs can be computed. Consider the string $S = \langle 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 \rangle$ for our example. By decoding this sequence, the solution shown in the Gantt-chart of Fig. 31.2 is obtained. The numbers within the bars denote the job numbers and the tardiness of the jobs, respectively. The lengths of the bars correspond to the processing times.

Job 1 can be started at the earliest point in time $s_1 = 0$. Scheduling job 2 results in $s_2 = 5$ due to the processing of job 1 which does not allow for a smaller starting time. After terminating job 2, job 3 can begin at $s_3 = 9$, hence, finishing three periods after its due date $dd_3 = 13$. The jobs 4 and 5 are scheduled subsequently. Job 6 cannot be launched earlier than $s_6 = rd_6 = 28$. Finally, the jobs 7 and 8 are considered with the latter terminating after 40 periods. The total tardiness costs are $3 \cdot 5 + 5 \cdot 4 + 4 \cdot 4 = 51$.

Note that we have chosen the above representation, because it is well suited for a large number of scheduling and routing problems and, hence, is used by a large number of GA for such problems (Reeves 1997). Alternatively, GA are often applied using a representation where solutions are coded in a bitwise fashion, i.e. each string position can take either the value 0 or 1. Such a representation is appropriate, when it has to be decided whether certain elements are part of a solution or not.

In any application of GA, an important question consists of choosing an appropriate *population size* P, i.e. the number of individuals considered in each iteration. If the population size is too small, the search space of feasible solutions may only be evaluated partially, because just a few existing individuals are recombined in each iteration and these individuals increasingly resemble each other with each additional generation. Otherwise, in case of a too large population size, also rather poor individuals may be considered for recombination. This is in particular disadvantageous in case that for each new string large parts of the corresponding solution have to be reconstructed as in our example, which requires a considerable computational effort. Hence, with an increasing problem size, most of the computational time will be spent for constructing solutions rather than

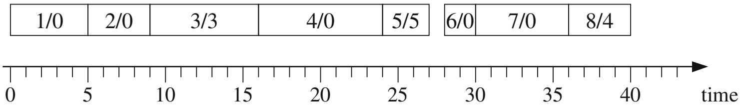


Fig. 31.2 Gantt-chart for $S = \langle 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 \rangle$

examining the search space and the search will only proceed slowly towards high-quality solutions. In the literature, most successful applications of GA propose an even-numbered population size of $P \in [50, 100]$ (Reeves 1997).

Finally, an *initial population* has to be determined before starting a genetic algorithm. Most commonly, the corresponding individuals are obtained by randomly assigning values to the string positions. In our example, sequences of jobs may be constructed randomly. Alternatively, simple heuristics, such as randomized priority-rule based approaches, may be applied in order to start the search with promising solutions.

31.3 Evaluation and Selection of Individuals

As stated previously, individuals contribute to the next generation with a probability depending on their fitness value. For this purpose, a *gene pool* consisting of P copies of individuals is constructed. For those individuals with a high fitness value, several copies are included in the pool, i.e. the individuals are selected several times, whereas for those with low values no copy may be contained at all. This reflects the analogy to biological evolution. The best individuals should contribute to the next generation the most often, i.e. their positive features are reproduced in many of the new individuals. By way of contrast, the worst ones with a low selection probability should be discarded and, hence, "die off".

In the most simple form, determining the fitness values v_i for the individuals $i = 1, \ldots, P$ consists in computing the objective function values f_i of the corresponding solutions.

For maximization problems, the selection process often used within GA can be subdivided in the following two steps. In the first step, a roulette wheel with $i = 1, \ldots, P$ slots sized according to the fitness values $v_i = f_i$ is constructed. For this purpose, the total fitness of the population is computed by $T = \sum_{i=1}^{P} v_i$. Subsequently, each individual i is assigned a selection probability of $p_i = v_i / T$ as well as a cumulative probability $q_i = \sum_{h=1}^{i} p_h$. In the second step, the roulette wheel is spun P times. In each iteration, a single individual is selected, i.e. a copy is included in the gene pool, as follows. After generating a random float number $\beta \in (0, 1)$, the individual $i = 1$ is chosen in case of $\beta \leq q_1$. Otherwise, the i-th individual with $q_{i-1} < \beta \leq q_i$ is picked.

The above selection process bears the difficulty that if the objective is minimization instead of maximization as in our example, a transformation of the objective function values has to be performed. One simple transformation consists of defining an upper bound F which exceeds all possible objective function values and subsequently using the fitness value $v_i = F - f_i$. Another difficulty is that the scale on which the values are measured may not be considered appropriately. For example, values of 1,020 and 1,040 are less distinctive than values of 20 and 40.

Therefore, two possible alternatives for designing the selection process have been proposed in the literature. When using a *ranking* approach, the individuals are ordered according to non-deteriorating fitness values with r_i denoting the rank of individual i. Subsequently, a selection probability is computed by, e.g. $p_i = 2r_i/(P \cdot (P + 1))$. In this case, the best individual with $r_i = P$ has the chance of $p_i = 2/(P+1)$ of being selected. This is roughly twice of that of the median whose chance is $p_i = 1/P$. With the values p_i on hand, the selection can be performed by spinning the roulette wheel as described above.

The other possibility is the *tournament selection*. In this approach, a list of individuals is obtained by randomly permuting their index numbers $i = 1, \ldots, P$. Afterwards, successive groups of L individuals are taken from the list. Among these individuals, the one with the best objective function value is chosen for reproduction and a copy is added to the gene pool. Then, the process is continued with the next L individuals until the list is exhausted or the gene pool contains P copies, whatever comes first. In the first case, the tournament process is continued to determine the missing members of the gene pool after determining a new list randomly.

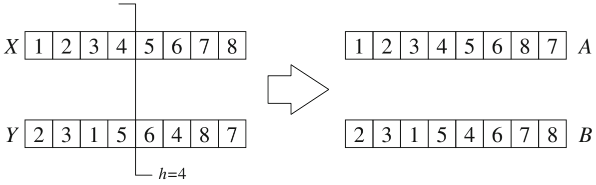
Except for the tournament selection, the above approaches have in common that there is no guarantee that the best of all individuals is selected for reproduction. From the optimization perspective this may not be efficient. Therefore, the concept of *elitism* has been introduced which consists of putting a copy of the best individual into the gene pool by default and applying the roulette wheel and ranking approaches only $P - 1$ times. In generalized versions, a larger number of individuals is chosen by default.

31.4 Recombination and Mutation

For the *recombination* process, a pair of individuals is chosen from the gene pool either randomly or systematically. A *crossover* is carried out with a certain probability γ, i.e. the pair is recombined into two new individuals. In case that no recombination is performed, the original individuals become part of the new population with a probability of $1 - \gamma$. This process is repeated until P individuals have been considered and, hence, a new population with P individuals has been obtained. In the literature, different values for γ have been proposed with values of $\gamma < 0.6$ not being efficient (Reeves 1997).

In the following, we describe the simple *1-point crossover* which is the one most commonly used. In general, it is defined for strings with length n as follows. For each pair of parent individuals X and Y, a *crossover point* $h \in [1, n - 1]$ is determined randomly. Afterwards, a first individual is obtained by concatenating the first h string positions of X with the $n - h$ last positions of Y. The second individual

Fig. 31.3 1-Point crossover for sequence representations



is obtained just the other way round. Unfortunately, this definition does not work for every possible representation of solutions. For our example problem, such a crossover results in individuals with feasible solutions when the representation based on priority values is applied but fails for the representation relying on sequences. In the latter case, it yields individuals with some jobs occurring twice and others being discarded.

Therefore, a different approach is used for sequence based representations, the principle of which is depicted for two possible strings of our example problem (Fig. 31.3). After selecting a crossover point $h \in [1, n-1]$ randomly, the first h string positions of the parent individual X are copied into the child one A. Subsequently, the remaining $n - h$ positions are filled up with those elements which have not been considered yet in the order in which they are contained in individual Y. The second child B is constructed accordingly now starting with the first h positions of individual Y. Note that in our example both individuals obtained by the crossover yield better objective function values than their parent ones. The total tardiness costs of the schedules represented by X and Y are 51 and 93, whereas for A and B we obtain 47 and 29, respectively.

In addition to recombination, *mutation* is applied for some of the new individuals to diversify the search, i.e. to avoid that the same set of solutions is examined repeatedly through a number of consecutive generations. For this purpose, a probability δ with which each individual is mutated has to be specified. According to the selection process, the decision whether to mutate an individual or not can be made by randomly generating a number from the interval $(0, 1)$. The usual approaches for determining δ are either to choose a very small value, e.g. $\delta = 0.01$ or to use a value $\delta = 1/n$, because there is some theoretical and practical evidence that this is a reasonable value for many problems (Reeves 1997). In general, mutation consists of randomly altering the value at a random string position. In order to preserve the feasibility for sequence based representations, two more versatile mutation possibilities are distinguished. Within an *exchange* mutation, two string positions are randomly selected and the corresponding elements are interchanged. In our example, the positions three and six may be selected for individual A resulting in the mutated sequence $A' = \langle 1, 2, 6, 4, 5, 3, 8, 7 \rangle$. A *shift* mutation consists of randomly choosing a single string position and moving the corresponding element by a random number of positions to the left or right. After selecting position six of individual B and left shifting the element by three positions, we yield $B' = \langle 2, 3, 6, 1, 5, 4, 7, 8 \rangle$.

31.5 Memetic Algorithms

GA are able to quickly explore the search space and find regions with high-quality solutions. However, they typically exhibit less efficiency with regard to the exploitation of promising regions of the search space. In contrast, LSA are able to quickly exploit a given region, scanning the *neighborhood* of a current solution in search of better adjacent solutions. Therefore, LSA implement a *move operator* which is used for moving through the neighborhood. While this approach allows for quickly finding local optima using a problem-specifically defined neighborhood, LSA tend to insufficiently explore the search space.

MA constitute a hybridization of GA and LSA, and are therefore meant to embody the best of both worlds. The name of this class of evolutionary algorithms stems from the word *memes* defined by Dawkins (2006). A meme can be regarded as valuable knowledge which is transferred from one generation to another. In the context of optimization, LSA are used to incorporate problem-specific knowledge into chosen individuals by finding new individuals with better fitness values within their neighborhood. There are two ways to achieve this: *Lamarckian* MA replace every individual altered by LSA whereas *Baldwinian* MA keep the original individuals and replace their fitness values with those of the new individuals generated by the LSA.

As LSA can be regarded as systematic mutations guided by problem-specific knowledge, LSA in MA most commonly substitute the mutation operator and are thus executed after recombination. If mutation shall also be applied, the mutation operator should differ from the move operator of the applied local search algorithm in order to achieve diversification by searching in a different neighborhood. Individuals are either chosen randomly for alteration by LSA or according to their fitness value.

MA have successfully been used for solving a number of scheduling problems. For further reading we refer to Eiben and Smith (2007) and Moscato and Cotta (2010).

31.6 Conclusions

The previous expositions aim at reviewing the basic ideas of GA in the context of solving combinatorial optimization problems. They also show that a large variety of design possibilities exist when implementing GA for particular problems. This includes choosing a representation of solutions, a selection mechanism as well as efficient recombination and mutation strategies. Fortunately, as stated at the beginning, already basic versions of GA are robust in the sense that they are able to yield satisfying results for many problems.

Depending on the problem to be solved, it may be difficult to consider constraints appropriately, i.e., to avoid that infeasible solutions are obtained throughout the solution process. Within production scheduling, such constraints may be due to generalized precedence relationships among jobs or to time windows for their execution. In order to overcome such difficulties, several concepts have been developed. The most common one is to modify the objective function by a penalty term such that infeasible solutions are assigned a low fitness value.

References

Dawkins, R. (2006). *The selfish gene* (30th anniversary ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.

Eiben, A., & Smith, J. (2007). *Introduction to evolutionary computing* (1st ed., corrected 2nd printing). Natural Computing Series. Berlin: Springer.

Goldberg, D. (1989). *Genetic algorithms in search, optimization, and machine learning*. Reading: Addison-Wesley.

Haupt, R.,& Haupt, S. (2004). *Practical genetic algorithms* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.

Holland, J. (1975). *Adaptation in natural and artificial intelligence*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press.

Michalewicz, Z. (1999). *Genetic algorithms + data structures = evolution programs* (3rd ed.). Berlin: Springer.

Moscato, P., & Cotta, C. (2010). A modern introduction to memetic algorithms. In M. Gendreau & J.-Y. Potvin (Eds.), *Handbook of Metaheuristics* (2nd ed.). *International Series in Operations Research and Management Science* (Vol. 146, Chap. 6, pp. 141–183). New York: Springer.

Reeves, C. (1997). Genetic algorithms for the operations researcher. *INFORMS Journal on Computing 9*, 231–250.

Reeves, C. (2010). Genetic algorithms. In M. Gendreau & J.-Y. Potvin (Eds.), *Handbook of Metaheuristics* (2nd ed.). *International Series in Operations Research and Management Science* (Vol. 146, Chap. 5, pp. 109–139). New York: Springer.

Reeves, C., & Rowe, J. (2003). *Genetic algorithms: Principles and perspectives: A guide to GA*. Boston: Kluwer Academic.

About the Contributors

Dr. Martin Albrecht is a process master SCM at the Paul Hartmann AG, Heidenheim. Since October 2012, he coordinates the group SCM activities at HARTMANN. He has managed several projects with SCM & IT focus, including an implementation of Demand Planning. From 2004 to 2009 he worked at the University of Hamburg and the Darmstadt University of Technology as a research assistant. He finished his PhD thesis about Collaborative Planning in 2009. He can be contacted at ⟨martin.albrecht@hartmann.info⟩.

Tanguy Caillet is Executive Director within the Center of Excellence of EY EMEIA Advisory Supply Chain Practice located in London. Holder of a Master Degree in Industrial Engineering, he works since 2000 in the Supply Chain Management Consulting industry, leading various Supply Chain performance improvement projects, from the Strategy definition to the implementation of new processes, organization and information systems and different industry sectors. His main domain of expertise are S&OP and IBP, Supply and Demand planning, mixing Lean concepts and Planning systems, APS and Inventory Optimization. CPIM and Six Sigma Green Belt certified, he is holding an Executive MBA of HEC School of Management in Paris. Managing Director of J & M Management Consulting in France for 2010–2013, he developed the Supply Chain practice and the business development on the French market before joining EY after the acquisition of J & M Management Consulting. He can be contacted at ⟨tanguy.caillet@de.ey.com⟩.

Oliver Faust is Research Associate at the chair for Analytics & Optimization of Prof. Dr. Robert Klein at the University of Augsburg. Within the scope of his research activities, he focuses on integer and combinatorial optimization problems arising in the field of airline schedule planning. He holds a degree in Business Administration with Computer Science from Darmstadt University of Technology, where he graduated in 2008. He can be contacted at ⟨oliver.faust@wiwi.uni-augsburg.de⟩.

Prof. Dr. Bernhard Fleischmann is professor emeritus at the University of Augsburg, where he held a chair for Production and Logistics 1991–2010. 1978–1991 he was a professor of Operations Research at the University of Hamburg.

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7,

1971–1978 he worked in the Operations Planning department of Unilever Germany. His research interests include the development and application of systems for production planning, transportation and distribution planning and inventory management. He can be contacted at ⟨bernhard.fleischmann@wiwi.uni-augsburg.de⟩.

Jochen Häberle is Head of Production Logistics at Federal-Mogul, Friedberg. From 2008 to 2011 he was Head of Process & Supply Chain Efficiency at Haupt Pharma AG. Prior to this role he was involved in large, international Supply Chain Management and APS implementation projects as technical implementer, solution architect and project manager in different industries. He studied business mathematics at the University of Augsburg. He can be contacted at ⟨jochen.haeberle@federalmogul.com⟩.

Dr. Christoph Kilger is partner at Ernst & Young Advisory and head of Supply Chain & Operations in Germany, Switzerland and Austria. Before, he served for 13 years as a member of the executive board of J & M Management Consulting AG, Mannheim. At J & M Christoph was responsible for the consulting practices, human resources, and knowledge and quality management. From 1996 to 1999 he worked as project manager with KPMG Consulting. He has in-depth experience in supply chain transformation programs, APS implementations, product life cycle management, manufacturing, logistics, and IT. Christoph holds a PhD in computer science from the University of Karlsruhe, and is regularly giving lectures at the Karlsruhe Institute of Technology (KIT). He is the responsible organizer of the yearly conference Supply Chain Days Heidelberg. Christoph can be contacted at ⟨christoph.kilger@de.ey.com⟩.

Prof. Dr. Robert Klein holds a chair for Analytics & Optimization at the University of Augsburg since 2006. He has published many articles on quantitative methods and their application to production and logistics in international journals, like International Journal of Production Research, European Journal of Operational Research, OR Spectrum, and INFORMS Journal on Computing. He can be contacted at ⟨robert.klein@wiwi.uni-augsburg.de⟩.

Prof. Dr. Achim Koberstein holds the Detlef-Hübner-Chair in Logistics and Supply Chain Management at Goethe-University Frankfurt, Germany. Achim has worked on several industrial research projects in cooperation with Siemens AG, Daimler AG and E.ON Ruhrgas AG. In 2007, he worked in a production planning team at Daimler AG Group Research and Technology in Ulm. His research interests include optimization approaches for production and logistics planning as well as optimization algorithms and solver technology in linear and stochastic optimization. The results of his research have been published in international journals such as European Journal of Operational Research, OR Spectrum and International Journal of Production Research. Achim can be contacted at ⟨koberstein@europa-uni.de⟩.

Prof. Dr. Herbert Kopfer holds a chair for Logistics at the University of Bremen since 1992, and since 2002, he is a guest professor at University of Rennes I. He has published many articles on transportation planning in international journals like Computers and Operations Research, Computers in Industry, Computers & Industrial Engineering, European Journal of Operational Research, Flexible Services and Manufacturing, International Journal of Physical Distribution & Logistics Management, International Journal of Production Economics, Journal of the Operational Research Society, OR Spectrum, Transportation Science, and Zeitschrift für Betriebswirtschaft. He is a member of the International Federation for Information Processing (IFIP) and is in the editorial board of Flexible Services and Manufacturing. He can be contacted at ⟨kopfer@uni-bremen.de⟩.

Dr. Matthias Lautenschläger is manager at Capgemini Consulting. He specializes in supply chain transformation projects. Main focus areas of his projects are in design and implementation of Advanced Planning System and optimization solutions. His work experience encompasses a broad range of industries: automotive, chemical, manufacturing, consumer goods, and retail. He holds a doctoral degree in business administration from Darmstadt University of Technology. He can be contacted at ⟨Matthias.Lautenschlaeger@capgemini.com⟩

Dr. Baptiste Lebreton manages the Operations Research Group at Eastman Chemicals, based in Kingsport, Tennessee. Prior to this role, he managed the European supply chain of a business unit and led the introduction of advanced planning software and operations research models at Solutia Inc. He holds a PhD from the University of Augsburg (2005) and graduated in business administration in France and Germany (2000–2001). He also worked as a Senior Research Fellow at INSEAD from 2005 to 2008, leading applied research projects for the chemical, textile/apparel and high tech industries. His areas of interests are strategic network optimization under uncertainty and putting operations research into practice. He can be contacted at ⟨blebreton@eastman.com⟩.

Prof. Dr. Herbert Meyr worked at the department of Production and Logistics at the University of Augsburg from 1994 to 2003, at the Vienna University of Economics and Business Administration from 2003 to 2006, and at the Technical University of Darmstadt from 2007 to 2011. After finishing his PhD thesis about "*Simultaneous Lotsizing and Scheduling for Continuous Production Lines*" in 1999, he changed his research interest to model building and integration aspects of supply chain planning. He currently holds a chair for Supply Chain Management at the University of Hohenheim, Stuttgart, Germany. He can be contacted at ⟨H.Meyr@uni-hohenheim.de⟩.

Dr. Boris Reuter is Executive Director for Advisory Services at EY. He copes with Supply Chain Transformation and Performance Management. Since his graduation in business administration and management 1996 he was involved in the analysis of supply chains, the development of optimization algorithms, the customizing of APS, the implementation of collaborative planning, the modeling of data warehouses, data mining, KPI-systems, performance management, and integrated business planning. He holds a doctoral degree in business administration from Darmstadt University of Technology. He can be contacted at ⟨boris.reuter@de.ey.com⟩.

Marco Richter is Senior Manager within EY Advisory Services, Eschborn. He studied business administration and engineering at Darmstadt University of Technology. Since graduation in 2000 he started working in the SCM consulting business with a strong focus on SAP SCM. He has been involved in numerous consulting projects dealing with Supply Chain Management processes and IT solutions and is specialized in optimizing and implementing short term and mid-term planning processes. He is an expert in SAP APO optimization technologies and integration of ERP and SCM systems besides all SAP logistic modules. In 2009 he started working in the Supply Chain Practice of J & M Management Consulting which joined EY in 2013. He can be contacted at ⟨marco.richter@de.ey.com⟩.

Dr. Jens Rohde started working at SAP AG, Walldorf, Germany in 2004 in the development of SAP SCM. After working in the area of Breakthrough Innovation & Research he is now working at SAP's Cloud Development. He wrote his PhD thesis at the department of Production and Supply Chain Management at Darmstadt University of Technology in the research domain of anticipation of short-term planning decisions in mid-term master planning by using artificial neural networks. He can be contacted at ⟨jens.rohde@sap.com⟩.

Mario Roitsch is currently working as Department Manager for Business Analysis & Economics at OMV Refining & Marketing GmbH, Vienna. From 2000 to 2003, he worked as a senior consultant and project manager for different management consulting companies. From February 2004 to 2008 he was responsible for Supply Chain Development and different APS implementations as business process architect and project manager for 11 countries. These SCM projects are concerning the supply and demand planning, optimization, supply and demand scheduling and the daily operational management in the oil industry. Afterwards he was leading the supply optimization department. From 2011 to 2013 he was heading the integrated planning department for OMV Petrom. Mario holds a degree in economics from the University of Passau. He can be contacted at ⟨mario.roitsch@omv.com⟩.

Heidrun Rosič, currently works as Global Supply Chain planner at a healthcare company in Vienna. Before that she worked as research assistant at the department of Production Management at the Vienna University of Economics and Business Administration where she wrote her doctoral thesis about the economic and environmental sustainability of dual sourcing. She can be contacted at ⟨heidrun.rosic@wu.ac.at⟩.

Dr. Christian Seipl studied Industrial Engineering at Darmstadt University of Technology, where he graduated in 2004. From 2004 to 2009 he worked as research assistant in Darmstadt and at the University of Hamburg, Institute for Logistics and Transport. He finished his PhD thesis in 2010 on Safety-Stock Optimization and Simulation. Afterwards he joined J & M (now EY) and works in the area of supply chain management with SAP APO and innovative tools like ICON-SCM and SAP EIO by SmartOps. He can be contacted at ⟨christian.seipl@de.ey.com⟩.

Prof. Dr. Hartmut Stadtler is professor of business management at the University of Hamburg. Formerly, he held a chair at Darmstadt University of Technology (1990–2004). From 1987 to 1990 he was employed as a consultant in the field of production management. He has published numerous articles about operations and supply chain management in international journals like International Journal of Production Research, Management Science, Operations Research, OR Spectrum and Production and Operations Management. He has been department editor for the Zeitschrift für Betriebswirtschaft and a member of the editorial board of the International Journal of Production Research. He can be contacted at ⟨hartmut.stadtler@uni-hamburg.de⟩.

Volker Stockrahm is Partner within EY Advisory Services. He is the head of the EY service line Supply Chain Strategy and Planning in the region GSA (Germany, Switzerland, Austria). Since his graduation as master of engineering in business-administration-and management in 1996 he works as strategy consultant and as business consultant in many large, international Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning implementation projects. He has in-depth experience in integrated supply chain management and planning from many industrial sectors as process industry, food and consumer products, automotive and automotive suppliers as well as in the mechanical and plant engineering. He can be contacted at ⟨volker.stockrahm@de.ey.com⟩.

Dr. Christopher Sürie is currently working as expert consultant in the area of supply chain optimization at SAP Deutschland AG & Co. KG, Walldorf, Germany. In this position he has been involved in numerous projects implementing the SAP SCM software focusing on its optimization engines in production and transportation. Prior to this he worked at the department of Production and Supply Chain Management at Darmstadt University of Technology, Germany and completed his PhD thesis in the area of production planning in process industries which was awarded several prizes. He can be contacted at ⟨c.suerie@sap.com⟩.

Dr. Michael Wagner is responsible for process excellence management at the information technology department of Paul Hartmann AG, Heidenheim, Germany. Before, he was director for supply chain systems, controlling and consulting at the same company. There he was working on projects for the redesign of the global supply chain and the implementation of APS. Prior to this Michael was working on projects concerning Advanced Planning, inventory management and production planning for a broad range of companies during his graduation at the University of Augsburg. He can be contacted at ⟨michael.wagner@hartmann.info⟩.

Dr. Ulrich Wetterauer is Executive Director at Ernst & Young GmbH Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft, Mannheim. From April 1998 to May 2000, he worked as SCM consultant and technical implementor for KPMG Consulting. From June 2000 to June 2013 he was involved in large, international Supply Chain Management and APS implementation projects as solution architect and project manager in different industries, working for J & M Management Consulting. In addition he was responsible for the concept and realization of SCM trainings. Since July 2013 he is responsible for the area Value Chain Design as well as for international SCM projects at EY. Ulrich holds a PhD in physical chemistry from the University of Heidelberg. He can be contacted at ⟨ulrich.wetterauer@de.ey.com⟩.

Index

H. Stadtler, C. Kilger and H. Meyr (eds.), *Supply Chain Management and Advanced Planning*, Springer Texts in Business and Economics, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-55309-7,